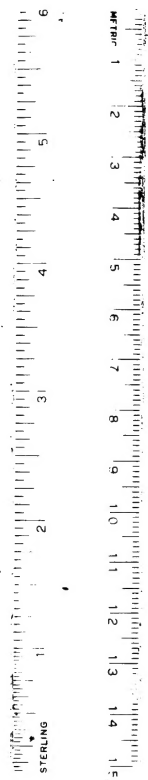


N. a. Gaiot Carr for 1664 <sup>12</sup>/<sub>4</sub>



A Compendious  
**HISTORY**  
OF THE  
Goths, Svvedes, & Vandals  
*AND*  
Other Northern Nations.

---

WRITTEN BY  
**Olaus Magnus,**  
*Arch-Bishop of*  
**UPSALL,**  
And Metropolitan of  
**SVVEDEN.**

---



L O N D O N :  
Printed by J. Streater, and are to be sold by Humphrey Mosely,  
George Sawbridge, Henry Twisford, Tho: Dring, John Place, and  
Henry Haringman, 1658.

TO THE  
RIGHT HONOURABLE,  
SIR

Bulstrode Whitlock,

Knight, &c.

Late Lord Ambassador to the Crown of  
*SWEDEN.*

My Lord,

**I**T is your honour, to be the great Patron of Learning; and its Proselytes, when Kings (saith an Ancient) be Philosophers, then Kingdoms enjoy the fruit of Learned Peace; the same may be said of inferiour Princes in their Spheres, the European World is sufficient Witness of Your polite Accomplishments, both infused and acquired, whereby You have shined like another Cassiopeian Star in the Swedish Hemisphere: Your own Native Countrey received the Reflexion of Your Wisdom, in that firm Peace and Alliance we enjoy with that Heroick and Warlike Prince, the present Sovereign Commander of those famous Countries and Territories, described in this Treatise; whose Martial Progenitors destroyed the puissant Empire of Rome, and were the Hammer of Gods wrath, to break in pieces the Italian Luxury, and frowned the great Citie into ashes: Wherefore, it belongeth of right to Your Honour, to patronize the Description



*Description of those Countries, in our own Language, especially, seeing that so Learned a Prelate, Prince of the Gowne-men in those Territories, bath in this Elaborate Work exposed to publick view, the Acts of their famous Heroes, the strange Eccentrick Customs, Fashions, Attire, Sports, Battels, Feasts, Marriages, Religion, and Trades of these Northern Nations: together with horrid Apparitions of Divels, the Antick Prestigations of Conjurers, and Magical Inchantments; the Rarities and Observables of all the Four Elements; but especially the ripping up of the Bowels and Interels of Nature, in their various and admirable Minerals, with many other Stupendious Relations, that create excellent delight and wonder in the diligent and curious Inquirer. The Translation whereof, being not able to abide the Censure of Your acute Judgment. Yet being the Instrument and occasion of its Publication to the World in our Native Tongue, I have made bold humbly to present it to your Lordships acceptance, being confident, that under the shadow of Your Patronage, who have been, doubtless, an Eye-Witness of many of these Grand Wonders, it will shine with the more Orient Lustre.*

Your Lordships, in all due observance,

J. S.

## The Contents.

### BOOK I.

CHAP. I.	
A Description of Biarmia.	Fol. 1
2 A Description of Finmarck.	ibid.
3 The Description of Scricfinnia.	ibid.
4 Of the vehemency of the Southern Wind.	3
5 Of the violence of North-Winds.	ib.
6 The divers Effects of Thunder and Lightning in the Northern parts.	4
7 Of the fiercest of Cold.	ibid.
8 Of Frosts and the falling of Snow.	5
9 Of the variety of snow and glasses.	ib.
10 Of the Forts of Snow made by young people.	6
11 Of the running of Horses upon Ice for Cloaks.	ib.
12 Of the running of men upon the Ice for a wager.	7
13 Of the Inns upon the Ice for Travelers.	8
14 Of the Passage upon the Ice between the Gulphs.	9
15 Of Instruments for the Ice.	10
16 Of the Warlike Obelisks of the Goths, and Stone-Monuments raised.	11
17 Of Obelisks for Sepulchres.	ib.
18 Of Stones with Figures.	12
19 Of Dials with Shadows.	13
20 Of Sticks to design the Times by.	ib.
21 Of the Goths Alphabet.	14
2 Of the admirable narrow of some Mountains.	16
3 A Description of Iceland, and of the Nation there.	ibid.
4 Of the horrible sound of the hollow Caves by the shores of the Sea.	17
5 Of the Rock of the Sea-Monk.	18
6 Of the Crowned-Rock, and the multitude of Fish.	ib.
7 Of the flowing and ebbing of the Sea.	19
8 Of Charybdis, and the wonderful Narrows of Ice.	ibid.
9 Of the Leather-ships made of Hides, used by the Pyrats of Greenland.	20
10 Of the inscrutable depths of the Coasts of Norway.	ibid.
11 Of the Ports of Iron-Rings.	21
12 Of the dangerous passage of the Mountains, Scars and Sula, between Sweden, and Norway.	ibid.
13 Of the Statues on the Wayes, in the Snowey Mountains.	22
14 Of Passage in the Dark.	23
15 Of Lights, and Pitch-Torches.	ib.
16 Of the breaking forth of Standing-Waters.	24
17 Of the three famous Lakes of the Goths.	ib.
18 Of dangerous Caves.	25
19 Of the excellent Antiquity of the Kingly Fort Aaranes of the Vestrogoths.	26
20 Of the wonderful Garden of the Mountain Kindaberg, near the said Castle.	27
21 Of the beauty and plenty of the Island Elandia of the Goths.	28
22 Of the famous Island of the Goths called Gothland.	29
23 Of the Bucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mountains of Hanga.	30

### BOOK II.

Chap. I. Of Veins of Brimstone, and Combustion of the Waters.	15
21 Of the beauty and plenty of the Island Elandia of the Goths.	28
22 Of the famous Island of the Goths called Gothland.	29
23 Of the Bucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mountains of Hanga.	30

## The Contents.

- 24 *Of the Mountains with Helmets.* 32  
 25 *Of the Straits in the Stoney-Ports.* 32  
 26 *Of Stoney-Rocks, and the dangerous passage through Idenbenkia,* ibid.  
 27 *Of swift Torrents.* 33  
 28 *Of the divers Forms of Stones upon the Coasts.* 34  
 29 *Of the Stones of Giants, and Springs of Waters.* ibid.

### BOOK III.

- Chap. I. *Of the Superstitious Wooftlip of the Pagans of Lituania.* 36  
 2 *Of the Superstitious Wooftlip of men under the Pole.* 37  
 3 *Of the three greater gods of the Goths.* 38  
 4 *Of the three lesser Gods.* ibid.  
 5 *Of the magnificent Temple of the Northern gods.* 39  
 6 *Of the Religion, and Sacrifices of the Goths.* 40  
 7 *Of the Goths Superftition about Thunders.* 41  
 8 *Of their fighting againft the Gods.* 42  
 9 *Of the Fatal Sisters and Nymphs.* ibid.  
 10 *Of the Night-dances of the Fairies and Ghofts.* 43  
 11 *Of the War againft the Fauni.* ibid.  
 12 *Of Divination.* 44  
 13 *Of the Magical Art of Ericus, with his Windy-Cap, and of others.* 45  
 14 *Of Women-Witches.* 46  
 15 *Of the Conjurters and Witches in Finland.* 47  
 16 *Of the Magical Instruments of Bothnia.* 48  
 17 *Of the Sea-Magicians.* ibid.  
 18 *Of the fame Magicians, and the like.* 49  
 19 *Of a Magician bound.* ibid.  
 20 *Of the punifhment for Witches.* 50  
 21 *Of the hurts done by the Devils.* 51

### BOOK IV.

- Chap. I. *Of the unhappy Battail of Regnerus, King of Denmark.* 52  
 2 *Of the cruelty of the wild Inhabitants.* 53  
 3 *Again concerning the cruelty of thefe wild-men.* 54  
 4 *Of the Five-fold Speech of the Northern Kingdoms.* ibid.  
 5 *Of bartering of Commodities without Money.* 55  
 6 *Of Fairs upon the Ice.* 56  
 7 *Of the Marrying of the Laplanders by fire and fmi.* 57  
 8 *Of Mourning-Dances.* 58  
 9 *Of their Exercifes by Moon-Light.* ibid.  
 10 *Of their Ships, Bands, and Rats, bound together.* 59  
 11 *Of the Art of fhooting with the Bowe.* 60  
 12 *Of the hunting of the Laplanders.* ibid.  
 13 *Of Horses paffing over Snowie Mountains.* 61  
 14 *Of the dangerous paffage between the Mountains.* ibid.  
 15 *Of the Law of killing Crows.* 62  
 16 *Of the Baptizing of Children of the Wild Inhabitants.* ibid.  
 17 *Of the Converfion of North and Eaft Finland, and their great Hoftpitality.* 63

### BOOK V.

- Chap. I. *Of Giants.* 64  
 2 *Of the difference of Giants and Cham-pious.* 65  
 3 *Of the fobriety of Giants and Cham-pious.* 66  
 4 *Of the Virtues of the moft valiant Scatchaterus.* 67  
 5 *Of the Patronage he afforded to the afflicted.* 68

## The Contents.

- 32 *Of the fiercenefs of men, who by Charms are turned into Woolves.* 193  
 33 *Examples of thefe men that were turned into Woolves, and contrariely.* 194

### BOOK XX.

- Chap. I. *Of the three-fold Bothnia in the North, and the abundance of fifhing there.* 207  
 2 *Of the Multitude of Fifh at this Marr.* 208  
 3 *Of fifhing for Salmon.* ibid.  
 4 *Of fifhing for Sea Calves.* 209  
 5 *Of the way to fifh for them, and their Phyfical ufe.* 210  
 6 *More of the virtue of this Creature.* ibid.  
 7 *Of the perplexity of thofe that eat the fifh of Sea-Calves in Lent.* 211  
 8 *Of Jacks, or Pikes.* ibid.  
 9 *Of catching the Pike.* 212  
 10 *Of fifhing by Flames.* ibid.  
 11 *Of Fifhing in Summer, and Hare-king.* 213  
 12 *More of ingenious Fifhing.* 214  
 13 *Of their fifhing on the Ice.* ibid.  
 14 *Of fifhing with Horfes.* 215  
 15 *Of running up the Ice for Fifh, and why they fifh fo often.* ibid.  
 16 *Of the admirable event of the Ice Lake Vether.* 216  
 17 *Of Fifhes of the Black-River, at the New-Fort in Finland.* 217  
 18 *Of the ftrange Harper of this River.* ibid.  
 19 *Of Fifh of divers kinds.* ibid.  
 20 *Of Salt-fifh dried and fmoaked.* 218  
 21 *Of Salt-fifh.* 219  
 22 *Of the Herring.* ibid.  
 23 *Of the Nature of the Herring.* 223  
 24 *Of Fifh-Ponds, and the Spawn of Fifhes.* ibid.

### BOOK XXI.

- Chap. I. *Of the dangerous Fifhing in the Norway Ocean.* 223  
 2 *Of the Danger of the Fifher-men, and the quality of the Fifhes.* 224  
 3 *Of the Fifhes of Iceland.* ibid.

## The Contents.

4 Of the wonderful abundance of Iceland Butter.	225	20 Of Winged-fish.	232
5 Of the horrible Monsters of the Coast of Norway.	ibid.	21 Of the Polypus.	ibid.
6 Of the Whirl-pool, and his cruelty against the Mariners.	226	22 Of the cruelty of some Fish, and kindness of others.	233
7 Of the Fight of the Whale against the Orcs.	ibid.	23 Of Sponges.	ibid.
8 Of the many kind of Whales.	ibid.	24 Of very long Worms.	234
9 Of a monstrous Fish found on the North shore of England, Anno 1532.	227	25 Of the Fish which the Norway people call Swamihick; and of some other Sea-Monsters.	ibid.
10 Of the Sword-fish, Unicorn, and Saw-fish.	228	26 Of the Cow, Calf, Hare, and Sea-Monster.	235
11 Of the manner of fishing for Whales.	ibid.	27 Of the greatness of the Norway Serpent.	ib.
12 Of the wonderful affection of Whales towards their Young.	229	28 Of the several colour of Serpents.	236
13 Of Sperma-Ceti, which is called Amber-Greece, and the Medicaments thereof.	ibid.	29 Of the habitation of Serpents.	ib.
14 Of the use of the parts of Whales.	ibid.	30 Of the fighting of the Shepherds against Serpents.	237
15 Of Buildings of Whale-bones.	230	32 Of the strange Fish found in Prussia.	338
16 Of their houses, by raising up whole Ribs.	ibid.		
17 Of Anchors fastned upon the Whales backs.	231		
18 Of the monstrous Hog of the German Ocean.	ibid.		
19 Of the Rolmarus, or Norway Mer-lus.	ibid.		

### BOOK XXII.

Chap. 1. Of the Northern Gnats.	239
2 A Remedy to prevent them.	ib.
3 Of Bees.	340
4 Of Honey.	ibid.
5 Of Ants.	341
6 Of Pearls, and the Generation of them.	342.

Olaus

## The Contents.

7 Of the Moscovites way of Healing.	133
8 Of the same.	134
9 Of the way of receiving Embassadors amongst the Moscovites.	ibid.
10 Of the Italian Embassador cruelty slain.	136
11 Of the ingenuity of the Merchants of Moscovia.	ib.
12 Of the divers ways of the Finlanders making War.	ib.
13 More of their Arms and Ammunition.	137
14 Of the Northern Governors, or the King of Sweden.	ib.
15 Of burning the Forts of violent Governors.	138
16 Of their Engines for the Ice.	ib.
17 Of Fiery Chariots.	139
18 Of their strange Artillery.	140
19 Of their manner of shooting.	ib.
20 Of their hindring the waters to freeze.	141

21 Of Walls of Ice.	ib.
22 Of Watches kept on the Ice, and in the night.	142
23 Of the more fortunate Battails in the morning.	ib.
24 Of the besieging of Forts fenced with Ice.	143
25 Of assaunting the Enemies ships that are frozen in.	ib.
26 Of the strange punishments of unfaithful servants.	144
27 Of their infliction, by cold frozen water.	145
28 Of their strange Horse-Races.	ibid.
29 Of the wild Asses running on the Ice.	ibid.
30 Of the Ranged Deer running in the Snow.	146
31 Of the drawing of the Enemies in the Snowie Valleys.	ib.
32 Of Snow-balls sticking in the Horses hoofs.	ib.

### BOOK XII.

Chap. 1. Of the Variety and Forms of their Stones.	148
2 Of building their houses, and the divers forms of them.	149
3 Of the same.	ib.
4 Of the great magnitude of Trees in the Northern parts.	150
5 Of the excellency thereof.	151
6 Of the diversity.	ibid.
7 Of the quality of Fruits.	152
8 Of the Fir-Trees Gum, or Rosin, and of the original of Amber.	ib.

### BOOK XIII.

Chap. 1. Of the diversity of gathering in of Harvest.	154
2 Of their Bake-houses, and baking of bread.	155
3 Of parching their Corn that must last.	ibid.
4 The manner of drinking amongst the Northern people.	ibid.
5 The variety of boiling of Salt.	156
6 The difficulty of carrying Salt into the Northern Kingdoms.	ib.
7 The great quantity of Butter.	ibid.
8 The greatnesse and goodnesse of their Cheese.	157
9 Of Weavers.	ib.

### BOOK XIV.

## The Contents.

### BOOK XIV.

- Chap. 1. Of the diversity of Habits. 160  
 2 Of the chaste adorning of Virgins, and rigour of Chastity. ib.  
 3 Of the Benediction of the Carbolick Kings. 161  
 4 Of Knights and their Oath. 162  
 5 Of the Marriages of the Commons. ib.  
 6 Of Adulterers, and their punishments. 164

### BOOK XV.

- Chap. 1. Of the Exercises of Children. 165  
 2 Of their Customs of driving away the Winter, and receiving of Summer. 166  
 3 Of the same. ibid.  
 4 Of the May-Fests. ibid.  
 5 Of their Dice playing, and playing at Tables or Chess. 167  
 6 Of their dancing in Arms. ib.  
 7 Of their dancing in Rings. 168  
 8 Of their dancing about the fire. ibid.

### BOOK XVI.

- Chap. 1. Of the Customs of praying in Churches. 170  
 2 Of the Funerals and Burials of Princes. 171  
 3 Of the curing of the Sick, and of their Diseases and Medicaments. ibid.

### BOOK XVII.

- Chap. 1. Of Rams and Ewes. 173  
 2 Of Oxen and Cows. ibid.  
 3 Of the Northern-Horses. 174  
 4 Of their War-Horses. ibid.  
 5 Of their Cattle. ib.  
 6 Of He and She Goats. ib.  
 7 What gifts are given to the Married. 175  
 8 Of Ranged-Deer. ibid.  
 9 Of the profit of this Creature. ib.

- 10 Of the Chariots for men, drawn by ranged Deer. 176  
 11 Of the Winter Chariots for these Ranged-Deer. ib.  
 12 Of the Commodity of the Parts of this Creature. 177

### BOOK XVIII.

- Chap. 1. Of the Elks or Wild-Asses, and the manner of taking them. 178  
 2 Of the Bark of the Elks or Wild-Asses against the Wolves. ib.  
 3 Of Hares and Does. 179  
 4 Of Castors. ibid.  
 5 Of the Gabor. 180  
 6 Of honouring strangers, with a ke covering of these Skins. ibid.  
 7 Of the way of hunting of Gato's. 182  
 8 Of Lynxes. ibid.  
 9 Of the Lynxes and their skins. 182  
 10 Of Wolves, and their fangs. ib.  
 11 Of the many sorts of Woodcoats. 183  
 12 Of Otters, and their diversity and fangs of their skins. ib.  
 13 Of Squirrels. ib.  
 14 A Note of this Creature, to find how things to come. 184  
 15 Of Marmosets, and Squirrels, and their Skins. ibid.  
 16 Of the Ermine, or Bontick-Mice. 185

- 17 Of the hunting of Ermines. 186  
 18 Of the Name of Badgers. ibid.  
 19 More of the same. ibid.  
 20 Of the Fishing-Bears. 187  
 21 Of the cunning in killing Bears. ibid.  
 22 Of the crafty hunting of Bears. 188  
 23 Of the Battle between the Hedge-hog, and the Bear. ibid.  
 24 Of killing Bears with an Iron Club. 189  
 25 Of the vanishing of a Maid, and the begetting of U to, a most cunning and valiant man. ibid.  
 26 Of the Swineherds that are taken away with their Pipes. 190  
 27 Of the dancing of the Bears in Lithuania. ibid.  
 28 Of the Agility of Bears. 191  
 29 Of Bears turning Wheels. ibid.  
 30 Of Foxes and their sleights. 192  
 31 Of the crafty Wit of Foxes. ibid.

## The Contents.

- 6 Of the Exercises of the said Scarchate. 69  
 7 Of the same of the Acts of Scarchate. 70  
 8 Of the most great and terrible War between the Swedes and Goths, where Scarchate was General against the Danes. 71  
 9 Of the death of Scarchate. 73  
 10 Of Haldanus, and other Champions whom he conquered. 74  
 11 Of another certain Haldanus, and his Aliens. 75  
 12 Of Olo Vegetus. 76  
 13 Again of the same man, fighting valiantly for Chastity. 77  
 14 Of the Acts of the Champions Arngirinus, and Arvarodus. 78  
 15 Again of the same Arngirinus, and the Charms of the Fins. ibid.  
 16 Of the slaying of a Bear, and the drinking of his blood. 79  
 17 Of Regnerus, called Hair-Coat. 80  
 18 Of Also, the Defender of Chastity. ibid.  
 19 Of the Stratagems of Fridlevus. 81  
 20 Of the same man's Stratagems by Birds. 82  
 21 Of the fight of King Harald, against a tame Dragon. ibid.  
 22 Of the fight of Frotho and Fridlevus against a Serpent. 83  
 23 Of the same Fridlevus. ibid.  
 24 Of the Piracy of famous Virgins. ibid.

### BOOK VI.

- Chap. 1. Of Minerals, and the finding of them. 86  
 2 Of the Situation of Mineral Veins. 87  
 3 Of the way to dig the Mines. ibid.  
 4 Of the distinction of Mineral Veins. ibid.  
 5 Of the Wheels, Instruments, and dangers of the Labourers. 88

- 6 Of the Art and Ingenuity of Smiths. ibid.  
 7 Of the distinction of fusible Metals. 91  
 8 More of the same Metals. ibid.  
 9 Of the Devils in the Mines. ibid.  
 10 Of Lightning in these Mountains of Minerals. 92  
 11 Of Goldsmiths, or Refiners. ibid.  
 12 Of the Silver Ornaments of Maids. 93

### BOOK VII.

- Chap. 1. Of the Artificers of Kings and Darts. 94  
 2 Of Arrows, and Warlike Instruments. ibid.  
 3 Of the sudden calling the Community to Arms. ib.  
 4 Of the keeping of the Ways and Scouts. 96  
 5 Of the direction of the multitudes called together. ibid.  
 6 Of Battails on the Shores. 97  
 7 Of Slings for Stones, and red-hot Iron. ibid.  
 8 Of the Velts of the Centurians. 98  
 9 Of the manner and time bringing these Velts. 98  
 10 Of their Stakes, Darts, and Pits for Snares. ibid.  
 11 Of the Stratagems of King Hacho by boughs. 100  
 12 Of punishing Hostile fires. 101  
 13 Of removing the same danger. ibid.  
 14 Of the custody of Banks in time of Hostility, about a place called Meier, in Upper-Swecia. 102

## The Contents.

### BOOK VIII.

- Chap. 1. *Of the Election of the King.* 104  
 2. *Of the Adoption of Noble-men by Arms.* ib.  
 3. *Of the same form of the Adoption.* 105  
 4. *Of the Military Education of Illustrious and Noble men.* 106  
 5. *Of the reason and manner of Riding.* ibid.  
 6. *Of the choice of young Soldiers for Arms.* 107  
 7. *Of the same by an outward Ceremony.* ibid.  
 8. *Of the manner of the old Warfare of the Goths.* 108  
 9. *Of other Antiquities of Knights.* ib.  
 10. *Of Military Exercises and Disciplines.* ibid.  
 11. *Of their Arms and Provisions for Knights and Horsemen.* 109  
 12. *Of the tyrannical severity, and exaltation of their Governors.* ib.  
 13. *Again of the same most wicked Rulers.* 110  
 14. *Of the Causes of perpetual Discord, that the Swedes or Sweons, and the Goths have against the Danes.* 111  
 15. *Of the same Causes.* 112  
 16. *Of the same Causes one of the 24. book of the History of Gothland, of Johannes Magne's, the Author's Brother.* 113  
 17. *Of the severity of King Chriethernus the second.* 115  
 18. *More of the cruelty of the same King.* ibid.

### BOOK IX.

- Chap. 1. *Of turning Swords in Wheels.* 117  
 2. *Of their Chariots with Hooks.* 118  
 3. *Of Brazen Horses that vomited out fire.* ibid.  
 4. *Of the Guns of the Northern People.* 119  
 5. *Of Triangular Guns.* ibid.  
 6. *Of Organ-like Guns.* ibid.

7. *Of the burning the Foundations of Castles.* 120  
 8. *Of burning the Foundations of Forts.* ibid.  
 9. *Of the cruelty of Flatterers, Traytors, and Strangers, often committed most fearfully in the Kingly City Stockholm.* ibid.  
 10. *Of the Original and Situation of the Kingly City.* 121  
 11. *Of the situation of the Mountain Bruncaberg, beyond the Kingly City Holm, and of the Battels fought in it.* 122  
 12. *Of feeding their Castle in the horfes of the besieged.* ibid.  
 13. *Of supplying their want of water.* 123  
 14. *How to supply want of bread.* ibid.

### BOOK X.

- Chap. 1. *Of Fights in Lakes, and of Bridges broken down.* 125  
 2. *Of the form and use of the old Northern ships.* 126  
 3. *Of another form of Northern ships.* ibid.  
 4. *Of the manual slaughter of the Merchants, for the Harbours of Iceland.* 127  
 5. *Of the punishment of the Rebellious Mariners.* ibid.  
 6. *Of the swimming of Horsemen.* 128  
 7. *Of the swimming of their Foot Soldiers in Arms, especially such as are fat.*

### BOOK XI.

- Chap. 1. *Of the Bloody Wars in the Northern Countries.* 130  
 2. *Of Fights upon the Ice.* 131  
 3. *Of the breaking forth of the Moscovites, or Russians.* ibid.  
 4. *Of a fearful founding Cave, the common people call Smellen.* 132  
 5. *Of the same.* 133  
 6. *Of the Battel of the Finlanders, against the Moscovites.* ibid.

# OLAUS MAGNUS THE GOTH, Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

## CONCERNING

The Rites of Nations, and Nature of Things, and Customs of making War; used by the Northern People.

## An Epitome of the First Book.

## CHAP. I.

### A Description of Biarmia.



**B**iarmia is a Northern Countrey, the Zenith whereof is the Arctick Pole, and the Horizon is the same with the Equinoctial Circle; which cutting the Zodiack into two equal parts, makes the half year one artificial day, and the other half one night: so that the whole year is there but one natural day. Now *Biarmia* is divided, according to *Saxo Sialandicus*, into the furthestmost, and hithermost: In the hithermost, there are Mountains that are covered with snow perpetually, but they do no hurt, for they are never melted by the Sun: between these there are Woods and Groves in abundance, and it is most fertile with Pasture Grounds, and there are Beasts very frequent, that are not usual elsewhere. There are many Rivers in it, because there are so many Rocks in the Channels, and these run with a noise and foaming, as they are carried on. But in the further *Biarmia*, there are some monstrous strange people, to whom the passage is difficult, and full of danger, that men can hardly come unto them. For the greatest part of the way is constantly blocked up by Mountains of snow, and if any man would pass over them, he must ride in a Chariot, drawn with

Stags, (as there is a great number of them in that place, as there is in *Italy* of *Asies*) and by the incredible swiftness of them, he may pass over the Cliffs that are exceedingly frozen. *Saxo* mentions one *Moringus*, a Satyr of the Woods, who was very rich, and inhabited there; unto whom one *Holbertus*, King of the *Swedes*, was brought by tame Stags, and became very rich and happy with great spoils: yet both these Countries are distinguished with Valleys and Fields, and would afford good Corn, if it were sowed there: But there is such plenty of Fish there in all places, and so much hunting after wild Beasts, which is the cause that men do not much desire Bread for use. When those of *Biarmia* go to fight, they commonly change their Arms into Art, and are wont by Charms to the Clouds, to open the Air, and to turn a fair day into rainy weather. The men of *Biarmia* are Idolaters, and Wain-drivers, as the *Scythians* are, and very cunning to bewitch men. For they will so bind men by the Witchery of their eyes, or words, or some other way, that they cannot be at liberty, or in their right mind, but oft-times pine away, and dye of a Consumption.

## CHAP. II.

## The Description of Finmarck.

**F**inmarck, is a Northern Countrey, of the part of *Norway*, of old, by reason of the largeness of it, it was honoured with the Title of a Kingdome. This place is seated in the coldest part of the World: yet the men there are of strong bodies, and stout minds, and they are wont manfully to defend themselves against the assaults of their Enemies. The Ayr of that and the Neighbour Countries is alwayes cold, clear, yet agreeing with the bodies of men; and in Summer there are very few showers: and the clemency of the Ayr there is so good, that Fishes never falter, but onely dried in the Ayr, will last uncorrupted ten years. There is a continual day from the 8th. of the Calends of *April*, unto the sixth of the Ides of *September*, without any darkness coming between, and the Sun is seen from the fourth of the Nones of *May*, unto the Calends of *August*, without any night coming between. The distance from this Northern *Finmarck*, unto the more Southern parts of the *Goths*, is above 350. *Gothick* miles, where at midnight, about the Summer Solstice, in divers places, namely at *Lincopia*, and *Scaree*, the smallest Letters may be read without any Candle, and monyes told. Also in these places, under the Elevation of the North Pole, in 68. degrees. from the beginning of *May*, untill the beginning of *August*, no Stars are to be seen: Besides the Moon, which at the Full appears like a Burning Bush, something toward the Superficies of the Earth, for that space of time, to the admiration and horror of those who see it.

## CHAP. III.

## The Description of Scricfinnia.

**S**crifinnia is a Countrey between *Biarmia*, and *Finmarck*: yet it hath one strong corner that stretcheth Southward, and towards the *Bothrick* Sea; it is called a Tail principally, because the Inhabitants of it slide very swift, having their feet fastned to crooked pieces of Wood made plain and bended like a Bow in the former part, with a staff in their hands to guide them; and by these, at their pleasure, they can transport themselves upward downward, or obliquely, over the tops of snow: yet ever observing that proportion, that one of these pieces of Wood shall be longer then the other a full foot, according as the men or women are in tallness: so that if a man or woman be eight foot high the one piece of wood shall be just so long, and the other piece of wood shall be

nine

nine foot. Moreover, they provide that those pieces of wood be covered beneath with the tender skin of a young *Haw*; the form, and colour whereof is like to a Deer Skin but it is far longer and larger. But why these pieces of wood are covered with these tender Skins, there are divers causes given; namely, that they may transport themselves the swifter over these high snows, that they may the more nimble avoid Cliffs of Rocks, and steep places with an easy swiftness, that when they ascend to a place they may not fall backward: because the Hair will rise like spears, or Hedge-Hogs Bristles, and by an admirable power of Nature hinder them from falling down. Therefore with such Instruments, and the Art they have to run, they are wont, especially in Winter time, to passe over the unaccessible places of Mountains, and Valleys; but not so easily in Summer, though the Snow be there, because the Wood soon sticks into them. Nor is there any Rock so prominent, but they can cunningly run up to the top of it, by a winding course. For first leaving the deep places, or Valleys, they passe over the feet of the Mountains, with a crooked motion round about; and they to run to and fro, untill they come to the highest parts of those winding Hills: sometimes they do it in heat of Hunting, sometimes to try their skill, and to contend for mastery therein, as those who run Races to win the price.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Vehemency of the Southern Wind.

**T**here is a Port in *Iceland*, (a Land that is next to the Frozen Sea, under the Dominion of the Kingdome of *Norway*, commonly called *Vestraholt*) named the West part; neer which about the Sea shores and Fields, men riding in Armour; by the mighty blast of the Southern Wind, are blown down to the ground like Towes. Likewise, neer those that dwell in Rocks and Caves, especially in that time of Winter, that the Sun goes back to the Solstitial Signes, when the Windes are more temperate amongst the Waves of the Seas. Moreover there are Mountains in *Iceland* not very high, that stick forth in many places; upon which if any man strive to go when this Southern Wind blowes, he must not onely look for danger, but to be suffocated in Bogs and Quick-Sands. But how formidable and hurtful the Windes are on the Western Banks of *Norway*, the Inhabitants, nor such as travel there, can be ignorant: For they shall see no Shrub nor Tree to grow there, by reason of the violence of this Wind: Wherefore, for want of Wood, they are forced to burn great Fish-bones to make Fire, and to boyl their Meats. The Inhabitants that dwell on the West Coasts of *Bathnia*, to the great hurt oft-times, have the trial of it, how cruelly that wind rageth there. For it will carry away the whole tops of houles, and scatter them upon the Land in several places, at vast distances.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Violence of Northern Winds.

**W**indes and Northerly Tempests, to have a most terrible and dangerous force, no man can be ignorant, who hath learned or searched out the secrets of Nature: especially since the cause and matter of its Original, is manifest and indeficient. Therefore oft-times they take away the Waters of the Sea from under the ships, and carry the ships up into the Ayr: Also they



let fall stones, and other living Creatures, which they have taken up something high; and not onely thole, but the Lead that covers Churches, and divers houses, and the strongest Beams are carried into the Air, and then another more vehement blast comes, they are carried a great way. Also sometimes whole mills with huge stones being compassed about with a Whirlwind, are transported into places far off, the people being safe; and sometimes such a mighty Whirlwind descends, that it involves Cities, Castles, Villages, and scatters houses afar off in the Fields, as I said. In Summer, Winds blow from the West and the North with so great violence, that they will take up whole handfuls of stones from the ground, and will make great heapes of stones, like to heapes of Sand; and sometimes they will draw from men their weapons and clothes, and sometimes take the Rider off of his horse. Also it sometimes fell out in *Vithria* or *Norway*, that great Fish which were to be dried in the Air and Sun, were taken off from poles like planks, by boisterous winds, in great numbers, and carried from rich Fishers houses, unto poor mens; and are received as a gift given them by God.

## CHAP. VI.

### The divers Effects of Thunder and Lightning in the Northern Parts.

**T**hundering and Lightning have a most formidable effect in the Northern parts, especially in places opposite to the South. There appears often in the North parts, in clear weather, all the night, in *September*, continual Lightnings, that threaten rather than hurt the Beholders of them. But Thunder rising from the Nature of the Clouds, and the Thunder-bolt falling, do bring grievous mischiefs to men, and other Creatures in those parts. For it kills many men and cattle that are found upon places that are high, and consumes with a flame, not to be put out, the highest Towers, and houses, that are daubed over with hard Pitch, and this is no wonder; it cleaves down-right the loftiest Trees from the very top; or else beats them down, corroding them obliquely.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of the fierceness of Cold.

**I**T may be demonstrated by many Reasons, rather than Examples by Sense, what great power Frost and Snow hath in the North, as in its proper place. For the fearful multitude of living Creatures, feels its force and piercing, though they be many Furlongs from it, and the body and parts are perished and benumbed with a little of it falling upon them. What can it not do, where Cold it self rules with a little of it falling upon the Law of Nature; under which, because I in its full force, and according to the Elevation of the North Pole in the Degree 86. I was born and bred, (about the Elevation of the North Pole in the Degree 86.) I think I can more clearly demonstrate it in this, and the many following Chapters, than other men that write by uncertain Opinion, how horrible and vehement the Cold is there: because from thence by succession, as it were Beames from the Center, it spreads it self into the whole World, as all Nations that it pierceth into, moved by the sharpness of it, can testify.

## CHAP. 8.

## CHAP. VIII.

### Of Frosts, and the falling of Snow.

**S**O great sometimes is the force of Frosts, and the falling of Snow in the Northern parts; and so sharp are the Tempests, and vehement Darknes, obscuring the Air, that Travellers cannot shun nor know the next man that comes, be he Foe or Friend. That which breeds the greatest difficulty, is that on both sides, there hang over mens heads either high Cliffs, or Snow hardened, and so high, that thole who carry burdens, can neither get forth to the right hand, nor to the left. But because they can seldom find a desired Remedy against these steep places, for the standing of their Cattel, they dig down the Snow with mutual labour, and they turn their wains upside down upon them: that so they may finish their intended Journey. And they do this with that celerity, as if they were urged to do it suddenly, to put away some dangerous Fire, or some most hurtful Danger; least if they should use any delay by the sudden falling of Snow and Frost, the wayes should be filled, and the Woods, that they should hardly know which is the way, or the field: There is little or no difficulty in the Ice, because it is ever every where, and pleasing to Passengers, onely they must be careful where the Ice breaks, to look to the Signs that are opposite to the Orifice of the breach; which Signs appear by the crazy pieces of Ice left at the mouth of it lying open or by the green boughs of Firr or Juniper congealed in the Ice, and sticking forth; and that in a long order for many miles, is carefully looked to at the cost and by the diligence of the Fisher-men, least Travellers might mistake their wayes. But in the Wood sometimes men meet with no small Obstacles, when they fall together by breaking, or moving of Trees: especially the poplar Trees stand by reason of the thickness of Snow, as bent bowes loaded with Snow: by the least motion whereof great heaps of Snow, falling on the Travellers, do not a little hinder them: Also the Trees themselves falling across, being broken down by the weight of the Snow, makes the way altogether impassible, that they cannot get forth but by Axes, which they carry with them for that use; as I testify it self often out with me and others of my company.

## CHAP. IX.

### Of the variety of Snow and Glasses.

**I**N one day and night you shall see fifteen or twenty distinct Forms of Snow; and there is no less variety in Glasses that are set for Windows in their Stoves to keep out the cold. For whilst these places are kept hot with fire against the excessive cold, those Glasses seem to be so painted with the external cold, and Workmanship of Nature, with divers fashions, that any Artist who shall behold them, shall better admire Natures excellence, than imitate it: yet Wit and Industry of Workmen, hath invented and made many kinds thereof for the Ornament and setting forth of houses; the like whereof can hardly be got by other Nations for love or money: and they are made so ingeniously that many of their Cups are thought to be silver: Moreover there are many Woollen and Linnen pretious woven Ornaments, and admirable Pictures, very decent; as I shall speak hereafter something concerning Painters and Weaving Works.

## CHAP. 10.

## CHAP. X.

## Of the Forts of Snow made by Young People.

IT is the custome of the young Northern People, by a provident sagacity, to make Castles to fight against, and to employ for divers Arts and Exercises of War, they especially who take pleasure to make their first Attempts against these, without any danger of being wounded or killed: and therefore early in Winter, whilst the Snow lasts, the young men meet in Troops provoked thereunto by their Parents, upon some eminent place, bringing with them, by each mans labour, huge heaps of Snow; and of these, especially on Holy-days, they make Forts like to Castle walls, always sprinkling water on their Building, distinguished with Windows, that the Snow thus incorporated with the Water, when it grows cold, may freeze the harder. By which diligence they are so fortified, that they can endure not onely light blows, but brazen bullets, and the battering of Engines, so far as need is. These things thus prepared, the said young men divided into several Troopes, part of them goes to defend the walls; the other part stand without to fight against them. And in these white Castles they want not black or dark Flags, or green Bushes of Juniper: under which, not for money, but for desire of glory, they enter upon a pleasant Combat, and it is fought on both sides with no other weapons, then with Snow-balls, cast by their hands one against the other. For there is a penalty yet, that any one shall have his naked body plunged into cold water, who shall in a Snow-ball wrap up a stone, iron, wood, or ice, to cast at one another. There are also amongst the Assailers, some that like Pioneers, mine under the lower part of the Walls or Snow, and enter, that they may beat off the Defendants at the Fort from their stations. And they are not slow to come to handy-blows, until the Standard being taken away, the conquered part yeeld, that another time, if it be possible, renewing the Combat, may triumph over the conquering part. And they doe not more idly or weakly fight these Battails, and endure them, than if they fought for their Lives, their Country, their Laws and Religion, in a publike spectacle. But such as are Cowards and run away, they thrust Snow-balls between their shirts and their skins of their backs, when they can catch them, and abolve them punished, first with inoleent words and hard language, that another time when they come again, they may fight more valiantly, and defend their castles. They punish some with Ice let drop down between their head and neck when it freezeeth hard; as I shall underneath explain it more, when I speak of punishments by Ice: And all these are pleasant Spectacles, to appoint milder punishments for Rebels and Cowards.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the running of Horses upon Ice for Cloaks.

OF old time it was a Custome among the antient *Goths*, in Winter, about the end of the moneth of *December*, (whilst the Lakes, Standing-waters, and all the Country, were covered with Snow, and bound up with very firm Ice) in every Province to collect all the best Horses, that were more comely then Cows with Calves, to adorn their publick shews. But for what concerns their shews for delight, on the 26. day of *December*, infinite Inhabitants of those Countries in every Province (though of distinct Societies) do meet to contend on

swiftest

(swiftest Horses for the prize and glory, upon the Frozen Lakes and Rivers, that shine like glasse. The Bounds or Ends of this Race, contain about four or six Italian miles. The prize is some measures or bushels of Corn to be allowed, and new Garments are deposited also, on this condition, that the Horses that comes not to the Mark, shall be the Conqueror's. But these Spectacles are shewed in no place in all the North more frequently upon the Ice, than amongst the *Ostrogoths*, and *Vestrogothi*. For their Land abounds with plentiful Pasture, to feed Herds of Horses to many thousands in most of the Grasses where they naturally meet, though it be in very spacious and dispersed Fields, and not in one Meadow.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of the Running of men upon the Ice for a Wager.

TWO sorts of men are found in these places, that run Races for Wagers most swifly, in a compenious way of the Art fore-shewed. The first is the *Wild or Laplander*, because upon crooked Stilts, or long Stakes fastened to the soles of his feet, he transports himself upon the Snow in Dales and Mountains, in a dangerous way, by a winding and arbitrary motion; and he doth it with a most perfect Art whether he be to encounter with adverse accidents, or he doth it for sport in Hunting, whereby he gets his living, and he obtains greater riches, or whether he undertakes this for a prize, or glory. This kind is the chiefest amongst the *Serickitti*. Here it shall suffice now to have said, That these men have such nimble agility in running over the tops of the Snowy Mountains, also when they run for a Reward, that others who use more plain and shorter Instruments, can hardly attain unto, upon the even and slippery Ice. Moreover those that run over the Snow, and come to the Mark appointed, will kill a wild Beast in the way with their arrows. But he that holds on his course on the Ice is scarce secure from Pits that are secret underneath; as I shall say hereafter concerning Wars upon the Ice. But the other kind runs swifly onely upon the Slippery Ice, and always continues running upon the even Ice, having a plain polished Iron, or plain Deers or Sheeps bones; namely the Shank-bones that are naturally slippery, by reason of their imbred fatness, and are a foot in length, fastened to the bottom of their feet. In which kind also there are found men every where striving for pleasure and price: the Goal they set is over the congealed Lakes, as smooth as Glasse, for eight or twelve Italian miles from both ends, or somewhat lesse. The prize is Silver Spoons, Brass Vessels, Swords, New Garments, and young Horses; but these more frequently than the other. They that win the prize, must come first to the Mark. They fasten Deers shanks polished broad, to the soles of their feet, beimgared with Hogs-grease, because to they cannot be hindered or stoped by the cold drops of water, that in the most vehement cold weather will rise up as it were through the pores of the Ice: so it is with any Iron that is polished or greased over. For no greasing is more fit for Iron, than for the shank-bones of Deer, or Bulls, that have a natural slipperiness in them. And this way to it as the Ice is clear, and uncovered of snow, and is two or three fingers thick, then is the time to exercise these Sports more easily and freely. But otherwise not at all, because it is never more dangerous, nor is a man nearer to his death, than when he runs upon the Ice covered with a very thin snow. For the Rivers or small streams, with a silent witness, entering the Lakes from the shores by their corroding and continual motion prevail so far, that the Ice cannot grow thick and strong, unlesse it be frozen with the greatest Frost: yet it falls out that rash Runners, such as know not, or despite the Nature of the Ice, running



running more boldly than warily, the Ice breaking, are drowned, with their body downward, and their heads above, cut off with the sharp Ice, as with an Axe, and so miserably left behind. But the Inhabitants seldom perish by that or the like danger, only strangers that travel to desery Countries: who making more halt to serve them selves with the shortest way to make their discoveries, are suddenly destroyed by the fallenesse and brittlenesse of the Ice.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Inns upon the Ice for Travellers.

IT is the custome that the publick wayes which are obstructed by the fall of Woods, by reason of Tempests, should be mended by the common charge and labours with Axes and Pick-axes: but when they are barred by the thicknesse of the Snow, they are to be opened by the passage of Cartel and Waggon going over the Snow, by every man particularly, or else the way must be made neere the shoares of the Sea, or upon the Sea congealed, marks being set upon the Ice, whereby the way may ly open to mens habitations. But least by the same reason, the lower Germans that inhabit the Cities and Countreies of the Vandals should be stoped by the great Snows, filling the Woods and Champion wayes, in their great commerce of Merchants; they place Inns upon the Sea shores and plain Rocks, or upon the open Ice, by a wonderfull industry. For they ordain long beams, elevated two or three feet, above the Ice for a distinction of the Foundations and Houses; and upon these they build necessary Houses, and those boarded, standing side by side, and they use a cold fire in their Stoves plentifully, (as they do all things else that are required for joyfull banquers) and fearing no craft of any spies or thieves, or deceivers, they rejoyce because they have gained more security upon the Ice, than they could have in a Palace: and they stay there more securely and merrily, the sharper the cold-weather is, and the stronger the winds are: which blowing underneath the Foundations of their Inns, make them to be more firm and solid, and preserve them untill such time as all this building about the vernal Equinoctial is dissolved by the hot blasts of the South-Wind, and is carried into the continent, no Pension being paid for their standing place. But as for the cold of that German or Getick Sea, *Albertus Crantzius* speaks many things; who was a most diligent describer of these Countreies. For he saith, that in the year, 1323 the Sea was extremely Frozen, that men passed on foot over the Ice from *Lubeck* to *Denmark* & to *Prussia* by Sea, Inns being made upon the Ice in convenient places. In the year of our Lord, 1399, all the Winter the Frost bound up both Sea and Land that went dry-foot from *Lubeck* by Sea into the City *Sundin* & from thence to *Denmark*. In the year 1523, the Frost was all the Winter incomparable never the like heard of. So that Horsemen passed from *Gedan* in *Prussia* to *Lubeck*, the same way layd out, and then from *Magnopolis* by Sea into *Denmark*, having Inns upon the Ice. In the year 1594, the *Cimbrie* Sea was frozen, that men rid from *Jutlia* to *Astoria*. Moreover, though for many ages after, most bitter cold followed, and freezing of the Seas, yet because they fell so common, they are scarce found to be observed.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of the Passage upon the Ice between the Gulphs,

SINCE in the former Chapter concerning Inns on the Ice, too little is spoken, I say what marks Travellers are guided in Snowy and Frosty weather, that they may come to the Inns they appoint to stay at; for that the way is so plain and large on all sides, that oftentimes men can see nothing but the Heavens, and Ice, and Snow, for that they attempt in the bitter Winter, to passe by the agility of Horses, where in Summer-time the greatest Ships Sayle, being driven with the Winds: Therefore you must observe that the Ice being a little bored, into it Juniper or Firr-Trees at every furlongs end, standing upright are Frozen in, being set in the Sea, by the way side, especially where the Ice is grown thicker, and proved by the overseers for high ways. And if these marks were not, the fear would be no lesse, nor the danger of a mans life amongst the Gulphs on the Ice, than it would be on the open Sea, when unarmed Mariners light amongst cruel Pirates, or in a horrid desert, when men fall amongst savage Beasts: wherefore it is ordered by a most severe Law, that no man shall alter or carry off these water marks, unlesse it be in time of hostility, by reason of Spies and Traitors. And farther how dangerous it is for men to passe amongst those Gulphs formerly mentioned, I shall shew by the following reasons. But before all I must premise, that generally all lakes and standing-waters begin to be Frozen in *October*, and the Ice to be so condensed in many places by the increasing of the cold, that where no Veins or Spring-water run not into those lakes and standing-pools, the fish are found to be choked when the Ice chaws. But that this suffocation may not be too great a losse, by the diligence of the Fishermen, the Ice is constantly broken, that it may not Freeze, as I shall shew under this in my book concerning Winter fishing. Wherefore the Ice at beginning and middle of Winter is so strong and tenacious, that at the thicknesse of two fingers a man may walk upon it, and when it is three fingers thick, a Horseman in Armour: when it is a hands breadth and halfe, whole Troops and Companies of Souldiers; when it is three or four hands breadth, a whole Legion of thousands of people, as I shall shew underneath, concerning Winter Wars. This strength of the Ice, though it seem to be so strong, yet naturall Veins and exhalations, springing forth underneath in many places, do so make it cleare and open, that for a long way it will leave an empty place like a passage or path upon the Land: yet the prudent Traveller penetrateth that siffure by compassing about, that he may not lose his time and appointed journey. But when such siffures happen, especially at night, they are heard afar off, like cruel Thunder or Land Earth-quakes. But for all this the carefull Traveller leaves nothing unattempted, but that he will go forward on his journey amongst the Whirl-pools. But when the Ice melts about the beginning of *April*, no man will trust to the thicknesse of it, and lesse to the strength thereof, unlesse it be to walk upon it in the morning: because by the Sun-shine in the day it is made so brittle, that what had a little before borne armed Horsemen, can hardly bear a man without Arms. But the Winter ways, by reason of the hardnesse of the cold, whereby they are made thicker, and more solid, will remain longer like bridges in the Lakes. But when Travellers would descend from the Ice upon the Land or contrarily, he must needs have a bridge of Planks, for the Sun heating the shore, melts all the congelation of the Ice there. I think not fit to let it pass here, that there is a Lake called *Viter*, which is 60 Italian miles long, and 20 broad, in the Kingdome of the *Ostrogots*: which is of such

a Nature, that when it is frozen by a tempestuous wind, and the time comes for it to thaw, it begins to boyle at the bottom with a most vehement noyse, and to be moved, and with great violence to break into small chops, or fissures, that are made in the Ice, and make these in a small time very great, though the Ice then be more than an arme or two in thickness; and then the upper force co-operating with it, all the Ice is divided into many small peices, upon which Travellers being left can scarce come to shore, otherwise than by the providence of God, because the force of Nature works more secretly there, and more wonderfully, than in other Lakes. Also there is a Lake neere the Metropolis of the Kingdome of Norway, called *Nidrosia*, that is never frozen.

## CHAP. XV.

## Of Instruments for the Ice.

As the people of a hot or temperate Climate seem to be free from cold, Ice, Snow, Frost and Winter noyses, so they can scarce find by what diversity of acts remedies and instruments those that live under this Northern cold, do defend and help themselves against all these sharp weathers, since it is impossible to run over the slippery Ice, or by it to transport the most weighty burdens, at so great a distance to the places appointed, unless it were done by art, to ease our strength. We spake before of wooden shoos, that were covered under with points of Iron, because they are agreeable to the seasonable use of Travellers, Fishermen and Souldiers. Moreover three points of triangles with iron points are made with three corners for going the more sure: and lastly flexible Circles with points every way, sharpened like to teeth: to all which that they may stick fast to their feet, strong bands are tied, that by that firmness every man may be the more secure in running or going, and any burden may be carried the better by the strength of one or two men; which otherwise in the Sand or Snow would not be drawn by the strength of horses. They have Axes also that are the chiefest and fittest Instruments to cut all Ice: for by such instruments they open frozen Rivers for many furlongs, when they set out a Navy against Robbers: or when the Common-wealth thinks fit to mannage the business so, to send messengers beyond the Seas. And in this case small ships by the labour of Cattel are carried to the broad Sea in Carts from Cities and Castles suddenly upon the Ice, that by the agility of the Winds and Sayles, they may swiftly dispatch their Voyage by Sea, which they could hardly perform in many days by Beasts. They have also iron Spades made for a certain purpose, because by these, the thick and hardened Ice that will not yeeld to other iron tools is more easily broken, whilst other Axes mingled with steel in a vehement cold with a blow onely upon the Ice or a green Tree, will break like glasse, whereas the foresaid Spades of iron spears endure strongly; moreover they have harping irons made with a crooked point, whereby the peices of Ice broken with other instruments are more easily drawn which way they please, or thrust out also in the open Sea, at the time of the Winter Solstice, when they must not only foresee to keep off such a huge weight of Ice, that it break not their Ships, but also against the Rocks that are not seen, and lastly when they are to fight with their cruel enemies. They have also Socks, with which they can walk the more securely upon the slippery Ice, at their pleasure, in a fight on the Ice, to resist strongly, or fly away cunningly.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Warlike Obelisks of the Goths, and Stone Monuments raised.

It was the most ancient custome of the old *Goths* and *Sveons*, that when they had had the sharpest battels in the fields or Mountains, they were wont there to raise stones, as it were *Piramids* of the *Egyptians*: and upon these engraving, the famous *facts* with some short inscription; they supposed that the memory of their deeds should be perpetuall, as the usuall Songs composed in verses compendiously, and by succession derived to these daies, have propagated this matter to the memory of posterity. For in the Northern parts, there are seen most hard Mountains of an Ash colour, that are far harder than Marble: these sometimes by an Earth-quake or Thunder, or other motion of Nature are sometimes to be so shaken, that the stones cut forth, and falling downwards, receive the form partly of a Pyramid, and partly of square Pillars, partly of four Corners and Obelisks, as if they were made by the excellent work of Nature, and it is useless, and vain to adde any more to them. But these Pyramids or Pillars are found amongst the *Helsingi* in greater quantity than elsewhere in the North. But Obelisks of high stones, raised by the forces of Gyants, and Champions are seen no where more frequently than in the publick high wayes amongst the *Ostrogothi*, and *Vestrogothi*, and *Sveons*: and also in vast deserts, which long since have been made desolate of Inhabitants, by Famine, Wars, Plague, and are not yet reduced to their former condition, by reason of the sluggishness and negligence of the Indwellers, the Land not yet, or very rarely, becoming fallow ground. And these stones, raised in very many places, are 10, or 15, or 30 foot long, and 4, or 6 foot broad, notably situated, but in a more wonderfull order, and with some notable Character, for many reasons were placed there: and they signifie by a learned, right long order, the battels of Champions; by a square order, Troops of Warriors: and by a round order the Burials of families: and by a wedge fashion, they shew that there, or neere that place, the Armies of Foot or Horse had there fortunately prevailed. But the writings are begun on the right hand at the foot of the stones, and in the top, and then turning about they end in the left foot; or else the letters are in the same order elevated or pressed down within. And every letter hath the thickness and length of the greatest finger of a man. And though many of them by the injury of weather and dirt, and many at the bottom of the stones, by length of time out of memory are eaten away; yet the like effects of them are clearly read in the same manner. I Ulfo fighting for my Country, killed 32 Champions, and at last slain by the Champion Rollo, rest here. Moreover: I Jugolvas that conquered all violent men, and defended the oppressed, being full of Scars, and grown old, girt about with my sword, am placed here, when as other men sought for glory by wars, I Halsten striving for peace, deserved immortal praise.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of Obelisks for Sepulchres.

But neither the old *Goths*, nor other Northern Nations, wanted a Remembrance of their Ancestors, but for those they were pleased to lay up in the ground, they set up Honourable Statues of high stones, as we see at this day mighty stones wonderfully joyned together, like to a most high and broad gate, raised

raised upwards and overthwart by the strength of Giants, especially two large miles from the City *Scare* as one goes to the Church of *Kelby* upon a Rock. For there are seen in the High-way three most huge Stones (as I said before) most curiously engraven with *Gothick Characters*: And if any man who is a curious teacher for such like stones, would go over *Deiarts*, as well as open Fields, to search for them, he shall find infinite Spectacles, that I need not now be more tedious to mention. But there may be one cause more ready, by reason that not far from that most ancient City *Scare* there was a Kingly Castle called *Adaranes*; (whereof I shall speak particularly elsewhere) about which in former Ages and Generations most cruel Wars were fought: Concerning which my most dear Brother and Predecessour *John Arch-Bishop of Upsal*, writ wonderful things.

There are also amongst the *Ostrogoti*, and the Upper *Sueoni*, Castles of great and Noble-men built every where in the Countries, in places fortified by Nature: near whose Walls and Fields, you shall see huge Stones of the Antients stuck fast in the ground, in a wedge fashion, round, long, and upright situation: the upper parts whereof being adorned with some Writings of the *Goths*, do teach, as it were by the command of some Governour then living, what their Successors ought to fly from or follow; namely, to embrace Virtue, and to detest Vice, &c. Nor may we doubt but in that Age the like Edict was observed in the Northern Countries against the embalming of the bodies of wicked Princes and Tyrants, that they should not have a seemly burial. The Obelisks of good Princes, and Stone Monuments, are yet plainly seen: many years before the *Catholic Faith* was planted in the Northern Kingdoms, signified with the Sign of the Cross, having such like Inscription: After that I, seduced by the fraud of Devils, had erred, I *Germundus* dy converted to the God of the Christians, and here lie buried expecting his Judgment: Moreover elsewhere upon a stone these words are found; I *Holmfram* being dead, who had relinquished worshipping of Idols, am living in the Faith of Christ.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of Stones with Figures, &amp;c.

Also in other places there are found very broad Stone Tables, and very high set into the Earth, by the strength of Giants, having the Images of Dragons, Serpents, and Bears, engraven upon them: against which they observed no effect, any more than against armed Enemies; as I shall shew underneath in the Book of Giants and Champions. Moreover there are huge Stones set upon the Shores of Waters, which shew in old Characters, That in those places some Noblemen, by divers accidents of Rivers, Tempests, Lightnings, Whirlwinds, or Robbers, were killed. And from thence the Name imposed, endureth to perpetual Generations.

There are also high Stones, by the aspect and signature whereof, the ancient Possessions of Provinces, Governments, Forts, Communities of Noble and Country-men, are suffered to continue to every man in peace, without Laws, Suits, or Arbitration, giving an Example to other Nations, that amongst these Nations there is more Right to be found in these Stones, than are Boundmarks, than elsewhere in the large Volumes of Laws, where men think themselves to be more learned and civil. There are also Stones on the Shores that are very high, without Writings, by the industry of the Antients, turned towards unfaithful Ports, without any notable Sign, informing the Mariners, that they may avoid shipwreck.

There is also a huge round Stone, having about 12. lesser Stones lying near it, with Wedge fashioned Stones, raised a little from the Earth, not far from the Metropolis

Metropolis of *Upsal*, called *Moraften*: Upon which a new King to be chosen, is received by an infinite company of people that are present, and afterwards is confirmed with more Solemn Ceremonies by the *Catholic Bishop*, taking an Oath before-hand to defend the Faith.

## CHAP. XIX.

## Of Dials with Shadows.

You must know that the Inhabitants of the farthest North, that dwell beyond the 36. Degree of the Elevation of the North Pole, have no use of a Sun-Dial, such a one as *Anaximenes Milesius*, the *Lacedemonian*, is first said (as *Pliny* writes) to have found out: nor of any other Diall that is made with Weights, Wheels, Waters, Measures, by Lines and Distances: but they use only the high Stones of Rocks, that are placed partly by Nature, partly by Cunning, that by an infallible Conjecture, do over-shadow the Sun-Beams, and distinguish the parts of the Day: as also in Winter both by Night and Day (the Moon not shining) they clearly measure the Account of Times by Experience, by the Cries and Actions of Birds and Beasts; whereof there are infinite companies there, and they are content with such obelisks or Rural Marks.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of Sticks to design the Times by.

As both the *Latine* and *Greek* Authors testify, that the *Goths* have a perfect Experience in Arms and Military Disciplines: so also the *Gothick Writers* say that they have both at home and abroad, the knowledge of many profitable things, and experiments thereof, especially the knowledge of the Stars, whereby they can for the most part divine future things. For the *Goths*, both old and young, have a Staff, marked with the Characters of the *Goths*, so engraven, that it may be seen by what Instruments in old time, when there was no use of Books, they knew by infallible Events the influences of the Moon, Sun, and the other Stars, as at this day almost all the Inhabitants acknowledge: Wherefore a stone made so long as a man on both sides, with the number of the Weeks of the Year; for every week having 7. *Gothick Letters*, whereby the *Golden Numbers*, and *Dominical Letters* (after Christianity was embraced) are distinguished in their Country Language and Figures: Nor did they use other Books in the manifold Revolution of Times, for the interpretation of the Stars. Moreover, Fathers instruct their Lay-Sons, and Mothers their Daughters, at home on Holy-days, or at their coming to Church, that they are daily made more perfect, as well by Learning as by Experience. For by an old Custom of the Nation, the *Lacks* lean upon these Stakes, in long Journeys they take to visit Country-Churches; and so meeting together, by alleging certain Reasons, they shew the qualities of the following year, by more true conjectures, than perchance others can by their speculative sciences, or that rely on their juggling *Prognostications*.

Moreover they wonderfully observe the Arctick Pole, as the *Gnomon* of the whole Heavenly Dial; also the Bears, or *Wains*, *Venus's* Distaff and Spindle, as familiar Signs of their ancient Diet; and by looking into the Nature of them, they wonderfully provide for Accidents that shall happen.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the Goths' Alphabet.

OF most ancient time, when there were Gyants in the *Northern* parts, that is, long before that *Latine Letters* were found out, and before that *Carmenita* came out of *Greece*, to the Ports of *Tyber*, and came to the *Romane* Land with *Evander*, and expelling the *Aborigines*, taught that rude people, and almost wild, both Manners and Letters, the *Northern* Countries had their own Letters: A Token whereof is shewed by Stones of a huge bigness, fastened on the Tombs and Monuments of the Antients. And if any man doubt of what was done by the force of Gyants in old times, let him come thither, and he shall see greater Wonders that will amaze him, more then any Writing can promise or perform. Wherefore they carving these Actions upon Stones, left them to perpetual memory, as I read in the first Book, and 7. Chapter, of the History of my most dear Brother *John Magnus*, my Predecessour, Arch-Bishop of *Vpsal*. Also others for private accounts, like the *Egyptians*, used many Figures of Living Creatures, instead of Letters and do yet use them by a Domestick Ingenuity; as I shal shew underneath by & by: Some like to these are to be seen now at *Rome* amongst the old *Obelisks*, wherein several Letters signified a several name; as a *Wolf*, a covetous man; a *Fox*, a deceitful person; a *Bee*, the King; because it behoves the Governour of the people, to have the *Honey of Clemency*, mingled with the *Sing of Justice*. Moreover, as *Epistles* written in Paper are now sent amongst men, so formerly the *Northern* people appointed Letters engraven upon Wood, for a famous kind of Paper to be sent from one to the other; and now adayes when they want Paper in the Camp of Souldiers, or in the besieging of Cities, they fitly use the Bark of Birch, cut into leaves, or thin plates, to write their Letters upon; and it is so much the safer, for that this Rind is spoiled by no accident of Rain or Snow. Moreover there are found some *Northern* people of so quick wit, who having never learned *Latine Letters*, nor yet the Alphabet of the *Goths*, they make an Alphabet for themselves, from the Figures and Instruments of Things, and they use these to help their Memories, writing them single on a Skin, Paper, or Rind. And they communicate this *Secret* to none but such as are of their own Families, causing Ink to be made of a Cole powdered, and Milk, or Common Water.

OLAVS



OLAUS MAGNUS  
THE  
GOTH,  
Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:  
CONCERNING  
The Wonderful Nature of Northern  
Things.

## An Epitome of the Second Book.

CHAP. I.  
Of Veins of Brimstone, and Combustion of  
the Waters.

HERE are some Veins of Brimstone, neer to the Rivers of Waters, which being often kindled very wide, like to flames, they spread ready to destroy all round about: which sight, the Inhabitants in *Iceland*, and *Scotland*, very cold Countries, behold by a continual increase of heat: Moreover in the *South Goths* Land, not far from the City *Vexian*, there is a champion and muddy Lake; which by its fiery vertue, doth as it were in a moment, or in a very short time, boyl or burn whatsoever is let down into it to be boyled, and drawn up again with a Cord. And it is found out, that the like Lake neer to the Metropolis of *Nidrosium*, in the Kingdome of *Norway*, hath the same Nature, especially from this Argument, That in the greatest cold is never freezes.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the Admirable Nature of some Mountains.

I Believe that the whole World have had the Experience, of what Nature the Mountains of *Iceland* are; because beyond the Relation of the Antients, in our *Guthick* Maps, that may serve to supply the Description of *Ptolemy*, we shew the Situation and Nature of these Mountains to be singular; namely that there is on the top of them almost a perpetual Snow, and at the bottome a fire of Brimstone, always burning forth without any consuming of it self. Those that come too near are easily choaked by the force of the dust and sparks, and especially because many burning Gulphs, in many places, appear with the Ashes of burnt Mountains and Valleys, which again growing anew by a silent increase of Brimstone, as it were in a circular measure of time, are disposed again for combustion. For there are, within the Bounds of *Normy*, most vast and most high Mountains, that men are ascending four days, and as many days are they coming down.

## CHAP. III.

A Description of *Iceland*, and of the Nation there.

*Iceland* is a Land lying under the *North Pole*, opposite to the Winds, especially to the South-Weit, and near to the Frozen Sea, and therefore it is deservedly called *The Frozen Country*, or *The utmost Thule*; which was celebrated by all the Antients; whose Inhabitants are said by *Saxo Sialandicus*, to be most continent; and very good Christians in Religion, having their own Writings, and a History of things acted valiantly: And they now write the Acts of their own Time, which they honour with Songs and Rimes, and they engrave them on Promontories, or Rocks, that they can never fail Posterity, unless it fall out by some injury of Nature. The Situation of the *Island* is extended between the *South* and *North*, a hundred *German* miles in length: For the greater part, it is mountainous, and not manured, especially toward the *North Country*, by reason of the sharp blasts of the aforesaid *South-Weit* Wind, which will not let any Shrubs to grow: It is an *Island* to be praised, for the extraordinary Miracles in it; for there is a Rock or Promontory in it, that boyls like to Mount *Etna*, with perpetual fires; and there it is supposed that the place of Hell is, and of *Purgatory*, to purge foul souls. For there are found Spirits or Ghosts, showing themselves open for mens Ministry, or by reason of some violent chance where men are killed, some Apparitions do offer themselves so manifestly to lye with those they know, that they are received by ignorant people, as though they were alive, and they shake hands with them; and the Error is not perceived, untill these Visions be vanished. The Inhabitants very often preface the fates of Princes; and by the Revelation of Ghosts appearing, they are not ignorant what is done at a great distance from them in the World.

## CHAP. 4.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Horrible sound of the hollow Caves by the shores of the Sea.

Moreover there is in the Northern parts, a notable Province called *Anger Mannia*, the Inhabitants whereof are most cunning hunters: for by that gain, namely by selling of precious hides, they obtaine great wealth. There are also excellent husbandmen, so that they know how by the benefit of the Snow and fire, not only to make plain fields, but also the high sides of Mountains to become fruitful grounds. For they put fire about the Autumnal Equinoctiall into the thick shrubs and herbs, and they so carefully dispose of the ashes and dust that ariseth thence against the fall of the Snow that will come upon it, that by the vitcolity thereof they grow as far as with Ox dung? Hence it is that they carry off from thence a greater crop of Corn, and have a more plentiful harvest. But I shall speak of these things underneath concerning husbandry. For this Province hath many most high Mountains, the tops whereof make a high appearance to those that lye in the *Bohrick Sea*, all the yeare by reason of the constant whitenesse of the Snow, so that seeing this eminent Sea-mark, they can avoid many hideous dangers, and more securely come to safe Havens. Moreover when they come to the bottoms of them which stand in the deepest Seas, either by some accident or purpose of Nature, they are so frighted by the high rising waves, that unless they can escape with fast rowing down, or by a strong wind, they are almost killed with fear alone; and in many days they can scarce recover their former health of mind and body, by reason of the trouble of their heads. The bottoms of those Mountains have winding creeks at the entering and going out of the waters, or cliffs made by the wonderfull work of Nature, wherein by reason of the long cavities, that formidable noise is made like to Thunder under the ground, the cause whereof when rash youth hath gone in to seek more curiously than securely, their ships have been preiently filled with waters from the cliffs above, and by the force of the winds, that they have lost their lives with admiration. But to avoid this danger, the wonderfull height of the Mountaines, by the Snow that lyes alwayes on the tops of them, do clearly warn Sea-men a far off to take heed, and to prevent the danger, least nature which is the Mother of this inscrutable noise, might seem to have provided no remedy against this secret and subtile danger. Also for many miles that terrible sound flying through the Ayre, being sent from the same Mountains, is heard by the Mariners, warning them to escape and fly far from the ruine of that sad noise, for if they be neere, they cannot away with it. But what *Vincemius* in *spec. hist. lib. 3. cap. 24.* thought of the like matter, I shall shew in his own words. Amongst the Tartars there is a certain small Mountain, wherein there is reported that there is a hole, whence in Winter such great tempests of winds come forth, that men can hardly, and that with great danger passe by it. In Summer time there is alwayes heard a noise of the winds, but little comes forth at the hole. But in the Northern Lakes that are Frozen, under the Ice, by reason of the wind inclosed, no lesser noise is heard than of a most cruel Thunder, shut in on all sides by the thicknesse of the Clouds. Of this I shall shew something in the Chapter concerning fishing in the Ice.

## D

## CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Rock of the Sea-Monk.

There is a high Mountaine in the Sea, it was formerly under the dominion of the rich Kingdom of *Norway*, neer to the Island *Tarant*, which the *Marriners* by a comfortable appellation call, the *Monk*. For it hath by its naturall situation and incision of parts, especially of the Crown, a wrought hood, and also the propriety of it, so that in cruel tempests all that fly to it are consoled and received securely. Moreover wo to all those that being driven by the violence of wind, cannot come to the skirt of it, or to ride neere it: because the South-West winds are so fierce there, and the North winds, that *Marriners* who would avoid the sharpness thereof, are constrained every moment with all their skill and force, and labour, and experience to look unto it, and to watch, how they may escape to that *Monk* as the most secure port. Moreover in the Northern Seas, there are many high Mountains that are signes as it were of secure Ports, that are to be made against what tempest whatsoever, or calmness of weather. But before the entrance of them there lye hid many blind Rocks, which as they drown'd many Ships when the wind is but small, so when there is a tempest, they save them more wonderfully, by reason of the waves of the Sea rising high. There are also Mountaines of Faulcons, Eagles, Crows, that shew security to *Marriners* that retire, or a caution to those that shun them, that they may not come neere to them. Moreover there are Mountains of strife, and most strong Castles, especially in East-*Finland*, raised upon the mouths of the Rocks by reason of the Wars with the *Muscovites*, and they are so fortified by Nature and Art, that the besiegers which wayloever they make their approach, may more easily intercept the Mountaines than they can the forts.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the Crowned Rock, and the multitude of Fish.

That no work of Nature may be concealed, it is here shewed that in the the Western *Bosnia* toward the utmost parts of the North, in the Parish of *Lula*, and Diocese of *Upsall*, there is a Rock in the Sea, men call it commonly *Witja Blubben*, which with its high top is teen by those that sail farr from it, to have three tops, or else to be round. And if the Inhabitants want the Aspect, shadow or harbour of it, who are most skillfull fishermen at Sea, their way would not be safe, nor could they find food convenient. For by the wonderful height of it, when a most thick darkness of the Clouds rose, being seen in the middle of the waters (as I had tryal of it in the yeare, 1619) those that are out of their way are saved. For so great use to be the obscurity of the darkness and ayre condensed, that one that in a small Ship holds the fore-Castle, can scarce be discerned to the hinder Castle. But by applying to the shore, there is such an infinite multitude of fish to be teen at the foot of the Mountaine, here and there, that one is much amazed to behold it, and is satisfied in his stomach by it. For part of this fish being sprinkled with Sea water in the plain at the foot of the Mountaine, and to be torrefied by the wind, is wont to be dispersed upon the earth for 2, or 3, Acres of ground: and part of them are put upon spears, and stretched upon the hatches of the Ship, especially the fishes of the greater kind, that they may be dried in the Sun and Aire.

But

But they are all kept either to spend in their Houses, or for to make profit of by Merchandise, and also for their necessities and pleasures beyond Seas, but chiefly that by bartering with them, they may provide themselves with plenty of Corn, (which doth slenderly grow ripe there, by reason of the cold round about) and that they may be able to afford them to Country people in place of dainties, and againe they may receive costly skins which are the Country wealth, in lieu of them. At the foot therefore of this Crown'd Mountaine, there ariseth a smell of fish hanged up, that such who at a long distance saile that way, can smell it coming to them. And when they perceive that smell, though they be tossed in a tempestuous dark night, they know how to preserve themselves and their goods from eminent Ship-wrack.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the Flowing and Ebbing of the Sea.

There are certain Bosoms of the Sea, in my *Gothick Map*, or Description of the Northern Countries, that are engraved on the shore of *Norway*; namely *Roesk*, and *Lo Hoeb*; betwixt which is great is the Gulf, that the *Marriners* that come thither unawares, are in a moment sucked in by its sudden circumvolution, all force and industry of the Pilot being taken away, especially those who know not the Nature of the place, or are otherwise driven on by the force of Tempests, or that by contempt, little regard this imminent danger: Wherefore those that would sail thither from the Coasts of *Germany*, hire the most experienced *Marriners* and Pilots, who have learned by long Experience, how by steering obliquely, and directing their course, they may avoid the danger better: and these are wont to bend their course over a great part of the Sea, by direction of a *Compass*, that they may not fall into the *Gulph*; and chiefly about the most populous Cities *Andanes*, and *Trondanes*, and three other Islands, where part of the Sea is called *Mofa Strom*; in which place the Flood is greater then in other waters about it. Also the Sea there, within the hollow Cave, is blown in when the Flood comes, and when it ebbs, it is blown out, with as great force as any Torrents or swift Floods are carried. This Sea, as it is said, is sailed in with great danger, because such who fall in an ill time, are suddenly sucked into the Whirl-pools that run round. The Remainders of Shipwracks, are seldom restored again; and if they be restored again, they are so broken against the Rocks, that they seem all in shivers, and covered with hoarfiness.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of Charybdis, and the Wonderful Nature of Ice.

In the Chapter immediately before, was said, how dangerous it is to sail in the Seas of *Norway* especially where the *Marriners* are put in hazard by a vast Gulph; the reason whereof is inscrutable, unless they be very provident to prevent it. For here the Nights are very long, most bitter cold, and hidden Rocks are in many places, like to Towers, and there are most hideous Sea-Monsters, and terrible; as I shall shew underneath concerning *Monsters*. Moreover, the Ice is very hard, like to the walls of huge houses, cast down with Tempests, which are ready to cause inevitable Ship-wracks: yet all these are more tolerable, in

D 2 1.

undertaking



undertaking any dangerous Voyage, than to try the mercy of the *Irisb* Nation; which as I can prove by many Examples here omitted) are wont to invite men in misery with tears, that when they have spoiled them of their Goods, they may send them half dead to their torn ships. But what belongs to admiring the Nature of the Ice, this is a certain Rule; *That the Ice (as Saxo testifus) is brought in great shoals upon the Island shore; and if a piece of it be kept in a vessel, though with great diligence it will presently melt; but the rest of the Ice of that kind goes back from the Promontory into the Deep: yet it is preserved in vast Desarts, especially under Juniper Bushes, and also under the Chaff of huge Barns, and under the Shingles of Pitch-trees when the Sun is yet in Leo; and Drunkards that take their pleasure, take it out from thence, in the heat of Summer and melt it in Wine or Beer, But none put in Snow to drink any Liguour with, because it is clammy, and not purged from it; for there are in it secret reed-worms, like as woollen cloth hath.*

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the Leather-ships made of Hides, used by the Pyrats of Greenland.

**H**ERE I shall shew the passage from the Port *Vestrabord* of the same Island, to the high Rock in the Sea called *Husfark*, which is half the way to *Greenland*; wherein there is found a kind of Pyrats, that use *Leather-ships*, and by an arbitrary Navigation, not so much above as beneath, they lye in wait, boring holes in the ships of Merchants about the Pump. I saw two of these *Leather-ships* in the year 1505. above the Well-part, within the Cathedral Church also, dedicated to *St. Halvård*, and they were hanged up against the Wall, as to be seen; which *Haquinus*, King of the same Countrey, passing near the shores of *Greenland*, with a Warlike Navy, was reported to have taken, when they thought to have drowned his ships. For the Inhabitants of that Countrey are wont to get no small profits by the spoils of others, by these and the like treacherous arts, who by their thieving wit, and by boring a hole privately in the sides of the ships beneath (as I said) let in the water, and presently cause them to sink.

## CHAP. X.

## Of the inscrutable Depths of the Coasts of Norway.

**S**ONMEASURABLE is the Depth in many Mountainous Coasts of *Norway*, that Men can find no bosome with Cords, as many as a ship can hold, the Plummet of Lead being let down; and such is the force of Nature, that the higher the Mountains are, the more inscrutable is the depth of the water at the foot of them; though their height, in respect of Heaven, is held to be very small above the Earth: Altho the feet of these Mountains are so hollow and deep, and crooked, that letting down plumb Lines, it can hardly be known which way their hollownes bends. Moreover in the Island *Bornholm*, which is under the King of *Denmark*, there are some Lakes found not very large, whose depth cannot be founded. Lastly, by the *Dalacary*, by the Mountains, that is, men of the Valleys, there is the Lake *Rundon*, therefore called Round, because the ground of it cannot be measured. Moreover, not far from the Kings Palace *Helm* in *Swethland*, there is a place amongst the Rocks of the Seas, commonly called *Rundisvalia* that is, the *Round Gulph*, that there one cannot find how deep it is to the bosome of it. Further, many more Pits and small Lakes are found, whose

whose depth hath been often sought for, but could never be found. There are seen also very long, but very narrow Caves of Rocks and Mountains, as if they were cut out, and made hollow with Iron Instruments, running into dark places of Retreat, wherein the waters making a noise, that come thither by Tempest, or by calm Weather, a terrible found is raised: from which, unless such as come neer, quickly with-draw themselves, their Ears are so overcome with a mighty noise in them, that for many hours they remain deaf, and hear nothing, by reason of the violence of the Object.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the Ports of Iron Rings.

**I** Shewed in the former Chapter, how inscrutable the depth of the Sea is upon the Coasts of *Norway*, between the most high Mountains: now I shall shew how between the Winding Gulphs and Rocks, those that sail thither, may move securely, without Anchors, find and fashion their stations. Wherefore here are seen Iron Rings, larger then a Souldiers Buckler, fastned in melted Lead, at the sides of many Mountains, as the Sea runs on, by the munificence of good Princes and at their cost, especially toward the rich City *Berge*, that when the Flood or Tempest urgeth, Cords being suddenly put in the greatest ships ride safe, as in secret places. But it behoves them not to be ignorant of the ways, who commit themselves to so dangerous a Labyrinth: For the Coast is so full of Rocks, that such who know not the way, can scarce go forward or backward from thence. Altho by reason of the difficulty, and roughness of that and the like places (as I shall shew underneath more particularly, concerning ships of enemies) they will suffer shipwrack; and if ships of War, or of Pyrats, come thither with force of Enemies, or are driven in by Tempests, being destitute of counsel and help, they are oft-times consumed by Famine, Cold, or by the Inhabitants that set upon them, and are made a miserable spectacle, as though they fought against the Elements. And if any man read the Chronicles of *Norway* and *Denmark*, especially about *Christian* the second King thereof, he shall find a most horrible infelicity in all, concerning the lamentable event in such like cases. Wherefore the Enemies are often frighted from entering within these Rocks, least they should be more severely broken in pieces, and more secretly, by the open of secret Rocks between the Mountains, and in the Gulphs, than by any open Enemies.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of the Dangerous Passage of the Mountains, Scars and Sula, between Sweden, and Norway.

**T**HERE is a Province in the Northern Kingdoms called *Jemphthia*, that is subject to the Arch-bishop of *Upsal*, with the Mannor or Court of *Vesterhusid*, time out of mind. From which *Jemphthia*, over those very high Mountains spoken of in the Title, the Inhabitants of the Land, and Strangers in Summer time, make no less terrible, than dangerous Voyage: who yet in Winter over the Frozen Lakes, Pools, and Rivers, can make a shorter cut, and go which way they please. For these huge Mountains, the like whereof are scarce found in *Europe*, on the Eastern part, at the entrance at the foot, have Gates or Passages of most hard Flint, partly cut by Nature, and partly at the charge of bonnifull Princes

Princes of Old, either hewed out, or bored through for the publick good, Behind which, between the sides of the Mountains, so great Cold is felt even in the middle of Summer, that unless Travellers, as they do in Winter, fortifie themselves well with Cloths, they almost run an irremediable danger by a sudden change of the Air, until such time as they can pass out of the hollow places of these Mountains, and cold Valleys. Then such as must come down from the mountains, by many dayes Journey, are oft-times in greater danger, where there are Hanging-Bridges fastned on the sides with wooden props from the mountains, which seem to be half broken, by reason of the falling of the Snow and Tempests, that pull up Trees by the Roots, or great Rocks that tumble down. And men in this distresse have no other hope to rely on, but because they expect a repair of these Bridges by a common industry of the Inhabitants; for there is no way about through the most high Valleys to be found. When Travellers find before-hand, that these and such like Accidents are like to befall them, they bring sufficient expences along with them, as if they were there to lay siege to some castle, and were to continue there to defend it: they otherwise take no great care for their Cattle, because they have the commodity of graze and water enough. For in all the passage from the flux of mountains, there run forth most abundant Fountains, that are commended by all for their pleasant taste. But it is no wonder that Travellers should suffer so great difficulties there; because by reason of the high precipices of Rocks, that can hardly be avoided, or mended, all things seem that they ought to be weighed by a most sagacious Wit, especially when in one the situation is unpassible, and the other is full of ruinous heaps and stones. Moreover the Bounds are so narrow, that they will make both men and beasts giddy-headed, especially such as are not used to them, and their eyes will dazle at it, and they will fall down irreparably.

#### CHAP. XIII.

### Of the Statues on the Ways, in the Snowey Mountains.

THE Mountains also are called by another vulgar name *Dofrasfel*, or if you please *Doffrini*, that divide Sweden from Norway, of so great bulk and height, that for many dayes journeys, they always appear white, by reason of the Snow not melted to them that travel East or West, as if they were white Clouds, condensed in the most High Air: Whence it comes to pass, that such who travel that way, by reason of the sudden fall of Snows, seem to be shut up in the ways, and they are forced to use as much labour to come forth of them, as if they were fast bound in the Ice, and laboured to get out. Wherefore it is provided by the magnificency of ancient Kings, (who were formerly most godly in Norway) that high Statues cut out of the Quarries of Stone, may be seen raised upon the tops of the mountains, and they are firmly bound fast with Lead or Iron, that they be not cast down by the violence of the Winds. Also it is found in Sweden, that little Birds in flying, have made great Snow-Balls, by the augmentation, and fall whereof, when the South Wind blows, Forts and Villages have bin beaten down: yet there is an Inn in these Mountains *Doffrini*, wherein Travellers in this desperate Voyage, may recreate themselves; but they have no Wine.

#### CHAP. XIV.

#### CHAP. XIV.

### Of Passage in the Dark.

Sometimes also, when either profit or necessity urgeth them, the people of the North have a very ingenious manner, to pass through Woods in the night time; and also in the day time, when in the most remote parts Northward, before and after the Winter Solstice, there is a continual Night. And they that want these Remedies, search out for corrupted Bark or Oke; and these they place at a certain distance in the way they purpose to go, that by the Light thereof they may travel which way they please. And it is not the Bark only that will do this, but the body rotten; and that Mushrom called *Agarick*, that grows on the top of a Tree bearing Acorns, whose Vertue and Nature it is to shine in the Night; as also those Winged-Worms, that fly to the Autumnal Equinoctial: but these, because they presently fall, being killed with cold, are used for no use. Wherefore more frequently they gather the putrid Oke, and *Agarick*, that discover themselves by their own light, for the foresaid use in Woods, and at home also; that by the light of it, as by a lighted candle, they may more securely go into places full of combustible matter, as are Barns for Winter, that are full of ripe Corn and Hay. Also there are some men there so sharp sighted, who will boast, that with out any material Light, they can almost see and handle all things.

#### CHAP. XV.

### Of Lights, and Pitch-Torches.

THE North people being subject to most long nights, use divers kind of Lights, that they may do their necessary Offices for their Household benefit. Wherefore we acknowledge, that men who live under the Pole, live by using the fat of Sea-monsters in Winter time, in doing all their occasions. They call this fat by a vulgar name *Traan*, or *Lys*, from Lighting; for put into Lamps, it shines most clearly and largely, especially in the houses of great Families, and in Churches, where there is required a perpetual Light in reverence to the Lords Body.

But least it should be drank up by Night-Ravens, or Owls, or Bats, they keep the mouth of the Lamps always shut with Iron Bars.

Moreover they use in all the North, Pine-Tree Torches, that have natural Pitch upon them, by reason of an universal scarcity; as also other common Candles: namely this way, that employing both their hands, they put the shingles of Pine-Tree, finely divided to a certain number, under their Girdles; which burning at the other end, they hold in their mouths, or under their Hats: and thus they walk which way they please, being hindered by no blasts of wind, and do what other things they are minded to do. Some of them use to light common candles as long as ones arm, according to the length of the night. But in the time of Wars, which are more frequently fought in the dark long Winter, than in Summer, they go through their Troops of Horses and Foot, with Torches of the best pitch, and better made with the Resin of the Fir-tree.

#### CHAP. 16.



## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Breaking forth of Standing-waters.

**A**mongst the wonders of the Northern parts, the sight of waters is one, which is not so frequent as hurtfull to the Inhabitants of the Province of *Middlepas* toward the upper places of *Sweeden*, where commonly is the greater part of men, they are called Huns, as being people which formerly did more famously make warre against, and Triumph over the Huns. In that Province there is a vast River, the falling of the water whereof, is carried down with to keep a descent, that it oftentimes beats down Creatures that cannot swim strongly; For flowing from the tops of high Mountaines whilst it is broken by the Cliffs of Rocks, and runs into them, it falls into the deep Valleys with a manifold noise of waters. But being alwaies beaten back by stones in the way, it runs alwaies at the same pace and swift force. Therefore in all the Channel, the water being every where troubled alike, there is alwaies a white froth upon it. Yet the terrible nature of it is to be considered in this, that every yeare a little before the Summer solstice, in three places it is filled and bound up with so great a heap of Ice and Trees, fast together, that those who dwell beneath the lower banks of its Channel, when it is ready to break forth, are forced to fly to higher grounds. But in the mean-time they send forth Scouts to find in what part that terrible breach is like to be made, least the swift course of it, should do great mischief, wherefore the River it selfe, though in every breach it makes, it lyes upon all the neighbours to it, yet by the abundance of choise fish, as Salmon and others, it brings great wealth to them all: which do not only serve to supply the Inhabitants there, but they transport them into foreign parts beyond the Seas in great Ships: and it perpetually retains this virtue, that the neerer it flows to the Channels of the Sea, the more it abounds with better fish. Nor are they wanting in a liberall and free offering and giving of fish, if any stranger come that please to accept of them by way of gift.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the three famous Lakes of the Goths.

**T**here are many famous Lakes in Northern Climates, that are wonderfull for their magnitude and situation; the chief whereof is in the Country of the *Vestrogoths*, called *Vener*, which is 130 *Italian* miles in length, and almost as many in breadth, which is divided into many and various Islands, and being charged with many vast Rivers that run into it, and those very large, about 24. it hath but one place to run out, whereof I shall speak underneath by and by. In this Lake and about it there are many magnificent houses of noble men, the chiefe whereof is the Castle *Leckio*, built upon a high Rock, by the work of the Bishops of *Scars*, having a well in it cut out of the hard stone, above 200. feet deep. This cutting was not done with iron instruments alone, but by flame which was daily fed with 300. fattest flitches of Bacon successively day by day, fire being put in and taken out. For it is found by experience that nothing will sooner penetrate the hard Rock there, than lard and hogs grease. There are also adjoining to this Lake many ancient Towns, as *Lindecopia* and *Trignallia*, which out of mines of the most choise iron and steel make a plentifull gaine. There is also another Lake called *Vetern*, that hath waters so clear and bright

bright, though they are of a perfect green colour, that a man may see a halie-penny at the bottom of it, which is very deep. Above this Lake, there is a famous Monastery of St. *Brigit*, otherwise *Brigid*, and another daughter St. *Catharine*, which was founded and endowed by the wealth and devotion of them both. Moreover there is another Town called *Jonacopia*, in the Southern parts, memorable to all following ages, by reason of the magnificent Parliaments of the Kings. There are also Mines in this Lake that cannot be exhausted, toward the Coast that is opposite to the North. Lastly there is the Monastery *Alvastrå*, that was sumptuously built, and endowed in the times of St. *Bernard*. Neere this place in the Village *Talstada*. King *Suercherus* was killed on Christs Birth night by his own groon, who used a bridle for weapons. The third Lake is called *Meler*: on the banks whereof are built Cities, Castles, and Magnificent Houses of Noble men. Moreover not far from thence on the firm land, there are unexhausted Mines of Silver, Copper, and iron, that are rich beyond mans estimation. And hence it comes that the King of *Sweeds* and *Goths* is no way inferiour in all manner of treasure and riches to the rest of the Princes of Europe. Also there are Lakes of fresh water in the Mountaines of *Lapponia* called *Lalaresch*, that are in length 300 *Italian* miles, and 120 in breadth. Moreover there are many more collateral standing waters besides, and Lakes not altogether so long and broad, so full of fish, that the like are not found in all Europe, I may say in the whole world. Then there is the most famous Lake *Albus* under the Pole: latt of all *Piemthen* in *Finland*, with such like infinite Lakes, standing waters, Rivers and deep mincralis.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of dangerous Caves.

**I** said in the Chapter before, that 24. great Rivers ran into that one Lake *Vener*, from the most high Mountaines of *Sweeden* & *Norway*. And although at their entrance they make a great noise, and are full of whirl-pits, all the way it descends; yet the Mountaines for so large a circuit making resistance, they never find any more but one place to run forth, and this is so swift and lowd, that it may be heard above 20 *Italian* miles. The common name is *Trolbena* that is the *Devills cowl*, it may be by reason of the noise and sound it makes when it falls into a Laky plain, or because under the head long descent of it, there is found a most notable den of Thieves: to which there was a narrow passage, that none frequented but Thieves and Robbers, because that River is swift, and full of Whirl-pits, and so it was not suspected, that Malefactors did meet there especially in Summer. But in the Winter they were taken by reason of the exhalation of smoke, and so were suddenly drawn to punishment, and all their spoils of most precious stuffe, of Silver, Gold, and costly skins, were confiscate to the King. But no lawfull accuser coming against them in half a yeare, to whom there might be made restitution of the goods stolen from him, as it is according to law and custome, by the Kings command, to maintaine the publick peace, with them ships were built, and these were sent in o Rivers that run into the Sea, or were deputed by the wiidome of provinciall Governours to defend the ditches and walls.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of the Excellent antiquity of the Kingly Fort Aaranes of the Vestrogoths.

THOUGH formerly the Princes of the *Goths* were more enflamed to wars, than they took pleasure in any other delights, for they held war to be the chiefest comfort both to their bodies and minds, to handle the hard weapons, and in most cruel battles to win divers Triumphs. Yet many of them standing how to add to this delight something more magnificent, they left to their posterities sumptuous and profitable buildings: even as one *Scarinnus* the third Monarch of the *Goths*, a most mighty Prince is found to have done by a singular example, especially in the Country of the *Vestrogoths*, which he did illustrate with his more frequent presence; and that by reason of a neighbour King of *Norway* *Sidagernus*; to whom as he was allyed by blood, so also he desired to be more near to him in the situation of his Country, and in friendship. He built so wisely the City *Scara* called so, from his own name in a place amongst the *Vestrogoths* that was fenced about with Lakes and standing waters, as his successors have been unwise to let it fall down and come to desolation. This was the ancient seat of the Kingdom of the *Goths*. But not far from it, there are some prints remaining of another Kingly Castle, called *Aaranes*, the situation whereof walls and structure do so allure the beholders to admire it, that they firmly judge that no more stately building at that time was to be found in all Europe: But what will not length of time change? Yet the signes of those ruins put posterity in mind of the magnificence of their ancestors. This Castle had about it all commodities, which never any fear of mortall men could aske & obtaine from Heaven. For on the one side it had toward the West and North the vast Lake *Vener* so full of fish, as we said before, to furnish the Kings Table with delights: on the other side toward the South for a long space, for a perpetuall security, there was a muddy dirty Lake, the superficies whereof was all covered with green grass, and shrubs, upon which a man cannot goe, and if he do but tread upon it, it sucks him in. For the mud sinking down, it turns to Clayie Bogs, and filthy moisture that attracts those that come unto it. There are also many small and deep Rivers like veins running through these Lakes, that will not let a man come to the Castle, that it were impossible but by the multitude of bridges, (which were formerly 40.) by long turnings like labyrinths to come thither. And the same difficulty continues in the most sharp Winter: For those Lakes seldom freeze, by reason of the hot exhalations of the Mines of *Brimstone*. But in the East side, which is opposite to the first part of the Castle, which had but one approach by land, there were such pleasant Meadows and fruitful fields, that nothing more could be desired for the benefit of Nature, there were also pasture grounds, and excellent places for Hunting, in the Fields and Woods, which you may see at the first sight of that Land: which though it look horribly by the thicknesse of Woods, and hath not been tilld for many ages past, by reason of Warres, Famine, Pestilence, and Domestick discords: Yet any man that views it, may see the prints of furrows and plows, and frequent heaps of stones (whereof the fields use to be cleaved and freed to make them the more fruitful) which are there to be seen among the highest Trees: A certaine argument being thus left to posterity, that the people of former ages were far more in number, and contented with narrower fields, than men are seen to be now adays, wherefore this Castle seems to have been more flourishing about the year of our Lord 955, when the most magnificent King *Olans*, whose surname

name was *Scot-kanning*, was baptized by St. *Sigfrid*, Arch-Bishop of *York*, who went out of *England* to preach the Faith of Christ, to the same King *Olans*, by the exhortation or intreaty of *Eldred*, or *Mildred*, King of *England*, who also staid a while in this Castle, until another Seat of the Kings called *Husaby*, could be provided, & consecrated for the use of the same St. *Sigfrid*, and his Clergy. This being done, he baptized Pagans and Idolaters, first instructed in the Catholick Faith; which also three Nephews of the said Bishop did; namely, *Onamannus*, *Sunamannus*, and *Vinamannus*, (one of which was a Priest; the second, a Deacon; the third, a Sub-Deacon) whom the Bishop left behind him: Yet all three of them, like to blessed St. *John Baptist*, by the indignation of an adulterous woman, were slain with the sword: whose bodies are worshipped by all men with great honour, in the Cathedral Church of *Uppen*. But of this matter, more at large, as is shewed in the History of my dear Brother, and Predecessour, *Johannes Magnus*, the *Goth*, in the proper places.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of the wonderful Garden of the Mountain Kindaberg, neer the said Castle.

HERE is a most high Mountain amongst the *Vestrogoths*, not far from the said Kingly Castle, and the Lake *Vener*, and it is commonly called *Kindakulle*, it is so high, that it appears to Mariners that are 40. Italian miles from it in the same Lake, like to a black Cloud in the Ayre. Wherefore many that are driven by Tempests, and force of the Winds, endeavour by all means to come to the foot of it, where they know that there is a most safe Harbour, on the top of this Mountain there are such pleasant Boughs, Herbs, and Fruits, of divers kinds (excepting the Vine) that come up of themselves, not more rare than sweet, as if they were sowed or planted, that there scarce can be found a more delightful place in all the Northern Climats. There is a sweetness that cannot be related, and that is multiplied by the concert of divers Birds, except the *Papingay*. That most pleasant place is known to very few, and they only old men. Nor is it easily to be discovered to young people, least being released from more severe Discipline, they should cast themselves down to all pleasures, or rather Beastlinesse, and would hardly or never be reclaimed to good manners. For pleasure it self brings on Use and Custome, and constrains men; Custome, Necessity; and Necessity, Despair, without this mountainous place, and elsewhere. Also, farther toward the North, there are found very good and sweet Fruits, as Pears, Apples, Cherries, Prunes, but none before Mid-June, and then hardly any full ripe. And some kinds of these Fruits, as well at home, as in the Woods, grow ripe only by the cold approaching, and they last hanging the greatest part of Winter, upon the naked boughs, without leaves. But these Fruits are better than any Vineger, for pleasant sauce; yet they are but small, by reason of the constant Cold round about. But Foreign Fruits soon brought from the Coasts of *Germany* by Sea, as Apples, are most greedily eaten by the Inhabitants, by reason of the sweet Juicy that is in them; that very seldom or never do they escape the danger of divers Diseases (especially *French Diseases*) or such as are mortal.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the Beauty and Plenty of the Island Elandia of the Goths.

**E**landia, or Oelandia, is one of the Islands of the *Gothick Sea*, divided from the *Southern Gothland* by a short cut of the Sea, the fairest of all Islands. For it is replenished with many Goods, whereby it makes recompence for the short cut (that can be passed over in two dayes) and by the fruitfulness of the ground. The Meadows and Fields are admirable, for the unpeakeable sweet smell of Herbs.

There are many Heards of small Horses, but they are very strong, for by their strength and agility they exceed many greater bodied Horses; and Forraign and Domestick Chapmen buy them for their pleasures, and transport them into remote Lands, to be sold as Wonders of Nature. For they are most ingenious, that they can be taught by them to dance and jump, at the sound of the Drum, or Trumpet; and it is their Exercise by such shews to get gain. Moreover, they are taught to leap through Hoops of Iron or Lead, not very large, as Dogs do, and they will turn themselves about with wonderful swiftness. Also being called by their proper names, they do it more or less, as they are commanded.

These Horses feed, when there is necessity, with nothing but broiled Fish, and Fir-tree Wood; and they will drink Ale and Wine till they be drunk, as I shall shew underneath concerning *Elks*. Wherefore this Island abounds so much with Fruits, Pasture grounds, Cattel, Heards, and Fish, that it is sufficient to serve it self, and other places; and the Oxen, Sheep, and Butter thereof are so much approved beyond Seas, as if they were Physical. This Island of Old had many Castles, built in fit places, fenced both by Nature and Art, and well fortified; whereof some are changed into Christian Churches, serving at this day no less to defend Religion, than the Country: some of them are wholly made desolate by Wars. But there is one yet left unto this day, which is the highest and strongest of them, called *Borcholm*; and the height of it serves such as sail far off in the *Gothick Sea*, as a Watch-Tower, to direct them for their Winds and Ports, especially the *English, Scotch, Zealanders, Hollanders*, who stand in need of noted places in that Sea.

This Island is almost all compassed in with Marble Stones, upward and downward, near the shore, 20, or 30. Foot high, as if they were purposely placed there by Art. Also in the Eastern Coasts thereof that stand open to the wide side, there are many fair Harbours; to which Strangers coming by Sea, no less for curiosity, than necessity, are wont to view it, as a spectacle of Nature. In this Island in the time of peace, the Kings of *Goths* and *Sweens*, were wont to pass their times, because of the great pleasure of it, and their Exercise of Hunting. Also Forraign Princes at a nearer cut over Sea, could more commodiously meet them there, in the expedition of weighty Affairs. Again, near the North Sea thereof, there ariseth a very high Mountain, which the Mariners to avoid an ill Omen, and Tempests at Sea, call the *Virgin*; for such as stay in the Harbour of it, use to please the Maids with small friendly gifts that are wont to be given to them, as with Gloves, Silk Girdles, and the like. And they seem to think that the Diety of that Mountain doth not take it ill, or will be ungrateful, as we read that it was done of Old, when a voyce was heard, that bad him who gave his Gift to change his port: lest he should be in danger, and in so doing he escaped; whereas all the rest were in hazard of all.

In

In that Mountain men lay at set times of the yeare, there is a meeting of all the Northern Hags; that they may try their witchery: he that comes late to the Devils Ministry, is cruelly tormented. But these are but opinions, and no assertions to be granted.

## CHAP. XXII.

## Of the famous Island of the Goths called Gothland.

**T**he Eastern part of *Gothland* is called so, as you would say a Good Land, or Land of the Goths. For *Goth* in their Mother tongue, signifies good, or God, and *Landia* signifies Land. For it is good for many reasons: there are good people in it, there are good and secure Harbours round about it; there is good choise fields: it is good for Heards, Horses, Oxen; Fishing, Hunting, Water, Woods, Pastures, most fair Marble, and in all things necessary for mans use. There is also in the North part of it, the famous Town *Visby*, in which there is a most firm Castle. This City was once the principall Mart Town of the Goths, and of many other Lands, so frequented by Merchants, Wares, and plentifull with Riches, that the like to it was not found in Europe. The Goths, Sweeds, Russians, Danes, Prussians, English, Scots, Flemmish, French, Fins, Vandals, Saxons, Spaniards, singular nations, had their severall streets and Houses to dwell in, and all might be free Men. And coming in by Sea and Land they found all peaceable, until by discord which is the most pernicious destroyer of all Kingdoms and men, it was overthrowne: as also infinite other nations which flourished in former times. There are this day extant Marble Mines, that testify what the ancient glory amplitude and comeliness thereof were. There are yet Houles covered with scolop shell, dores of iron, windows of brasse or copper: they were formerly gilded and silver'd over, being an argument of mighty Treasures. Thence afterwards when hatred grew up and fraud, by the superfluous use of them, the Inhabitants divided, went into the Cities of the Vandals, who where no little enriched by the wealth of such guests, as Rome of old when Carthage was destroyed. The first armed Camp of the Goths descended into this Country, after they came forth of their own land, seeking in Europe and Asia new Lands, by reason of the insupportable multitudes of their Nations. Also many ages past, the Longobards departing from the Island Scandia, for the like, or some more grievous cause, passed through this Island in Rugia, and went with infinite companies into other nations, and at last making a Kingdome, they lay down in Italy: which also Paulus Diaconus, their Historian, testifies in his first book. Moreover the great King of Sweedland in the yeare of our Lord, 1288, appealled a dangerous Warr, that was between the Citizens of the City of *Visby*, and the common people of the said Island, and he suffered the Citizens to repair the Walls of the City that were fallen down, and to fortifie them with Bulworks and Forts. Albertus King of Sweeden being asked by the Princes of lower Germany, that out of their Sea he would eject the *Italians* that were most potent Pirates, he pawned this Island of Gothland to the Mr. of Prussia for 20000 Crowns, the summe whereof Queen Margaret that succeeded him, collected in Sweedland, and restored that Island of the Kingdome of Sweeden, to its right and properties, to be possessed by a perpetual right. And Saxo Grammaticus, a most famous Danish Historian, in many of his writings, asserts without doubt that this Island belongs to Sweeden. By this one of many arguments, because they allwayes use the same language, Laws, Customs, conformity of manners and neighbourhood: also because they are subject to the Bishop of the Goths

*Goths of Lincopia*, as to the first planter of the faith: from whom they ask, and fetch Episcopall rights. Also from this Island in all Mariners controversies, especially from the consularship of *Vishy*, there is fetcht and given Law, and a definitive sentence, what every man shall have or lose. This Law of Merchants and Mariners is very wisely made; and sooner ends controversies concerning unconstant waters, than other Courts do for firm Land.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## Of the Bucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mount aines of Hanga.

How great care formerly the Kings and Princes of the *Goths* had, to perpetuate their noble fame, and Martiall prowess, their Armes, Ensignes and Bucklers engraven in famous places, and left to their posterity do evidently shew, especially in *Ostrogotia*, *Vestrogotia*, and South *Finland*, in the Magnificent Port called *Hanga*: which is so pleasant and safe, that in the whole Northern Sea, and perhaps the large Ocean, it hath not one to equall it, or to be compared with it. For it freely receives all that come sayling thither from all parts, and it securely defends them within it, by its naturall strength, from all enemies ships, and from tempests, so they be carefull themselves. For that harbour, like to a very large fort is pleasantly situated in the midst of Mountaines and Valleys: and on the Rocks it hath the most ancient Armes of the *Goths* & *Sweons*, in a larned order, engraven according to the ancient simplicity, especially to let posterity know that there rid continually, a Navy for the defence of the Kingdoms, against all assaults of enemies, and from thence as oft as need was, they proceeded to open Warr. And at this day for the like reason both the Prince and Nobility have a Navy in the same port, especially because the neighbouring places can afford all things that may be suddenly required for to furnish a Navy of confederates: and all things will turn contrary to Enemies, if they intending mischief should come into this Harbour. Formerly *Dioms Ericus* King of the *Goths* and *Sweons*, offering peace, when it was despised, he by a Warlike Fleet at Sea, and an Army of Horse conquered the *Tawesti Carels*, and *Bohnni*; and forced them to embrace quickly the Christian Religion. For Babarous people are indocile, and cannot be drawn or invited to take upon them the Yoke of Christ, unless they be compelled by force of Arms. For (as *Albertus Cramzins*, Lib. 9. c. 37. reports of *Vandalia*) Great is the love men beare to their Ancestors Traditions. In this Harbour the King of Sweden, when they are provoked by great injury are wont to proclaim Warr, with a Navy furnished, or to be furnished, especially against the *Ruffians* or *Muscovites*: and again in the same Port, upon equall terms, are they wont to prescribe, and receive conditions of peace from the Embassadours of the said Princes. But that this is observed more frequently in this place than any other is by reason of the old custome of their Ancestors which they follow, who engraved their Armes there in the Mountaines, that the perpetuall firmnesse of these, things being seen, which they judged good for the Common-wealth, they might establish them to posterity to hold them with one consent, and an Oath given, by the Arms and liberty of their Ancestors. But what Armes and Bucklers, the old *Goths* and *Sweeds* used hath at home and abroad, may be observed by those present Ensignes, and be shewed by reasons also. For the *Goths* of old had a Lyon rampant regardant with a Crown on his head, leaping fiercely upon three Silver streams in a field of a sky colour, and they now have the same, onely that dwell at *Origan*, that in conquering they may spare, and looking back they may take heed, how suddenly those that leap, cease from their

their force: yet *Methodius* is pleased to affirm, that the Princes of the *Goths* when they made Wars in Foreign Lands, and conquered, had a Bear on their Standards. But those that descend from the same *Goths*, as from their Parents, were distinguished by variety of Arms, according to the diversity of their Families; as the *Cimbri* by a Bull; the *Sclavonians*, by a Dragon; the *Gepides*, by a small ship; the *Alavi*, *Burgundians*, and *Sweeds*, by a Car, in their Warlike Standards, as *Plutarch* thinks. But the *Sweeds*, or *Sweons*, had Arms of Old; namely two Virgins crowned with Golden Cloths, mutually embracing one the other in a Green Field, as shewing the excellency of the Nymphs Goddesses in that Country.

But now the Kings of Sweden use three Golden Crowns in a Blew Field, by reason of the incurable largeness of their Dominions, and their magnificent Warlike Deeds, and the unexhausted plenty of Minerals. There are also the Arms of many private Noble-men, that are distinguished with a wonderful variety: also of Cities and Provinces, that in Warlike Expeditions, undertaken for their Laws and Country, such multitudes of men might be more orderly directed to one end; as I shall shew more at large underneath, concerning the direction of armed multitudes.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## Of the Mountains with Helmets.

As you sail from the German Ocean toward the North, three dayes before the entrance into the Kingly City *Holm*, of the Kingdom of Sweden appears, you meet with an admirable Port, called in the Vulgar Tongue, *Hielmsnabben*, or *Elgxnabben*, because that Wild Asles, which are named *Elgs*, are wont to come thither, because of the attraction of the sweet Blasts: or also because the Mountaines, in whose sides the Heavens are, seem so to be framed by Nature, that you would think that Souldiers Helmets were engraven upon them; as if Art were not sufficient to forge Armes, unless Nature should direct her, and shew what belongs to the Warlike Northern People, for handling of their Arms. But indeed as that Port is famous, for keeping away all Winds and Tempests, that there is hardly the like in all *Europe*; so also is it sprinkled with the Enemies blood, that there almost you may find the Original, Middle, and End of all the Northern Wars. For oft-times the Enemies shipping, which by the violence of Tempests was driven in here, and could not in the vast Sea fight in doubtful battail, was either compelled to ask Conditions of Peace from the Adversary, or else did willingly, or fraudulently offer the same, or was constrained to run the inevitable hazard of Death or Captivity. For there was no way to escape by force of Arms. For if they go from the Coast or Port, blind Rocks threaten ruine; and with a light motion cast the Enemy into a Gulph, that he may make peace. But if he would go forth into the open Sea, there is a horrible Tempest against him, that one cannot endure to look upon for the twinkling of an eye, because the North and East Wind is always tempestuous upon those places. Moreover in times of Hostility, the Inhabitants by those Coasts take away all Sea-marks by the shores, that the Enemy may have no place to escape punishment; otherwise with an inaccessible cruelty, the ships of Pirates, and Sea-Rovers would assault this Port: yet the beginning of Battails at Sea, are frequently begun here.

## CHAP. XXV.

## Of the Straits in the Stoney-Ports.

Here are moreover in the North Sea straight entrances, and places to go forth that cause no small fear, chiefly as you sail from the open Sea, toward the City *Holm*: which is the Kings, and is notably fortified both by Nature and Art, that tho' it shall come against it may well be afraid; which is either the assurance or peril of Marriners, in more happily overcoming imminent dangers. But the chief and most dangerous place is, *Steendore*; that is, the Stone-door, because it is made obliquely with narrow mouths, and crooked Horns like the Moon, on every side, that is, sometimes Marriners are forced to avoid it; after the fashion of a *Seythian* Bowe, and sometimes by regarding the point where it falls out that men wander with greater danger by far, because of thick Clouds, and Darknes that rise there, than in the large Ocean, when the greatest Tempest arriveth. And not far from that Bay there are Rocks of Stones that lye up, lying hid under water; and whoever falls upon them, are swallowed up alive. And the Chronicles of the *Goths* relate, that formerly amongst those Rocks, many thousands of the *Danes* and *Germans* were suddenly destroyed and drowned.

For they entered these Rocky Straights, by a more presumptuous than skillfull Art of sailing; as also into other Northern Bays, which appear no other wise to men sailing at Sea, than mighty Beams standing forth of the Waters, that fright those that look upon them; and have their names from the Events, Causse, Deeds, and Nature, (as I shewed before in the same Book, concerning the irruption of Waters) and these seem more terrible to Pirats that are their Enemies, than any Armies that are appointed with Weapons for War.

## CHAP. XXVI.

## Of Stoney-Rocks, and the dangerous Passage through Idebenckia.

Here are also on the Coasts of the *Ostrogths* and *Sweons*, mighty Stones, partly apparent, and partly lying hid, placed in a long Ranck, like to Benches, by Art or Industry, they are vulgarly called *Idebenckia*: Upon which unhappily, Marriners are wont to sit fast, and suffer shipwrack, and it was my chance to be in danger there, in a great Tempest, *Anno Dom. 1517*, unless God had delivered me: For by the violence of the Winds, the ship was driven upon those secret Rocks, which for a long way, appear like shelving walls of Towns or Castles. They that fall either by negligence, or inevitable Tempests upon these Stones, especially the ships of Enemies, who come with a purpose to rob the people of those Coasts, who are very rich, are to be held most unhappy, because both by Sea and Land, they are more horribly compassed with Enemies, than if they were shut up in a Prison. For by Land they will soon be consumed by Famine, which is the greatest Enemy; and by Cold, which is a most grievous Torment; the Inhabitants when an Enemy comes, flying away, with all their Heads of Cattel and Goods. And by Sea, because in that place, as I said, there is wont to be a horrible Tempest; from which, if they would escape by Art and Industry, yet they cannot resist the severity of Nature. For in all parts, besides the Dilemper of the Ayr (as I said) there are Stones or Rocks, sharp pointed, like Steeples, that threaten danger, which must be cunningly sailed about, the Froth discovering the Bent and Compass that must be taken.

The

The Admirals of the Warlike Fleet, using Stratagems of War in these places, are wont to place some ships of War, or some like them, of purpose in time of War, that have the Enemies Flags, that when the Enemies see them, they may the more securely run into danger; concerning which, namely when the Enemies ships were thus intercepted, the Annals of the Countrey testify, though I should say nothing of it, and the bones of the Enemies cast upon the Rocks, do apparently demonstrate what is to be avoided with great care.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## Of swift Torrents.

Here are almost infinite swift Torrents, chiefly at the time when the Snow and Ice melt; which after the end of April in the Northern parts, are found to bring great ruine to the Inhabitants: For by the force of them, which is vehement and terrible, they not onely take away and carry with them, Farms, Houses, and Stone-Bridges but Trees also that are dug up by Art, or else are yet growing on the grounds; as I said of the irruption of Lakes, and in another case before.

These Torrents give the Name, according to their impetuous Nature, to those Cities and places they run by, as the most ancient Towers of the *Ostrogths*, called *Scheningia*, from the River, or rather the Torrent, which by reason of its most swift course is commonly called *Schena*, as it were a horse, that having cast off his bridle, is inflamed to run headlong every way. Moreover, there is a Name given to a River, not far from thence, from a continual cracking noise of Ice, that breaketh. So also, to the swift Torrent in the Province of *Middelpadia* (as I said) is the name *Nodna* given; because like to knobs, it takes and carryeth away with it, when it melts, Trees bound up in heaps of Ice, like hard crusts, & most huge stones also: and this is the most formidable, by how much sooner it is wont to fright and over-run Provinces and People. And hitherto there hath been no other remedy found for this horrid depopulation, than by every mans labour, and by casting up Banks, to turn the course another way: which, though the Northern people in many places turn from them; yet they suffer this Torrent, that they may involve a rash Enemy, by opening the Sluces, and the Falls or Waters being let loose. And though before, Names were given to Torrents, from the unhappy event, (as I shall also shew elsewhere, concerning the Bishops that preached the Gospel, which were drowned, and the Marriage sports, and ravishing of Virgins) yet the wiser men thought fit to give the Names from Triumphs and Victories, and not from Calamities.

F

CHAP. 28.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the divers Forms of Stones upon the Coasts.*

ON the Coasts of the *Ostrogoths*, that is, the *Eastern Goths*, of the Narrow Sea, called *Bramken*, where also a most vehement Torrent runs through the Town of *Norwep*, there are found divers Figures of the Stones upon the Coasts, as if they were engraven by mans Art, or polished: which doubtless is conjectured to be done by the secret influence of the Heavens and Elements. Some also of these Stones are like to mens heads, hands, feet, or fingers; not joyned together in a whole body, but so wrought by a Distinction of Nature: But that Nation accustomed to such Spectacles, takes no care for these or such like things, any further than as they serve to make their Walls and houses strong. There are also found in the Mountains, which are far from the Seas, Rocks that are naturally made round and concave, that you would take them to be some Brais Cauldron, or Bowl of hot Baths: as you may see it amongst the *Ostrogoths*, in a Mountain called vulgarly *Ketilberg*, (that is, the Mountain of a *Ketil*) near the City *Lincop*, where I was born. Moreover, in many Valleys of the Mountains, there are infinite store of Stones to be seen, fashioned round, as big as Calves heads, or Goose eggs, bigger or lesser, which without any Art are fit for great Guns. Also there are Whet-stones, that are plain and long, and are applied to good use: likewise, there are Rocks of marble amongst the *Vestrogoths*, to great and of so various colours, that without any Iron Instruments, as if they were made by Art, they are fit for Grave-stones; as I shall lay in the 12. concerning the natural variety of stones, to be applied for all Buildings. And there are Crystal Stones, not far from the Town of the *Ostrogoths*, called *Sudwep*, that have six corners, that hang as big as ones fist, or finger: with whose splendour, for the greater Ornament houses may be made, if the Inhabitants regarded Ornament more than they do Strength. But considering, that the rage of Enemies, both could and would more cruelly waste all, by reason of the fair Buildings, they more fortifie than beautifie their houses: though commonly the insides are most curiously adorned: but chiefly, as I shall shew underneath, with glittering Arms, Breast-Plates, Head-pieces, and Bucklers; wherein that Nation conceives all comeliness to consist, because great part of defending themselves, depends on these: yet some of them are pitched, and of a black colour, for some Reasons I shall assign hereafter concerning Wars.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Of the Stones of Giants, and Springs of Waters.*

AS I said before in my first Book concerning the *Obelisks* of the *Gentiles*, of *Kings, Champions, and Giants*, whereby they thought to make their magnificent Deeds most known to Posterity, as *Saxo Sialandicus* speaks of his *Regnerus*, King of the *Danes*, who having fought five years in the North against the *Russians*, and *Moscovites*, left his Actions engraven upon the high Rocks, that he might not be forgot, because he had fought them for his honour, when he was pressed with so many streights and difficulties: so also it is concerning many of the Kings of the *Goths* and *Sweons*, and heroical persons, the greatness of whose Actions, is yet discerned in the most eminent places of the *Northern Countries*. Amongst

Amongst which those are reckoned and esteemed to be the most famous and memorable, who so moderated their care of Warlike Glory, that they seem not to have brought profit to the Common-wealth: such a one was that most excellent King *Ubbo*, the Builder of the most ancient City *Upsal*, and *Scarinnus*, and *Ericus*, with many more, whose indelible memory, seems not onely to be written on Stones in the Fields and Mountains, but is continued in their Countrey Verbes, and with Musical Instruments, in the most famous places, and eminent dayes, with perpetual Dancings. For the more faithful care of these men was (when there was a general peace) to command the Governours or Provinces, for the publick good, besides arms, to bring the Springs of Waters that fell down tumbling, to drive Mills, for the good of the Inhabitants, or to make necessary Fountains for the general profit. Moreover, there run out of the Rocks such abundance of Springs, in many places, that being brought along by the agility of Nature and Art, for a long way, but very pleasant to behold, they drive about 15. or 30. Water-mills. *Falonia* of the *Vestrogoths*, a most noble Province, and populous *Helsingia*, as I shall shew underneath concerning the Artifices of Iron, do represent such, and so commodious Spectacles.

*The End of the Second Book.*

F 2

OLAVS





# OLAUS MAGNUS THE GOTH, Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

CONCERNING  
*The Superstitious Worship of Devils, used  
by the People of the North.*

*An Epitome of the Third Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Superstitious Worship of the Pagans  
of Lithuania.*

**A** *Libertus Cramzinus*, as faith German Historians, who was famous, Anno 1500. & after him *Mechavina*, a Poland, do affirm, the *Lituanians*, in the time of *Paganism*, whilst they were detained by the Errors of *Gentilism*, to have adored three Gods especially; namely, *The Fire*, *Woods*, and *Serpents*: *Fire*, because it is better then all Sacrifice; either seduced by the Custom of the *Persians*, who thought the Fire to be a God; as *Herodotus* saith, or led by the Opinion of the *Egyptians*, who were periwaded, that the Fire was a living Wild-Beast, and devoured all things that were made, and so soon as it was full with devouring, it died with that it had devoured. They held the Woods to be sacred; and after the manner of the *Egyptians*, they thought that all the Beasts that lived in them were Gods, as the Poet saith;

*The Gods also dwell within the Woods.*

And

And many Nations also led by this condescence, burnt their Kings and Princes, when they were dead, that they might be made Gods, or go to the Gods; or else they hanged them up solemnly in Groves and Woods by a chain of Gold, as if by such sacrifices they should deserve praise for their wickedness, and by counterfeiting a false God. Moreover they adored Serpents as sacred, whilst they seemed to hurt no man, holding them to be the keepers of their houses, and household gods, yet this superstitious worship, though it seem wholly to be taken away, the reliques of it, by the instinct of the Devils, continue in some secret houses in deserts, as also in the Northern Kingdoms of *Norway* and *Vermelandia*. But in the year 1386, the foresaid *Lituanians*, as we read, were purged from that error. For then their most potent Prince *Jagello* with his eight Brothers, (as *Mechovina* testifies) accepted the faith of Christ: in which even to this day they persevere and increase in Religion. Besides, the foresaid Historian mentions that there is a Statue placed on the high way, on the confines of *Lithuania* and *Moscovia*, that in their language is called *Zlataboba*, that is the golden old Wife, which all passengers pacifie with some gift, though not worth a straw, or else their journey will not prosper.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Superstitious worship of men under the Pole.*

**N**OR is the utmost part of the North (which many think to be Inhabitable by reason of extrem cold) free from Sacrilegious customs, and worshipping of Devils, that must be performed at their times appointed. For those savage Nations (as other Nations of the world that seem to be more civil) have no small causes, whereby they may debate and defend their publick error, and fained Divinity in frivolous matters. Therefore they adore the Sun that shines to them all the Summer, giving thanks unto him, because he brings them light instead of darkness they endured, and heat against extrem cold: which things however they seem to be intolerable, yet they never upbradingly curse, as some Indians do, but they onely say: These are foolish and sottish colds, and darkness beyond measure, &c: and so likewise they adore the Moon because in Winter, when the Sun is absent, they alwaies enjoy the light of the Moon: but when that fails by reason of the conjunction, they dispatch their business in the day, by help of most clear Stars, which shine the brighter by reason of the white Snow. Moreover those people that live under the Pole are deluded by a more stupid error by the Devils. For they hang a red Cloth upon a Pole or Speare, and with attentive prayers and customs of worship, they adore it, thinking that there is some divine virtue in it, by reason of the red colour which is like to beasts blood. And also because they suppose that by looking upon it, they shall be more fortunate in killing of beasts, drinking their blood, as I shall shew underneath, concerning the manners of the *Laplanners*. Also some people of the North have a custome, that whatsoever they see first at break of day, in the Ayre, Earth, or Waters that is alive, the same thing they faithfully adore for a God, untill the evening of the same day, as Birds Beasts, Fish, and even Serpents, and Worms, and chiefly the horned Beetle: which they honour amongst the more noble creeping things, by reason of its horns that young men use to adorn their heads with. And least the said Northern people should appear empty in the sight of their Gods, they make certaine oblations to them of the Bones of Wild Beasts, and of great Whales and Fish, that they have hunted for: yet in Summer-time they burn not the bones (least they should seem to mock at the Suns light or heat) but when the cold

cold Winter ariseth, they burn them at publick meetings for the honour of the day, thinking that by that sacrifice they offer due reverence to their Gods, so great is the Religion of the Gentiles in frivolous matters.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the three greater Gods of the Goths.

Here are amongst the old heathenish Goths, (as my famous Brother and predeceour John Magnus, Arch Bishop of Upsall, clearly asserts in the beginning of his Histories) three Gods that they worshipped above the rest. The first whereof was the most mighty Thor; who was worshipped in the middle of their dining rooms, with a cushion put under him; on both sides of him, were two other dieties, namely Odhen, and Frigga. Thor, say they, was chiefe in the Ayre, where he Thunders and Lightens, governing the Winds and Clouds, and fare weather, giving Corn and all fruit, and removing Petilences. The other Odhen, that is the stronger, is president of the Warrs, affording men help against their Enemies, and his place is next to Thor himself on his right hand: and he so famous in mens opinions, that all Nations should worship him as much as they do the light, that is given to the world, nor should there be any place in the world, (as Saxo testifies) which should not obey the power of this God. The third was Frigga, which governed peace, and pleasure: and she carried before her the image of it, which was the foulness of the Sex; and for that she was as much adored by the Goths, as Venus was by the Romans: and Friday is consecrated to her, and so continues even to our times, She was painted with a sword and bow, with weapons, because in those lands, both sexes were most ready at their arms. But Thor was set forth with a Crown and Scepter, and 12 Starrs: and they thought that nothing could be offered to him that could equall his greatness. And he had appointed for him one day every week, and the first Month in the yeare, which we call Januuary. But Odhen is set forth Armed, like to Man, by the same superstition the Gentiles used amongst the Romans: and he had a day perpetually consecrated to his name. And because he whilst he lived obtain'd the Title of a God in all Europe, for that he yeilded to none in military art, hence it is supposed that the Goths, (as Dio the Greek, Ablabius and Jornardes testifie) said that Mars (whom Antiquity thought to be the God of Warr) was born amongst them, as also saith the Poet.

And Mars amongst the Goths, who is the chiefe in Warr.

The Goths alwaies highly honoured him to pacifie him, namely with the death of their Captives, for they supposed that the Ruler of Warrs would be pleased most with mans blood. From whom also they perfectly learned all Martiall arts, so that they conquerd the most mighty Empires of Europe and Asia, and arrived to the highest degree of valour.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the three lesser Gods.

Besides these three Gods above said, they worshipped many more, who (as Saxo reports) being wonderfull cunning in witch-craft, deluded the Minds of simple men, and arrogated to themselves the names of Gods. For they not only tainted the Goths, with the principall contagion of their delusions, but also

soall the Northern Provinces circumvented with the snares of vain credulity, they stirred up to a desire of worshipping them. For the effect of their fallacies grew so famous, that in them other men adoring some power of the Gods, and supposing them to be Gods, or the Gods companions, they paid their solemn vows to these Authours of witchcrafts, and they gave the adoration due to Gods worship, to sacrilegious error, amongst whom was one Mathurin, a notable Magician, who won to himself a great opinion of fained dignity, and he drew the minds of simple men, that were seduced by the fame of his tale impostures to offer unto him juggling sacrifices. This man being the chiefe Priet of the Gods, did so distinguish their sacrifices and ceremonies, and to order them, that a distinct honour and offering should be observed to every God: maintaining that the displeasure of the Gods cannot be pacified by common sacrifices, or mixed ceremonies, at last his wickednesse being discovered, he was killed in a concourse of the people, and being slain, he killed many with the pettious contagion of his Carkeise, he was pulled out of his grave, and tanned to a stake, as the juggling vanities he used well deserved. Also Froe the Lieutenant of the Gods had his seat not far from Upsall; where he changed the old way of offerings, used by so many Nations, to many yeares, for a sad and unspeakable abomination. For he attempted to sacrifice men, and offered intolerable offerings to the Gods. He being rank amongst the Gods, and because he was held to be the God of blood, dark sacrifices were offered unto him, and in their yearly solemn days, night sports and Lecheria were consecrated to him, as formerly they were at Rome to Pluto and Proserpina, Vagasthus and Haddingus were adored with equall reverence, because they were supposed to afford principall assistance readily in time of great Warrs. They believed that Rost-bi-phius Finnicus, after he was dead, was translated into the number of the Gods, because when he lived he was excellent to foresee future things. To these is added Rostans: whose stupendous humanity would be so pacified with the sacrifice of mans blood, that they would dedicate to him the Souls of those, that such as adored him could subdue. Lastly there were many more most potent, thought to be the Sons of Thor, or Odhen, who were honoured by the people, and thought worthy of publick sacrifices to be offered unto them. But how or by what arts these men and such like, obtain'd so great an opinion of Divinity and to be adored, I shall enquire underneath, L. V. of Gyants and Champions, chap. 1. toward the end.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Magnificent Temple of the Northern Gods.

Seeing that of old, the whole world almost in every place, was deluded by innumerable superstitions, and insinist of the Devils, I thought it not incongruous, yet further to shew evidently in what places the Goths or Sweets, and Northern Nations seduced by heathenish superstition, gave obedience to dumb Idols: that it may be known, that there were many places, (as there are kinds of Devils) wherein unlawfull worship was offered. There was therefore a Temple (concerning which my dear Brother and Predeceour, D. John Arch-Bishop of Upsall speaks, L. 1. Histor.) that was most famous from the time of Ninus, neer to the River Sala; where at this day is Upsalia the principall and archiepiscopall seat of the Swedes and Goths, which they do adore, being built so magnificently, that there was nothing to be seen on the walls, roose or Pillars, but shined with Gold.

Also



Also the whole upper part was made with glittering Gold; from which a Golden Chain hung down, and is recorded to have gone round about the Temple to the Walls, and tops of the House. Hence it was, that the Temple situated on a large Plain, by the admirable lustre of it, begat in those that came near to it, a Venerable Awe of Religion. There grew before the doors of it, a huge Tree of an unknown kind, that spread with large Boughs, and was green both in Summer and Winter; yet not of those kinds, which of their own Nature seem to grow green, as the Bay-tree, Olive, Palm-tree, or Myrtle. For in the North never was any Olive, or Bay-tree seen to grow up, but in a small shrub, as we may see at *Vassens*. There was also a Fountain neer this Temple, which ran into the place of their Sacrifices: of which I shall speak by and by underneath. And let this suffice for other Nations, to understand some of the vain Customs of the Goths. Now it is fit for me to shew unto the Northern people, that it was not they onely that were seduced with this vanity. And now we must confess, that by Gods mercy, in that very place; namely, at *Upsal*, at all times, especially on the 19. day of May, there are Catholick Sermons preached of Divine Religion, to almost innumerable people. The King and Princes, and Nobles of both Sexes being present, where formerly so many wicked and abominable filthy acts were committed, and so many men, both Friends, and dear Parents, were offered in Sacrifice.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the Religion, and Sacrifices of the Goths.

There was formerly in the Sacrifices of the Goths (as it is set down in the History of the *Sweons*, and *Goths*, L. 1. C. 12. a great respect had to the number of 9. It may be, because the *Pythagorean* Philoophy (which they learned of *Salmox*, and *Dicæonius*, admonished them, that the odd number must be preferred in all things. And although they did weekly and daily give the supreme honour to their Gods: yet every nine moneths they used a more solemn adoration to them, for nine days together, sacrificing and performing their Rites and Religious Worship; and they offered every day nine kind of living Creatures, and they joyned unto them the Sacrifices of men. But after nine days, by the supreme solemnity of all the Kingdome, the Temple of *Upsal*, that I mentioned before, was visited by the most frequent coming thither of the Inhabitants, and there for nine dayes they kept Holy-day; and by the foresaid number of sacrifices, they offered their Offerings to their god upon an Altar. But that man, who by Lot was to be offered, was plunged alive into that Fountain, which ran into the place of the Sacrifice; and if he died early, the Priests pronounced the Vow to be fortunate; and they presently took him from thence, and hung him up in a Wood hard by, which they reputed sacred, and they affirmed that he was translated amongst the Gods. And from hence that man thought himself happy who was to die, by being sacrificed. It fell out sometimes, that the Kings themselves were chosen by the same Lot, and sacrificed: which because it was esteemed to be a most lucky offering for the Kingdome, all the people with high gratulation and thanksgiving, did adore so noble a sacrifice. For they thought that those who departed thus did not die at all, but that they and themselves also were immortal; especially from *Salmox*, *Zenta*, *Dicæonius*, as *Dion*, *Ablabius*, *Jornandes*, *Sirabo*, and others write: who also assert by many Reasons, that the Goths studied Wisdom excellently, and there ore held an opinion of the Souls immortality: for that (as *Herodotus* saith, L. 4.) thinking they should not die, they would say; That those who were departed this life,

went

went to some place more pleasant: Wherein they said, that a certain God *Bleyxen* was chiefest to whom they daily sent, besides the manner already mentioned a Messenger in a Galley, with five Oares, which was some man chosen amongst themselves, commanding him to desire from the bounty of the God, such things as they stood in need of. The manner of dispatching the Messenger was thus: Some of them held some sharp Spears upright; and upon these they threw him who was designed to be sent, catching him by his hands and feet; and if falling, he died presently, they supposed that the God was pleased with them, accepting their Messenger at first. But if it hapned otherwise, they accused the Messenger for being a wicked man, and that he was unworthy to be sent to the Gods. Wherefore calling him away, they sent another, giving him his Arrant whilst he was yet living, what he must sollicite, when he came to the god. Then casting him down, when he was dead, they delivered him into the Gulph of the Sea, by the help of those five Oars.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the Goths Superstitions about Thunder.

Moreover, they were so obtinate in observing the Worship of their Gods (as we find it also in the same History of the *Goths* and *Sweons*, L. 1. c. 12.) that when it thundered in the Air, they would shoot up Arrows, to shew their readiness to assist their Gods, which they thought were then fighting with others that opposed them. Nor were they content with that rash Superstition, but they had for that purpose great Hammers bigger then ordinary (which they called *Ovials*) that were bound about with huge brais, and which were observed most religiously, that by them, as by the *Claudian* Thunder, and by the usual similitude of things, they might imitate the noises in the Element of the Air, which they believed were made with Hammers, & they thought most devoutly, that the force of such a noise, by imitating the same with the Smiths Hammers, would give assistance to the Wars of their Gods. That Custom of *Jupiters* Hammers lasted until the 1130. year after the Birth of Christ, when as *Magnus*, King of the Goths, having Heathenish Superstition, for the love of Christian Religion, held it Piety to spoil the Temple of its Worship, and *Jupiter* of his Robes; who therefore for many years was held by the Goths as a Sacrilegious Robber of the spoils of Heaven. Also, the Goths were wont when they were going to Battel, to sacrifice their horses upon Altars, and cutting off their heads, and letting them upon long Poles, they carried them with their mouths wide open, upon these Staves, before their Armies. And they not onely offered Beasts in sacrifice before the War, but men also when they had conquered their Enemies; and they made magnificent Playes for the honour of their Gods: wherein were observed effeminate motions of their Bodies, and mimical gestures of Stage-Players, and pleasant ringing of little Bells, and noises of Timbrels. These, and other notable kinds of Sacrifices were the chief cause, that by the assistance of the Gods, they could never be conquered in Battail. For they so loved, and practised Wars continually, that they supposed all other Studies nothing worth, being compared with Military Arts. There were Priests that had the charge of these Sacrifices, who were of different degrees, as the *Pontifex*, the *Arch-flamen*, the *Dancing Priest*, the *Soothsayers*: the first of these; namely, the *High-Priests*, had equal power allowed them as the Kings had; and so great was their authority, that whatsoever they either perswaded, or commanded, as if it had bin spoken from Heaven, was cheerfully executed by the King and all the people.

G

They

They instructed the Nation in much Widoome; they chose Priests they founded Religion; *Dion the Grecian* testifies, that this Nation never wanted High-Priests, which might teach them Widoome. There was also among them a kind of High-Priests that were more illustrious, which they called *Pileati*, and *Pii*, out of which they fitted themselves with Kings and Priests, as *Jornandes* shews more largely, who saith they were wont to be called *Pii*, and that they were wont to go forth of the City-gates with Harps, and white Garments, to meet the *Goths* in triumph, that they might pacifie their Gods.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of their fighting against the Gods.

AGAIN they fell into another Folly and Superstition, that when the Gods did not favour them in their Warlike Expeditions, or did not help them, they by lifting up divers kinds of Weapons against Heaven, supposed they could conquer them, or compel them by fear and threatening words to do what they required. And in this idle action, they believed that they had no less power upon the Earth, and were to be feared and adored as much, as others that were gone to the Gods above or beneath. But they observed not the old Proverb of the *Goths*, *That we must not dart our Spear against Heaven, for a thicker Club will be thrown back from thence.*

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the Fatal Sisters and Nymphs.

THERE are also in the Northern Countries some Temples consecrated to *Diana* and *Ceres*, and houles of the Fatal Sisters, that were built by Witchcraft, without mans help, which the Antients were wont to come unto praying, making solemn Vows, when they went to consult the Oracles of the Fates, concerning their Childrens future Destinies, where looking into the Chappell, they knew that sometimes three, and sometimes more of these Nymphs sat: Whereof some granted to Children a comely face, and favour abundantly amongst men: Others gave them Liberality, or other excellent Vertues: Again, others of a more froward Nature desiring to hurt the Gifts of the rest, would make Children in their future condition to be *Parasituous*, or guilty of some other fault. And they did not onely delude Children by these juggling Arts, but sometimes Kings also and men of years, as is evidently found out. For *Hotherus* King of *Sweden*, and *Denmark*, as he Hunted, by error of a Cloud, being drawn far away from his Huntsmen, fell into the Conclave of some Virgins living in Woods; and being called by his own name by them, he asked what they were: They testifie, that by their leading and good success, the Fortune of the War was chiefly governed. And that oft-times they are present in Battails, when no man sees them, and by their secret assistance, they give to their Friends such success as they shall desire; for they said, it was in their power to make the Event prosperous, or adverse as they pleased; desiring him that he should not make War against *Baldern*, who was born of the secret seed of the Gods: when he had heard this Message, *Hotherus* sees himself to be left suddenly in the open Ayre, and without any house or shady place to cover him, exposed in the middle of the Fields; but he most of all wondred at the sudden flight of the Virgins, and the false situation of the place, and counterfeited how he had imagined to be there.

For

For he was ignorant of those things which were done about him, and thought it was onely a delusion, and fraud, by Witch-craft. After this, some years being passed the same *Hotherus* being worn out with most cruel Wars, going into the farthest Desarts and Woods to wander in, where men use not to frequent, by chance he found a Cave where Virgins dwelt. It proved, that these were the same which had formerly given him a Garment that was Armour of Proof. And being demanded by them, wherefore he came into that place, he relates unto them the unhappy Events of the War; so that condemning their Faith, he began to lament his ill success, and hard fortune, complaining that it tell out otherwise with him, than they had promised it should.

The Nymphs answered, that though he seldom won the Victory, yet he had done as much mischief to the Enemies, as they had done to him, and that he had been the Author of as great Ruine as his Partner had: and farther, that he should win the Victory, if he could but first catch away the meat that was provided to increase the Enemies Forces; for by this means he should see all things succeed according to his wishes. He was thus lent away, and he recruited his Armie, and levies new Forces against the Enemy. And when he came to view their Tents, he saw three Maids go forth, carrying secretly away the daintiest meat: these he ran after. (for he might see the way they went by their foot-steps on the Dew) then he comes to the houles where they dwell, and by the sweet Musick of his Lute, (on which he had excellent skill) he obtained from them a most accurate shining Girdle, and most powerful to prevail with in Battail: so going the way he came, he met the Enemy, and slew him with a great slaughter: so that the next day after he was taken to *Proserpina*, which he seemed to see standing by him in his sleep.

## CHAP. X.

## Of the Night-Dances of the Fairies, and Ghosts.

ALSO Travellers in the Night, and such as watch their Flocks and Herds, are wont to be compassed about with many strange Apparitions: As King *Hotherus*, (so *Saxo* reports) following three Nymphs to their Caves, obtained a Girdle of Victory from them: yet sometimes they make so great and deep impression into the Earth, that the place they are used to, being onely burnt round with extreame heat, no grafs will grow up there. The Inhabitants call this Night-sport of these Monsters, the Dance of Fayries: of which they hold this opinion, that the Souls of those men, that give themselves to Corporal Pleasures, and make themselves as it were slaves unto them, and obey the force of their Lusts, violating the Laws of God and men, when they are out of their bodies, and wander about the Earth. In the number whereof they think those men to be, who even in these our days, are wont to come to help men, to labour in the Night, and to dress Horses and Cattel; as I shall shew hereafter in this very Book, concerning the Ministry of the Devils.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the War against the Fauns.

SINCE Antiquity testifies that there have been various monstrous things, and almost innumerable Delusions, which have passed almost through the whole World, as Ghosts, Rural Gods, Satyrs, Hags, Hob-goblins, Witches, Fairies, Household Gods, and Shepherds Gods in abundance, by which men were extremely terrified, or torn to pieces and slain: I did not think fit to conceal what Policies and Weapons the Northern people used to resist these Visions and Apparitions. It is a Tradition, that the noble Champions of the *Goths* did often fight

G 2

single

single with Monsters, and huge Beasts, either to free some weak men, or to try their valour, and they took care not to set upon any wild Beast with more company, than the custome of valiant men would permit.

*Regnerus* of *Sweden* was a Champion, and a King, who fought all night against most obscene Troops of Nocturnal Monsters, which were sent forth by *Thorilda* his cruel Mother-in-law; and when it grew light, he perceived that he met oft-times in the Fields divers forms of Ghosts, and unusual representations of Shapes; amongst which he saw the likeness of *Throilda*, wounded in many places. By this meanes he acquired the fame of a Champion, and took by force his Fathers Kingdom from his Enemies.

Moreover, one *Broderus* and *Buchi*, with King *Gorman*, being more bold than ordinary men are, increasing the Warlike spirit of the *Goths*, in searching out the foot-steps of natural things, undertook a Voyage full of danger, and scarce to be undergone by mortal men. For sailing round the Earth, leaving the Sun behind them, and passing by the stars that were under the Deep, and lastly coming beyond the Land of *Biarmia*, into places where was no light (as I shewed c. 1. l. 1.) but in continual darkness, they fought with incredible Troops of Monsters. For they invaded Fairies that came upon them, and took away their Weapons from them; and they conquered whole Armies of strange Apparitions, with their Bows and Slings, as *Saxo* the Danish Historian, and most diligent searcher of Antiquities, writes in his Preface concerning King *Gorman*. We find it also related amongst the ancient Histories, how *Hotherus*, Son to the King of *Sweden*, being waking in the night, and his mind full of care that troubled him, threw his Spear at the Satyr *Memmingus*, that appeared in his Lodging, and having striken him down with the blow & made him unable to fly away presently he held him in chains; and then threatening him with most bitter words, he requires of him his Sword and Bracelets, which he knew he had, and the Satyr soon delivered up what he demanded to save his life. For the life is before all things, and *Mortals* esteem nothing more than it.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of Divination.

TO satisfy this Title, I must premise the saying of the Catholick Dr. *Chrysostome*, who saith in his Homily, *There shall be Signs in the Sun and Moon, &c.* That there is no Creature which so much desires to know future things, as man doth &c. This being considered, we must farther confess, that there never was any Nation so civil and learned, nor yet so ignorant and barbarous, which hath not used to signify future things, and by some means to understand, and fore-tell them; but chiefly the Northern people, which I find to have employed themselves in the study of knowing things to come: for by the flyings of Birds, leaping and noise of Fish, and by their singing; also by exhalations of Mountains, &c. they thought that future Accidents might be declared, as by certain Signs.

No War nor publick business either at home or in Military Affairs, was done without South-layings; and not only the Discipline of Wizards was accepted by the chief Governours, but of Fortune-tellers, Divination also by the Ayr, by the Earth, by the Fire, by the Dead, and all Dreams of importance, if any seemed to concern the Common-Wealth.

*Orbimus* fore-told to King *Hadringus*, who went to wage War against *Jochens Cucus* the Tyrant, that he should be taken captive, and it fell out, as he said.

GOUARIN

*GOUARIN*, King of *Norway*, was so skilful in the Art of Divination, and so well learned, to tell future things, that he being in *Norway*, could see whatever was attempted against him in *Saxony*, above a hundred German miles from him.

*Garmo* surnamed the Wicked, being of a drowfie condition, dreamt that his Wife bare two Birds, but one was greater than the other; and that they flew upwards toward Heaven, and in a small time betwixt, they returned again, and sat upon both his hands, one by one; and so the second time, and third: when they had rested a while, they took Wing, and flew into the Ayr; and at last, that the least of the two came back to him without the other, having the Wings all bloody. This Dream was thus truly interpreted: His two Sons subduing the *English*, *Sclavonians*, and the *Irish*, had very good fortune, until such time as the Elder was slain in battail, but the Younger, when his brother was lost, seemed to have his Wings smeared with blood.

*Magnus*, King of *Norway* and *Denmark*, that night wherein there followed a War with *Sclavonia*, when he slept, he saw an Apparition of one in his sleep, that told him before that he should conquer his Enemy, and in killing of an Eagle, he should be assured of the Victory. The King awaked, and told his Dream in order, with great admiration; and proceeding with his Army, he saw an Eagle neer him, that he had seen in his Dream; and riding swiftly to her, he killed her with a Dart, and fled faster than the Bird could with a swift shaft.

Wherefore his Army took the sign of good luck; and laying hold of the first occasion to fight, overcame the Enemy, having the same event in battail, as the Omen fore-shewed.

When King *Valdamar* his Army went forth to War, such Troops of Crowses flew suddenly between them, that many were knocked down with the Enemies Spears. King *Sweno* and all his Army were conquered by him, and made Crowses meat, which declared the event of the South-laying.

*Biorno*, a noted Champion, compassed in a certain Island, with a choise Band of able Souldiers, which was fenced round with a most swift River: he saw in his sleep a great Beast coming forth of the Waters, that cast forth flames of fire at his mouth, and burnt all presently. The next morning King *Fridlevus*, coming over this violent River, destroyed all these Champions (except *Biorno*) with the sword, and so fulfilled his Dream.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Magical Art of Ericus with his Windy Cap, and of others.

THIS *Ericus*, King of *Sweden*, in his time, was held second to none in the *Magical Art*; and he was so familiar with the Evil Spirits, whom he exceedingly adored, that which way soever he turned his Cap, the Wind would presently blow that way. From this occasion he was called *Windy Cap*; and many men believed that *Regnerus*, King of *Denmark*, by the Conduct of this *Ericus*, who was his Nephew, did happily extend his Piracy into the most remote parts of the Earth, and conquered many Countries, and fenced Cities, by his Gunning; and at last was his Coadjutor, that by the consent of the Nobles, he should be chosen King of *Sweden*; which continued a long time with him very happily, until he died of old age.

Moreover, another *Ericus*, whose surname was *Emundus*, when he purposed to sail, and one of the Saylers saw in a Dream himself carried on horseback over the cragged tops of Mountains; and the horse running swiftly, that by the consent of the Nobles, he should be chosen King of *Sweden*; which continued a long time with him very happily, until he died of old age.

lefs

lets skilled in *Divination*, than in *Magick*, being as it were forewarned by that Vision of the danger, that he should not have that man to fail with him, he commanded to set him on board another Bottom: and to when the company perished, the Kings Ship was safe. But *Fratho*, King of *Denmark*, when his own brother *Harauld* was treacherously slain by him, that he might not cruelly destroy two innocent Children, his Nephews, *Haraldus*, and *Haldanus*, their Tutors hid them in Caves, under ground, like young Puppies, (as *Saxo* testifies) and fed them there, affirming with divers fictions, that they were devoured in the Night by Wolves.

But *Fratho*, not believing they were dead, purposed to search the Cave, by a Woman that was cunning in South-saying, which had such power in her charms that any thing, how difficult soever it was, if she could but see it afar off the world call it to her. She related that one *Regno* did secretly educate these Children; and to cover the matter, called them by the names of Dogs; who when they found that by the unusual violence of her Charms, they were seen by her, and carried out of their Kennels, that they might not be discovered by such powerful compulsive command, cast abundance of Gold into her Lap, which their Tutors had given them: when she had received this Bribe, she counterfeited her self to be sick, and lay as one in a trance. When the Kings Ministers fought to know the cause of so sudden downfall, she said it was impossible to find what was become of the Children: whose mighty force did allay the most fierce Effects of Incantations. So being content with a small Reward, she ceased from expecting a greater reward from the King.

Therefore by these, and the like Arguments, it is known how much the power of *Divination* and *Magical Art* was adored among the Antients; which now by certain negligence is let go, and come to nothing; for it was performed by Prognostications, South-sayings, looking into Entrails, Fire, by Water-works, by Lots and Signs, and thousand more Sacrilegious Rites, found out by the Delusions of the Devils: yet men use now adays certain *Divinations* (approved by causes of natural things) and Lots, by casting two or three, or more pieces of Wood into a Pot, that by the White, Red, or brown colour of them, they may divide mens Inheritances.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of Women-Witches.

I shall shew you by a few Examples, how cunning some Women were formerly amongst the Northern people in the *Magical Art*. *Hugbert*, Daughter to *Vagnus*, the Giant, was wont to change her posture at pleasure; sometimes she was very great; sometimes less; sometimes exceeding small; sometimes wither'd faced; sometimes beautiful; sometimes she was as tall as the Sky; sometimes so short as a Pygmy; and she was supposed to be able, to pull down the Heavens, to lift up the Earth; to hearken Fountains, to melt Mountains; to lift ships into the Air; to pull down the Gods; to extinguish the Stars, and to make Hell a light place.

When *Hadingus* the King was at Supper, another Woman of the same Art, that carried Pipes, was seen to lift up her head above the ground before the fire; and stretching out her bosom, she seemed to ask in what part of the World so new green Reeds grew; the King that desired to know the matter was carried by her under ground, wrapt in his own Cloak; and having shewed unto him the Monstres of the Infernal Regions, she restored him back to the Earth again.

*Craca*, a Woman of *Norway*, that desired to know the future fortune of her son *Rollerus*, provided Water-grewel, and into this she dropt the venomous moisture

moysure of three Land-Snakes, that were hung up above by a small Twig. But *Ericus*, Son in law to *Craca*, took to himself the Dish that was provided for her Son *Rollerus*; and he being refreshed with this happy meat, by the internal operation of it, arrived to the highest pitch of mans wisdom. For the force of this meat bred in him the knowledge of all Sciences beyond belief; to that he could understand the meaning of the cries of Birds and wild Beasts. Besides he was so eloquent and curious in his speech, that whatsoever he pleased to discourse of, he would constantly illustrate it with pleasant Proverbs. By his counseil King *Fratho* overcame the Army of the mighty *Huns*, that was assisted by 170. Kings. And at length, *Geistblendus* King of the *Goths*, made this *Ericus* Heir to himself, and to the Kingdom of *Sweden*; and that about the time of Christs Nativity.

But King *Fratho* being hanged at by a Witch that turned into an Oxe, was slain by her upon a certain Sea-coast. *Guthrima* suddenly blinded the forces of King *Larmericus*, and made them fight one against the other. An Earthen Pot worth to be the common Instrument of all Witches, wherein they boyl their Juyces, Herbs, Worms, and Entrails, and by that Witchery meat they allure idle persons to them, and make ships, horses, and horsemen, to be as swift as a boiling pot.

## CHAP. XV.

## Of the Conjurors and Witches in Finland.

ALSO, I shall shew very briefly what force Conjurors and Witches have in confaining the Elements, enchanted by them or others, that they may exceed or fall short of their Natural Order: premising this, that the extrem Land of the North Finland and Lapland, was so taught Witchcraft formerly in Heathenish times, as if they had learned this curied Art from *Zoroastres* the *Persian*; though other Inhabitants by the Sea-coasts are reported to be bewitched with the same madness; for they exercise this Divellish Art, of all the Arts, of the World, to admiration; and in this, and other such like mischief, they commonly agree. The *Finlanders* were wont formerly amongst their other Errors of Gentilisme, to sell Wines to Merchants, that were stopt on their Coasts by contrary weather; and when they had their price, they knit three Magical knots, nor like to the Laws of *Cassius*, bound up with a Thong, and they gave them unto the Merchants; observing that rule, that when they unloosed the first, they should have a good Gale of Wind: when the second, a stronger wind: but when they untied the third, they should have such cruel Tempests, that they should not be able to look out of the Forecastle to avoid the Rocks, nor move a foot to pull down the Sails, nor stand at the Helm to govern the ship; and they made an unhappy trial of the truth of it, who denied that there was any such power in those knots. But this Northern Countrey since the time of Christianity received, never durst be seen to use this Art openly, being kept down by the penalty of laws. Moreover, *Sivaldus* the Swede, who was corival with King *Holdanus*, had 7. sons, who were such cunning Witches, that they would suddenly in a force of fury rore horribly, bite Bucklers, eat down burning Coles, go through any fires that were made: nor could this motion of madness be allayed, but either by Bonds, or by shedding of mans blood.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Magical Instruments of Bothnia.

Witches and Conjurers were commonly found amongst the *Northern* people of *Bothnia*, as in their proper place; who by a perfect Art of casting Mils before mens eyes, could represent themselves and others in divers shapes, & with false Apparitions hide their true faces; and not onely Champions, but Women and young Maids were wont from the thin Ayr to borrow wan Vizards, and counterfeit pale faces: and again laying these airy Vapours aside that shadowed them, they would discluse these dark Clouds before their faces with bright day. And it is certain, that their Charms had such force, that they would make any thing clearly to be seen present, how far (soever it was off, and however it were bound up fast in never so many knots: and by such juggling Arts, they demonstrate the same thus:

They that desire to know the state of their Friends or Foes, at a very great distance from them, five hundred be it, or a thousand miles off, they enquire of a *Laplander*, or *Finnlander*, who is skilled in this matter, giving him a gift; (namely, some Linnen Garment, or Girdle,) where their Friends or Foes are, and what they do: Whereupon he goes into his Conclave, content with one companion, and his Wife, and he beats upon a Frog of Brals, or Serpent, with a Hammer, upon an Anvil, so many strokes as are prescribed; and by mumbling of Charms, he turns it up and down; and presently telling he is ravished into an exterie, and he lies a short time as if he were dead: In the mean while, he is safely guarded by his foreaid companion, lest any Living Creature, Gnat, or Fly, or other Animal might touch him; for by the power of his Charms, his Spirit, by the misleading of Devils, brings from far some token, (namely a Rings or a knife) for a testimony of his Embasie or Commission fulfilled: And presently rising up, he declares the same signs to him that hired him, with the rest of the circumstances: And they are reported to be no less powerful in striking men sick of divers Diseases; for they make of Lead Magical Slugs, as short as ones finger: they send these into men never so far off, which they desire to be revenged on. They by a Cancer rising on their Legs or Arms dye in three days. There are also the Witcheries or Conjurations of the men of *Helging*, the chief whereof *Violphus*, did so strike all men blind when he pleased, that they could neither see the next houses, nor find the way thither: he knew to how to darken the use of Lights, by Cloudy Errour.

Moreover, one *Vifinus*, a Fencer of great account, would blunt the edge of all Weapons, by onely looking upon them, yet was he killed with the sword of the *Swedish* Giant *Storchaternus*, of whom I shall speak underneath. For he alwayes kept his Sword covered in a thin skin, (which is said to be the onely Remedy against the blunting of it. But Stones that are to be cast forth, can be charmed by no Charms; nor their force taken off from doing hurt, when they are thrown strongly.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the Sea Magicians.

Also, amongst other *Northern* Dieties, one *Hollerus* by name, a Magician, was worshipped, who gained to himself the Opinion and Honour of a God amongst a curious people, by no less Fraud then Superstition. For he having got equal power with *Orbinnus*, amongst the Gods grew so famous by Arms, and Delusions, that he used onely a bone for a ship to pass over the Seas; which bone he had enchanted with his curled Charms; and he would as soon pass all

Obstacles

Obstacles in his way with that, as if he had hoisted up sails with a prosperous Gale of Wind. But at last, that men might see that his Diety was mortal; he was cruelly slain by those that envied him. Besides him, one *Oddo*, a Dane, a mighty Pirar, was so well learned in Magick, that he would wander at Sea without a ship, and oft-times drowned his Enemies ships, by raising Tempests with his Charms: Wherefore, that he might not fight at Sea with Pirats; he was wont by Witchcraft, to raise and exasperate the Winds and Waves to destroy them.

This man, as he was cruel to Merchants, so was he courteous to Countrey-men; for he esteemed better of Countrey-neatness, than he did of the fordid gains of men. Also, he had great skill to blunt a sword with his Charms: but at last being circumvented by an Enemy more cunning than himself; he was drowned at Sea, who was wont formerly to walk on the Gulphs of the Sea by his enchanted ways.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of the same Magicians, and the like.

Then *Orbinnus*, who was the greater and elder amongst the Magicians, brought back upon a horse, many leagues at Sea, one *Hadingus*, King of *Denmark*, who was slowly deluded by Magical Incantations, and drawn away from his acquaintance: But as *Hadingus* was brought along, he observed the prints of the horses feet in the Waters, as he peeped through the chinks of that covering, he lay trembling under, and exceedingly admired at it: and when he was prohibited to look after that he was not allowed to do, he turned away his eyes that were full of amazement, from the terrible contemplation of his Voyage. Again, *Haginnus* King of *Norway*, when he was to fight against the Danes, he raised a storm by Witchcraft, and so beat upon the Enemies heads, with Hail-stones of an unusual greatness, that their eyes were hurt as with arrows from the Clouds, and they could not see the Elements fighting more against them, than the Enemy.

Moreover, the men of *Biarmia* that are nearest to the Arctick Pole, being to fight in the North against the most mighty King *Regnerus*, they set upon the Heavens with Charms, and raised the greatest Tempests in the Clouds that could possibly be. Then the Danes, when the Tempest was abated, were scorched with most tempestuous heat: so this double mischief and disemper on both sides, afflicted their bodies, that they lost their Victory, and their lives together.

## CHAP. XIX.

## Of a Magician bound.

Amongst the *Ostrogots*, there is a huge Lake of fresh waters, called *Peter*, (of which I spoke sufficiently before) but there is in the middle of it a large Island, wherein there are two Parish-Churches: in one of them there is found a Vault that hath a hollow long entrance, and going forth of it, and it is wonderful deep; which Vault, none but vain-glorious and curious people, provided with lights, and clews of thread, to find the way back again, descend into: chiefly for that end, that they may see a certain Magician called *Gilbert*, who by Magick Art (for thence arose his misery) from old time by his own Master *Catillus*, whom he presumed to insult over, was overcome and bound there. It was done thus, with a certain small Club, that was carved with the characters of the *Goths* or *Rusians*, and was held forth, and taken in his Masters hands; for by this was *Gilbert* bound, and became unmovable, that neither by using his teeth to unlouse himself, (for they clung together, as if they had been fastened with pitch) nor yet

H

using

using his feet could he yet loose, being made fast by the crafty counsel of his Master. And though many rash-headed people run continually to see this Spirit with vehement admiration, yet they dare not presume to come very near to him, by reason of the stench of the Cave, and hurtful Vapours, for fear their breath should be stop, and they should be suffocated. Also, they are kept from him by Mounds cast up, and by Bars, set by the Inhabitants, lest such as despise their own danger, should go in like mad-men, and should never come forth again.

Moreover, it is provided by a most severe Law, as it is for them that kill themselves, that such as know these dangers shall not allure others that are ignorant of them, to seek after this sight; or lead them in, whom they have periwaded to it. This foresaid Island *Vifrigna*, is very famous for the pleasant and secure Mansion of the Kings there, who are there dead and buried.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of the punishment for Witches.

**L**east the Northern Witches should seem alone here to be led to sad spectacles, *Vincencius in Spec. Hist. l. 25. c. 6.* comes and tells us, that an English woman deluged by Magical Art, after cruel torments, was carried by the Devils into the Ayr with horrid cries. His words are these:

There was a certain Woman in *Besholia*, a Village of England, that was a South-sayer and a Witch who one day when she was eating, heard her chough, that she took great pleasure in, to speak something more loud than it was wont to do: When the Mistress heard this, her knife fell out of her hand, and she grew pale in her face; and lamenting, she said very often; This day is my Plough come to the last Furrow; this day shall I hear and receive great hurt.

As she yet spake, a Messenger came to her, saying; This day is thy Son dead, and all thy Family did suddenly. This heard, she sank down, wounded with continual grief, and she commanded all her children that were alive to be brought to her, which were a Fryer and a Nun; to whom she sighing, said thus: I by my miserable destiny, ever was a servant to the Devil in my actions, I am the Sink of all Vice, and the Mistress of enticements: I onely confided in your Religion, and I despaired of my self: But now, because I know the Devil shall have me to torment me, who periwaded me to offend, I beseech you, by the bowels of your Mother, that you will attempt to ease my torments; for you cannot revoke the Sentence of Damnation passed upon my soul: Wherefore sow up my body in a Stags skin, and put it into a Chest of Stone, and fasten the cover with Iron and Lead, and bind about the stone with three great chains. If I live three nights thus in safety, you shall bury me the fourth day: though I fear the Earth will not receive me, by reason of my Witchcrafts; let there be Palms sung for me fifty nights, and Mass said for me as many days. They did as the bad men, but it nothing availed; for the two first nights, when the Clerks and Quakers sang Palms about her body, all the Devils easily breaking the Church door that was fastened with a mighty bar, tore in pieces two of the chains; but the middle chain which was made stronger, held fast. The third night, about Cock-crowing, all the Monastery seemed to be lifted from the Foundation, with a noise of Enemies coming; one of them was more terrible to look on, and taller than the rest; and he striking the Church-door with greater force, brake them into splinters, and came proudly to the Coffin, and in arrogant gesture, and calling her by her name, commanded her to rise. When she answered, that she could not for her bands.

Thou

Thou shalt, saith he, be unbound, but to thy greater mischief: And he forthwith brake the Chain, the rest of the Devils could not do, as if it had been Flax, and he kicked off the cover of the Grave with his foot, and taking her by the hand before them all, he drew her forth at the Church-doors, where there was prepared a black horse, which proudly neighed, that had Hooks of Iron all over him, that stuck forth: Upon this Horse was this miserable woman set, and she presently disappeared from the beholders eyes, with all her company. But there were cries heard almost four miles, of this miserable wretch calling for help. Also *Saxo lib. 14.* relates what sport of the Devil happened to the *Rugians*, in the City *Karemina*, for their worshipping of the Devil; where by the illusion of the Devil, men were first provoked to commit Adultery, and then presently in the time of this most beastly act, they were punished most detestably. For men in that City being allured to lie with women, stick to them as Dogs do to Bitches; nor can they be pulled from them in a long time. Sometimes both of them being hung one against the other upon long poles, being fastened together by an unusual way, became a laughing stock to the people. From the toulngs of that miracle, solemn worship was given to baite Images; and it was supposed to be effected by their forces, which was shadowed under the delusions of Devils: Therefore, as *St. Augustine* testifies, *lib. 8. De civit. Dei*, such things are tolerated by a just Judgment of God for their sins; for it is most just, that they should be afflicted, or made subject and deceived by them. But he that desires not a happy life hereafter, nor to lead a godly life now, by such horrible acts, may seek death in Hell: but he that will hold no society with wicked Spirits, let him not fear the damnable Superstition they are worshipped by; but let him embrace the true Religion, whereby they are discovered and conquered.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the hurts done by the Devils.

**I**N the Northern parts (where the Devil hath his Seat really) they mock the people that live there with unspeakable delusions, under various forms, and do them hurt also, throwing down their houses, killing their Cattle, spoiling their fields, making a Desolation of Castles and Waters.

## The End of the Third Book.





# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L :

CONCERNING

*The Wars and Manners of the Wild Pagans, and their Neighbours.*

*The Epitome of the Fourth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the unhappy Battail of Regnerus, King of Denmark.*

**S**axo Grammaticus, the most famous Author of the Danish History, relates, that Regnerus King of Denmark, for five years, when he had ended his Piracy on the Coasts of Russia, to have resolv'd to invade by armes his Neighbours of Biarmia; namely, Northern People, living in Mountains, and Champion Land, and to bring them down by his incomparable power. They, when they knew of his coming, presently used Charms to Heaven, and so prevailed with the Clouds, that they filled them full of Rain, to do violence; which so long held Regnerus, before he could put off to Sea, that his provision was spent; and so soon as the Tempest was allayed, a violent heat scorched him: Nor was that plague greater, than the great cold was raised also. Wherefore this double mischief, of untemperate weather, did by turns mightily disturb and corrupt his souldiers bodies; by their immoderate coming upon them. But as the King observed himself, to be stoppt rather by the false, than true force of the Ayr, to revenge this infolency of the Biarmians, he comes again upon them unexpected. But their King relying on his most skillful Archers of the Duke of Finmark, his Neighbour, tore in pieces the Army of Regnerus, who then held his Winter-Quarters in Biarmia; yet suffered no loss himself. For the Finlanders, (as I touch'd upon it at the beginning of my first Book) being able to run swiftly with slippery flakes, fly away at pleasure, and have power to come neer, and remove far back presently. For so soon as they have wounded their

Enemy,

Enemy, they run from him, as fast as they came upon him, and they will return, being nothing wearied by their running forward: Wherefore by reason of their Waggon, and nimbleness of their bodies, they have a most ready way, to fall on, or to retreat.

It is to be believed, as the same Saxo reports, that this mighty King sustained his ill fortune courageously, and wonder'd at it, when he saw himself who had triumphed over the Roman pride, to be brought to the very last point of difficulty, by an unarmed and disorderly Company: wherefore he that had so gallantly beaten down the most illustrious Renown of the Roman Souldiers, and the mighty force of the great Commander, was forced to yield to the most sordid and slender provision of a savage and base people: and he whose fame in War the forces of the most potent Nation could not quell, could not stand against a small handful of contemptible men. Hence it fell out, that by that hand wherewith he most valiantly worsted the most famous glory of the World, and the greatest Instrument of Military strength, wherewith he openly adventured against the terrible noise of so many Horse and Foot, he was fain privately to fall upon this ignoble and obscure people, and to steal upon them unawares; and he was not ashamed to stain his great glory, got openly in the day, by fraud in the night, making choice of clancular Snares in the place of open Fortitude. This thing, as it was illfavoured in the Deed, so was it base in the End, and he might sing the common Verse,

*Oh by what small things, great things are destroyed!*

I pass over how Arngirius conquered Tengildan, King of Finmark, and Egbert King of Biarmia, who resisted Frotho, King of Denmark, with so obstinate a mind and forces. The said Frotho married his Daughter, which he onely loved, to the said Arngirius, a Swedish Champion, who vanquished Egbert, whom he challenged to fight a Duel with him; thinking it not unfit to become his Father in Law, who had made himself so famous, by so many Titles of his Actions, and had conquered a most sharp Enemy.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the cruelty of the Wild Inhabitants.*

**A**s the Eastern people that dwell in the Caspian Mountains, by reason of the mighty noise of the Sun-rising, and the horrid sound by secret exhalations coming from the bowels of the Earth, fly to Caves to save their lives, and stop both their ears, that they may be safer in the troublesome time: so the Nations that live in the utmost Coasts of the Seas of Norway, by reason of the violent South-West Wind, and thick Snows lying on the tops of the most high Mountains, have their Caves under ground, and live upon Fish, and Wild Beasts. And these hate any men that shall fail to them for Traffique, as if they were Rovers, fearing to be brought into captivity by them: But such as are Runaways, and oppressed by the cruelty of Tyrants, they admit for their companions, and they instruct them for their defence, how they may catch Pirats in snares, and kill them, when they come upon their Coasts. They may indeed, whilst they counterfeit themselves to be Fugitives, or shew their Harbours to strangers to ride in, that they may be in no hazard, shut them up in what dangers they will. But when strangers come not, that they cannot do these and the like practices, by reason of the Sea frozen, they are forced to stay in Dungeons and Caves, made up with the bones and ribs of Sea-Monsters, because of the Winds and Snows.

For

For these Caves seem to be made very cunningly, being thatched outwardly with Sea-weeds, like to a ship turned bottom upwards; and that by reason of the Winds vehemency, which are no less formidable in that place, than cruel Tempests raised out of the Sea. There are some certain men amongst them, that are as it were shepherds, that live on the Coasts of the *Caspian* Sea; that stop the passages to their Cottages, with Turf and Sea-Weeds or Mountain Moss, with Twigs fastened together, lest any man coming from Sea, might come to view, and search out them, and their secret places. And it may be they willingly endure this hardness of the Air and Earth, and to live in Dens, that they may be free from the intolerable and insatiable Tributes of Tyrants, to whom the boundless Ocean seems to be but a small Earthen pot. Also *Pliny*, lib. 16. c. 2. relates very strange things concerning Nations living in Caves toward the North, and toward the boiling Sea; namely, that there is a miserable people which have high Hillocks, and green Banks made with their hands, that are higher then the highest flood of the Sea; their Cottages being so made like to men sailing in them, as when ships are drowned by shipwreck; but when the waters go out, they hunt after Fish about their Cottages, which go back with the Sea; and those they thus take, they dry more by the Wind, than the Sun.

## CHAP. III.

Again concerning the cruelty of these Wild Men, &c.

Toward the white Lake of the farthest North parts, where the Dominion of the King and Kingdome of *Sweden* is largest in extent: there dwell fierce people on all sides, who use no other Breast-plates, than Wild Asse, or Elks Skins: Likewise they use Bowes and Lances that are fortified with a most Spear before and behind. For by an admirable agility (as I said before, lib. 1. of the *Scirifimi*) they can turn and wheel about at pleasure on every side, and can avoid or put off any violence; and that chiefly on the tops of Valleys, that are in all places filled continually with thick snows. And we may almost say of these Nations, what the chief Philosopher of the *Scythians* *Anacharsis* writ of their Disciples; that is, that neither any one that comes unto them can fly away, nor can they be taken, nor yet be found, unless they please, and laid hands of. For they have no Cities nor Walls built: they all carry their houses with them: the Foot-Archers living without any bread, but only with Fish and Deer they kill, or their Houses are Wagons and Tents, made either of the dried Skins of Beasts, or of the Barks of Trees: yet in Winter they quarter by the Banks of Waters, and in Summer, amongst Shrubs, and Trees, and shady places, varying their station. Their Caps frequently are Wild-Geese, or Duck-skins, or Cocks; which, as other Fowl, are there found in abundance. There are a World of precious Skins, rather to be bartered for, than to be bought with money.

## CHAP. IV.

Of the Five-fold Speech of the Northern Kingdoms.

BY this diversity of their Habits and Arms, is declared what difference there is of their Countries, Languages, Ages, and Exercises. For there are many great and mighty Lands, as *Lapland*, *Moscovia*, *Swethland*, *Gothland*, the Land of the *Vermori*, *Dalenfes*, of the *Mountainers*, and *Normegians*; whose largeness is extended far and broad, and is greater then all *Italy*, *Spain*, and *France*, joyned together: That *Pliny* did not fallily call them for their undiscovered greatness another World. Therefore it is no wonder, that therein is found the use of five Languages; namely, of the *Northern* people, of the *Laplanders*, or men of *Bothnia*, *Moscovites*, *Russians*, *Finlanders*, *Swethlanders*, *Goths*, and *Germans*. But in these

these cold Countries, some men live to be above 160. years old, as they do also in *England* and *Scotland*, wherein the Venerable Bishop *David* lived to be 170. years of age: also the Exercises of those that dwell in the *Northern* Delarts, are Hunting and Fishing, and they live by bartring with the *Moscovites*. The *Finlanders* live by Husbandry, Fishing, and hewing of Wood: The *Goths* and *Swedes* busie themselves in the same Exercises: The *German* strangers are given to merchandising, and live by gain; they observe the Law of the *Terrigena*, and they import all things that seem to respect a civil kind of life, as silk Cloaths, weaved Garments with Gold, and divers Wines.

What kind of Weapons they use, I shall shew both here partly, and partly underneath; but more at large concerning their Battails in the Fields. But here it is granted, that amongst all the *Northern* people, the *Goths* are the most experienced in Archery, and more nimble at their Slings, as the *Finlanders* are approved for their Bowes.

The *Swedes* use to fight with Axes, and Hatchers, and Speers: their Habit after the antient manner is wont to be short and close about them, except their Hole that are more wide. The *Swedes* use more large Garments almost after the *German* fashion: The *Moscovites* wear long Garments, as the *Greeks* did: of them all, these are the most *Northerly*: But the *Laplanders* are clothed in costly Skins, not for any Ornament, but for Necessity sake.

## CHAP. V.

Of Bartring of Commodities without Moneys.

SINCE all Fraud is naught and detestable in any thing whatsoever, yet it is worse, and more detestable and bitter, the more it is attempted amongst simple people, when any false or adulterate money is paid to them; as I shall shew underneath in my 6th. Book, concerning diversity of moneys. Therefore this Nation of *Laplanders*, or men of *Bothnia*, and wild places, is quiet at home, and is held not to be known to the rest of the World. They are not troubled with false money, for they looking rather to the account of things, than of monies, obtain with pleasure and content what they wish for. And being thus ignorant of the noise of Wars, they live without Seditions, and dwell together without Envy, and communicate all things one to another without Fraud: all the Contention they have is to avoid Poverty, and not to be inamoured of Riches.

These people know not how to be covetous, nor will they vex themselves with any Fraud in Bargaining: Wherefore living without Tumults, they seek onely for moderate Fortunes, that they may not be deprived of a good Conscience, as many rich men are; for it is a heinous offence with them to take any thing by violence, who know not how to deceive any man of his Right: Yet since they are not happy in all things, but that they want other mens helps and commodities to make them so, therefore they tick to traffique in Goods, without money, depending on honesty and faithful change one with another, by a mutual consent; and without uttering any words, they deal justly: not for that they want wit, and have barbarous manners, but because they use a peculiar Language which other Nations can hardly understand. Also, there are places appointed yearly, to perform these businesses, either upon the Plains, or Frozen Lakes, and these are kept as Markets, that they may vend in general all such Commodities that they have gained by their private wits at home or abroad. Nor do they abstain from the like Merchandise, when other men bring to them what they desire.



They have Governours, and they highly respect them choien by the common consent of the people, called *Bergchära*; that is, Mountain-men, to whom they pay many pretious Skins, and divers kind of Fish, as well for Tribute due to the King of *Sweden*, as given by them of their own liberality. And these are clothed in Red, whereby they are known before others. They pay also the like Tributes to the King of *Norway*, and Emperour of *Moscovia*, and are subject to them. They never make Wars against their Neighbours, or any that live far from them, unless they be provoked by great injury; and then also they use not only Arms that Fury can afford, but they fall upon their implacable Enemies with cruel Incantations, stupifying the Limbs of their Enemies; so that they can neither lift up their hands, nor strike with their swords, and can hardly fly from them.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Fairs upon the Ice.

IN this Scheme is demonstrated the most ancient Custome of Marts upon the plain and wide Ice, in many Provinces, and places, that are observed by most rich confluence of Merchants. Their most eminent place is the Archiepiscopal City of *Upsal*, of the Kingd. of *Sweden*: through the middle whereof a most vast River passing, is so mightily frozen with thick Ice, most commonly about the beginning of *February*, that it will bear the weight of infinite multitudes of men, Beasts, and all sorts of Commodities. And such Fairs, even until this day, Antiquity call'd, and yet calleth *Dyting*, that is, the judiciary place of the most prudent Queen *Dysa*, because this most high-spirited, and most wise woman, seeing the infinite multitude of people, by reason of the most cold influence of the Heavens, their Corn and Fruits being exhausted, to be in danger to be starved, she declaring the Necessity, perswaded them rather to go forth of their Native Country, and to seek a seat in other Lands beyond Seas, living peaceably, and when they had found it, to be diligent about it, than to lose their lives by the most horrid censure of some improvident men: yet this going forth of the people, is not from the *Peninsula Scanziana*, whereof *Paulus Diaconus* speaks concerning the *Lombards*. There might be the like cause, but at a very great distance asunder: for by the Command, Order, and Direction, of this Queen *Dysa*, it was varied with an infinite multitude of people, and with power. But since my most dear Brother and Predecessour *Johannes Magnus*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, makes mention of this in his History, I lend the curious Reader to his Book, and return to my Icy Marts; and say, that by an unvaried sign, time out of mind, all the Northern people, and the Nations neer to them, are wont to observe these Marts most strictly, after this manner, That the first Full-Moon shall prescribe an infallible sign and time (which is after the day and midnight of the three Kings in *January*) at which time all men may come to those Fairs, kept at a place very well known to them all: yet observing that point of time, both before, and at, and after that in their Commerce, that the Moon decreasing, may shew every man the way to return to the place from whence he came. The business that Merchants there traffique about, are things of all sorts: Namely, pretious Skins of divers Creatures: also Silver Vessels for the Table, and for the Ornament of insatiable Women: also Corn, Metals, Iron, Copper, Cloth, and things to be eaten; which are more frequently bought by just estimation, than by weight, in a mutual and pleasant agreement; except such things which Providence, which is a wise Defence, perceives, that the Inhabitants may want for their present or future necessities: such as are Corn, and War-Horses, and moit

moist meats; as Butter, Cheese, Lard: the kinds whereof, if War be suspected, are forbidden to be brought forth by Foreign Merchants, or their Factors, by a publick Edict, with a penalty to confirm it. Moreover, in another place upon a Lake congealed, called *Melar*, about the end of *February*, by the Walls of the City *Serengen*, there are Marts held upon the Ice. Again in the middle of *March*, at a place called *Oviken* in the Territories of *Temphria*, in the Mountainous places of *Sweden* and *Norway*, there are Fairs kept upon the Ice; and in very many places about the middle, or end of *May*, Troops of Horses pass over the Frozen Waters, which are very wide, whether they be for War or Peace, when at *Rome* they are wont to feed on delicate Fruits.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the Marriages of the Laplanders by Fire and Flint.

THE Friends and Kindred being present, the Parents confirm their Childrens Marriage by Fire; and by this Steel and Flint, that Fire is stricken out by. For in Fire and Flint, as by a Conjugal Society, the most fit and lucky Marriages are made salt than by any other sign whatsoever. And without Fire the more civil Christian People elsewhere in the North, do not solemnize their Marriage Rites. For every one, both Bridegroom and Bride, according as they are for Eminency and Kinred, command long Torches that are made by wonderful Art, of divers colours. out of tallow Wax, with many coloured silk pieces hanging about them, to be carried before them to the Church as they go, for the Priests Benediction: which also they leave there behind them, with great Oblations, when they have ended their Solemnities: But in the mean while, they that carry the Wax-lights, rend off the silk Ribbands, as in great fury, for a rich booty.

Moreover, Women when they have been delivered of a Child, they come with Wax-candles lighted to give thanks to God; and all faithful Christians also are carried to their Sepulchres with Lights burning; as they came into the World before by Baptism, and a lighted Lamp. But to what belongs to the foresaid Laplanders, and their Custome, I must farther add, that these Marriages being celebrated the way spoken of by Fire, the Kindred bring home the Bride adorned with Ermine and Zabel Skins, upon a ranged or tame Deer, accompanied with a notable company of her Friends, according to the account of her Birth.

And so they bring her into the Bed-Chamber, or Tents, wishing unto her health and fruitfulness, and they use Dancing in the mean time. But the Bridegroom is adorned with Skins of a spotted Beast, or *Mardarius*, walking like to some Noble-man of *Venice*, to be esteemed as much for his rich Furs, as others that are loaded with Jewels, or Gold Chains. But the Bridegroom is so much more to be commended, together with his Bride, and that whole Nation, that they will be joyed together with so great state, not by wandering Lust, but solemn Matrimony.

CHAP. VIII.  
Of Mourning-Dances.

NOr doth this Nation, dwelling under the most cold Northern Climate, where Day and Night divide the Year, seem to remain without joy mingled with sorrow, as if they lived in a Desert. They make merry Bankers, having Minstrels with them, that the Ghosts being more merry, (though they feed on hard meats) may be provoked to dance; which they lead on, when the Musick plays lustily, singing in their Country Ryme, the famous acts of their antient Worthies and Giants; namely, that glory and praise they wan by their valour. Then falling to deep sighs, & groans, they fall down upon the ground in humble manner, and the like is done by many standers by, that they may seem to be conformable to the rest.

At length the Musick raising them, they fall to more delicate meats, playing no more doleful Tunes; which were plaid chiefly for that reason, because they are unable to imitate the famous Deeds of their Ancestors, in any, or but very few things, or be like to them in their Titles; that is, for defending the chastity of Maids, and repelling the violence of Oppressours, where, by a deceitful dissimulation of Governours, these wicked Enormities are committed or suffered to be done, without any punishment for them. Therefore the foresaid people think it far better to dy than to live; for the most part they mourn, when Children are born, and sing at Funerals, as if they were Festival times.

CHAP. IX.  
Of their Exercises by Moon-Lights.

IT is a frequent Question, what the Northern people do, when the nights are long and continual, before and after the Winter Solstice, when by the light of the Sun, men especially under the Pole, should do any work; and again, when they have nothing but Day in Summer, and scarce any Night appears for six moneths; wherefore we must here observe, that Ptolemy testifies in the Second of his *Almagest*, c. 6. that in the 39. parallel, the greatest day is six moneths long; and under this parallel there are men, or countries, farthest toward the Pole; namely, the *Laplanders*, and *Bothwians*, and *Islanders*, that are Islanders. In the 38. Parallel, the greatest day is five months, under which is Sweden, *Helsing*, *Angermannia*, and the more Northern parts of Norway. In the 36. Parallel, the greatest day is reckoned to be three moneths: under this is *Gothia*, *Muscovia*, *Russia*, and *Livonia*. Therefore, they that live in that long Summer light, or opposite darkness, know excellent well, and they are wont profitably to vary their constant actions, when it is night. For instead of day-light, they burn the fat of Sea-Monsters, and with a Wick put to it, they use that in their Houses, Fields, or Woods: they make thin, and prepare the Nerves of Living-Creatures, especially of ranged Deer (whereof I shall speak underneath concerning Living-creatures) for Thread and Webs, and Cloths, to be sowed together, especially of Skins with Wool; because Flax in those far Countries, is neither sowed, nor doth it grow.

Moreover, those that labour in Champion-places, use in the snow, either the said fat of Beasts, or Fish-Oyl (and the Wind can have no power over these) or else they have the clear Moon-light, or reflexion of the Stars; and they can do greater works in the Woods and Fields, when there is Snow and Ice in the Moon-light, and make longer journeys, than they can do in Summer by light of the Sun.

For

For in Summer, the crooked Valleys, and oblique Hills, and steep Rocks, and high Mountains, cannot be passed over with their Wagons, to make Journeys; but in Winter all are plain and fit, to take any kind of Journeys, and they are so agile, and opportunely ordered, that two Oxen will draw more weight (as I said before, and as I shall say hereafter, concerning wars upon the slippery Ice, or beaten snow, than ten horses can do in wagons on land.) But as concerning the great Light, that it may not hurt them while they sleep, they keep Remedies sufficient against it, both at home, and in their Tents; not yet the glittering brightness nor heat of it, do so much hurt to the Inhabitants, as the most cruel Gnats do, which, may be, are a greater plague to the Egyptians, as I shall shew underneath, and speak of the Remedies against them.

CHAP. X.  
Of their Ships, Bands, and Roots bound together.

BEcause that in the Lands farthest North, no Mines of Iron, Copper, or Silver, are yet found out, and they have great necessity for shipping, by reason of the multitudes of Waters, which must be fastened with Iron; therefore when they make little ships, most for the use of Fishermen, they most ingeniously put together the cleft boards of Pine and Fir-trees, made into thin Planks, whereof they have plenty in their Woods; and these they fasten without any Iron Nails with the pliable green Roots of Trees, as with Ropes, as Spiders do their Webs. Others bind their Vessels with Withs, or Twigs of Poplar Trees, and other Trees, except Oke, which grows not near them within two hundred *Gothick* or *German* miles. But Fir and Pine-Trees there, are so straight and high, that they are most fit for every necessary use, and for gain, for those who desire it, when they can be sold to Forraign Merchants. Others, for making ships, fasten the Planks together with the Nerves of Beasts, converted and bruised, especially of ranged Deer, which they dry by the Wind and Sun; but these Nerves are like Hairs, drawn off from the thinner Nerves, which are made clean for to make Thread, and are as it were the Excrecence of them; as I shall shew elsewhere, *lib. de Animal*, concerning the use of Ranged Deer. But all their ships, however they are made or joyned, are most diligently smeared with Pine-tree pitch (whereof there is plenty in abundance) and they are fastened with Wooden pins, within and without, where ever need is. Their ships are very short, not deep, but very broad, in a due proportion, and they are kept to sail with, in Tempests, because the Waves rise not high, but are frothy; which froth is raised, by reason of the stones that lie hid under the Waters; and they commonly yield to the Waves, like to a Sack of Leather, and to the reflexion of the Waters, because they are not fastened with hard and unconquerd Iron, but with soft tough Twigs and Nerves. And these will last long against the injury of the Elements, because of the imbred Pitch.

They use for Anchors crooked Roots of strong Wood, bound with Poplar, or Birch-Withs, that are as long as Ropes, and their Sails are Woollen Cloth, and Barks of Trees, especially on standing waters, but very seldom on the salt-sea. They call these ships *Sentes*; as there is a long kind in the *Bothwick* Sea, and fresh waters, called *Haapar*, that is most carefully fastened without any Iron. And this, as it is wonderful long, so it is monstrous swift, that it seems almost to fly with any light touch. It serves onely on swift descending Rivers for Summer-fishing.

In which kind of ship I was carried most dangerously. *Anno* 1518, between the Mountainous Rivers descending: so was I contrived to perform my publick occasions, to trust my life and safety to a brittle piece of Wood: the more dangerous was the passage, as there were Marks set on the shore, where people of great note had been drowned before by the force, of the Rivers.

### CHAP. XI.

#### *Of the Art of shooting with the Bow.*

THE Art of Shooting with the Bow, is a Natural Profession all the *Northern* people follow, especially with Bows fitted for every Age, Time, Place, and Occasion; and this in their first Age, wherein their careful Parents teach all their Children of both Sexes, but chiefly their Boys, how to hold, raise, or depress, or turn obliquely their Hand-bows, to shoot their Arrows with (for other kind of Arrows they use not) and if a Dart or Arrow, missing the Mark, is lost between the snow or grass, or fall down into shrubs or trees, that it cannot be found; to recover it, they shoot one or more Arrows after it, at length or upright, to find it for that which was first shot, is to be found not far from it. And this way is observed by all *Northern* Archers to find out their shafts. That Children may hit the mark, they lay down for them a white Girdle (which they take great delight in) or new Bows; and likewise for Maids a Linnen Garment. And they grow so skilful, that at a great distance they will hit a Half-penny or a Needle, so far as they can see it, infallibly; as I saw it, *Anno* 1518, when I was in their Country.

The People are commonly small of stature, and of small courage, because they live without Cities or Castles, either in Villages or Tents, or in Caves or Delarts: some of them make their Houses in Trees, growing square, that they may not be suffocated in the field by the thick fall of snow, or devoured by hungry Beasts, that come in an invincible number; upon which occasion, there is great care taken for childing Women, and young Children, which they will pursue more greedily, as the most dainty meat; as I shall shew underneath concerning the Nature of Wolves.

The Women and Maids of these Countries are very fruitful and fair, chiefly for that cause, that they are accounted fairer for White and Red (which is Nature's chief Workmanship) they neither know, nor will know Painting, if they were not comely by Nature: There are also Young men and Boys, which the Parents cloth with dried Skins of Beasts, chiefly of young Bears. And it is not blamed in the Nation, that is so bred in simple manners, and innocent behaviour.

### CHAP. XII.

#### *Of the Hunting of the Laplanders.*

HAVING spoken in my first Book, c. 2. of the *Scirginni*, *Biarmienesi*, and *Finmark* men, and of the life and manners of them; I shall here add how they run swiftly after Beasts, with Bows and Arrows, over Valleys and Snowie Mountain tops, up and down, upon bending downwards broad slippery boards, bo and to their feet.

The Women shoot their Arrows with their Hairs hanging about their Ears; And no wonder, because those that dwell under the Pole, when the Woods are so green, there are found such abundance of Wild-Beasts amongst them, that men alone, unless women help, are not sufficient to hunt them.

There:

Therefore the Women hunt them as nimble, and may be more nimble than the men do. But the man divides the prey, and puts it on the Spirit to roit, and dispoeth of what must be given to those of the Houe, or to Neighbours in liberality.

Nor is this cunning to hunt Wild-Beasts, either by Snares or openly, used; as also upon Birds of divers kinds, that are found in vast Delarts, whose softer Feathers serve for their Beds, and their harder Quills for the weaving of strings. But they more frequently feed on Roit, than boyled Meats. The Skins of Beasts they make fit for their Childrens bodies, and Birds skins for to cover their heads: wherefore some have foolishly believed, that their bodies are hairy like to Wild Beasts: which may be proceeds from ignorance, or pleasure that many take to speak things incredible of remote Lands, as *Paulus Jovius* thinks fit to do.

### CHAP. XIII.

#### *Of Horses passing over Snowy Mountains.*

HORSES and men pass, as upon Bucklers of War; for there are other Mountains that are Limits between the *Northern* Kingdoms of *Sweden* and *Norway*, called *Doffrini*, and some others, that in Winter are so covered with deep thick Snows, that Travellers cannot pass over them the usual way: But that homebred Factors may by their Wit overcome all difficulties, and lighten the Burdens by Art: they bind to their own feet, and to their Horses feet, hurdles or bows made with light broad Cork, or Bark of Tree, and to without fear of sinking they can with a great Burden go over the Mountains of Snow, and they will go but a days Journey that is, two Mountain miles, (which is 12 *Italian* miles) in a day, because the days are short. But in the night, the Moon shining most bright, they will go twice or thrice as far. Nor is that unfitly done, since by the reflex of the Snow, the Light of the Moon enlightens the high and low fields, and steep Mountains, that they can discern Wild-Beasts afar off, and avoid them: amongst which Mountains, Wolves (when the Cold is very great) come in troops, especially in *January* (and these are the most dangerous, as I shall shew underneath, concerning the danger of Wolves. But the thing that are carried by such ingenious labour, are Salt, hard Iron, Linnen and Woollen Cloth, and some where Mineral Stones of Silver, Copper, and precious skins: But that Horses may be better provided for their passage over the Snow, they daily lead them over Snowy Valleys, from their first years, with Baskets tied to their feet, with a light burden, that they may learn to carry greater burdens. Also, those that lead them, support themselves with Baskets, bound under their feet, and a Staff, broad at the end, that by the Preambles, for that time, they may escape imminent death, and great necessity. For it falls out with them that travel, that when the South Wind blows, the Snow grows so soft that horse or man letting their feet upon it, unless they provide, as I said before, against it, they will fall into an open Pit, and no Man and Beast can help, unless there be more company that are faithful.

### CHAP. XIV.

#### *Of the dangerous passage between the Mountains.*

THERE is yet greater danger that attends such who travel over hollow Mountains, because the Winds blow so strong there, which seem to be raised by the concurrence of small Snow, that unless men carry Spades to dig, and open the way, they can scarce get out of the high Mountains, or deep Valleys.

The

The principal of these Mountains are *Doffra, Schars, Sula, Harvilla*, and many such like: from the Bottoms, or Roots whereof, vast Rivers run forth, some to the East, some to the West: For the Mountains are continued from South to North, as a line drawn in form of a crooked bunched back; and they have their Names from the Provinces, Rivers, or form of Places, or Beasts that use to dwell in them: as from Bears, Wolves, Stags, or Beavers, and other kinds of living creatures that are all hairy, which according to the quality of the place, are most exceeding well covered against the Cold. Therefore Lions, Camels, Apes, Asses, or Mules, if they be carried thither, can scarce live there: yet the Inhabitants will go into these Mountains in Winter, carrying no small Burdens with ranged Deer, like yoked Oxen, almost two hundred *Italian* miles. One man keeps 40. ranged Deer, and each of these will carry two hundred pound weight and more.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of the Law of killing Crows.*

There is a Law made in *Iceland*, that is, the *Land of Ice*, that was of old, and is now subject to the Kingdom of *Norway*, that whosoever shall kill a hurtful Beast, should have a set reward from the Kings Treasury, or Officer there, according to the quality of the body of the Beast slain, and cruel Nature of it. Since therefore white Crows there are more cruel than in other Countries, to kill young Lambs and Pigs, flying fiercely upon them, and scratching them with their claws. Young men that dwell there, use themselves to that labour, that they may revenge this Depopulation, to kill many Crows with their Arrows, and they onely tie their backs upon strings, and shew them to the Governours, for to demand their reward: and they largely reward them, giving them as many Arrows as they shot, and killed withall. And this is observed also concerning all hurtful Creatures in the *Northern* Climate, saving that the Skins of great Bears, especially wild ones, are laid for the Priests to tread on, at the feet of their sacred Altars, that the Cold may not hurt them.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Baptizing of Children of the Wild Inhabitants.*

Though I have said much of the Idolatry and Superstitious Worship of the people, that live farthest North, and how there is hope, that when they shall hear the true Gospel preached, they will make hast to joyn themselves to the Congregation of faithful Christians: yet the pious perswasion of the Catholick Priests, hath already induced many of these wild people to come in; and there is greater possibility, that henceforth all Errors being laid aside elsewhere, they will come with one consent. But the reason why they seem to delay is very evident, they living above two hundred *Italian* miles from the Churches of the Christians: to which, because of that vast distance, they can seldom come: yet such as have yielded to the Christian form, are found to be most obedient; for though the distance be so great, yet once or twice a year they visit their Churches where they were baptized, and they bring their sucking Children in Baskets, bound on their backs, and other Burdens, and Gifts of Skins, especially costly Skins, to pay to the Priests for their Tithes.

But this discommodity of distance is lamentable, not onely of the *Bothni*, that dwell toward the North, but also of the *Vermi* Westward, for it hinders their conversion to the Faith.

And

And by reason of this, the Presbyters very seldome: and the Prelates never pass into those Desarts, because of the difficult Passages, and so full of danger.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Conversion of North and East Finland, and their great Hospitality.*

This, the farthest Country Northward, was formerly seduced by Pagan Superstition, as many Lands neer unto it were also; and so coming from the way of truth, was contumelious against God, and injurious to Neighbors: But after that, two most famous Lights, *Ericus* King of *Sweden*, and blessed *Henry* Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, had subdued them by a powerful hand to the Christian Faith, and Kingdom of *Sweden*, in the Year of Grace, 1155. first offering them peace, which they despised; and when they had built Temples, and preferred Priests to instruct that people, they became the chief Lovers of all Vertues, but chiefly of Liberality and Hospitality, that the Inhabitants used towards Strangers and Forraigners, with exceeding good-will. They are amongst themselves gentle and modest, and slow to anger; and if they be long urged, they make good their slowness by their great revenge. They dwell in Parishes and Villages distinctly. They have built magnificent Churches, and they exceedingly endeavour to build more new ones. They yield utter veneration to their Priests, & pay their Tythes of all things. & they are again instructed by them in the law of God, the Preacher standing upon some high place, as the manner is, that rooting out their former Errours, they may cheerfully, and with a good will follow what is good. The Inhabitants of the *West-Bothnia* are held to be like these, who wanting Scholastick Discipline, are taught by the Law of Nature to detest Vices, and to embrace Vertues. For they find that such who live uprightly, and hurt none, abound with all goods; and on the contrary, for those detestable Crimes, Fornications, Adulteries, Thefts, Murders committed, Birds and Beasts, have oft-times forsaken the Woods; Fishes, the Waters, and would not come again, untill such time as the Divine Majesty offended, was pacified by Prayers and Benedictions of the sacred Clergy.

## The End of the Fourth Book.

Olaus

# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSALA:

CONCERNING  
The Northern Giants.

*The Epitome of the Fifth Book.*

## CHAP. I. Of Giants.

**T**Hough sacred and profane Histories, do plainly mention the great Deeds of Champions and Giants, and clearly shew what, and in what time and place of the World they did them, and how they lived: yet will it not be unprofitable to add something more to these, which were dug forth of Rocks, and stones in the North Countries; and to make those things manifest to the World, that are related in Books by the most ancient, and very rare Writers; wherefore those farthest Countries, which are elsewhere marked in my Map of Gothland; as Finmark, Biarmia, Scythia, Helgingia, &c. do every where give such evident Monuments of Giants, to the curious Searchers and Enquirers after them, that they are forced to admire and believe those so high Piles of Stones, and vast heaps of Mountains to have been cast up; not by any Work of Nature, but by the monstrous forces of men, even in the Fields, Woods, and Mountains of Sweithland, Gothland, Norway, where the like stones are to be seen. But what Saxo Grammaticus, the most diligent Writer, speaks concerning his Country of Denmark, in this point, the curious Reader may find, if he (at his leisure) look at the end of the Preface of his History, and he shall understand that Denmark had formerly Giants that wrought in it; as is testified by the exceeding great stones placed on the Tombs and Vaults of the Antients.

If any man doubt whether this was done by a monstrous force, let him behold the tops of some Mountains, and let him say, if he can, who carried such huge stones up to the tops of them. For every man will observe, that takes notice of this Miracle, that it is not to be thought that a Weight that could not be stirred, or very hardly, upon plain ground, could by the one's labour of ordinary men be carried up to the top of such high Mountains, or that the usual force of men could bring it thither: But whether the Giants alter the Flood, were the Authors of such things, or some mighty strong men above other men, he saith he can collect little from the Danish Antiquities. Perhaps, if he had searched the Rocks and Stones of the Upper Sweden and Gothland, he by his admirable Wit might have conveyed to Posterity, the most famous deeds of the Antients: since Sweithland and Gothland have had Kings and Princes 1370. years, before that Dan their first King began to rule in Denmark; whose magnificent Deeds are carved in Stones, and the curiosity of our Times sees it: yet Saxo distinguisheth, that formerly there were three sorts of Mathematicians, which went under the name of Giants and Champions, and these wrought strange Miracles, by their several Enchantments.

The first were men of a monstrous kind, called Giants, who were greater bodies than men are:

The second were Naturalists, who had a Divining Art; who the lesser they were in body, in respect of the former, the greater they were above them in the Quickness of their Wit. Between these, and the Giants, there was a continual War, till these conquered the Giants by force of Arms, and gat to themselves a Right to Rule, with an Opinion of Divinity.

The third sort sprang up from the copulation between the former two; and these were neither equal to them in greatness of bodies, nor for skill in Arts; yet these were conceived to be Divine, by those whole Minds were deluded by Deceits.

## CHAP. II. Of the difference of Giants and Champions.

**T**HERE was formerly in the Kingdome of Helgingia (which is toward the North, and now under the obedience of the King of Sweden) a Giant, called Haribennus, who was nine Cubits long, and he had twelve Champions that were his Comrades that were very tall, yet not half so tall as he. There was another called Starchasterus, who was most famous in Europe for his frequent Victories, as I shall shew underneath. There was also Arngirius and Arverodius, of whose excellent Deeds I shall speak underneath: yet, lest I should seem to borrow Examples of Greatness and Fortitude from the Antients only, I shall produce some modern men, both from the Mines, and other Provinces of Sweden and Gothia, who were so strong, that each of them could lift up a great Ox or Horse upon his shoulders, and could carry an Iron Vessel of six hundred, eight hundred, or a thousand pound weight, some Furlongs: and there were some Maids could lift the same, and there was one seen, who met an armed man on horseback, and by nimbleness and force he cast him to the ground.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the Sobriety of Giants and Champions.

THat most famous Writer of the *Danish* affairs, *Saxo*, alleaged before, and who shall be often alleaged hereafter, saith, that amongst other mighty strong men in the *North*, who were great as Giants, there was one *Starchaterus Thavestus*; whose admirable and heroick Vertues are so worthily extolled by him, that there were scarce any like him in those dayes in all *Europe*, or in the whole World, or hardly are now, or ever shall be. And amongst other Vertues he ascribes to that high spirited man, he mentions his sobriety, which is principally necessary for valiant men; and I thought fit to annex that peculiarly to this relation, that we may, as in a glasse, see more clearly the luxury of this lustful age. For as the same *Saxo* testifies, that valiant *Starchaterus* loved frugality, and loved not immoderate dainties. Always neglecting pleasure, he respected Vertue, imitating the ancient manners of Continency; and he desired a homely provision of his Diet; he hated costly Suppers: wherefore hating profusion in Diet, and feeding on smoaked and rank meat, he drove away Hunger with the greater appetite, as his meat was but of one kind, lest he should remit and abate the force of his true Vertue, by the contagion of outward Delights, as by some adulterate sweetness, or should abrogate the Rule of ancient Frugality, by unusual Superstitions for Gluttony. Moreover he could not endure to spend roast and boyled meat all at one Meal; holding that to be a monstrous Food, that Cookery had tempered with divers things together: Wherefore, that he might turn away the Luxury of the *Danes*, that they borrowed from the *Germans*, that made them so effeminate, amongst the rest he made Verses in his Countrey Language; Omitting many of them, he saith thus:

### Starchaterus his Verses of Frugality.

Strong men do love raw meat; nor do they need  
Or love, on dainty Cates and Feasts to feed,  
War is the thing they most delight to breed,  
You may sooner bite off their Beards than are  
Full hard, and stiff with bright red rugged hair,  
Than their wide mouths leave Milk their daily fare:  
We fly from dainty Kitchins, and do fill  
Our Bellies with rank Meats, and Countrey Smells  
Of old men fed on boyld Meats gainst their will,  
A Dish of Grasse that had no smack did hold,  
Hags and Sheeps Flesh together, hot or cold;  
Nor to pollute their meats with mingling were they bold:  
He that eats Cream we bid him for to be  
Strong, and to have a mind that's bold and free,  
Think on Froto, revenge his Fathers death, as he,  
Each Coward and faint-hearted Fool shall dy:  
Nor shall he ever scape, though he do fly,  
Or hid in Valleys, or close Dens, he ly,  
Eleven Lords, of elder time we were,  
That waited on King Hachon, and at fare  
Helgo Begachus sat first in order there.

First

First Dish he eat was a dry'd Gammon, and  
A Crust as hard as Flint he took in hand;  
This made his hungry yawning Stomach stand,  
No man at Table fed on stinking meat,  
But what was good and common each man eat,  
Content with simple fare, though we're so great.  
The People Forraign Food did all decline,  
The greatest were not Gluttons, nor yet fine,  
The King himself full sparingly would dine.  
No Drinks were used, that of Honey best,  
Beer was their common Liqueur, Ceres owest,  
They fed on Meats were little boyld, no roast,  
Each Table was with Meats but meanly drest,  
Few Dishes on't, Antiquity thought best;  
And in plain Fare each held himself most blest.  
There were no Flagons, nor broad Bowls in use,  
Nor painted Dishes grown to great abuse,  
Each, at the Tap did fill his wooden crosse.  
No man admirer of the former days,  
Did use Tankards, or Oxeys; for their ways  
Were sparing, almost empty Dishes this bewrays.  
No Silver Bajons, or guilt Cups were thought  
Fit by the Host, and to the Table brought,  
To garnish, or by Ghests were vainly sought.

Wherefore, by such Arguments, he induced many to Temperance and Sobriety, and other Vertues, that many were observed never to have been drunk, left the chief stay of Fortitude, Continnence, should be overcome by Luxury. And their mind was so far from Lasciviousness, that they scorned to behold Players & Jesters, or to provide any dainty Fare, or to desire what was largely prepared in anothers Kitchen, or to taste of it, if it were offered: nor would they make themselves effeminate by any pernicious pleasure, that they might not soil the nerves of true Vertue, or their gallantry in War with any blemish of Vices.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Virtues of the most valiant Starchaterus.

HAVING Sobriety (as I said but now) he could enlarge the other Vertues by it, as being a fit Band to unite them together; and as all men confesse, who look clearly into the Actions of the Heathens: and he had been more famous for his deerts, had he been as neer allied to the Christian Doctrine, as he was born near his Nativity: Yet he lived three mens ages a valiant and unconquered Champion, being endued with a wonderful and incredible Vertue; and he was far taller, than common men; in bigness like as a Giant, so that he had a body answerable for bulk, to the greatness of his forces, and abilities of his mind. He was thought to yield to no mortal man for his Vertue; whose Fame is read so wide, that the most famous opinion of his Deeds and Name yet remains. For in all the North Countries, he got most specious Monuments for himself. First, in *Vichari* in *Norway*, he dedicated the beginnings of his glorious Actions to the favour of the Gods, with the slaughter of a King: Then playing the Pirat, having subdued the Provinces very far, he invaded *Russia*, and conquer'd *Floccus* the King of it, and spoiled him of a vast Treasure. By reason of these so notable first Military Actions, being called for by the Champions of *Biarma*, who were then held to be the most excellents, when he had done many memorable Deeds amongst 'em,

K 2

he entred



entred into the Borders of the *Sweens*; and so after seven years Warfare ended, he went for *Denmark*, (then for *Ireland*, that the first dwellings of men might not be left untouched by him; there he fought with two most excellent Champions, and conquer both. Then he haltned to fight with *Vissinus*, a sword-plaier of great note in the Eastern parts of *Russia*. For that *Vissinus* vexed all the Provinces, farr and neer, with all sorts of Injuries; and he ravished the Wives of noble men, by violence when their Husbands looked on. But *Starchaterus* (like another *Hercules*) being provoked with the rumour of this wickednesse, to take away the Authour of it, he went for *Russia*; and he challenged the Ravisher to a single Combat, and overcame him. Then travelling farther Eastward, he came to *Constantinople*, where he encountred and worsted a mighty famous Gyant, whose name was *Tanna*, who relied much on the strength of his body, and he forced him to wander into unknown parts of the Earth under the name of an exiled man, when therefore no contrary fortune could deprive him of the victory, he went into the parts of *Poland*, and conquer'd a notable Champion called *Vasche*, or *Vasza*, in a single Duel. And not long after he fought with *Hama* a Master of defence, who was most famous amongst the Saxons for his skill at all sorts of exercises: and it is said, he was knocked down at first with the fist of the forelaid *Hama*, that kneeling on his knees, his chin kissed the ground: but he required this fall with a notable reveng; for so soon as he rose from his knees and had the liberty of his hands to draw out his sword, he cut *Hama's* body in two: and by that victory he made the Saxons subject to the Danes; who so cruelly abused their Government, that they forced them to pay yearly the fore-singer of each arm, as a Tribute of their servitude. But this violent Government endured not long.

## CHAP. V.

Of the Patronage he afforded to the afflicted.

Being humbly entreated by *Helgon* King of *Norway*, (who was to fight with 9, most noted Champions for their strength, on the very day he was married, being challenged by them to fight a Duell, who were resolved to take his Wife from him) to lend his assistance in this distresse, he so easily yeecied to his requests, that *Helgon* going before him to the place appointed for the fight; some dayes after he began his journey, he is reported to have gone as many miles in one day on foot, as the others rode in 12 days before. Being demanded by the Champions, Whether he were able to fight; He answered, that not onely one of them, but all might come and try his strength. The next day he came into the field of his Adversaries with (corn and late under the Cliff of a Rock, opposing his body to the Winds and Snow; then, as if it were Spring-time to walk abroad, he laid aside his cloths, and sought for seas in them. He call also his Purple Robe that *Helga* gave unto him, (for that was the name of the Kings Wife) into the Briars, lest he should seem to be shelter'd by his Garments, against the violence of hail. Then the Champions going to the Mountain over against him, late down, having found a place where the wind did not blow against them; and they kindled a fire to keep away the Cold. Then when they saw not *Starchaterus*, they send one to the top of the Hill, to stand and watch for his coming: He in the declining part of the Mountain spied an old man all covered over with snow up to the shoulders: and he asked him, Whether he be the man that must fight the Duels promised. And when *Starchaterus* said he was the same, the rest came, and demand, whether he would fight with them single, or all at once. But he replied, How often do these sad Dogs bark at me, I use to drive them away, not single, but altogether: signifying thereby, that he had rather fight with them all at once, than one by one. For he thought

first to despise his Adversaries with words, before they came to fight. When the fight began, he slew six of them, and received no wound himself: but the three that were left, though they wounded him with many wounds, he destroyed like their fellows: But these wounds he committed onely to a Countrey-mans son to cure, for the Veneration of his Office: For he restored parts of his stomach that were torn off, to their former places, and he bound up his Guts that were fallen out, with Twigs: Yet that he might not leave the civility of the young man unrewarded, he gave his Coat he had cast into the Briars, as a Reward of his pains.

## CHAP. VI.

Of the Exercises of the said Starchaterus.

W Hilest *Starchaterus* was in War with the King of *Sweden*, and that he understood how *Ingellus* the most petulant King of *Denmark*, who was a slave to his pleasures, & embraced Vices for Virtues & intermitting the Duties of Kingly Majesty, was become a torrid Bond-slave of Luxury: he was sorry that so hopeful a young man had laid aside to be the sonne of so famous a Father: Whereupon, when he was to go to *Denmark*, he took on his back a huge Load of Coals, as a rich burden; & being asked of thoe that met him, why he carryed such an unusual burden, He said, he would make the dulnesse of *Ingellus* become more acute with his Coles. And he said no more than he performed. For so much did the admonition of this most strong and eloquent man prevail, that *Ingellus* from an effeminate and laivious slave of pleasures, became to be magnanimous and virtuous, and he slew thoe that slew his Father, whom he had exalted to be his greatest Friends. This being ended, *Starchaterus* rejoicing that he hearkened to his advice, and returning him thanks, it is reported that he writ many Verses in the manner following, in commendation of the old Military Discipline,

When I was young, and first did follow thee,  
Warlike King Hacho, pleasures were to me  
Unpleasant; and nought else but wars agree:  
Both Mind and Body I did exercise,  
Profane things, pleasing Stomach, I despise.  
Martial Affairs I loved, and Wars adore,  
My Cloaths were harsh, and Garmments used before;  
I seldom rested, short sleeps, labour great;  
Nor let me idle be, 'twas little I did eat;  
Nor as some use that Gluttons are, to feed:  
Who against Reason cram when there's no need.  
One of these cloth'd in soft and rich Array,  
Turns his swift horse about, and doth display  
His long Locks, and so lets his hair to be  
Loose hanging down; and in Games delights he:  
Of playing Bankrupt, leads a large life:  
His Tongue is verbal, breaks the Lams by strife.  
By force of Arms invades them: th' Innocent  
He doth oppress, and feeds with false intent  
On others' moneys, Whores and Gluttons are  
His company, he loves still dainty fare;  
He follows Whores, as doth the Snake the grass,  
Whilest Wars are hid in Peace, he dies an Ase.

Should

*Should he within a Valley disappear,  
No Armour can fence him who Death doth fear;  
Each man must die, Death cannot we eschew;  
But I who war'd with all the World, I knew  
Shall die an easie death, and to the Stars  
Exalted be by sickness, not by scars.*

Moreover, his mind was so far from lasciviousness, that he would not endure to be a spectator of it. He never prefer'd idleness before business, and he would never yield to the least Luxury, despising effeminate and fearful men: Wherefore in War he caught any Stage-Players, Jesters, or Parasites, he took care to have them slain: holding it better to punish these light persons by Troops, and make them ridiculous by losing their Skins, than to condemn a man to lose his head for a criminal matter. And thus he was content to punish whole Companies of these Jesters, and base condition'd people, with reviling and scoffing words; and he would not lend his famous hands to destroy such beastly men. Starchaterus himself was present in that most famous Swedes War, that Ringo King of Sweden fought against Harald King of Denmark, and he was the chief Pillar there. For there is no mention made of any greater Battail in the North Countries than that. The King of Sweden conquered, and ruled the Danes: There were killed of the Swedes twelve thousand tall gallant men, and of the Danes thirty thousand of the Nobility, and the number of the Commons that were slain on both sides was numberless.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the sum of the Acts of Starchaterus.*

**L**ASTLY, after his brave Acts, growing old, he briefly related all his gallant practices, and Warlike Feats, in these Verses following; as Saxo sets them down.

*But if (I recollect) when I was born,  
The Fate: so Warlike Fates did me adorn  
To live and die in war, a bloody life  
To lead, always to live in Camps and deadly strife,  
Peace I abhor'd, and Mars his Banner I  
Was shelter'd under, dangers passing by,  
Where I grew old, so fight I thought it good,  
And honourable Life to shed mens blood,  
To use my self to slaughter; I have seen  
Kings frequent in war, and the fields was green  
Water'd with blood, Helmets and Targets broke,  
And Coats of Mail shiver'd with Spears stroke.  
Breasts yield unto the Sword, and the wild Beasts  
Fed high with Soldiers, as at dainty Feasts,  
That lay unburied here a strong man  
A Helmet cuss in sunder, and one ran  
His Spear through th' Helmet: just into the Crown,  
When I through dangers brought Olon's son down,  
For every sword was broken in that fight,  
Or made all yield: that stood against us might;*

*So strongly did men strike. What when I stood,  
With wooden feet, o're shores and paths bestrew'd  
With Spears: innumerable for to run;  
And when o're fields to pass I first begun,  
Where Calthrops cast, did wound my tender feet,  
With wooden Skales I arm'd them, as 'twas meet.  
So slew I Hama, who was strong and so  
The Cutii conquer'd were, and brought below.  
When Rinus Fiebox son commanded, then  
I won the Conquest o're th' Eithian men,  
And such as Gemgalla breeds: next I came  
To Thole marchi, where my wounded head  
Bruis'd with Battel-Axes soundly bled,  
And here I learn'd, what good there is in Arms,  
To keep men out of danger, and from harms,  
Which Peasants much invites: the Germans I  
Brought to their condign punishment; and why?  
Because I slew thy sons, Swertingus, that  
Were guilty of Frothos death, which begas  
Revenge in me, to help my Masters wrongs,  
When they were drunk, which unto me belongs.  
Nor was that less, when seven Brothers were  
Slain by my hand in tender Virgins care, &c..*

Without doubt, this man was worthy of all Warlike commendation, who excelled not only in vigour of mind, but strength of his body, and exceeding swiftness of foot, that in one day making haste, he came on foot from upper Sweden into Denmark, which others can scarce perform in twelve days, going continually.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the most great and terrible War between the Swedes and Goths, where Starchaterus was General against the Danes.*

**S**INCE Saxo Sialandicus the most excellent Writer of the Danish History, hath written in his 8. Book, the Cause, Beginning, and Progress, and end of the most fierce War between Haquinus Ringo, King of the Swedes and Goths, and Harald Hildetan King of Denmark, and made it most known to all succeeding Ages; and after him, five hundred years being over, Albertus Cranzim hath fallen casually upon the same Battail: And last of all, my most dear Brother & Predecessour, John Magnus, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, hath lately written of this vast and incomparable War in his Histories of the Swedes and Goths, of set-purpose, and most truly, (as a faithful Historian should write) I suppose it belongs to me only, to make mention in this place, of that formidable Conflict that was between the Champions and the Giants, especially because in no battail of the Northern Kingdoms, and scarce ever in all Europe so many valiant men on both sides, Captains at Sea and Land, were ever read of, to have fought with so much vehemency and heat of War for 7. years together, as we read in Histories that agree well concerning those Nations above written, and their Kings and Potentates. First, the famous Warriours are reckoned up; from whence, and of what Race they came that were the chief on the Danes part. Amongst which, there were also two Women, to whom Nature had given a manlike Courage, and Art, and Experience had bestowed Skill upon them in Wars; these were Hatha and Vifna, two Noble-women of Slavonian Race: of which the one was a chief Captain, and the other was exceeding well skilled in Warlike Affairs, that he was chief

chief Standard-bearer, and she used that and her right hand in battail, when *Starchaterus* came on with the Army of the *Swedes and Goths* (as I shall speak underneath) and she fought as a private souldier. Also, on the contrary side, the most noted Captains are mentioned, especially because *Starchaterus* was the principal Leader of the *Swedish* King *Ringon's* Army; and in his Army marched *Vegbiorga*, a Maid, that was a cruel fighter (as I shall shew by and by) The number of the ships for King *Ringon*, on the *Swedes and Goths* part, were 2500. But the *Danes* were not inferior to them: Wherefore, both Armies being provided sometimes Wedge-fashion, and sometimes like a Half-Moon, and all other things requisite for the War; and when the Trumpets sounded, there was a most sharp Battail fought by these two most valiant Nations, with so great heat striving to invade and defend their Kingdoms; that you would think, as *Saxo* saith, that the Heavens fell upon the Earth suddenly, and that the Woods and Fields sank down, that all things were mingled, and the old confusion of things was returned again; and that divine and humane things were confounded in this tumultuous Tempest; and that all things together were drawn to their ruine. For when they came within shot one of another, the intollerable ratling of their Armour filled all places with an incredible noise. The very vapour of their wounds made a sudden Cloud to darken the Ayr, and the day was covered as with Hail by their Weapons. And the Slingers did no small service in the business. But when a bullet was shot out of Engines, or thrown by the hand, they fought hard by with Swords and Clubs, full of Nails, and then was there no little blood shed: When therefore they were weary, they began to sweat, and their Spears were heard to rattle afar off. There *Starchaterus*, who first writ the manner of this War in his Countrey Language, fighting first in the Army, mentions the Lords of King *Harald, Hun, and Elli, and Hart, and Burgha*, whom he slew, and how he cut off *Visna's* right hand. Also a Maid that fought in the *Swedes* Army, called *Vegbiorga*, slew the Champion *Sab*: and she also was killed by another Enemy standing by. For the *Guthones*, who were cunning Bow-men, bent their Bows so forcibly, that they would shoot through their Armour: and there was no other cause of the slaughter more effectual. Their Arrows pierced their Coats of Male, and Helmets, as naked Bodies. One *Ubbo* was killed, shot through with 144 shafts, when he fought valiantly; For by the exceeding force of the Archers, the *Dalacarli* coming on, the Battail still grew fresh again against the *Danes*. At length the *Danish* King *Harald* was thrown out of his Coach, he was killed with a Club by his own Coachman, and thirty thousand Lords in his Army were slain, and twelve thousand such Lords of the *Goths and Swedes* parts; and of the common people a number numberless. And by the command of *Ringon*, King of *Sweden*, was *Hathu* made chief of *Denmark*, there being forty six set to govern it: to her *Olo* succeeded, who was slain by *Starchaterus*, who was brought in by the Spies, and had corrupted them with money.

## CHAP. 9.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the Death of *Starchaterus*.

LAST of all, being weary with so long life and labour, lest he should by default in his old age, lose his former Honours and Renown, he thought it would be honourable for him, if he should willingly destroy himself, and hasten his own death by his own Free-will. For of old time, it was held dishonourable for Warriors to die in their beds: Wherefore he wore hanging about his neck 120. pound weight of Gold; that he had long before won for killing King *Olo*, for with this he thought to hire one to kill himself, supposing nothing to be more fit, than to spend that Gold that he got for anothers death, to have himself killed. Whereupon meeting *Hatherus*, a Noble man, whose Father he had killed, he exhorted him, not to fear to kill him, that had killed his Father, and he promised to him, if he would do so; that he should have the Gold he wore about his neck: and the more to stir up his mind against himself, he is reported to have said this Exhortation:

*Hather, Besides I owe Levins thy Father,  
Do thou kill me, that will die, the rather;  
Slay an old man, let thy Sword revenging it,  
My mind desires a brave hand, that shall  
To be my Executioner: For  
To die by Cowards hand, I do abhor;  
Tis just with free mind to prevent my Fate:  
What I fly you cannot, you anticipate,  
Young Trees are fostered, old must be down hew'd,  
He's Nature's servant, who doth this conclude;  
To ease up what cannot stand, that Death's best  
That's sought, when life's a burden, he is blest  
That loves his End, and seeks a Funeral;  
Long life brings grief, Death puts an end to all.*

Having said thus, he pulls money out of his purse: But *Hatherus* being moved as well to get the money, as to revenge his Fathers Death, perceiveth that he will do as he entreated him, and will expect no reward from him: *Starchaterus* presently offers him a sword, and laid his neck down; and that his Executioner might not be fearful and faint-hearted, in performing that Office, he exhorts him to be bold; saying more, *That if before his body felt, he could leap between his head and his body, he should be innocent.* Whereupon *Hatherus*, with a sharp Sword, beheaded the old man: the head cut off, and lying on the Earth, is reported to have bit the ground, shewing the fierceness of his mind, by the fierceness of his mouth then dying. But the Executioner, fearing some fraud in the promises, abtained from leaping; for if he had done so rashly, it may be he might have bin beaten down with the fall of his body, and been killed himself, as a reward for his killing the old man: But that he might not suffer so great a Champion to want a Burial, he caused his body to be buried in a field, commonly called *Reling*.

## CHAP. X.

Of Haldanus, and other Champions whom he conquered.

NOW comes another famous Champion of the *Goths*, called *Haldanus*: a *Goth* was his Father, and he was born when *Charles* was King, and was famous in those days; whose admirable Acts and Exploits, are the more diligently to be set down amongst the rest, as they are known to proceed from noble valour. He, when he first used Military Affairs, plaid the Pirat, and put himself into a battail with the *Suedes*; wherein when he understood that one *Haigunnus* a Champion was at hand, who could with Charms dull a sword, he prepared a huge Club, knockt full of nails and knots of Iron, to lay about him with, that so he might conquer the force of his Charms with an Oaken Club. Then when he appeared more eminent for his virtue than the rest, amongst the midst of his enemies, with his Helmet on, without a Buckler, he threw his Club with both hands against their Bucklers, that stood against him, and there was nothing so firm in the way to resist, but was broken in pieces by his Club cast so violently. Hence it was, that he overcame a Champion that met him in the Army, with a very sharp blow of his Club: yet conquered and wounded, he fell into the *Suedes* hand, and escaped into forraign Lands, and by the help of an old Souldier, who by curing his own wounds, had long since learned the Art of Chirurgery, he was restored; and taking a notable Champion, called *Thoro*, to be of his company, he fights again at Sea, with the *Suedes* in a Naval Battail; and becoming Conquerour, he likewise slew one *Simaldus*, with his 7. Sons, that were by nature and custom most cruel, who began a new assault, being thus provoked, and he tied his ugly Club for it. Then he valiantly beat down one *Haribene* a Giant, at *Helsing*, who was 9 Cubits tall, (as I said before) who counted it his glory to ravish Kings Daughters, and to prefer the best married women before the bairn, and and he thought himself to be so much the braver fellow, the more honourable women he could deslow by force: him he slew with a huge Club, together with his six Champions, that used the like violence, and ragged with the same wickedness. Moreover, he conquered *Egghernus*, a Finlander, that challenged him to fight a Duel, who by Piracy molested many here and there, and could not be worsted at Sea in battail. Then when he found that *Thorilda*, Daughter to *Seasherv*, King of *Norway*, was desired by *Grimmon*, a Champion of mighty force, and to fight a Duel for her, and that her Father had promised that he should win her, who could conquer this Champion: though he were now an old Bachelor, he was moved no lesse by the preempriness of the Champion, than by the Kings promise, to accept the Combat. Fighting with *Grimmon*, he cut asunder the utmost knots of his Coat of Mail, with the lowest part of his Breast-plate. *Grimmon* admired at it, and said, *That he never found an old Lad that fought more bravely*. And presently drawing forth his Whinnier, he ran it through his Buckler; but *Haldanus* ran through his right hand that gave the blow, and wounding him in the Thigh, he made him ever lame; and to continue his life that was left, he put a Fine upon him. Lastly, he did with so great boldness slay *Ebbe*, a *Plebeian*, and notable Pirat, who asked, upon confidence of his valour, the Daughter to the King of the *Goths*, and half the Kingdom, for her Dowry, that he durst never presume to mingle his despicable base condition with Nobility, and far less to affect to be partaker of the Kingdom. And that Challenge being sent, because they wanted day, he killed him by Moon-light, as if he would have the Monster conquered in the night.

## CHAP. XI.

Of another certain Haldanus, and his Actions.

OF no lesse fame is there mention made of another *Haldanus*, amongst the valiant Champions, the Son of *Borchar* of *Norway*, and of *Drotha*, of the Kingly Race, whole young dayes were foolishly employed; but his ripe years made him famous for his gallantry in Action, and he grew honourable by his great Ornaments of Life. When he was young, he killed a noted Champion with a Club he had in his hand, because he gave him a box on the Ear in jest; and all men took this for an Omen, how great triumph he should win over his Enemies by the force of his mind and body. At that time *Recho*, a Pirat of *Russia*, plundered many Provinces, using Rapine and cruelty exceedingly, whose fierceness was such, that when others feared to take from men what was next to cover their naked bodies, he would take off all coverings from the most secret parts about them. Hence great and inhumane Rapines were called *Rethonians*. He had another Beasty cruelty of torturing men, which for modestly sake I will not mention. *Barcharus*, the Father of *Haldanus*, moved with this indignity, set himself against *Recho*; and as it was a War between them, so was it the ruine of them both. *Haldanus* was sore wounded in that Battail, and left it: one wound he had so palpable in his mouth, and so apparent by the cicatrix of it, that when the rest were cured, that excrement of flesh could not be healed; which thing gained to him the name of a contumelious mouth, yet he better deserved everlasting praise, fighting for honesty, and for his Country. But what did ever the calumnious detraction of wicked men ever afford unto Vertue? However there was so much Military Glory apparent in him, that he was formidable every where for his great valour. From whence, and upon that confidence, he began to desire to marry a noble Maid called *Giariha*, of the Kingly Blood, which was in those days the last Heir of *Denmark*: But she to defend her self from injury, kept her Chamber guarded with a choise Company of Champions. To whom, when *Haldanus* came once by chance, when her Champions were absent, of whom when he was young he had killed a Brother; he said unto her, that he ought to change the rigour of Chastity, by honourable Wedlock, that the might by her Offspring repair the Government of the Kingdome that was like to be lost. Wherefore he exhorts her to reflect upon him, who was an eminent Noble man, and to take him for her Husband, and he thought for that cause she would admit of it. When he understood her answer, that she thought him not unequal for his Nobility, but because he was reproached for the deformity of his mouth. He increats her that she would marry no man, until she knew the certainty of his death, or return. But the Champions of *Giariha* being angry that he had spoken with her, when he was gone, sought to follow him. When he saw that, he presently cut up an Oke, and made a Club of it, and fought single with twelve of them, and killed them all, then to make himself more famous, he entered into *Russia*, and was exceeding nobly received by them all, and shortly (a fierce War falling out between the *Suedes* and *Russians*) he slew many of the *Suedes* Champions in single Duels: and last of all, he killed his own Brother *Hildigernus*, who had killed 70. Champions (whilest he did not prefer Piety to Valour) having his Sword covered with Cloths, that it might not be blunted by Charms, then he slew *Sivarus*, a *Saxon*, at a Banquet coming suddenly into *Denmark*, because he sought to marry his Wife *Giariha*, and so enjoying his Wife with joyful applause, he begat of her *Haraldus Hildera*, of whom I spake in the 8. Chapter. And at length he was slain by *Veferus*, a notable Champion in *Sialandia*, whilst he sought for to repair his torn Countrey.

CHAP. XII.  
Of Olo Vegetus.

**O**lo Vegetus, when he was twelve years old, began his youthful days with virtue: For when he perceived that *Gunnor*, by cruel robbing, kept the Woods were next to his Habitation, and destroyed innocent men, he was moved with indignation at this Wickedness; and that he might not suffer the time due to Virtue, to pass away by idleness, he desired Arms of his Father, who was Prince of *Norway*; and taking with him a cruel dog, and a horse, he entered into the thick Wood, and he finds the foot-steps of men in the Snow. By this sign, passing over many dangers, at last he found out the Thieves Caves covered with heaps of Earth; and first he killed their House-keeper, and cast him cross the house: then he killed both the Father and Son, that came running to revenge this disgrace; one with his Sword, the other with his Dog: yet he got not the Victory without blood, for he received a Wound on his body, which the Dog continually licked, and so it grew whole suddenly. Then he commanded the head of these Rovers, and their Carcases to be fastned upon Poles, for a token of Liberty restored. And with the same valour he slew twelve Champions, that sought to violate the Chastity of the Daughter of the King of the *Trendi* in a small Island, as I shall shew in the next Chapter. He had also a sharp Wit joined with his Valour, that he would easily either destroy or put to flight his Enemies: for being content with one Guard, adorned in Womens cloths, he kept this order, that his, and his companions word, should be sheathed in Wooden Scabbards till coming neer to fight, he could unsheath it, and fall upon whom he pleased. And using this Stratagem, he often overcame mighty Adversaries. Then using Piracy far and neer with his Forces Military, he destroyed seven hundred ships neer the Sea, by his strength at Sea. Hence the most noble Champions sought to be of his Confederacy; and many unruly young men were of his Guard. Being provided with these Forces, he subdued Neighbour Kings by opinion only, and to he took from them all thought of waging War, or to dare to lift up their hands against him. Lastly, he came to *Ringo*, King of *Sweden*, and was therefore the more dear to him, the liker he was to the other Princes of his Court for his singular Fortitude. Then was he made Admiral of the Kings Navy, (that consisted of five and twenty hundred ships, as I said before) he to governed it, with the assistance and advice of seven Kings, and of others that stuck fast to him, that he conquered the *Danish* Fleet in a notable Victory: so that King *Ringo* became the conquering Commander of all *Sweden*. At last, as I said being made King of *Denmark*, for his meer cruelty, he was slain by *Sinchererus*, a Champion of *Sweden*.

## CHAP. 13.

## CHAP. XIII.

Again of the same man, fighting Valiantly for Chastity.

**T**here were formerly in the mountainous parts of Norway, toward the bounds of the Western Goths, two Champions, and they were brothers, called *Schatas* and *Hiallus*, presuming to far and being so insolent, that with an unbridled petulance, they would deflower the most beautiful Maides, and take them from their parents: whence it fell out, that they determining to ravish *Esa*, the Daughter of *Olavus* King of the *Vermari*, they commanded her Father that if he would not have her ravished, he should fight with them by himself, or his second, to defend his Daughter, which thing, though it were very opprobrious to her Fathers Clemency, who was now decrepit with old age, yet he endeavoured to raise up his nerves that were exhausted with the wit and force of his friends, in his Daughters just defence. In the interim, *Olo* a young man of *Norway*, born of a Noble house and family, being moved by this horrid wickedness, and rejoicing that he had this occasion to fight, comes to *Olavus*; his house clothed like a Country man, who sitting down at the lower end of the Table, and seeing the Kings family lament, of purpose calling the Kings son neer to him he enquired why the rest were so sad, and he saying that his Sisters Chastity would be presently profaned by most fierce Champions, if no man came presently to relieve her, he inquires farther what reward should be given him that should venture his life in her defence. The King being asked of this by his Son, answered that, He should have his Daughter, that defended her. This answer made *Olo* hold to adventure himself in this danger. Now the Maid was wont (as it is the custome of the Northern people at this day) to come near, and look on the faces of the Guests very wisely with a Candle, that at times she might the better know their manners and behaviour, that having noted all the Marks and Habit of their bodies, she might tell her parents of it. She viewing *Olo* after that manner, she was taken with the unusuall horror of his eyes, and almost fainted away, amazement did to abate her vigour, and she presently told her father what was the cause of her trembling, whereupon the young man winked that his eyes might not fright her, and laying off his cap his face was covered with, he bad all that stood by, to be jocant, and to cast away all fear. It was no sooner said than done. For it presently fell out that one gentle promise from a stranger made them all merry. In the mean while came *Hiallus* and *Schatas* with their ten servants ready to take away the Kings Daughter; & they tumultuously cryed out to the King, that if he would not deliver his Daughter to them, he should come forth and fight. *Olo* immediately entertaines their rayling challenge, on this condition that they should not cowardly come behind him, but should fight all before him. Then taking his sword which he had from his Ancestours, he single, slew 12. of them, performing more than could be expected from so young a man. The fight was in an Island, and from thence there is a village not far off, that at this day hath a record of the names of the Brothers that were slain. Of this Maid which he won for a reward of his victory he begat his son *Osmondus*. Then growing every day more famous in victories, and dangerous fights, at last he was treacherously slain in a bath, as it was formerly told him by an old man, when he killed the petty King *Thore*, who violated the lawes of strangers.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of the Aits of the Champions Arngrimus and Arvarodus.

I Think it not fit in this place to passe it over, how by the Counsell of *Ericus Disertus*, King of *Sweden*, whom I shall speak of hereafter, one *Arngrimus* a notable Champion of *Sweden*, fighting and triumphing against the Northern Kings of *Scricinnia* and *Biarmia*, became the Father in Law of *Frothe* King of *Denmark*, because he had joynd to his Empire the utmost bounds of humane affairs, and had augmented his great fame largely through the world by his Notable actions. He had, as *Saxo* writes, 12. Sons by *Ofura*. They from their youth also were given to *Piracy*, and by chance they all brought in one small ship into the Island *Sampse*, and they found two Ships on the Sea-coasts of the two Norway pirates *Hjalmerus* and *Arvarodus*; whole they set upon, and with oars they soon cleared them in the absence of their Pilots, but they were very sorry that they had not killed their principall Steermen: therefore they despised this victory as nothing worth, as it was without danger. Resolving that in the following battles they would run more danger, and perhaps with worse fortune. For the foresaid pirates, whose Ships a tempest had lately torn breaking their rudder off, being gone into the wood to cut another, they hewed the ruff Timber smooth so long cutting it about with their hatches till it was fit for the helm: when they layd upon their shoulders, being ignorant of their Companions mishap, they carried on: they were set upon by the sons of *Arngrimus*, who were newly fished with the blood of those they had killed, so that two of them were forced to fight with their swords against many. Nor was this an equal fight where twelve hands fought against two; but the victory is not always according to number. For all the foresaid Twelve being slain, and they having slain *Hjalmerus*, the victory fell to *Arvarodus*: for he alone escaped by chance of so great a number of Companions; for he threw the helm, not yet well framed, with such incredible force, against his enemies bodies, that at one throw he hit the whole 12. and killed them all.

## CHAP. XV.

Again, of the same Arngrimus and the Charms of the Fins.

As to this Swedish Champion *Arngrimus* fought against the mighty Northern Kings of the utmost parts of the world, against *Egbert* King of the *Biarmians*, & *Tengelda* King of *Scricinnians*, (of whom we spake in the entrance of the 4th. Book,) that having obtain'd the victory over them, for his delects and the triumphs he might marry *Ofura* the Daughter of the King of *Denmark*, as indeed it fell out, yet in the mean time being to fight with wild a people, he was slain in his Army, with which he marched against them: and first he perceived, that he should not fight onely against cruel men, but against the more cruel Elements; as I shall shew after this in my 12. Book, concerning wars against Barbarous people, yet these men are cunning to fight with sharp weapons, for their use; and they use broad and huge Shafts in battail, also they know as well by charms and incantations in coming on or flying off, as crooked beams in the middle of the snow, to receive or give blowes. *Arngrimus*, as *Saxo* speaks, to get himself honour, set upon these & conquer'd them: these when they fled, having but ill success in their fight; they threw 3. stones behind them, & made them appear to the enemies to be as so many Mountains. Therefore *Arngrimus* being deceived by this mist cast before his eyes, called his Army off from following the enemy, supposing he had been stoppt by great Rocks in the way.

The same next day encountering, and being conquered, calling inow on the ground, made it shew like to a great River. Therefore the *Swedes* being deluded by a huge Error in their fight, supposed that mighty Waters had run with a noise before them: So whilst the Conqueror feared the vain Imagination of Waters, the *Fins* escaped by flight. The third day likewise they rallied again, and then they could find no way to escape: For when they saw their Armies begin to decline, they yielded to the power of the Conquerour. Then he conquered *Egbertus*, Captain of the *Biarmians*, whom he challenged to fight a Duel. After this, being grown great in Conquests and Spoils, by the mediation of the King of *Sweden*, he married *Ofura*, the Daughter of the foresaid King of *Denmark*: by whom, as the same *Saxo* testifies, he begat twelve Sons, whose names were these: *Brander*, *Barbi*, *Brodder*, *Hiavandi*, *Tander*, *Tvingar*, two *Hadrings*, two *Hiortbuar*, *Hiartuvar*, *Rani*, *Hugastir*; all which, as I said before, using Piracy, were killed at last.

## CHAP. XVI.

Of the slaying of a Bear, and the drinking of his blood.

Amongst the Northern Champions there was one called *Biarche*, who always used a Sword longer than ordinary, which he took pleasure to carry with him, that he might draw it against any Roaring Boys of an insolent life, in a Duel; lest he should suffer men of most bale manners, to disgrace the glory of Champions by their ill examples: Whereupon he forced most of them, either totally to forego their insolence, or else to put their lives in danger. Whilst therefore he triumphed thus by his meritorious actions, a strange wild Beast afforded him a new Victory. For he slew with his Sword a huge Bear that met him in the Thickets; and he commanded his companion *Hialke*, that he might grow stronger to drink up the Bears blood. But *Biarche*, whilst he received a vehement blow on his head, by a certain Champion that railed at him very basely, and threw hard bones at him when they sat together, he accounting it bale to draw his sword to revenge this wrong, threw a bone again at him, that first threw at him; and he strook his fore-head to the hinder-part of his head, and turned the hinder-part into the place of the fore-head, repaying the mans overthwart mind by the crookedness of his countenance, perhaps that he might ever after take heed how he threw bones again. Moreover, one *Regnerus* of *Norway*, whilst he exercised his younger years in Military Affairs, he espied a Maid in the Tents of his Companions, that with mighty Valour drove back the Enemy; he was so taken with the love of her, that he could not be satisfied, until he had slain a huge Bear, and a most cruel Dog that kept the Maids Chamber; which (though she had promised to admit him, when he before sued for her love) he therefore oppoled, that she might see him kill the most fierce Beasts, to whom she had a long time committed the preservation of her Chastity. This Maids name was *Largerith*, of whose Valour, a little after I shall speak amongst the fighting Females.



## CHAP. XVII.

## Of Regnerus, called Hair-coat.

There was a King of the *Sweons*, called *Herethus*, whose troubled mind was not a little urged how to preserve his Daughters Chastity; whether he should guard her with Wild Beasts, (as the manner of most Princes was then) or else should commit the custody of her to mans fidelity. But he preferring cruelty of Beasts to man's fidelity, he soonest chose what would do most hurt. For hunting in the Woods, he brought some Snakes that his company had found, for his Daughter to feed up. She quickly obeying her Fathers commands, bred up a Generation of Vipers by her Virgin hands. And that they might want no meat, her curious Father caused the whole body of an Ox to be brought, being ignorant that by this private food he maintain'd a publick destruction. These being grown up, by their venomous breath poyoned the neighbouring parts; but the King repenting his folly, proclaimed, That he who could remove this plague should have his Daughter. When *Regnerus* of *Norway*, descended of the Kings Race, who was the chief Suiter this Virgin had, heard this Report, he obtained from the Nurse a Woollen Caslock; and hairy Breeches, whereby he might hinder the biting of the Adders. And when he came to *Sweden* in a ship, he purposely suffered his Clothes to grow stiff with cold, casting water upon them: and thus clothed, having onely his Sword and Dart to defend him, he went to the King. As he went forward, two huge Adders met him on the way, that would kill the young man, with the twisting about of their tails, and by their venom they cast forth. But *Regnerus* conding in the hardness of his frozen Garments, both endured and repulld their Venome by his clothes, and their biting by his Harnels, being insatiable in pressing hard upon these Wild Beasts. Last of all he strongly casts out of his hand his Javelin, that was fastned with a Loop, and struck it into their bodies. Then, with his two-edged Sword rending both their hearts, he obtained a happy end of an ingenious and dangerous fight. The King looking curiously on his clothes, when he saw them to hairy on the backside, and unpolished like ragged Frize, he spake merrily, and called him *Ladbrock*; that is, *Hair-coat*; and to recreate him after his pains, he sett for him to a Banquet with his friends. He answered, *That he must first go for those Companions he had left*: and he brought them to the Kings Table very brave in clothes, as he was then: and lastly, when that was done, he received the pledge of his Victory, by whom he begat many hopeful children; and he had her true love to him the more, and the rather enjoyed his company, by how much she knew the great dangers he underwent to win her by, and the ingenious practises he used. When this most noble Wife, called *Phora*, was dead, he fell into various Wiles of Fortune, being famous in the whole World for his Chivalry. he grieved (as I said before) to be conquered by the unarmed *Finn* and *Bjarmians*: He was afterwards cast by *Hella*, Prince of the *Irish*, to Adders, and was killed by them.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of Alfo the Defender of Chastity.

*Stourdu*, King of the *Goths*, had Sons, *Vermundus* and *Orthenus*, and one Daughter, *Aleilda*; which was so chaste from her Cradle to all appearance, that she had her Face always veiled with a Vail, that she might not make her beauty a bait to stir up others Lusts.

Her

Her Father shutting her up in close custody, gave her a Viper and a Snake to breed up, thereby at length to guard her Chastity, by these creeping Creatures when they were grown great: that he might intimate that he left no passage open to this *Virgin* for any but for Valiant men, and noted for their virtue, who should Conquer those Beasts in a dangerous conflict, adding this, that if any one should try in vain to come at her, his head should presently be cut off; and fastned on a stake; that every one that was put on by his aspiring wit should not dare to attempt such a disgrace to the Kingly blood. This being known, the son of *Alfigarus* King of *Denmark*, nor trusting so much to his valour as to his wit, and supposing the conflict would be the more Noble the greater danger he must undergo, he comes as a suitor to the *Virgin*, to conquer these beasts that guarded the Maid's Chamber, chiefly because by the proclamation the *Virgin* was promised in marriage, as due to him that could conquer them. Now that he might the better endure this rage against him, he covered his body with a raw and bloody hide, girt about with it: so soon as he entered the doors of the Castle, he took a red hot Iron with a pair of pinfers and thrust it into the vipers yawning Mouth, and so killed him. Then he slew the snake that came to twit about him, between the middle of his chops with his dart; or, as the more ancient Histories of the *Goths* set it down, with a burning spear, pointed as it were like a knife. And when according to the Edict, he desired the Pledge that belonged to the victor, King *Sivardus* answered that such a Son in Law should please him, which his Daughter freely consented to have. And when only the Maids Mother would hardly admit of his suit, he tries the Maids good will by a private discourse, and when her Mother perceived that the unwarily commended this suitor for his virtue, her Mother chid her for it, that breaking the nerves of Chastity, she would be taken with the allurements of beauty, and omitting the censure of vertue, she should regard with a Lascivious mind, the fawning shewes of comeliness, therefore she silently approving the just sentence of her Mother, found out a way, whereby she might shew that her Chastity was yet untouched though the Beasts that guarded her were slain, and she would make this more appear by some bold adventure, and confirme it by some Noble Designe. Then presently scorning this Danish young man, she changed her Feminine mind and garment into a masculine, and of a very chaste Maid, she became a fierce Pirate. For she so preferred vertue before idleness, that when she might enjoy Kingly dainties she presently applied her self to the wars, drawn on by her feminine fury: and she began to be so averse to all men by a resolute purpose of Chastity, that she firmly resolved with her self never to marry any man; but ever after as a Pirate to equal, if not exceed mens valour.

## CHAP. XIX.

## Of the Stratagems of Fridlevus.

The notable deeds of one *Fridlevus* are remarkable; who besides his imbred valour was confident by reason of his coat of Mail, and armour of proof he wore. He used this in publik and private fights as his armour of defence, and he slew many mighty enemies tyred out in the sharp battails, and amongst the rest one *Gunholmus*, who was wont to blunt the enemies sword with Charms, him he slew with many strokes of the handle. But whilst he too hastily chopt his hand on the point of it, he cut the Nerves of his fingers, and so his fingers fell all waies crooked, close to his hand. The same man, whilst he besieged *Dublin* a Town of *Ireland*, and found there was no entrance, the walls were so strong, imitating the witty art of *Haingins*, he commanded fire shut up in sponges should be fastned to Swallows wings, which when they came to their own nests set the houses on fire, and whilst the Towns men ranne to put it out, and took

M

took more care to suppress the fire, than to repel the enemy, he was *Dublin*. After this in Britanny, having lost his Soldiers in battail, when he saw he was like to have hard returning to the shore, he set the bodies of the slain upright, and in battail array, who so represented his former multitude, that by so great a conflict he seemed to have lost none. Whereby he not onely took off from the enemy all confidence of joyning battail, but he made them desirous to fly from him.

## CHAP. XX.

Of the same man's Stratagems by Birds.

AS for *Hadingus* his policy, spoken of before, the meaning is that *Hadingus* King of *Denmark*, spending his youthful years most successfully, omitting desire of pleasure, always desired to live in wars, considering with his Valiant mind that he must spend all his dayes in Noble warlike designs. He sets upon *Handmannus* King of *Hellefont* at the City *Duna* that was fenced with invincible walls, and he strives to enter it when the forts were now repaired: but the height of them not admitting any violence that fought against them, he commanded men skilled in catching birds, to take divers fowls of birds that were used to that place, & to put under their wings sponges set on fire, these flying to their own Nests set the City on fire: the Towns men running to quench this, left the gates unguarded against the enemy, wherefore coming on, he took *Handmannus*; and he gave him leave to redeem himself with Gold. And when he might have slain the enemy, he had rather humble him; he did thus temper cruelty with clemency. But afterwards when ever any siege was like to be, by the Kings command all the birds about houses were killed.

## CHAP. XXI.

Of the fight of King Harald, against a tame Dragon.

HARALDUS the most illustrious King of *Norway*, residing in his youth with the King of *Constantinople*, and being condemned for man-slaughter, he was commanded to be cast to a tame Dragon that should rend him in peices. As he went into the prison, one very faithful servant he had, offered himself freely to dye with his Master. The keeper of the Castle, curiously observing them both, let them down at the mouth of the Den, being unarmed, and well searched, wherefore when the servant was naked he admitted *Haraldus* to be covered with his shirt for modesty sake, who gave him a braiser privily; and he scattered little fish on the pavement, that the Dragon might first stay his hunger on them, and that the guilty persons that are shut up in the dark prison, might have a little light by the shining of the fins and Scales. Then *Haraldus* picking up the bones of the Carakaes, stopt them into the Linen he had and bound them fast together like a club. And when the Dragon was let forth, and rushed greedily on his prey cast to him, he leapt quickly on his back, and he thrust a Barbers razor in at his navill, that only would be peirced by iron, which, as luck was, he brought with him, and kept it concealed by him: this cold Serpent that had most hard scales all over, did daigne to be entered in any other part of his body. But *Haraldus* sitting so high above him, could neither be bitten by his mouth, or hurt by his sharp teeth; or broken with the turnings of his taylor. And his servant using the weapons or bones put together, beat the Dragons head till he bled, and died thereof by his many weighty strokes: when the King knew this he freely changed his revenge, into his service, and pardoned these valiant persons, and furnishing them with a Ship and monies he gave them leave to depart.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXII.

Of the fight of Frotho and Fridlevus against a Serpent.

FROTHO a Danish Champion and a King, scarce being past his child-hood, in a single combat killed a huge fierce great Serpent; thrusting his sword into his belly, for his hard skin would not be wounded, and all darts threw at him, flew back again, and it was but labour lost. *Fridlevus* was no lesse valiant, who both to try his valour, and to find out some hidden treasure, set upon a most formidable Serpent for his huge body and venomous teeth, and for a long time he cast his darts against his scaly sides and could not hurt him, for his hard body made nothing of the weapons cast with violence against him. But this Serpent twisting his tail in many wines, by turning his tail round, he would pull up trees by the roots, and by his crawling on the ground he had made a great hollow place, that in some places hills seemed to be parted as if a valley were between them, wherefore *Fridlevus* considering that the upper parts of this beast could not be penetrated, he runs him in with his sword underneath; and piercing into his groin, he drew forth his virulent matter as he lay panting: when he had killed the Serpent, he dug up the money and carried it away. Also he Conquered a Giant called *Hithis* that was of a monstrous habit, who had taken away the son of King *Tollemarchus*, as he was Childishly playing, and he made him his Roer, cutting off his hand and foot, setting the young youth at liberty.

## CHAP. XXIII.

Of the same Fridlevus:

HE also slew 12. Champions of *Norway* that were famous for their Victories over Giants, and noted for their Trophies amongst the Nations, and rich in their spoils, when they by often breaking in, had long vexed their neighbours, and this he did not so much for covetousness as for love of vertue. He also slew *Hiarnon*, in a duel with many great wounds, in a barby one that was competitor of the Kingdom, because under a pretence of great familiarity, and huge obsequies he was a most fierce layer of Snares for his life.

## CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Piracy of famous Virgins.

ALVILDA a most famous Virgin began to play the Pirat fiercely, and taking many Maides that were bent upon the same design to be her comrades, she came by chance to that place where a Company of Pirats lamented for their Captaine that was slain in wars, and by them by reason of her beauty and piracy, she was made chieftest of the pirats, and she did greater things than could be expected from the feminine sex: whom *Alff* seeking to pursue with many navigations fell in winter time into the Navy of the *Blackmanni*, at which time the waters were hugely frozen, and the pieces of Ice so fastened the ships, that it was impossible by any ores or art to rowe away. And after the Ice lasting long seemed to promise more safe entrance to those that were shut in, *Alff* commands his men to lay aside their slippery shoes, and to walk over the plain Ice with their Rockings only on their feet, and so might easily subdue the enemy that slid upon Oily slippery Shoes. These being thus subdued, and the Ice melted, he takes his voyage by sea, against the *Fins* and *Finlanders*: where entering in the narrow crook of *Hanga*, he found by his spies that the haven was already taken up by the Ships of other men; for *Alvilda* at the same Straits, had first entered with her fleet: and when the spied strong Ships afar off coming thither

thither, she quickly rowed on to meet them, thinking better to break through the enemy, than to be overwhelmed by him. As therefore they began to fight at Sea, and on both sides they continued having an eye to the great glory in respect of their valour, a young man, having more and fresher Souldiers to help him, when *Alvilda* with a desired *omen* leapt into the forecattle, he retired as far as the Stern, there being a great slaughter made of those that resisted. But his Companion *Barcharus*, striking off *Alvilda* her helmet, and discovering her small face, he perceived she was to be dealt withall by kisses not by weapons, and that laying aside his hard ammunition, the Enemy was to be encountered with more pleasing duties. Wherefore *Alff* rejoicing that besides his expectation he lit upon her, whom he had indefatigably fought through so many dangers both by Land and Sea, he presently when he had taken her, adorned her in a most gallant Womens habit, and married her. Observing the most commendable ceremonies of the Ancients, and by her he afterwards begat his daughter *Gyrisba*, which had *Haldanus* to her Husband, and bare *Haraldus Hildera* who repaired the Kingdome of *Denmark* strangely rent by domestick injuries, to its former lustre, and had peace 50. years, and he slew two warlike Maides conquered by his notable craft, *Siicla* and *Rusila*, fighting against the King of the *Trandi* for the dominion of the Kingdome; in a fight at Sea; But the like glory fell not out to his nephew *Odmandus*, son to *Olo*, whilst he set upon by force of arms another Maid called *Rusila*, who strove with her brother concerning the Kingdome of *Norway* in a way of Piracy. For he was put to flight by her, but when she was molested by the people by *Clandestine Rebellion*, she was made a runnagate by him, and when she fled, he drove her upon her brother who wickedly caused her to be slain. Nor will I omit that the most mighty Prince of *Holland*, *Huirvillus*, by notable force of Arms slew *Rusila* a Virgin of *Norway*, who applied herself to warlike actions.

Here ends the Fifth Book.

Olaus

## Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *U P S A L*:

CONCERNING

Minerals and Metals.

The Epitome of the Sixth Book.

The Preface.

**B**ecause the hard and invincible kind of warriors of the North Swedeland and Gothland, dwelling in the Mineral Mountains, by reason of the huge fierceness and courage of their Bodies and Minds, and also by reason of the most hard Exercises they are used to, may well be compared to Giants and Champions: and therefore in the orderly describing Northern Occasions, it deserves to be joyned to the same Giants and Champions, and to be preferred before these that follow, by reason of the different kind of weapons they both use. And for this reason, not keeping the form and order of other Writers, I shall insert something concerning Minerals; from whence may be taken comparisons, to set forth the following Battails more distinctly. The Mountains therefore are high, but most commonly barren and dry, in which commonly nothing else grows for the commodity and preservation of the Inhabitants, than an unexhausted fruitfulness of precious Metals; which are rich and fertile enough for all mens necessities for life, and it may be for superfluous things to be fetched from other places if we will, and to defend them with unanimous force, where violence is offered against this gift of Nature. For they are a fierce kind of men, that will yield to no sharpness of wars, upon whatsoever sharpness of weather, or Hostile threats, as I shall shew underneath, concerning wars in Fields. Also, how fiercely a People called *Dalacarly*, that are fierce and impetuous, marching on foot in Companies

*Companies, falling upon their Enemies. A Foreign Witness, Albertus Crantzius, doth set down plain enough, with many great strange things in the wars made against the Kings of Denmark, chiefly Christiernus the first, and King John. Also how Christiernus the second, himself, with force and fury, are driven out by Gustavus, Anno 1521, being the Leader; he doth acknowledge by unhappy experience, that he was circumvented by Counsel. But I shall speak most truly, as I was an Eye-witness, what horrible and barbarous Cruelty was committed against his Government in the North Parts. For I seem to have been preserved, that I might behold such horrible Spectacles of my Nation.*

## CHAP. I.

### *Of Minerals, and the finding of them.*

**T**He Mines in the North Countries are very many, great, divers, and very rich; Many, because being situated in Valleys and Mountains, sticking together they are frequently taken forth. They are great, because they are large, and cannot be exhausted, both in the upper *Suede*, and in *Gothland*, and the Country of the *Varmi*, toward the Bounds of *Norway*, where they are found. They are divers; some Silver, others Copper, or Bräs, Steel, and principal Iron. Also rich, as I shall show beneath, because great store of the Kings Treasure, or Tribute, is drawn from those Mines. And though there be an infinite multitude of such Mountains and Minerals, in the foresaid Kingdoms, yet by many signs, Nature directing, new ones are always found by them that seek them, especially where the Mountains are round on the top; and in the *Niel* or Roundness, not cleft nor broken; but the Snow in Winter melts, by reason of the Brimstone fuming. But those Mountains that are Thunder-stricken on the top or side, or touched about the foot, do shew forth in their Fissures, Veins, or Silver that shine, and they do more allure the Inhabitants, to burn with an unsatiable covetousness, that regarding no danger, they will Mine into Stones, and come to the inward parts, where you shall see the Veins in the Mountains, like the parts of mans body, divided standing upwards, downwards, on the right or left hand; and the Minerals annexed, are the clearer, the more purer Rock or Marble, they are bred with. For those that naturally run Westward, and bend with a greater bunch to South and North, are the best, and most inestimable; for those Veins appear no otherwise, than men shining in Armour, standing in their Ranks. And this pleasure joyed with profit, brought great content to the Labourers and Possessors.

CHAP. II.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the Situation of Mineral Veins.*

**M**oreover, the Veins that run from the sides of the East and South toward the West and North, are said to be the best; and those that run to other parts are not so good. For the Mines are better ripe that run East and South: There are also Veins called *Pendent*, and *Lying*: The *Pendent* Veins lye covered upwards. Those that lye on plain ground, take growth and goodnesse from their very coming forth. There are Veins also obliquely lying up and down, that depend on all the foresaid.

## CHAP. III.

### *Of the way to dig the Mines.*

**T**He Miners, for their own security, make several Arches to hold up the Mountains, and lay many pieces of Wood between the sides of the Mountains, and underneath; and being doubtful to trust thereto, they have yet another invention; they let themselves down with cords, when they are to cut out the Metals in Rocks they cannot come at, or to make choice of Veins of Silver; and afterward they purifie them by Art, using Water and Fire for it. But since the Gain seems small and lost labour, there being no fruit, or very feldome, to be expected in the Bark and outside of the most rich Mine, they use a more solid way, and set up Pillars within the sides of the Mountains that are far stronger than their former way of Arching, being fully perswaded, that Treasure is not to be found but in the deeper Caves of the Mountains; and that by more certain Signs, even as low as Hell, almost; where by Natures digestion, more frequently and plentifully are found Mines, especially of Silver, and of Bräs.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of the distinction of Mineral Veins.*

**T**He distinction and division of *Mineral Veins*, or Pits of possession, is wont to be made in special by the Inventors, by certain signes from the Mountains that lye upon them, or from the Events, or from their natural situation and propriety: which also are found out in an admirable way, and they are daily found out: yet it is not known, whether God be angry, or well pleased with it: First, by the violence of Thunders and Tempests burning down of Trees, whereby the shining Clots of Silver are discovered: Then the tops of high Mountains, being onely pared with Spades, there appeare bright Veins of Silver; which presently the wife Husband-man covers with Dung, being rather content to enjoy a peaceable Field, than a Silver Mine that offers it self, whereby he knows he can maintain himself and his Family. For the wary Countryman fears that some Noble-man of the Treasury, to whom the Field belongs, finding a Mine of Silver, in hopes of more profit, will put him out of possession, that there shall be no more Tilling there, where there is a fruitful Mine of Silver. Therefore, as I said, he makes choice of the Fields fruitfulness, of old; for this cause, both Fields and Mines of Silver that so appeared, were made desolate; and at this day, they are hid as much as may be; and the unsatiable covetousnesse of Governours hath done so much harm, that where there were six hundred Pits or Mines of Iron, Bräs, Silver, there are scarce three hundred left for the publick profit. The names thereof, it is superfluous to reckon up, whilst the Inhabitants, are much troubled at the remembrance of them, that they are come to that pass that they dare do nothing against the violence of Power.

CHAP. 5.



## CHAP. V.

*Of the Wheels, Instruments, and dangers of the Labourers.*

I Must now shew how a very high Wheel, or drawing Engine is turned about by men or beasts going in it: Moreover, men sit upon Roles, and are let down to the bottom; and again Buckets or Pitchers, full of Water, or Mineral Earth, are drawn up, as every one knows, that the Labourers in Mines, are forced to keep this congruous order: Also, that Cattle, namely, Horses and great Bears, are appointed by course and collaterally, to turn Wheels about, to raise, or let sink great Weights, because the Mines dug forth can be brought up no easier way, by any conveyance of Ballances from the lower parts. But the Miners that undergo continually such hard Labours going up and down, are a most hardy sort of men, most commonly condemned thither for their Villany, living there onely for the Prince his security, being exiled in their own Countrey, that they may never privily come back again to their own houles: yet those Labourers follow the Laws and Rights of the Mountains; whereby, though they be continually inclined to raise Tumults, Seditions, and a thousand mischiefs: yet they are tied most severely, that they shall do wrong to no man. In other things they fear not to venture upon any danger or ruine, that may happen amongst the pieces of Rocks ready to fall, or in setting Beams within the sides of the Mountains, or from the deadly exhalations and stinks arising from the Mines, or from the unwholesome Ay included: Wherefore they are often subject to horrible Destinies. For whilst they labour violently, more quick than circumspect, the Supporters breaking, or Stones falling, they are fearfully crushed suddenly, or for some days (as I said before) they are suffocated, crying out fearfully, being to die for hunger: and there being no remedy to draw them out alive, they are all shew'd to be shut up in one burial, having set over them, how, and how many, namely 30, 60, a 100, or more perished all at once: yet the other Miners continue undaunted, that they are no ways frighted by these, or the like horrid Spectacles. Also with a little stroke of a Hammer upon them, huge Mountains fall down by their vast weight.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Art and Ingenuity of Smiths.*

Though in many Northern Kingdoms and Provinces, there useth to be great esteem made of Smiths, that have skill to draw, melt, or turn any ductile matter, especially amongst the Mountains *Dolacary*, an unconquered people for War: yet in the Country of *Helsing*, (which formerly was honoured with the Kings Title for some famous Actions) toward the North, there are found such skillful and diligent Artificers that are Smiths, that there are scarce the like in all the North. For they know how to draw forth a great way, by reason of the richness of those Mines and Metals, to a lump, by the ingenious direction of the Waters and Wheels; so that by the nimbleness and force of such Engines, in a very short time the greatest Work may be finished, even the usual Vessels of Brasse and Iron extended: whence no small profit accrues to these Nations: so likewise in Iron Ports, and Casements for Windows, and Grates for Nets, that are to be indissolubly tied together, the like work whereof for joynting, is scarce found in all Europe.

## CHAP. 7.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Distillation of fusible Metals.*

There is also amongst other Northern Artificers another way, in the most rich Mountains of Silver, Copper, or Brasse, and Iron, how to melt them, or hammer them; which is so nicely and orderly distinguished, that every matter may easily be brought into a Mass, according to its own nature. Silver, in melting, requires hollow Furnaces, and clear fire to melt it, as being the most precious Metal; that being well melted that it runs, it may be cast by the Workmen into several Forms, putting under it long or round Cutters. The Forms of Silver are commonly made when it runs, like to usual Tables, or square Seats, or Souldiers Bucklers: & that is chiefly done for this reason that the magnificence and wealth of the King and Kingdoms may be shew'd both to the people; as also to the Ambassadors of great Princes, to whom these massive pieces of Silver are given. But Copper or Brasse Metals are melted in long high Furnaces, made of Clay, Straw and Iron, Wyer and Cords, with many Bellows hung up here and there to blow withall, to cause a greater heat, in divers forms also, without Cutters, into huge Lumps, onely in the Earth dug up: but it is far the shorter way, by Winds blowing forth underneath, where, by the continued mighty heat, the Metal, in the midst of the flames, is brought into divers Forms, that weigh 100, 200, 600, or 1000, pound and more; also Naval Weights and Ballances in greater number.

## CHAP. VIII.

*More of the same Metals.*

But Iron Mines cannot be divided into pieces or Clots, with Spades; without the help of Water-Wheels that move the bellows, that they may be brought into a Lump that cannot be cut asunder; alwayes keeping this proportion, that yearly they may make pieces of Iron like to a mans Fist, or four times greater, to many hundred thousands: which pieces of Iron, to five hundred pound weight and more, are put into long Vessels, like Roman Barrels, and are carried to Foreign Countries, or Provinces at home, to very great profit. Also there is such plenty of the most choise Steel, that it serves, and to spare, all Inhabitants and Strangers, for all Building-Tools, for all sorts of Arms, Breast-plates, Helms, Swords. But the grain of it is made the purer, and stronger for work and the more tractable to mingle with Iron; the hotter Furnace the Steel is taken out of; it is by leisure, not suddenly quenched in the water, for if it be all plunged in at once, it becomes so short and brittle, that it cannot endure any force in bending it: Amongst the Mountainous Northern People it is made like two fingers, in a rough shape, and is quickly sold by tale, as it were in a Market, by hundreds, or by thousands, &c.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the Drivels in the Mines.*

This is collected in brief, that in the Northern Kingdoms there are great Armies of Devils that have their services, which they perform with the Inhabitants of these Countries: but they are most frequent in Rocks, and Mines where they break, cleave, and make them hollow: which also thrust into Pitchers and Buckers, and they carefully fit Wheels and Screws, whereby the attracting Engines are drawn upwards, and they shew themselves to the Labourers when they list, like to Phantasms & Ghosts, in what form they will, and they counterfeir laughter, and vain loud derisions, and strange sports & delusions, and



an infinite company of Hobgoblin tricks, whereby they deceive the unhappy people by a vocal noise. But they change these seeming services at last into nothing but destruction and ruins, by breaking down the pillars: or by the fall of Rocks, breaking of Ladders, provocation of stinking smels, suppression of Winds, breaking of Ropes, they oppress and disturb men; That they either fall and break their necks, or blaspheme God in the greatnels of the danger, and are ready to go into a deeper prison, to be enchained with the Devils. And this they do chiefly in the richer Mines of Silver, where there is greatest hopes of finding infinite Treasure. And for this cause many of the richest Mines seem wholly desolate, and utterly of no value; chiefly, because in those places of Metal, there are found six sorts of Divels, more malignant than the rest; for fear of whom, and dangerous Assaults, many Labourers in Mines are in great danger.

## CHAP. X.

## Of Lightning in those Mountains of Minerals.

They that dwell in the *Mineral Mountains* have experience oft-times, from Thunder and Lightning, Flashes and Fire, breaking forth of Clouds, of wonderful Effects in the Exhalations of *Minerals*; namely, that there is a grosse Vapour coming forth of the Caves, that over-shadows all, and a great noise in the Superficies of the *Mountains*, about the entering in, and coming forth, that drives off such as come to it; and above all, that there is an intolerable stink, mingled with a sulphureous smell of Thunder; and if any man, not used to it, coming thither, shall suck it in, he will fall sick, hardly to be cured, having the passages of his throat stop; which is suddenly dissolved, by drinking hot Beer, mingled with Butter, that it may afterwards be cleaned by application of greater Remedies: yet men are in this case cured rather by the co-operation of Nature that is strong, than by virtue of *Medicaments*. It happens also there, that by the blows of Thunder, new veins of Silver are laid open, shining clearly on the sides of the *Mountains*; and hereby they get a perpetual name for their use, and enrich the Fortunes of him that possesseth them. Moreover, Thunder and Lightning does to rage there, though it be in several years between, that many Herds of Cattel are killed by Tempests all the fields over, very wide about.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of Goldsmiths, or Refiners.

Having now shewed that there is a vast and unexhausted quantity of Silver in the *Mountains of Sweden*, and how it is found and taken out there; it follows, that I shew the use or abuse of the same, lest this noble Metal should be concealed from such as have it not, and would use it well, if they had it. Repeating therefore the Customes of former Ages, it may be sufficiently shewed what huge Riches of Gold and Silver, and of other precious Brats there was; when, (as I premised in my first Book) the Temples of Idols, Kings and Princes dining Rooms, even to Childrens Cradles, and Horses Bridles and Trappings, were made the richest Ornaments they could be made. But as the Mine of Gold was then great; so afterwards, by reason of a cruel Mortality, that was raised by the Plague, Sword, and Famine, the care of that was laid aside, and it was lost. There is nothing delivered to their unsatiable Posterity, but the memory of some places from whence it was taken, as I laid before in the utmost Bounds of the *North*: yet I think it cannot be denied, but that there is great quantity of Gold in *Sweden's* Copper; which being bought and exported, and oft-times recovered after shipwreck, and refined by art and fire, brings great gain to the possessors of it: And I believe that the *Hungarian Artificers* do diligently attend upon this Art, and such as sell to Foreign Factors Copper very red, and perfectly tried and made

made into thin plates: and lastly, those that carry it through the Dominions of the King of *Poland* in long ships, in the large River *Wesyl*, as far as the Mart town of *Danzick*, of the Dukedome of *Prussia*, to divide it there. The rest is left as gain to the Workmen at home, if they can by any secret Art draw any Gold from the Brats or Copper. As for the use of Silver, there is none more common or good in all the World, than what is sold in *Sweden* and *Gophland*; where there is scarce a House or Family, that doth not yearly add something by their Industry to the Estate they have got. Also, there is a most huge gain in the great Images of the Saints, that are the tipular Patrons of the Kingdoms, to whom are reverently deputed, *Ciboria*, or places made up with Gold and Silver. Likewise, in the Ornaments of Maids, in the huge Crowns made for their Heads, Neck-laces, Pery-coats, Bracelets for the Arms, Chains, small Gifts, and Rings given them by their Parents, Lovers, and Friends. Nor is this idle: For they providently give unto them silver, that may last them and their children after them, rather than sicken cloaths that will soon wear out, and be eaten with Worms. Also, of old, the most illustrious men wore Girdles of Silver, commonly called *Silffschena*, and they had round silver buttons to make fast their cloths every where. Also they had little silver bells tied at their horses tails, that those that were near them, hearing them jingle, might take heed they kicked not backward. Moreover, their Straps, Bridles, and Pottails, and other parts of Silvery, were made to adorn them for Luxury, rather than for any solid Furniture.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of the Silver Ornaments of Maids.

There is a very old Town amongst the *Ostrogoths*, called *Scheningie*, because that a Torrent, at a certain time, runs fiercely upon the sides of it, which is called *Schena*. But when it is dry weather, there is so little water left, that it will scarce serve turn to water the cattle. But this defect is every where supplied by the plenty of excellent Fountains, that run out of the Rocks continually. This Town, though growing old, it seems next to desolation; yet by its situation, fruitfulness, and wealth, it hath not its equal in all the *North Climate*. For it hath a most wholesome situation amongst the most fruitful fields and meadows, and Oken Woods, that are very profitable and thick. The Streets of this Town were so ingeniously made by the first Builders of it, that every where round about, turn which way they will, they all meet at the common Market, and Court of Justice, as in the Centre. Upon this Market stood a Statue of a Giant, called *Long Turo*, as that at *Breme* is called *Rowland*; at whose knees, Malefactors were questioned and punished, especially Adulterers, which yet were seldom found: who between the Arms of the Image, held Stones bound fast with Iron bands about their necks, to their certain confusion, and endured many other scoffs, especially for terror, that they might not dare to corrupt the weaker Sex. There were of old in this Town abundance of Country-maids, that went covered with Silver, and gilded Crowns, four fingers deep, on the most solemn Feast-days; who also were otherwise tricked up and adorned: as also other Women were, who were all richly clad with silver, of which all, even Husband-men, had plenty, as it is supposed they have at this day, that the Prince may be honoured, who rather rules over rich and gallant people, than as a King over poor indigent Fellows, that are but Scabs, and pilfering Knaves.



# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *UPSALA*:

OF

Warlike Instruments, Manners, Causes,  
and Cautions in Fight.

*An Epitome of his Seventh Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Artificers of Slings and Darts.*

**A**Mongst the *Northern Nations*, there is great use made of Bows, Slings, and Arrows; and there is scarce any Inhabitant upon the Earth that is unprovided with such Arms, and that drive off Assaults of Enemies, and hurtful Beasts, whosoever they may meet them, as there are cruel Bears and Wolves: against which, Arrows are made like broad Knives, by reason of the thickness of their hair. Also, they have Arrows of Wood, with broad heads, to kill *Mardui*, *Zibels*, and *Pyroli*. Also, some with two Forks, to take Wild Fowl, and others to cut for Water-Fowl, to pierce their hard Quills: Others, for Elks, or Wild-Asses, Gules, Foxes, and the like Beasts. But of these, and the like, I shall speak more hereafter, concerning hunting of divers Creatures that are hunted not with Slings, but with Arrows of Trees, made straight.

CHAP. 2.

## CHAP. II.

*Of Arrows, and Warlike Instruments.*

**W**Hat concerns their fighting in Battail, it is a certain truth, that the *Goths* excel all the rest for their Valour in Slings, Arrows, Launces, and Swords, that scarce in the whole World there are made greater and stronger Cross-bows, than amongst them, nor greater Swords, that are left as a possession to their posterity, by right of Inheritance, and by way of gift, as a more rich Furniture than silver. And they have no less affection to strong Steel-bows, and their attractive Wheels, whereby with wonderful agility the Bows are bent with a crooked back; and there is such force in an Arrow shot from it, that they will shoot through a man in Armour, with a Coat of Mail, and double-breast, as if it were soft Wax: wherefore they use these more frequently amongst Warlike people, than any other Arms; and for many other reasons, as I shall underneath annex it, concerning Iron Walls. And few Generals of Armies want such Iron Arrows in the fields; but have many thousands of them that follow them diligently; because they are portable, and seldom are cast in vain: Also they have three-pointed Arrows dipt in Venome, that are cast when the Enemy is fierce and mad, yet they make no great wound. Nor do they lightly use Venom'd Arrows: but when they understand the fierceness and cruelty of the Enemy, who will spare none.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the sudden calling the Community to Arms.*

**V**Hen the Enemy is upon the Sea-coast, or within the limits of the *Northern Kingdoms*, then presently by the Command of the Provincial Governours, with the counsel and consent of the old Souldiers, who are notably skilled in such like business, a Staff of three hands length, in the common sight of them all, is carried by the speedy running of some active young man unto that Village or City, with this Command, that on the 3, 4, or 8, day, one two or three, or else every man in particular, from 15, years old, shall come with his Arms, and expences for ten or twenty days, upon pain that his or their houses shall be burnt (which is intimated by the burning of the Staff) or else the Master to be hanged, (which is signified by the Cord tied to it) to appear speedily on such a Bank or Field or Valley, to hear the cause he is called, and to receive Orders from the said Provincial Governour, what he should do: Wherefore that Messenger, swifter than any Post or Waggon, having done his Commission, comes slowly back: gain, bringing a token with him, that he hath done all legally, and every moment one or another runs to every Village, and tells those places what they must do. And thus they that are fit for War, either by their strength of body, or vigour of age, in one, or eight days time at farthest, come in innumerable multitudes, with their Arms and Expences; and the old Husbandmen also, to give counsel; and by reason of the experience they got in former Battails, come also into the Fields, and the Women get upon the City Walls, and Forts, to cast down Stones, or Lime, sodden in Water.

CHAP. 4.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the keeping of the Wayes and Scouts.

**A**Nd that the Enemies Forces may not know the minds of the Inhabitants, there are Sentinels set in convenient places, who will suffer none of that multitude met together to go down, nor yet the messengers of the Enemy, when they are discovered, nor to come for peace, but to spy them out. For the Inhabitants will be ignorant of knowing the Enemies number, and what Spears and Arms, or long Poles and Arrows they use: for as much as their Spears (called in vulgar *Italian Piche*) are two or three foot longer than the Spears or Lances of vulgar *Italian Piche*, as it fell out in the Ejecting of King *Christiernus* the Second, their Enemies; as it fell out in the Ejecting of King *Christiernus* the Second, *Anno 1521*, under the Command of the most noble *Gustavus Erickson*, who was afterwards King; who with twenty thousand of the *Dalacarti*, that dwell in the Mountains, and use Spears, came down into the Champion fields of *Arefum*, in the end of *May*, to fight violently with his Enemies, and he became Conquerour in a moment. For the horror of *Christiernus* his cruelty, made not one private Families, or one Province, but all the Inhabitants mad, that they came every man forth to seek revenge. In what order, and for what cause it was done, that the same *Gustavus* every where with the concurrence of an infinite multitude, and by the consent of the most famous Nobility, was first proclaimed Prince, and afterwards crowned King by three Bishops of the Church of *Rome*; I shall speak elsewhere, when I speak of his actions. The messengers therefore of the Footmen, that are to give warning to the people to meet for the Battail, run fiercely and swiftly; for no Snow, nor Rain, nor Heat, can stop them, nor Night hold them; but they will soon run the Race they undertake: The first Messenger tells it to the next Village, and that to the next; and so the Hubbub runs all over, till they all know it in that Stile or Territory, where, when, and wherefore they must meet; nor will the Governour be very safe, if he waver or fumble about what he should command the multitude that is provoked. For they fight freely for their Countrey, and they will presently know what it is fit for them to do.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Direction of the Multitudes called together.

**W**hen the multitude of Inhabitants are met, presently come the most prudent Generals, who at once shew them what they must do, and divide them into Troops, Companies, and Regiments, and fore-tell them what manner of Battail they must keep, they give them their Colours, and expound unto them the cause of the War, they open to them the insolence of the Enemy, and shew to one and all their damages, and how necessary it is to defend their Countries Liberty: and these things, with a quick expedition, make them all to be most bold Revengers of their wrongs, especially for this reason, because they learned before by training at home, how to fight in War, and that with Javelins, Arrows, Slings, Swords, wherewith they often kill the Enemy, or put him to flight: and they know what they should do in War, and can as well teach themselves, as learn from others: whence they fall upon the Enemy, like a grievous and sad Tempest all at once, and run fiercely on; either they find an opportunity to kill, slay, or take the Enemy prisoner, or to rout him utterly, as the Nature of the place will give them way. And it is the Custome of the people to fight in a tumultuous and running Battail. But those that excel the rest in Spears, or standing fight, are deputed to their Ranks apart, that they may be Auxiliaries to their Fellows, if by the opposition of the Enemy, they should be beaten back, or put to flight.

Others

Others again heaped together in Troops, either keep passages, that they may compel the Enemy to fall into Inares, and places not convenient; or may take from him his provision, or hinder him, that by continual skirmishing they may rir him out; or else they drive him into extream danger of Bogs, or steep places, that they may easily destroy, or captivate the Enemy shut up in Caves in Rocks, and they chiefly provide, that they may continually have fresh Forces to oppose against the Adversaries strength, and may receive such as are wearied into safe places of defence.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Battails on the Shores.

**W**hen a Sea-fight is at hand, the North people use wonderful diligence, especially the *Goths, Swedes, and Finlanders*, either to drive away the Fleet of the Enemy, or to give them battail. For they either from the Rocks, which are their Natural Forts, drive the Enemy from the shore a far off with shooting their Arrows; or if he come neer, they cast stones upon him from above; or in the entrance of their Havens, they fasten blind pillars, and thick stakes under water, that they may stop their Enemy from entering, though no man defend them. Sometimes also they make the Enemy think that they are afraid of him, that lying close in the utmost skirts of Woods, whither the Enemy comes to pillage, by blowing their Horns, they may call together all the multitude that lies in Ambush. For in many places by the shore they had made passages of Woods to go in and out, by cutting up young Trees, and ticking many of the Boughs all over, and laying Bushes and Bryars in the Ways between them, that like a Wall, these Hedges might stand for their Defence, which cannot be entred, nor yet hardly be lookt into: within those Woods that are set in the way, almost in all the Ports or Provinces, lie a great multitude of the Inhabitants, who run the swifter upon the Enemy, as the Scouts are careful to give them notice, especially when the Enemies begin to rage, and burn houses, and destroy their fields. For the Natives hold no wickedness to be more cruel than that, nor do they revenge any wrong more severely.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of Slings for Stones, and red hot Iron.

**F**lexible Chains, and jointed Irons, tied to Clubs of Wood, are used more frequently by the Northern people to besiege Castles with, than any other Weapons, especially where the fields round about are strong. But where there are no stones, which is seldom seen, they cast into the Forts, as forcible as they may, a piece of Iron that is glowing red hot, which they put with a pair of Tongs into the purse of the Sling. For they have always ready Vessels like to *Romane* Barrels, full of pieces of Iron; and putting that into the fire, and fitting it to their Sling, and casting it against the Besieged, they will make such a violent wound and torture, that it can hardly or never be cured by the help of Physicians. For in the Fall, by reason of its great weight, and burning where it lights, it hurts without remedy; and so they destroy the Enemy, either with the torture of these pieces of Iron which they keep close, or else by the wounds they make. The memory of which thing is very fresh in the King of *Denmark*, *Christiernus* the Second, who *Anno 1521*, by such Weapons in the City, and Castle of *Aros*, lost a very potent Army. Also by Fiery Arrows, which being snatched out of the flame, and with a pair of Tongs put into their Cross-bows, suddenly shot, made the more cruel wounds, the hotter they were, that men could not but by reason of their burning, draw them out again.

But the most miserable things was, that the Iron Arrows, and pieces of Iron, falling amongst the Gun-powder, raising the flame in a moment, flew far round about very many Souldiers; especially, because these Mountainous men are a fierce kind of people, bred up in Mineral Exercises; and they with their Arrows, Stones, and pieces of Iron cast from their Slings, as thick as Hail, did vehemently pursue, and beat upon them. I saw in the same year, for the space of two hundred and fifty Italian miles, many that were so miserably wounded brought from thence in a ship into *Holm*, the place where the Kings Palace is in *Sweden*, a most lamentable spectacle they were; some wanted their Noses, Eys, Arms, and Feet, that were torn off: and thole at last in cruel torment, and with wounds incurable died there, a miserable death; especially *German*, *Danes*, and *Scots*. The same Lot and destruction rai betel thole *German* souldiers, and *Danes*, hapned chaily to thole of *Jutland*, and *Holsatia*, because they suppoed thole Mountain-dwellers (I mean the *Dalacary*) to be a despited people, and unarmed Country-clowns, not disciplined for War, and they called them stupid and weak people, using such like Imprecations, that millions of Clowns might fall from Heaven like Rain, and that they would and could destroy them all like to Locusts in one moment; and with idle words they thus insulted over them. But it was presently found that words and threats are but in vain, when they drew near that were able to give blows that were mortal: For when they perceived the force of these Mountainous *Dalacary*, it Noon-day, on *Whitsunday*, who were provoked to wrath with a thousand injurious speeches, as well as the rest of the Kingdom were, they were not onely unable with their most strong Forces of Foot and Horse to stand against them, but in a confused fright they forthwith ran into their Forts, to defend themselves; wherein, as I said, they were killed with fiery Darts, and red hot pieces of Iron.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Velts of the Centurians.

**A**lthough tumultuous people, and the unarmed Country-men all the world over, are supposed to have no skill in Wars: yet there is a far different reason found in the Northern people, who bringing their Arms with them, and expenses for a set time, come as merrily to the War, as they would to dance. For they are most strong, especially the *Svedes*, and the *Goths*, in besieging of Castles, Forts, Towns, and Cities, and winning them by force, and that many ways, as I shall shew underneath in this Book in many Chapters. But this way described above, may be thought to be more dangerous than the rest. For the Inhabitants when they are provoked with most grievous injury and tyranny, to free themselves from it, come all together, and fear not to meet suddenly, to remove quickly cruel Governours; and when they have worsted them, and compelled them to fly into Forts and Towns, they came by Troops and besiege them, as they are shut up in those Forts; and joyning their heads and forces together, they gather shrubs, or branches of Trees, and these they bind together ingeniously with Withs, green Juniper Trees growing in all places, with Pitch, and the Barks of the Birch-Tree; and that in so great height and magnitude, made like to long Towers, that moving forward every heap, (which they call *Velts*) about a hundred men rowl them, or more, as the Velts are great or less, and this *Velts* by its vast greatness, doth so secure those that drive it before them, that whilst they rowl it, they cannot be hurt by any Arrows, Guns, or other Instruments of War.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the manners and time of bringing these Velts.

**B**ut that they may the sooner satisfy their revengefull mind, by the more ready and effectually help of Nature, they wait purposely for the winds, and they chule them oft tempestuous and sharp winds that may carry in the smoke and flame of their *Velts* into the houses of the Forts; & on the other side the best archers fall on by troops, who do so plague the besieged in their windows or pe't their bucklers they hold in their hand: or their head, with multitudes of arrows and darts that they make them like to hedge-hogs. And at length that force proceedes so far, that the besieged being tired, or conquered with smoke and flame, are horribly killed, no conditions or agreements being allowed them. For the unbred Country mens simplicity knows not how to make any other agreement than the most bitter death prescribes to the besieged; because they remember how often they have bin deluded and vexed by the false Covenants of wicked Governours and enemies that they rather chool to dye once fighting valiantly, than to live any longer to be so mocked and tormented by Tyrants. And hence grew up that most cruell custome, that the ordinary Souldiers fighting a battail with the Country Clowns and Inhabitants of *Goshland* and *Swethland*, give no quarter, being in dispair of life, so it is on the contrary side also, but they presently kill one the other in a savage fury, as every where all the fields over their scattered bones fastned to rocks shew instead of *Epiraphs*. But this miserable Calamity consumes more forrain Souldiers with cruell death of divers Nations, that were come thither to sell their lives for a small matter, than it doth natives who growing daily stronger, & augmenting their forces, rise more cruely against all that oppose them. For strangers that are Souldiers relitly so much, who by the mercy of God have sometimes escaped these miseries, giving a document to all others, that the spoil of the Swedish Silver must be bought by Forrainers with their lives and bloods, upon very unequal terms.

## CHAP. X.

Of their Stakes, Darts, and Pits for Snates.

**T**he Souldiers of Northern people, to oppose fenced places against their enemies coming on, use much art and force, as other Nations do, considering time and place whereby they may certainly with a small hand circumvent the enemy; for the time, whether it be winter spring Summer or Autumn. For be they to fight in winter, by the help of snow and ice a hundred are sufficient to oppose a thousand (as I shall shew underneath). If it be spring time, then they provoke the Enemy to come where he may fall amongst the Rocks, and there are infinite numbers of them, the snow being then melted, that they may fall, that the Rider can find no firm ground to stand upon, to be free from falling down headlong, how valiant soever he be in Battail. If it be Summer, then they encounter their rash enemies with ditches, sharp poles and points stuck up, covered with the shadows of pine tree boughs, or in some boggy places. If it be Autumn, they are provoked by the enemy into the vallies and declining places, they insafuate and weaken him with rain, that he is brought into narrow Straights, untill that many of them gathered together, do not help but hurt one, the other which is most lamentable and desperate to behold. For nothing so much hurts horsemen, as a narrow and boggy place, which can scarce be avoided whilst the Valiant horsemen enraged follow after the enemy forcibly whether soever they see him fly. Nor can they save themselves by flight, by reason of the horse that is ready at the backs of them, nor yet on the right or left hand, by reason of the steep places, muddy lakes, deep boggs, dangerous caves, and waters and

woods, that they cannot escape these dangers. And then they find that it is not enough to fight with swords onely, or lances, arrows, sharp poles, and daggers, but with hard and dangerous places, into which they are fallen by too much presumption and improvidence. And if they once conquer it will be hard to suppress their fierceness, as to recall the perfidiousness and cowardliness of those that run away; and perhaps because on all sides they cry to arms to arms, and many speedy ways of death.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the Stratagems of King Hacho by boughs.

I Have shewed a little in the present Chapter with what vehement desire the Goths are wont to revenge cruel injuries. There was once in *Gothland* a most potent King called *Hacho*, who was addicted to such famous and magnificent actions, that other Lords could better admire than imitate them. For he satisfied all parts of the Common-wealth with such circumspection, that as in war he was most valiant against the Enemy, so he neglected no office of a bountifull Prince toward his friends and subjects. He divided his power and military forces into two warlike fleets, the one whereof his brothers did Govern valiantly to defend the bounds and people of his land, whilst he in the interim provided with other fleet, and part of the Souldiers, made war against the Western Island of the Ocean. When he was there, and understood certainly by messengers that his two brothers were oppressed by the *Danes* in a fight at Sea, and that the third was killed basely to the disgrace of *Swethlands* King and his Family, supposing it was not to be delay'd any longer, he bated to bring his whole forces from *Ireland* against the *Danes*; which thing though *Starchartern* a Champion of *Sweden* & some others by alleaging their reasons did deter; yet with his fleet that was left, and with a prosperous Gale he came to the shores of *Zealand*: and in a straight and quick passage through Woods and Forrefts, hastened to come to the very Court where he understood that *Sigarnus* the King then was. Nor did he want good successe to his haste: for passing the first and second watch silently and softly as he could, when he came to the outward lurking places of the woods, he commanded all of his men to cut down boughs from Trees, and to carry them in every mans hand, when they that kept the third watch observed, they presently declared to *Sigarnus* that they beheld an unusual and wonderfull thing with their eyes. For they saw a wood pulled up by the roots coming up to the Court. Then *Sigarnus* suspecting danger, answered that by that coming on of the woods extreme misfortune was foreshewed to befall him and hastily calling together what Souldiers he lit upon by chance, he marcheth against the enemy that advanced. And there was a cruel & violent fight, the *Swedes* as their custome is seeking fiercely after revenge. *Sigarnus* King of *Denmark* was slain in that fight. But *Hacho* changing this victory into cruelty spared no Age nor Sex, and so cruelly oppressed the Kingdome of *Denmark*, that he brought it not to tribute and subjection but to extreme deolation, nor would he have been quiet, until he had made desolate a great part of it, unless by the death of his Father he had been suddenly called away into *Gothland* from that attempt; yet he left another *Hacho* of the same name to be his vicegerent, whose surname was *Fastusfus*, whom, when the *Danes* after the *Swedes* were gone, perceived to want force, they presently fell to their Asmes again, and resolved to shake off the Swedish yoke, and to redeem their former liberty; and making *Simaldus*, the son to *Sigarnus*, their King, they renew the fight more fierce than ever it was before. That battail was so violent and bloody, that many souldiers being first slain, at last both Generalls of the armies *Hacho* and *Simaldus* met; and there were very few that after so miserable a ruine could save themselves by flight. And this was the end of that most unfortunate

unfortunate battail: in which all of the Kings blood were slain, but only one woman called *Gyritha*, who was born from *Gothland*, and to her the Government deicended.

## CHAP. XII.

Of punishing Hostile fires.

*Saxo*, the most worthy Danish writer mentions that *Suena* King of *Denmark*, was resolved to set upon the Inhabitants of *Sweed* and *Gothland* with forcible arms and hatred, that admitting no conditions of peace, none should be suffered to escape with his life and liberty, though their King should yeeld to all articles. Wherefore taking the benefit of the Winter, he took the shortest way, and sets upon *Finland* now called *Finovia* a South province of *Gothland*, with plundering and firing all. The Inhabitants came humbly begging, yeilding themselves and their Country, and not content to cast themselves down thus, they bring him provision, and fought to win him by hospitable entertainment. But when they law that all their officiousness would not keep them safe, they thought it lawfull by treachery to punish his implacable cruelty: whereupon the foresaid *Finlanders* with one consent slew their most noble men, and their friends, and Companions of their plunders and murders, that were feasting most part of the night and were full of drink, who were got into a barn that was empty of Corn, when they were drunk, the they killed with flame and fire, which they wanted before in their houses, being deprived of them in extreme cold weather. For when they were dead asleep, the *Finlanders* barring the doors cast fire upon the house, and now the greater part of them conpired, and the house was almost burnt to ashes, before the heat had awakened these drunkards. Lastly, when the flames came nearer to them, whilst they thought to run naked out of the doors, they find that they were shut on the outside. The fire burnt them on the inside, and the enemy without kept them from coming forth, but the present pain took off the fear of that which should follow, and the danger present was held worse than that which was to come, so that the *Danes* desiring rather to be killed by the sword than burnt, strove with all their might to break the doors open, and to avoid one danger run into another.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of removing the same danger.

Children of hopefull parts, whom the foresaid Captains and famous Men had taken to their ruine, in respect of propinquity of blood; without any pity of their age, were drowned under the Ice of the River *Nica*, and their bodies stript naked, by the Mockery of the *Finlanders*, and in the same Channel they had both their end and their grave. Thus by the hand of a few Country men, that is by just revenge, the labour of this great expedition came to nothing. Nor is it only observed to have fallen out in that ancient time, but wheresoever the *Danes* set upon the *Goths* and *Swedes* to spoil them by force of times, so often shut up in houses for the most part they are destroyed partly by fire, partly by waters, partly by sword, either openly or by snares layd for them: which is supposed to be done the more easily; when they sleep in houses built of wood, that are all compassed about with combustible matter, and are fast asleep, being drunk and weary, foolishly thinking themselves to be secure amongst those men, whom they afflict with all violence and cruelty: and the more quickly and severely are they punished, by how much they were more insolent by cruel tyranny to plunder and spoil the houses of the Inhabitants.

For those that are deprived of their houses in the coldest Winter, hide their wives and children in Caves, in Woods; and being led on with fury, force, and despair, armed with Darts and Cross-bows, they slay these plunderers, and firers of their houses, as they can meet them in dangerous ways; that with loss of life, they may recover, that are the just owners, their goods that are taken from them: whence it is, that they will either perish in most cruel danger, or by sudden (or more foul) flight, escape the force of the Countrey-men; for leaving the spoil amongst their Enemies, they oft-times hardly get home naked and spoiled, and frequently wounded, and make themselves a spectacle and laughing stock, not only to strangers, but to their own friends: wherefore it is but folly to make War against the Clowns in Winter, when by the command of their Lords, they are not afraid, if they find the like accident of shutting up their Enemies, to bar the houses, and set them on fire, because by the abundance of Woods near them, by mutual help, they can soon build more houses. Their houses have never any Windows on the sides, but on the top of the house: therefore when the doors are barred, they are easily burnt when they are fast asleep.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the custody of Banks in time of Hostility, about a place called Meler, in Upper Swetia.*

There is moreover in Upper Swetia, a notable Lake called *Meler*, of which before in my third Book, I spake many strange things; chiefly, because amongst the Northern Waters, it is most full of Fish; and there are many Forts and Palaces of Noble and great men, that are very well adorned, according to the manner of that Nation: besides that there are some notable Cathedral Churches at *Aros*, and *Sirengens*, where of old time there was Superstitious Worship given to Idols, and there was a great fight between the Nobles, Champions, and Giants; as one may see in the huge Stones, brought out of the Fields and Mountains, and placed in the Walls of the Churches: wherein, in Gothick Letters, long ways, and obliquely set down, the Deeds of these Giants are to be read. Also in the bosome of this Lake, there are inaccessible Rocks, which the Inhabitants call the Hens Chicken. The Rock in the middle is called the Hen, as in Norway there are Rocks of Eggs; that is, they are called *Eggisfiord*. Moreover, those that sail by Sea into *Gothland* and *Sweden*, meet with certain Boloms and Promontories of the Sea, that are called by the names of Tables, Forms, Crows, Hogs, Falcons, and Battails: wherein, when Enemies come on, they hide themselves amongst the Rocks, with ship-boats that will run in. The Inhabitants keep these openly, that they may intercept their Enemies that sail presumptuously to them; for if the Enemies enter upon the firm shore, they find an armed multitude every where met to fight courageously in defence of their Countrey, as I shall shew in particular in the following Books.

## The End of the Seventh Book.

Olaus

# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L:

O F \*

*The state of Governours and Officers,  
and Military Exercise.*

## The Epitome of the Eighth Book.

### The Preface.

THE most mighty Kings of the Goths and Swedes, being spoken of by my most dear Brother and Predecessour Johannes Magnus the Goth, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, in his Histories lately Printed at Rome, there seems a shorter way left, whereby we may shew, how, and what Kings were wont to be made in the Northern Kingdoms; namely, after that Noe and his Sons came forth of the Ark, before that in other parts of the whole World, those Sons of his, as it is thought, had obtained by their Fathers Appointment, the Title and Government; and so at last from thence had increased the whole World, as it is found by the testimony of many grave Authors, that above thirty four Kings proceeded from that Northern Climate, and had set up mighty Kingdoms over the World very largely, as it is more clearly declared in my Gothick Map, Printed at Venice, Anno 1539. whose Acts how great and Magnificent they were, he my said Brother faithfully testifies in his Histories. These things being thus proved, I must farther shew the way, how they chose their King, or have him by succession; and how Military Exercises were observed, from the most ancient time, by the Governours: Likewise of their Offices.

CHAP. I.



## CHAP. I.

## Of the Election of the King.

**T**He glorious constitution of our Ancestors, delivered in the name of free-men by succession from ages to ages, commands in the beginning of it, that when the Inhabitants are to chosse a King in *Sweden*, all the Senators and Lords, and Messengers of all provinces, Communities and Cities of the aforesaid Kingdome shall be bound to meet in the Archiepiscopall City of *Upsall*: from whence not far off, there is a large stone of the field, which the Inhabitants call *Morasten*, that hath in the circumference 12. stones little lesse than it, fast set in the ground; In this place, the said Senators or Counsellors of the Kingdome, and messengers are to meet: there the chiefe of the Senate makes a solid occasion to shew how necessary it is for the liberty of the Kingdome and all the people, to agree upon one King to Rule over them, as it was most providently observed by their Ancestors to do it upon such a stone which signifies steadfastnesse; exhorting all that with free votes they should presently name, whom they would have. Nor do they stay long. But he that seemed alwayes to defend the publick good and glory of the Kingdomes peace and concord. He that hath won the love of all the people by living justly, he that in private Government hath hurt none; he that hath won many Victories in War, he that is most the lover of Lawes and Religion; he by the universal consent of all the free provincials, is lifted up to be called their King; yet with this consideration, that if the Kings son, brother, or kinsman, hath the foresaid vertues, he shall be preferred before all the rest, not as by Inheritance but by free Election. And it seems not to be denied, but that such by all diligence, care, authority, grace, prayers, promises, may procure to themselves the favour of the people. Some hasten to get the Kingdome by recommendation from forraign Kings, and Princes, and by violence and force of Arms, but there are none more unhappy than they: because their violent government, the free vote of the people being against it, will not last long, though such a one settle his throne amongst the strongest Forts, or in the midst of the Stars. How ever it falls out, he alwayes enters more safely, endures, and ends, who is called by the voice of the people; that are provident enough, to begeth King, as being accounted for his courage and vertue the most famous and valiant amongst enemies or his own people: because there seems that nothing is first or chiefe to be done by him, than to see to his Nobles, and People, that they may have a just Government, firm defence and perpetuall peace. And when he doth this, the people will endure no other man to challenge to himself the Kingly office.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the Adoption of Noble men by Arms.

**B**ECAUSE the most Potent King of the *Goths*, *Theodoricus*, did not omit to observe the custome of the most ancient Princes of *Gothland*, in his own time, in adopting his son, therefore I would here, insert his Epistle, in his Fourth Book, sent to the King of *Hunli*. He saith, that his son to be made by arms is held to be a great honour amongst all Nations, because he is not fit to be adopted, unless he deserve to be accounted the most valiant. We are often deceived in our of-spring. But they can be no cowards who are first proved

to be valiant; and these have it not by favour but by desert, when strangers are tied to them by the bonds of love. And there is so much force in this that they will soon-ly, than suffer such men to be injured. And therefore by the right of Nations: and manlike condition, I adopt thee my son by this present gift, that thou mayest be conveniently born by arms, who are known to be a Souldier. I give to thee, horses, swords, bucklers, and the other Instruments of war; but those that are the strongest of all, I bequeath to thee, Our Lawes. For thou art held to be the Chiefest amongst the Nation. Who art approved by the sentence of *Theodoricus*; Take to thee these arms that may be usefull for thee and me. Such a man adopts thee, by whose people thou art most to be feared, we have given thee arms, but of old time the people waited for pledges of vertue. Therefore saluting you with competent Grace, we give all the rest in charge by him and him, our Embassadors, who shall plainly expound unto you our letters, and shall adde what is more to be said to confirm this grace unto you.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the same form of the Adoption.

**M**OREOVER so Strict observation was had amongst the old *Gothish* King for the experience of Arms; that their lawfull sons were not permitted to eat at table either in private or publick with their father, until such time forraign princes did certify of their sufficiency in Arms; which also *Paul*, *Diaconus* testifies *l. i. c. 23*. For when the *Lombards* having got the victory, returned to their own places, they suggested to their King *Odwin*, that seats should be made for his son *Albwin*, by whose valour in Battail, (the son of the King of the *Gepide* being slain) they won the victory, that as he was his Fathers Companion in danger, so he might sit at the Table with him. To whom *Odwin* answered: That he could not grant this, lest he should intringe the custome of the Country. You know, saith he; that it is no custome with us, that the Kings son should dine with his Father, unless he first receive arms from the said forraign King: when *Albwin* heard his Father speak this, he took 400 young men with him; and came to *Turismundus* the King of the *Gepide*, whose son he had once killed in war, and demanded a coat of arms from him, the King entreating him courteously made a banquet, and set him at his right hand, where his own son was wont to sit, whom he had slain, yet the Father remembering it, fercht deep sighs, thinking this a sad change for his son, which when the other son of the King, and the Courtiers, drawing their weapons thought to revenge, the King kept them from it under a sharp prohibition, affirming that victory to be wicked, when a man shall kill a stranger in his own house, whereupon he decreed that all should be merry at the feast, and taking the Arms of his son that was killed, he delivered them to *Albwin*, and sent him to his Fathers Kingdome with peace and safety. Then sitting at Table with his Father, he related all things in order, and he deserved great praise for his so great boldnesse: but *Turismundus* deserved a great deal more, for his so constant faith held toward so cruell an enemy. For it is a received opinion of men, as a decree of military persons, that the King can create a Souldier to be a Knight, who was not in that order before his coronation: because it is included in the Authority of the King, as a garland of roses upon a Golden Crown.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the Military education of Illustrious and Noble men.*

**I**T was not the least care amongst the Ancient *Goths* to bring up their Children very hardly, and by a common law they took heed to employ them in military affairs and wars, that they might be upon all chances defenders of their Country, as in former dayes it was instituted by the followers of their ancestors. And that manner was chiefly kept, which lasts to this day. Of old, Children newly out of their Cradles had experience of being whipt with rods when they suckt. First they were laist in most hot baths grievously, till the blood came, then were they thrust into the most cold water, almost in danger of death, that their limbs might be the more compeled: hereby they hardened their children, to endure heat and cold, also children were so whipt with stripes at the Altar, that much blood run forth of their bowels, sometimes that it was supposed they would dy. And yet none of them ever to much as cryed out, or made any moane, that they drank in severity of life, from their Infancy and Cradle, even with their Mothers Milk. Also when their Children were new born they first brought them to the fire, and hardened them in cruell frosts, and waters: then growing young men they received great blows upon their face and bodies, and bare them with that silence, that they would not so much as move their eyes, or by fear shew their impatience. They will not use soft feathers. Their cloths are made of hard skin: Their meat and drink is strong. They lye more on planks, than feather-beds, and upon such hard things that they may harden their limbs, and make them more fit against all ill chances. But because *Ludovick* King of *Hungaria* was daintily feed, he much complaind of his caterers, lest he should be put to flight in war, and be forced to live on any hard Country fare to save his life, as it fell out afterwards.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the reason and manner of Riding.*

**M**oreover youths are carefully instructed in the art of riding, darting, shooting, and that it ought to be very much respected by Princes. And amongst the rest, there is set upon their heads a weighty helmet, and a long spear is held in their hands, that they may learn as well for strength as decency to ride upright, with their neck, and to hold that posture. Again a buckler is hanged at their back, that they may know by looking back more carefully to beware of snares: also because it is the most ancient custome of the *Gothick* Nobility, with such ornaments, namely a helmet, lance and buckler, to come to publick meetings of Princes, and with other such arms to defend their Countries Liberty, and Justice. And that they may not be ignorant of the military discipline of other Nations, these youths are sent to forraign Princes Courts far off, that they may learn the fashion, Language, difference of persons, and the Inventions of Countries, their order of Fighting and disposing of their Armies, that they may not come rude to the Government, yet come no sooner home but they are made Kings. Also it was the manner of the ancient Princes, to change their sons hair one with another that by cutting their locks, they might be made their fathers, and such they sent home again adorned with royall gifts. But the *Goths* do not pole their hair, but bind on close helmets, and coats of maille, commanding them to mount upon the stronger horses, and in cruell cold winter to follow hunting and by course to stand in their armour when it freezes extream hard, as if they stood sentinel, and were to avoid danger of those that lie in some hostile siege; which is more frequently practised in Winter than in Summer.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the choice of Young Souldiers for Arms.*

**I** shall here shew after what manner the Kings of the *Goths*, *Swedes*, and *Normegians* and other Princes of the North did institute formerly their Kingly and princiall offices, and do in these dayes, dispose of them. Therefore they thought those young Souldiers the most famous of all, in wars, who, from their childhood, bridled their unconstant yearswich early manners, for there is nothing worse than that, if it be let loose to ill customs. For that age is thought neither faithfull to the Prince, nor profitable to the Country, nor tolerable to their Companions, nor yet pleasing to any unless by military rigour it be bred up into valour; that in such case the most valiant defenders of their Country may be instructed, to whom provinces may be safely committed to govern them: But that these young men might not always be under the rigour of these military disciplines, the Kings liberality, doth always advance and exalt them, and give them speciall gifts that they may be bound thereby to continue faithfull to their King, and that they may undauntedly undergo any danger of life in batrail. The gifts therefore they bestow on them, are swords, cross-bowes, quivers, helmets, brests, coats of maille, bucklers, javelins, war-horses, and when they grow elder, they are tied by some service. To all these, after the old custome there are speciall forms in words and reasons in particular annexed to shew why they are given and received.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the same by an outward Ceremony.*

**T**he *Goths* count their age by valour, as when they can wound an enemy, they are then tied to abstain from all vice, which also *Paulus Diaconus* testifies 1. 1. concerning the Lombards, who that they may multiply their Souldiers, they take many servants from their Masters, and make them free; and that their liberty may be ratified, they confirm it after their usuall manner by an arrow: yet mumbling some of their Country Language to fortifie the thing the more; which are as much as if they said, Let the Gods inable thee by this arrow, and let them destroy thee when ever thou shalt prove false to thy Prince or Country. And I must not passe over the testimony of *Saxo* in his 2. Book, that the Lords of old, about to enter into the Court, began their first service, by obliging themselves to their Prince by vowing some great thing, beginning their first employment with valour, yet no strangers ever deserved to be counted faithfull indeed in the Courts of *Gotland* and *Sweland*, unless they took a drawn sword, or dagger by the point, from the Princes hand as a gift, taking an oath of fidelity, lest taking it by the hilt they might thrust it into the bowels of him that gave it; as it hath been formerly done, whilst he suffered him to revenge, who gave to an ungratefull person the hilt for the point, contrary to the custome of the Ancients. But they make standard-bearers, and Vandragers that are famous for their valour: and very gallant men, by only tending them the standard, which by the law of Arms they promise to defend as their honour, and their life: To these they joyn a most bold guard, men that have sharp pole-axes, and iron-balls hanging at their girdles: with which when need is they can knock down a man that is neer when they cannot conquer them with their two edged swords.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the manner of the old Warfare of the Goths.;

They had of old heavy Helms, not very neatly made, but according as they could in those rude days; also they had thick Breast-plates, partly of Iron, part of Leather, part of Filleting, made of Linnen and Woollen: Likewise they had Iron Sleeves and Gantlets: And they carried great long Spears. *Procopius* speaks of them 1, 2, in these words: But the *Persians* not enduring the *Goths* that marched first with thick long Spears, ran away: Also the *Crasiers* use long Spears. Their Horses Breasts are covered with Breasts of Brais: about the Bridles and Trappings they wear Gold, not using Iron or Silver: In whole Country since there is so vast a quantity of Gold and Copper yet there is no Iron nor Silver. But in their Native Country, namely *Gothland*, they of old, with unspeakable magnificence, used Gold as the most worthy Metal, to the honour of their gods, in adorning the chief Churches. (as I said in my first Book.) But now a days, there is a Law made, that Brass or Silver Bells shall be tied to their restive Horse-tails that are cut short, that weak men, hearing the found, may avoid the danger. But those that use more Silver for Ornament, have large Belts, (called *Silfschena*) as well for to adorn them, as to defend the middle of their backs, and they wear other Ornaments also that are brave Courtiers.

## CHAP. IX.

Of other Amiquities of Knights.

Also former Ages used great long Spurs, and broad Rowels. Moreover, they had Boots that turned down, vainly enough, with great Tops, that were made for no profit at all; as I saw when I was a Boy, above 60. years since; and these are now kept in some Noble-mens houses to be seen. Also the Garments of Souldiers Coats were so short, and folded together, that they could scarce cover their Buttocks beneath; and they were so chequered and slashed above, that they would neither cover their shoulders, nor could their hair, falling down, keep off the cold, especially in private souldiers, who were not allowed to wear long hair, but onely for Princes, chiefly Kings Sons, who were never poled from their Child-hood, that their Locks might fall down upon their Backs, which were divided, and hung down on both sides before, but not after the *Turkish* fashion, platted, foul and ugly, or otherwise cripped, but sprinkled with sweet Unguents.

## CHAP. X.

Of Military Exercises and Disciplines.

It was of old a constant Custome, and is observed to this day, amongst the *Northern* people, that the Knights armed Cap-a-pee, should from the plain ground, and from any hard place, by nature, mount upon high horses, with their Trappings on, especially upon the slippery Ice, and Snow-Fields, where more frequent and more sharp Wars use to be made, as I shall shew underneath, concerning their fights in Winter; especially by reason of their heavy Armour, and thick Spears, which they commonly use against their Enemies; and this is held to be no absurd thing amongst them. Moreover, there is another Military Discipline of the *Goths*, whereby they are wont, in all their Armour, to vault from one horse to another, and so to the third horse, when the horses run swiftly; and they will do it, and never touch ground, when they are in a hot barrail. Also they will lye upon their horse backward, or lift themselves up, or incline themselves, and rise up again, changing their Javelin, or Spear.

## CHAP. XI.

## CHAP. XI.

Of their Arms and provisions for Knights and Horsemen.

When the Northern people are to enter upon a horse-fight with thick heavy spears, they adorn the points of them with fox or wolfs tails, in contempt of all their enemies. Also they never use spears with banners, as the *Persians* do. But they use crossie and steel and horn bowes for the great force and strength they have, for they are made most true, as are all arrows that are joyned to them. Lastly, they use long straight as well as crooked swords, and when their lances are broken, they cut or push with them. Also they use broad swords that are to be wielded with both hands, also Iron mallets that are crooked, at the end, with which they can the more sharply penetrate their helmets, & break them, than with any other warlike Instrument: and with these kind of mallets they will either force the rider from his horse, or else they break the horses brains out, that he will cast his rider. Also fighting near hand they use many divers kinds of punniards, and weapons, as straight, and broad, two edged, crooked, and hooked. The coverings of the horses are steel or Iron corselets, or leather, steep in quick-lime, and fenced with iron wire to keep off the cut of a sword. And being so provided they do more providently raise many Armies if need be not far distant one from the other, that one may relieve the other when the enemy falls on: and they do their best to inclose the enemy, as in an whirlwind, that they may not be hemmed about with his subtilty, or long Stratagems. And to do this the better they are directed by some signs from their Scouts and Trumpeters.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Tyrannical severity and exactiō of their Governours.

In the Northern Kingdoms as there are many mighty provinces; so to govern them, there are set by their Kings, Governours that are of divers Nations and Languages; as beams sent from the Sun, that, in all the Country; Equity and Justice may be preferred, and all the people may live in security, yet that this felicity of government proceeding from equity may not last long; by the Counsels of malignant men elsewhere in the Kingdoms, such presidents are set, that being blind with covetousness and malice, do torture the innocent, exalt the wicked, perverting all lawes, and in a short time bring the whole Kingdom into ruine, themselves into calamity, the King into scorn and infamy, misery and exile. But that we may have an example, amongst the rest of those bloody and covetous Rulers that *Ericus* King of *Sweden* who came from the *Dukes of Pomerania*, &c. preferred, to rend out the bowels of *Sweden*: There was one Dane *Jusse Erickson*: he being constituted over the Country of the *Dalacarli*, was so cruell to them all, that it was thought that all the souls of all malignant Tyrants that ever were before him, were met in this one desperate villain. *Cicero* reports that cruell *Ferres*, by causing smoke to rise out of rotten wood, destroyed one innocent man; but he killed of the Inhabitants of *Dalacarli* a vast number of innocent men hanging them in the smoke, though they could have freed themselves from him by force if they would have rebelled, therefore least he should seem a hang-man not ingenious enough to find out new kinds of torments, he was not ashamed to put the wives of the men so cruellly murdered to draw ploughs instead of Oxen: and it was his chief delight to see and hear them in so great straits to cast their dead Children away, and then to put in to the plough again. untill they fell down dead or half-dead. Here might be layd down more horrible acts of that Danish Tyranny, that then were not committed by him alone, but by all the King's Governours: let it suffice to say that they

they brought upon themselves by these practices their utmost ruine, and banishment upon their most wicked King. For by the Fury of the Peasants they were most cruelly slain; when they were more ready to plunder than to fight. But King *Ericus* of *Pomerane*, being forsaken by the Danes, whose council he used to the ruine of himself and many more, by the urgency of a Potent man called *Engilbert*, who was guarded with a 100000 of the Inhabitants, that were provoked to the war, betook himself to a little Island in *Gothland* as a refuge in his miserable old age.

## CHAP. XIII.

Again of the same most wicked Rulers.

THOUGH in the former Chapter the whole Country seemes to be purged of cruell Governours, yet the damnable remainder of them have persevered by the same fraud and art; by their Complices and Schollers as it were *Venome*, who the more in the obsequiousnesse of their minds, they could brag of their loyalty to their Prince; by so much they supposed they should be preferred before others in the Kings secrets and offices; nor were they deceived in their opinions. For whereas first they did profess themselves supplicants and humble, as experienced in what belongs to free-men, chiefly in the exacting of Tributes and Fines, they were presently made president, without any further deserts, over the simple people: and by the Cooperation of the Tyranny of such Governours, the most mighty King of the *Goths*, *Swedes*, and *Norway* men, *Charles*, who succeeded the foresaid *Ericus*, was forced to endure a Rebellion, of his most faithfull people, and at last to be exiled. For when the King himself, for the vast wickednesse of his Rulers and their sacriledges, was besieged by a most wicked sedge blocking him up in his own Court by the people, and staid for help in vain from his Rulers, who freely wandered up & down his Kingdom, he was doubtful what to do in so great perplexity for a more safe Remedy; and he sent again secret messengers to the foresaid Rulers, commanding them upon their honour and fidelity, and oath they had taken, to come and help him in his calamity, but it was in vain, for they had learned nothing else, than to domineer proudly over humble men, to wrack the Inhabitants for monies, to wrong the miserable; and punish the guiltlesse. Then the King being in straight necessity, foreseeing that his safest way was to fly, he commanded some Ships to be presently made ready in the most horrid cold in *January*, and he put infinite Wealth into them. And when now the Anchors only were to be weighed, one of the Governours asked the King whether he had forgotten any thing on Land: when the King heard this, he sighed and said, Truly, saith he, I neglected many years since to hang thee and such like on a Gallows, for had I done that, I might now be at quiet in a peaceable common-wealth; and so hoisting sail he came to *Dantzick* in *Prussia* by a more welcome than pleasant voyage and was most courteously received by King *Cassimer*, King of *Poland*, untill seven years being past, he was received into his former dignity, and power, being most dear to all, who was so lately hated by all. For he set Governours over them, who preferred vertue before vice, justice before wrongs, honesty before profit. But what *Christiernus* King of *Denmark*, the second of that name, suffered in the Northern Kingdoms for the cruelty of the cruell Rulers, no man can be ignorant that Reads his History.

But amongst the rest, he had one bloody Governour called *Nicolas Halste*, whose only delight it was by going before this cruell King, to raise high Gallows, that he might hang the unhappy subjects upon them, unless they redeemed their lives with a certain summe of Gold and Silver: saying that long Thievs must have high Gibbets. Nor did this cryer misse a just end; for being condemned by the King for the much money he had extorted from the people, he

WAS

was hanged on the same Gallows he had made for others, yet the King got ner'e the most security from the furious people, but he was forced to fly every moment. But of this King *Christiernus* and his Actions, I shall write something underneath, that I know to be true, because I saw those horrid things and was present at them.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of the causes of perpetuall discord, that the Swedes or Sweets, and the Goths, have against the Danes.

WHY the Goths and Swedes are so violent both in minds and Arms against the Danes, the most diligent Danish Historian in 16. Books here and there, unto extream horreur, affords us a most plain reason. For he every where speaks of the violent and cruell Government of his Nation over the subjects, and their false friendship toward their neighbours, and both of these against all their confederates; that every prudent understanding man hath just cause to beware, how safe he can be in their security, or naturall bond, or any other sworn confederacy. For he affirms in the first book, that King *Lotherus* said that it was honesty to spoil every Noble man of his life and goods, and to empty the Country of good Citizens. In his 2. Book, that King *Helgo* was so prone to *Venery*, that it was a question whether he were the greater Tyrant or Adulterer, who ravished the Virgin *Thora*, which afterwards invented such a detestable wickednesse, that *Saxo* exclaims much against her. In his 3d. Book he saith, that *Torgo* laid snares for his brother and slew him, and lying with his wife added incest to parricide: and *Saxo* himself testifies how he covered that wickednesse with so great simulation of good will, and coloured his fratricide with the name of piety. That the woman he ravished was full of all mildnesse, hurting no man, and indeed he induced the woman to this, that she affirmed that her husband was a Traitor to the King, and killed himself. Nor was this persuasion lost, whilst Princes will believe lies, where oftentimes Scoffers are in grace and backbiters are honoured. In the 4th. Book, the last lease, *Saxo* testifies, that his Country men the Danes, hold it no fault or ill way to lye and to deceive, as the fashion is amongst the *Parthians*. In the 5th. Book 2. leaf is shewed what filthy manners and foul wicked violences and adulteries the courtiers are addicted to. Indeed all the world and all barbarians abhor it. In the 6th. Book, the cruelty of the Danes so grew, upon the Saxons after that their Champion was slain, that they forced them to pay for a tax yearly the forefinger of every mans hand, in token of their slavery, untill such time as one *Swertingus* moved with the affection of the Citizens, burnt up both himself and the King, under the pretence of a banquet. At the beginning of the 7th. Book, *Fritho* commands his own brother to be slain by one of his servants, secretly; and that the wickednesse might not be discovered by him that was guilty of it, he caused the same murderer to be slain privately; but at last he was burnt up, and suffered for his parricide by the sons of his slain brother, who were kept close and bred up as whelps.

CHAP.

CAAP. XV.  
Of the same causes.

Amongst the rest, *Saxo* very largely prosecutes the monstrous cruelty of King *Jarmericus*, which was fiercely continued from his Childhood, unto his old age; which as it exceeds all rage of Beasts, so cannot it be read or heard of by any sensible man, but with great horror. For by unheard of Tyranny, he often killed with exquisite torments afflicted men. For, by high ingratitude, he slew their King and Queen with fire privately, by whom he was taken captive in war, and set at liberty, and taken into the number of their familiar friends, and made the chief of them, and exalted. Then, when he took forty *German*s, he joyed so many Wolves to them, and strangled them; yet this would not satisfy his bloody mind. For he destroyed their Nobility, thrusting Thongs through their Legs, and then he bound them to the hoofs of huge Bulls, & let Dogs to tear them, and drew them into the Mud and Bogs, a most miserable spectacle. Lastly, the Earls, Dukes, Princes of *Germany* that he took Captives, thrusting cords through their legs, he tied to horses to pull them in sunder; yet he could not stay in this highest cruelty. For he gave his own Queen, the Daughter of the King of the *Huns*, though she were most innocent and chaste, fast bound to the Earth, to be trod down by horses, and a whole Troop of Cattel trod her to death, and tore her in pieces. Also he took his Nephews, his own Sisters Sons, by hand, and strangled them. And the Nobility that were their Tutors, he used in the same manner, inviting them to a Banquet. Moreover, in the same Book there is to be seen the unpeepable cruelty of one *Hagno*, a Dane, that it may well fright all men, to think themselves to be safe, either with any Victories or accords made with that Nation. In the ninth book at the beginning, the same Author observes, that the publick piety was torn with the private fury of the King; and after many things, that King *Harald* from a glorious Saint became a foul Apostate, and fell from it. And in the Tenth Book, that the *Danes* winning *Semb'a*, killing the men, compelled the women to marry them, and divorcing them from their Wives, being more desirous of strangers, divided the Victory with the Enemy, by marrying the women. Lastly, that King *Harald* bound men's necks in the yokes of Oxen, and at length that they *D. Olans*, King of *Norway*, by murderers corrupted with money; and last of all, by the hand of *Blaccho*, a Traitor, they slew *S. Cananus*. In the XI. that King *Sveno* was found to have forsaken the true Religion, rather than an incestuous Bride. In the XII. that the *Danes* might destroy the captive *German*s, with a more violent death, they bound their hands behind them, and fastened them upon stakes: then they opened their Bellies with their Knives, taking out the first part of their naked guts, they opened the rest with stakes: nor did they leave off torturing them, till they had drawn all the guts out of their bellies, and made them give up the Ghost: which spectacle, as it was sad to behold, so was it very profitable for us: for it not only brought the guilty to punishment, but it forewarned others, that they should avoid the like cause of torment. Wherefore it was no less an admonition to those that saw it, than it was a punishment to those that endured it. But in the rest of his Books, because very many horrible things are spoken of amongst a few that are good, I rather leave them to the free choice of the Reader, if need be, to find them there, than for me to be tedious in setting them down; thinking it a sufficient and lawful cause why the *Swedes* and *Goths*, and other Nations, cannot be secure in the society of that people; To whom, for the Reasons aforesaid, (to use *Saxo*'s his words) whoever shall show humanity and courtesie, doth a good turn to ungrateful people.

## CHAP. XVI.

Of the same causes, out of the 24. Book of the History of Gothland, of Johannes Magnus, the Author's Brother.

IN the year of Christ, 1512. there fell out a most pernicious discord betwixt *Steno*, and *Gustavus*, the Son of *Ericus Trolle*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, whereby not only they two, but the whole Countrey came to utter ruin. They were both young, and both born of most noble blood, both high spirits. But *Steno* seemed more just and modest in his cause, who said he would obey the Ecclesiastical law, and stand to the arbitration of good men; and he caused *Gustavus* to be sufficiently admonished, as well by *Leo* the Tenth, as by the Bishops of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, that he should not trouble or take away the quiet of his Countrey. But the Arch-Bishop was of a stouter mind, than to be periwaded any ways to agree with *Steno*, who had secluded his Father *Ericus*, from so large a principality, and shewed that he put his greatest hopes in *Christiernus*, the *Danish* King. Then *Steno* understanding that the Arch-bishop would by no means be called off, nor periwaded to forsake his implacable hatred, he raised an Army of Souldiers, and besieged him, shut up in the Castle *Almerikech*, and he put to flight the Army of the King of *Denmark* that came to raise the siege. Then blocking him up again, and when he waited to no purpose for relief from the King of *Denmark*, he forced him to yield; and pulling down the Castle to the ground, he shut him up in a Monastery at *Aros*, (called *Insulens*) that being done, he had his cause opened before the Popes Legate, *Johannes Arcimboldus*, in the Parliament at *Arbogum*, and he was by the intercession of the Legate, and the Senate of the Kingdom, received into grace with *Steno*, upon this condition, that henceforth he should not intrude into the Arch-bishoprick of *Upsal*, but should live on his Patrimony, studying to be quiet, and maintain peace. For he shut up his Father *Ericus*, and some other Lords of the *Danish* Faction in prison: Then going progress about the Kingdom, he was received with the general love of all the Inhabitants, and he bound himself to them, and them to him, by an Oath. For he was gracious in the sight of all his subjects, and exceeding popular, because another time he fell down on his knees to his Father *Suamun*, who oppressed the people with Tributes, and he obtained a relaxation of them. Wherefore, being now chosen Prince, he found that not only Tributes were ready to be paid by his loving Subjects, but that they were willing also to hazard their lives for him in a thousand dangers of death; wherefore being assisted with so many people, he grew so potent, that he could oppose the Forces of many Kings and Princes; especially if he had had as much prudence in his daily Counsellors, joyed with his power. But there were in his Cabiner-Council men, that spake for flattery, and nothing for the publick good, because they were not prudent enough, nor would they admit men that were more prudent into the Kings Council, but they slandered them by Detractions, Whisperings, and false Acculations, to the young Prince: whence it came shortly to passe, that by their malignant impudence, and impudent Malignity, many of the best and most powerful men left him, and expected a change: Which when *Christiernus* the *Danish* King understood, he thought a fit time was come, to enlarge the narrow Straights of *Denmark*; and that he might by force subdue the spacious Kingdoms of *Gothland*, and *Swedland*: Wherefore drawing out a great and potent Army of *Saxons*, *Frisles*, *Westphalians*, *Scotts*, *Danes*, *French*, he besieged *Stockholm* the court of *Sweden*, with a powerful hand. But *Steno* being fortified before with the love and service of so many people, he could not be conquered by the Dane, whose name was hateful amongst the *Swedes*.



Alto *Christiernus* in that siege wherein he seemed to beleaguer *Steno*, was so hardly be sieged himself with hunger and want of provision, that the greatest part of his Army was like to perish for hunger, whereupon calling off his forces from the sieges, he provides to return with his Navy into *Denmark*. But when he was ready to sail, and to begone, a vehement contrary wind stopp him: which standing in that point for four whole months forcibly, it drove *Christiernus* to intolerable inconveniences. For to return to land, *Steno* opposing him, he could not; nor yet sail into *Denmark*, for the wind that was against him. Then *Steno* a Prince of a generous and lofty mind, finding his enemies necessity, used a most rare office of humanity toward him, and most freely gave him as much provision as might serve his whole Army. *Christiernus* resenting this benefit, sent messengers to *Steno*, saying that he desired a private conference with him concerning the publick peace. It lacked but little, but that *Steno* perswaded by the Danish fraud had come to his fleet; but he was called back by the Counsell of some that were faithfull to him, and he sent *Hermingus Gaddus*, and the most Noble youth *Gustavus Erickson*, to treat with him for a peace or a truce to be made on both sides: these, he presently hoisting sail, carried into *Denmark* with him. And this was the end of that war that was waged by *Christiernus* in the year 1518. against *Steno* and the City *Stocholme*. But he, the year following, leaved a greater Army than ever he did before and marched over the Ice into *Sweden*, whom *Steno*, more valiantly than prudently, fought with, on the Ice in the Country of the *Vesiragubi*, and playing his first part in the Army most courageously, was wounded with a shot of a Gun in his thigh, and presently put into a Chariot he was carried to *Stocholme*, and when he was almost come thither, he died on the frozen Lake *Meller*; he was worthy indeed to have lived longer, and he had done so, had he but removed imprudent and ill counsellours from him. In the interim the relict of *Steno*, *Christina*, perswaded by a few Lords that took her part, by speciall messenger, and a promise of a free Stipend, to revenge her husbands death, did in vain desire auxiliary forces from *Sigismund* the first King of *Poland*. When therefore *Steno* was dead, the numerous Army of the *Svedes*, being ruled by no body was dispersed; and there was an occasion offered to those Lords that favoured the Danish King, to call him presently into *Sweden*, and to Crown him at *Stocholme*. But when he considered that he was called in to be King by the least part of the Lords, and that thereupon his Coronation might be made void, when the rest were referred to their Liberty, he caught many Senatours and Lords of the Kingdome, the same day he was crowned, that is on the Sunday after the *Octaves* of all Saints, Anno 1520. whom he invited to a feast, and who supposed they were secure upon the Kings word, and caused them to be slain too severely, which cruelty since it seems now to be scattered into all history. I will no longer stay in relating this Tragedy which brought no lesse mischief to the *Danes* and their King, than it did to the Common-wealth of *Sweden*. For the King amongst so many Lords caused the greatest part to be slain, by whom he might have been long preserved in a most ample principality from which he was, presently and the same month he came, excluded, and returned into his own Country of *Denmark*: being made a singular example to all Kings and Princes, who desire to rule with more severity than clemency.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XVII.

Of the severity of King *Christiernus* the second.

*Christiernus* the second, King of *Denmark*, at sundry times, and divers wayes, obtaining passage into the foresaid Kingdomes, by some Lords of the Danish faction, in the Kingdomes of *Swehland* and *Gothland*, that were kindred and of the Danish blood (amongst whom was that most unhappy man *Gustavus Trolle*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*) he became so cruell and severe, that taking no respect to his oath, or Letters sealed, or of the sacrament of the Lords body, that was to be trembled at, or of any pity to commiserate any man, he one day commanded, namely *November* the 8. 1520. the Princes of divers orders, the Lords and Counsils and Citizens, to the number of 94. to be beheaded, most wickedly, to which he was egged on by the ill counsell of wicked men: this I saw and trembled at it; and he commanded that their dead bodies should remain unburied 3. dayes, before the City house of the City *Stocholme*, untill they were carried forth of the City to be burnt. Truly it was a miserable sight, that questionle would afterwards trouble *Christiernus* himself who was vexed with a thousand miseries; that at the instigation of his cruell Counsell, he should barbarously murder those, and after an ununsall cruelty, whom he had passed his word to, and friendly invited to a feast as Guests of the Kings Table: For he fastned to the Gallows one *Magnus* who was one of *Johannes* his Peers, and a most valiant defendant of his Country; who was fastned to a plank on the ground, and first his privities, then his heart was cut out, and they were cast into his fathers face, with many insulting opprobrious words given to him, that he might shew the greater rage and perpetuall horror in doing it. After that, in the night of the same day, the most unhappy widows, whose husbands were slain with the sword, and lay for the dogs to eat in the publick Market place, being spoild of their moneys and all their goods by the unsatiable Captains of the *Danes*, did lament without remedy. Indeed those officers were most filthy and most cruell, who plundered chiefly the innocent, laying aside all modesty and honesty, onely with the terror of the Kings name, or cruelty that they would put them to. Nor was the condition of Orphans and Pupils better, who were tormented in their parents and spoild of all their fortunes. A long and terrible History should be writ by me, who saw all this lamentable practise, if I would relate every part of this calamity, namely how all things both divine and humane were in a confusion. There was no regard to promise, no respect of Religion, all things were done with a sacrilegious rashnesse. Death was every where, and there was no place to escape it: and to live amongst drawn swords and cruell men was impossible. The City was kept by a most vigilant Guard, that none might break forth of that common prison for all the Citizens, to relate to the Inhabitants of the Kingdome, the order of this cruell dealing; for had the multitude of the people that was at liberty perceived it, they had left none of this wickednesse unreveged.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## More of the cruelty of the same King.

Which when the King observed, reposing all his safety in sight, after a few dayes he was forced to return from thence to his own Country of *Denmark*: in which journey he caused many to be broken upon wheels, and hanged, and put to other cruell deaths, quartering them. Especially amongst the *Offrogothi* in *Vaster*, the Land of *Brigit*, Lastly in the Monastery at *Nydalum*, called so from the new dale: where though he were most humanely entertained, yet



yet on the day of the blessed Virgin's purification, he commanded the Abbot with 7. Monks, when they had ended the sacrifice of the Altar, to have their hands bound behind them, and to be cast into a swift River and drown'd: and when the Abbot who was of a strong nature, broke the cords and swam to Land, the Kings guard beat out his brains. So little children of a noble family of the *Ribbingi* of *Vestragobia*, whom a barbarous enemy is wont to pardon, were killed with the sword in his sight: whereupon 30000 armed men being collected under him, he being guilty in himself, he returned into *Denmark* through desarts and unpassable places almost rather by night than by day, where he not long stayed secure, but was in the same fear. For fame was so swift that it was every where reported what he had done before he came; especially amongst the Emperors subjects in *Holland & Brabant*, and other Nations: where he was lately in glory and high honour, before he had committed such an unhumane slaughter upon so many innocent Children.

Let *Saxo* the Danish Historian speak in his 12. Book, in all his circumspection, as we alledged before in the 37. Chapter, whether this sad spectacle, was any profit to the *Danes*, whether by inflicting cruel torments and tortures; or by clemency, modesty, equity, and other virtues, Kingdoms are to be won, and preferred: Truly he will confesse by experience that the Danish severity spoken of in his former Books, and here again upon this fact of *Christiernus*, gain'd more Infamy, horror, cruelty, and despite to the Kingdom and the Kings thereof, than if they had been just and humane: unless perhaps they would glory in malice, when using fraud they think themselves to be potent in wickedness, that they may use deceit, as curpurses do, but God forbid. For who can securely hold commerce and friendship with such men? who (as *Saxo* affirms, in his, l. 4. c. ult.) hold it no fault nor foul matter to lye and to deceive. Let therefore their words be, It is, it is; Not; not; and all will believe them. Nor let good men think that I have said what I have said, for hate or malice against the Danish Nation, and their former actions, or against the severity of King *Christiernus*, but I have purposely left out far more terrible things, which cannot be read without groans and horrors, much lesse be set down in Books. But the Danish nobility, after they had driven out the said King *Christiernus*, sent out 44 Articles into the City and all the world, to be read publickly to excuse themselves, wherefore they revolted from that King. So also the Senarours of *Swabland* and *Gotland* and *Norway*, both before and after at sundry times excused themselves, in Books and Letters. But why I do write more bitterly than others yet more truly and sparingly, he is bold to testify, because with my great danger and sorrow, I was present and beheld all these Tragedies grieving to see the miseries of my Nation, which now seem to be increased a thousand times, and without remedy, made worke by the wicked constitutions of Laws, and oppressions of the Subjects.

### The End of the Eighth Book.

Olaus

## Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSALA:

OF

Field-Fights.

An Epitome of the Ninth Book.

### CHAP. I.

Of turning-Swords in Wheels.

**T**He old *Goths* are known to have oppoled in the way Engines like to Wheels, and turning-Swords, to break the Orders of Rior and Foot, when they were to make a sudden Onset or Retreat; and at this day, though not so usually as they were wont, where place requires it, they diligently oppole them: Now the manner of this Engine may be taken thus. There seems at first three Wheels, two higher, that turn about an Axeltree, and there is a third in the middle of these, which is united to one of them by way of commiffure; and this necessarily causeth a two-edged Sword, fastned to the former Pole to move swiftly; which so turning-Sword, being raised up on the side, by thole that are cunning movers of it, and being brought near, doth not a little rend and break the Enemies Ranks: yet this is wont to be well looked to, that the Spokes of the Wheels may be covered with Shingles of plain Boards, lest Spears being cast in between them by the Enemy, they should be stoppt from moving. Also the higher and nimbler the Wheels are, the more wide doth the Sword cut. And there are poles or pieces of wood to guide the sword, that are above three or four foot long, longer then any Souldiers Lance, that the Drivers of it may be the more safe from the assaults of Horsemen; and these are fenced behind with Troops of Bow-men. But the Axeltrees of these Wheels, that they

may run the twister, are greased with Sea-Calves grease, that is well purified at the fire, and there is plenty of this amongst the *Northern Merchants*: whence being provided by the diligence of Factors, it is carried in huge Vessels in a vast quantity, both to the Upper and Lower Germany, to make profit by. With this Engine the force of the Enemy is broken six-times or troubled, as a huge piece of Wood is cleft with a strong and sharp Wedge.

### CHAP. II.

#### Of their Chariots with Hooks.

**A**fter this fashion, of old time, the chief Souldiers of *Sweden* and *Gothland* used Chariots with Hooks and Gramp-Irons, amongst their chief Warlike Engines; especially in their more fierce fights, against the most strong Armies of the *German, Danish, Russian*, namely so, that having searched by what way the Enemy would enter, they bound their empty Chariots, with their Wheels well secured so firm beams, in the flanking sides of the Mountains, and filling them with Stones, they would with cords make them little hanging bridges, covering them all over with green leaves or boughs, until they had drawn the Enemies by this dangerous passage, into these snazes, by seeming to run away from them; and so they would let loose their Chariots, which with swift running, would either break their Ranks, by cording them, or would disperse their hosties. This being done, they that before seemed to fly, and the other Troops they had, Horse or Foot, were wont to run in a body upon the dispersed, or retreating Enemy: also they ever used those Chariots, as movable Forts, when need was in all other fights, always observing due moderation invariably, that these Chariot-drawers had twice as much of the spoil given them, and their spend double to the horsemen; and likewise to them, who running amongst the Enemy, put them into straits, and unprofitable places, with these Chariots that had long Poles on the sides with Iron Crooks before, and those sharp pointed.

### CHAP. III.

#### Of Brass Horses that vomited out Fire.

**N**or will I omit in this place what *Saxo* mentions, *L. 9.* concerning the craft of King *Ragnar*, and his stratagems; For he saith, that in *Hellicum*, the King *Dian* being thus after many calamities of War, that *Ragnar* fought many cruel fights, and was slain by his two Sons, namely *Dian* and *Dracon*: For these Sons who formerly married the Daughters of King *Rudheus*, obtaining forces from their Father in Law, went boldly to revenge themselves on their Father. And when *Ragnar* saw their huge Army he despaired of Forces, and therefore he commanded that they should with all their might drive Brass Horses that would spit fire, and upon running wheels, and carried about with ventral Chariots into the thickest body of the Enemies: And this prevailed so far to disperse the Enemies forces, that there seemed more hopes of Victory in this new way, than in the Soldier; for the huge weight of it over-whelmed what ever it went against.

### CHAP. IV.

### CHAP. IV.

#### Of the Guns of the Northern People.

**T**here are Guns in most Cities of *Sweden* and *Gothland* so great, that a Wooden Vessel, greater than a Roman Barrel for breadth and length, with an Iron Bullet, and pieces of Iron like a mans fist, of six hundred pound weight and more, filled with Powder, and lighted with fire, with a most vehement force, as a Tempestuous Whirlwind, or Rain, is shot out; and nothing can stand against the violence of it: and also this is used in all fights on Land, or upon the Ice, so often as there is need of it. Also there are mean and very long great Guns, that will shoot forth balls of Earth. Also there are Petars that will shoot very high to fall amongst the Enemy: And the more formidable is this fight, when by such Guns (that are greater and larger than others) nor at one short or great noise, but with many crackers one after another, they are shot unto the places to be battered, and with the violent blow of them, the dust flies out of the walls, or places battered, as Clouds of Smoke.

### CHAP. V.

#### Of Triangular Guns.

**O**f these Triangular Guns, there was formerly amongst the *Swedes* and *Goths* more use then there is now adays: For by this three-fold Engine, a mighty Army, by renewing the forces, and other employing them, might be dispersed, where the Wheels running swiftly against them, any force of horses that came close together, might be stop with a small handful. But by the fraud and deceit of the Masters of the Ordinance, it sometimes falls out, that for Iron bullets they charge their guns onely with Towe or Paper, or else the Enemies coming on boldly, hinder the moving of the Wheels, by thrusting onely their Spears between the spokes.

### CHAP. VI.

#### Of Organ-Like Guns.

**A**lso the *Northern* people had amongst other Engines of War, especially when they were to fight with Horsemen, collateral Guns, bound together like Organs, or Organ-pipes, that they might discharge them all at once, or successively against their Enemies, and they could soon charge them with ball and powder upon every turn against the Enemy; which though they seemed in fair weather to make heavy Wars, and bravely to defend their own Camps: yet because the more frequent and bitter Wars, (as I shall say hereafter) are fought by the *Northern* people, in the terrible cold Winter, when the Snow is very thick, and then they cannot use their Canon; therefore are they seldom used in the fields, but more frequently in Castles, to defend the besieged.

### CHAP. 7.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the burning the Foundations of Castles.

IN plain and Champion-Grounds, where, by accord or choice of the Enemy, or by event of time and occasion, there is an opportunity to fight, the Inhabitants of the Countries, that they may assault the enemy the stronger, or for a time decline him with greater caution, use great Guns, with wheels, which are also called the Camps for the Cannon, whose waggons, no less than the standard bearers, or rather Commanders, are armed, and the very horses have tanned Ox-leather on their Necks and Backs: wherefore four skillfull Cannoners or more, are depured for these Guns on both sides; and these use what art they have, the waggoner helping with his skill and valour, against the enemy, that being cut on the front or wing, he may not easily resist armed horse-men.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of burning the Foundations of Forts.

THE prints of the Old ruins in the Northern Kingdoms do shew clearly enough, how many most strong places, built upon Rocks, and unaccessible places were blown up by artificial flames raised underground by mines, as if they had been rent and torn with thunder. For when many such forts were found made to pillage and rob with, especially on the frontiers of provinces, by common arms, and the unanimous consent of the Nation, and by the decree of the Judge, the Inhabitants were called together, and they fell upon them, and did by wonderful arts demolish them, by this means: for they entered into the most ruinous places of the mountains, and they broke them, with hammers, axes, wedges, and other Instruments that are to hew stones and break down walls, with a strong hand, or were it a naturall hollow cave, by means of such Tools they would by degrees cut the tops of it on that side, where the foundation was naked of defence, setting up posts in order, upon which the weight of the walls might be born up, that the whole frame might not presently fall down and be dissolved. But, that the noyle of the stones falling might not be heard, on the other side of the fort armed men made as great noise and shooting either faintly or seriously leaping upon it to assault it. But when the wall where it was stretched over the cave, was made all hanging, that it rested only on the props of wood, they gathered dry fuel every where, and cast it into the fire, and presently the posts yeilded to the weight that lay upon them; and all that part of the fort that was underprop with wood, sunk into the hollow cave, and the turrets over against it, and forts, were soon broken off from the places where they joyned, and fell down; all the doors and gates were fast united, being shaken down with the like ruine.

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the cruelty of flatterers, Traitors, and Strangers, often committed most fearfully in the Kingly City Stockholm.

STOCKHOLM is the most famous City for merchandize of all the Kingdom of Sweden, and of all the North, where Citizens were wont to be made free of all Countries and Nations, but chiefly out of the Netherlands: and amongst those oftentimes they are mingled, who either for debt, or some foul crimes dare not stay in their own Country: these as they grow rich use oftentimes to discover their Natures, which poverty kept close, and to work the utmost mischief

mischief to a Country where they were received in a very hospitable way; especially when they have such a King to rule them that lets them do what they list. Such were the Germans found to be in the City Stockholm in the dayes of King Albertus; who conspiring secretly being 170. in number, called themselves the hooded bretheren: and afterwards their number increased to above 1500. Their chief aime was by calling scorns and reproaches upon the native Swedes to provoke them to quarrels and dissensions, that at length being brought before the King they might deprive them of life or fortunes, or both; as afterwards it fell out. For, that they might rend them in peices most cruelly with most exquisite torments, they made laws of wood, wherewith they tormented the chiefest of them to unto death, that a man would rather lament the horribleness of so cruell a deed, than write of it. At last, the rest of the Citizens of Sweden, at midnight being carried forth alive from the King's Castle, where they were kept Captives, in Ships to the next Island that was a bow-shoot from thence called *Keplinge*, were shut up in a certain house, with their fingers rived fast in holes in the wall, by knocking in of wedges, and were burnt with fire cast upon them, they were more than we can affirm them to have been: for as they tied together many were thrown in to be burnt. Of this City, Albertus Cranzius speaks thus, Stockholm the noted Mart Town of Sweden, suffered a great mischief; for, being thunder stricken from heaven, it was almost all burnt down. There died 1600. men; but that is more miserable which follows; women and maids numberlesse carried their goods and children into the ships, but the presse was so great of those that sought to run from the fire, that in a moment they were all drown'd.

## CHAP. X.

## Of the Originall and scituation of this Kingly City.

THIS chief City of the Swedes and Kingly place Stockholm, was built from the foundation, by a most illustrious and famous man who was the King's Tutor, whose name was *Roger Iord*; and he fortified it with walls and other buildings in so fit necessary and invincible a place, that it is supposed that he could never have done any thing more commodiously. For it is a place that is on all sides fortified with Torrents (& was formerly only for Fishermen's use) and is so placed between fresh and salt water, that it may be called the Port of all Sweden. For formerly the *Estones*, *Muscovites*, *Russians*, *Tarteshi*, did constantly pass through the mouth thereof, and plundered the Swedes privately, who suspected no hostility: and detroying great multitudes of men, they freely, and unpunished, loaded with great booties, returned to their own Countries. In which incursion they slew *John* the second Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, in his own mansion house *Alme-Heek*, and some other Noble men. But when this Stockholm was built, all and every man enjoyed a long peace, and the enemies were in continuall fear, who finding such a strong Garrison raised for the time to come against all enemies, forbore to plunder Sweden any farther. If any man shall presume to beleaguer this Stockholm and think to take it, he can never win it: though he should continue resolute in the siege thereof every way. For it is situate in the most deep waters, and most swift Rivers having only two Gates on the south and North parts with long bridges between them, which Gates and Bridges cost the Kings of Denmark more money in a siege that came to nothing, than ten the greatest Cities of his Kingdom. Nor can it be besieged, but by 3 most potent Armies, divided into Islands that are parted by firm land and water; yet these Armies can never be secure from bowmen that will put them into fear. Let him try that will, and he shall find it worie.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the Situation of the Mountain Bruncaberg, beyond the Kingly City Holm, and of the battels fought in it.

**V**ithout this Kingly City toward the North, there is a high mountain or hill of Sand; upon the top whereof, and the oblique sides, there have been fought many cruell battails of Princes, Nobles, Citizens, Country people, both in former and latter ages, as well by imbred as foreign enemies, concerning which because my most dear brother *D. Johannes Arch-Bishop of Upsal* hath writen many things most true; and namely in his Gothick and Swedish Histories, I need not tire the Reader to repeat them; yet with this exception, that *Christiernus* King of *Denmark* the first of that name, flying from this mountain the *Dalacars* following him in a most sharp battel, unto the shores of his warlike fleet, lost his four upper teeth by the blow of a Musket, as the age next following, boasted of it in songs and compositions. Besides, *Christiernus* the 2d, had much to do to carry off his army that was sick and hungry, from this Mountain by water to his Navy that rode behind the Mountaines on the South side of this *Holm*. Yet not there could he refresh his hungry army but by false covenants, that he offered to the Prince of the City and Kingdome, and Inhabitants, and so had received necessary food and provision, by the foolishly perswaded Citizens, for his Army, and from the King's own Table, by a most liberall donation. But how he gave satisfaction for his Kingly honour, which must defend his reputation to posterity, I leave it as it was in part written by others, long before this relation. Namely that breaking his faith he carried six of the most noble pledges of the Kingdome against their wills into *Denmark* with him. Also this mountain hath got its name from one *Bruncbo* in respect of the event, who was a traitor to the Kingdome; and a most filthy adulterer. There was also formerly in this Mountain a Cave underground, where sometimes there lived *Hermits*, who gave warning for the safety of those that should depart out of that City, untill such time as wars came (wherewith that City is often afflicted) then they departed to some other place, and that place was turned to a den of Thieves, and it being again freed of them, it lies filled up with earth, that it may serve for no murderer, nor any that meditate on wicked devices.

## CHAP. XII.

Of feeding their cattle in the houses of the besieged.

**M**oreover it falls out, that Cities besieged are so close straitned by Land and Sea, with such obstinate Souldiers, that they will suffer nothing to be brought in to solace or preserve the besieged, but all things are taken away by the armed men, in the greatest danger, from the enemies themselves, and are carried forth; and oftentimes upon that occasion the fight is made so fiercely, that forsaking away a few cattle, many thousand Souldiers lose their lives: and whilst they strive deadly for the Cattle, the fields are filled with the dead bodies of the slain men. Nor are the besieged repressed with that blood and fury. For the first years they strive by force, as when the besieged are weakened with continual slaughters, they contend by cunning, flights, and Snares, to take from the besiegers their provision, especially cattle, and what they can catch they hide in the grassy paths of their houses to be fed. But there is great observation to be made, concerning the customs of the *Goths*, how they do very hardlome feed their cattle within doors.

For

## CHAP. XIII.

Of supplying their want of water.

**F**rom this occasion, for want of fresh meat, and it may be a greater want of Water, here I shall shew how the *Northern* people being beleaged, amongst other remedies for necessity, take care to provide themselves with Water. For sometimes the beleaged are in such want of Spring or Pit-waters, (by reason of the Besiegers) that they must either yield, or fall desperately sick, or dye inevitably: Wherefore the wise Governours of Forts or Cities, hang Sais or Webs of Cloth, concavely bended, and stretched out very far in length from the tops of their houses, and they tatten them beneath Wedge-fashion, and so fit them to catch the Rain or Dew that fall from above. And it is to the purpose, because the Water they receive by the frequent meeting of the Snows, are so great that fall from the Mountains, when the Sun melts them, that they are sufficient for all men and beasts, for their use and necessity. Lastly, they that have Veins of the Salt Sea, or Springs, that come up under the Foundations of their Forts, they purify them, by often distilling them through Vessels full of Sand, and so they make fresh Water, and fit for all uses, and as good; onely by this simple art, As the Senators of *Venice* not many years since, bought such an Art of distilling Water from a certain Alchymist, because they dwell in Salt-Waters, and amongst Sea-Weeds.

## CHAP. XIV.

How to supply want of Bread.

**W**hen the *Goths* and *Swedes* are to enter the *Hollands* Lands of the *Adso-wites*, they often find them, by reason of the coming of a formidable Army, not onely to fly suddenly away to the Caves or Woods, and Rocks, but setting their houses on fire, to carry into these Deserts with them, all things necessary for mans use, leaving nothing that can be eaten by the Enemy that come. Upon which occasion, the provident Generals of Armies, after the manner of the old *Goths*, lett their great Army should fall with hunger, sooner then with the Sword, are wont to bind a good quantity of Wheat-Meal behind the saddles of the Horse-men in sacks appointed for this use, with an Iron-plate; and presently, as need requires, they kindle a fire, and make Cakes upon these Plates, as if they were bakt in an Oven: yet they all use these Plates for Bucklers, (as they are made after that fashion) to defend their bodies, and so they most prudently seem to borrow two necessary conveniences from one thing, to serve them in the Wars. For they bake bread under the Ashes, made of this lump of Dough, and they wrap it in the thin bark and leaves of Poplar Trees, and cover it with hot Embers; and though this seems to be base bread, yet it sooner takes off their greedy appetite, and is fitter for strong stomachs, than any other White or Brown-Bread.

R

They

They have also a third way easier than the former, whereby they make bread in plain Mountains that they often meet with : For they make huge fires in one or two or three places of the Mountain ( for they have wood enough there for nothing ) until that part be all over hot enough, and well purged, that they may soon bake a round or square Cake upon this Hearth. In the interim, they burn wood constantly upon other parts of that Mountain which are near, to bake more bread upon, and when they have purged this place, as they did the former, they make it most fit for this use ; and thus they will in a short time make many thousands of loaves : by the plenty whereof, a whole Army is kept from deadly Famine many days, and enters into the Enemies Country, and wastes and destroys the same every where with fire and sword, unless there be a Covenant made to hinder it ; and laded with huge spoils, they retreat, and can think it to be none or very small calamity they have suffered, which they see recompensed with so great enjoyments and abundance of wealth.

*The end of the Ninth Book.*

Olaus

## Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L :

O F

Sea-Fights.

*The Epitome of the Tenth Book.*

### CHAP. I.

*Of Fights in Lakes, and of Bridges broken down.*

**A**LL the North Countrey almost is Mountainous and Woody, and there are many places that are naturally fortified both by Waters and Rocks against the Incurfions of Enemies ; so that against an Army of Horse or Foot, they will with a small Company keep themselves secure almost every where ; and many Lakes are so muddy and unpassable, and deep, that they will scarce freeze in the coldest Winter, that a Footman can safely pass lightly over them. *Rotabro* is such a place, amongst the rest, that are also deep enough : it is called so, as much as to say, the broken Bridge, it is two hours journey from *Stockholm*, the Kings City aforeaid ; from which City, when an Army in hostile manner presumes to march forth very far into these rich Countreies to plunder, coming from the *Dacians* or *Germans*, presently they are forced to retreat to the place they came from, repulsed, by the Forts and Arrows of the Inhabitants gathered together in the middle of the Woods ; or else by force they compell the Inhabitants to retire themselves into some other place that they can find : and so (which seldome falls out) they fly to this bridge in the Marshes, and stand unmoved in the greatest Conflict. For breaking of a most long wooden bridge, there being a great Bog on both sides, the Enemy can find no occasion to offer violence to Nature that is so strangely fortified. There have been many

most terrible Wars fought there often, in the times of divers Princes, as the Songs sung every where in Verie and Mother-tongue at Feasts, with mirth and joy do testify; namely that by Art, Nature, Force and Experience of the old Soldiers; and industry and fidelity of the Commanders, they won the Victory, which was very great.

## CHAP. II.

Of the form and use of the old Northern Ships.

THE progress and end of wars in the Marthes in the Northern Kingdoms, hold this chance and change with a forrain Enemy; that when it is out amils, (as it oft hapneth, by reason of the ignorance of the places) the Commanders have a certain refuge through places unpassable, and Delarts and Woods, a shorter way to their ships that are left in some lute Harbours, and as at first they marched continually, so often as one challenged the other, or they both alike challenged one the other, perhaps for some small matter to fight a battel, as for ravishing of Maids or to be ravished (as *Saxe*, the Danish Historiographer, mentions, that it hath been frequently done in the Northern Kingdoms between the most potent Princes, a most bloody War being fought by them), so they returned with disgrace, and great loss. Therefore they made their ships formerly, long or broad, as the Rivers were narrow or wide: as in the Ocean toward Norway, they are spacious; also in the Spanish Seas their ships are long and broad: but in the *Guthick* Seas, and of *Sweden*, that run by their shores, their ships are short and broad, especially such as are for burden; and they must be so, by reason of the narrow Waters that have so many Turnings and Windings. Of old time every Province, even that was far from the Sea, kept their shipping in some safe Port, or near the shore, under some covering, and all their Tackling belonging to them, such as I have seen on the shore of *Norway*: And lastly, of *Swedenland*; which ships, when necessity came, were suddenly sent forth, well rigged and provided with Tackling, Arms, Provision, and Souldiers, as well as that Age would afford it, to make an Expedition by Water, in a great or small number by the Princes Command; yet they were all so distinguished by their Flags, Colours, and Names, that whatsoever Conflict they had with the Enemy, they were always governed by the Order of their Officers without any confusion: unless they were carried violently, and parted in the Sea unhappily by some impetuous Whirlwind, especially a Southern Wind; for that Wind is as deadly here, as an Easterly Wind is in *Hellefpoint*.

## CHAP. III.

Of another form of Northern Ships.

OMITTING many kinds of ships, that agree almost in their fashion with the ships of any other Nation, only differing by the names of the Countrey, I shall speak here of those of this, that by a more common name are demonstrated for a general knowledge, as are *Galleys*, *Fleets*, *Barks*, *Wharries*, *Leery-Boats* for Horses, which are huge great, by reason of the multitudes of Horses that are to be transported from the North beyond Seas into *Germany*. Moreover there are ships of War, whereof there was one to great that was built for *Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, that it could carry forth a thousand armed Souldiers, and three hundred Mariners that are excellent souldiers, and there were huge great ships, besides very many appointed for Sea-fights. Moreover the same King, first brought in the use of two Oars, three and four Oars about the year of Christ, 1540, in the *Guthick* and *Swedish* Seas, by means of skilful *Venicians*, that he hired with his liberal bounty, especially that he might the sooner conquer and subdue the *Muscovian* and *Esthonian* Pirates, that invaded his Countrey, and had often broken their

their Leagues, and now his *Finlanders*, that are very skilful Carpenters, know how to make Gallies as strong and good, or better then they were, as I have seen some made with excellent skill amongst the *Venicians*, but they cannot make them so suddenly to be ready to sail for the War, as they can, who in the space of one month can make of the wood not yet framed 60 ships, or more, for to go to Sea, provided with Arms, Guns, and Victuals. Moreover they had Barks, Boats, Pinnaces, Gallies, Frigates, Ship-Boats, and the like. Moreover, Wharries are much used by the Northern people, because they are easily made hollow of great Fir-Trees and Oakes, that they will hold 20 or 30 men; those that are leis, are used by Fisher-men.

## CHAP. IV.

Of the mutual slaughter of the Merchants, for the Harbours of Iceland.

IT is a miserable spectacle of Factors that fall foul one upon the other, either at home or abroad, and kill one the other for gain, or put all their Merchandise in danger to be lost, or to revenge their Kindred. They cannot look upon this with eyes open, and at Noon day, to consider what Robbing; and pillaging they are subject unto every where, unless they knew how to manage their weapons, and to fight to defend themselves. Amongst these are the chief, as it is supposed the *Bremers*, or the Cities of the *Vandals*, the *Rosschians*, *Vismarians*, and *Luñkers*. And lastly the Merchants of *England* and *Scotland*, who so flily contend for the primacy and privilege of the *Iceland* Ports to ride in, as if they fought a fight at Sea, and so wound one the other for gain, that whether the one or the other gets the Victory, yet there is always ready one of the Officers of the Treasury, who knows how to correct them both sufficiently, both in their moneys and bodies, either by ordinary or extraordinary Exaction.

## CHAP. V.

Of the punishment of the Rebellious Mariners.

AS there are Laws and Orders appointed for all sorts and conditions of men, whereby men may live more honestly, justly, and warily: so in Sea matters, and rational businesses, Customs are made and observed strictly: of which kinds (though they be innumerable, I think fit, at least, to let you understand some of them that are the most general. He therefore that moves a Sedition, and lets upon the Captain or Matter of the ship, or shall presume to assault him, or shall perniciously falsifie the Mariners Compass, especially the Needle which they all steer by, or shall commit any such like horrid wickedness in the ship, for the most part, if his life be spared, he must put away his hand he with most commonly, which they fallen to the Malt of the ship, or some chief piece of wood in the ship, with a sword or knie and cut it in the middle: But he that is tumultuous, and injurious is tied with Ropes on one side of the ship, where he is plunged in, and he is drawn up under the back on the other side; and if there be need by reason of the water he took in, that he may not be suffocated, he is laid on his back or belly. But some being well known by the foulness of their Crime, or for their Rebellion or Treason, especially in a fight at Sea, are cast into the Sea alive, lest they should destroy the whole Fleet by their wicked devices. The rest for small faults easily obtain pardon, asking it at the Fore-Castle: or before they come into it, they are taken by their fellows, and wrested thrice at the Sail-yard, or Mast, and endure that punishment, turned as though they beheld the Stars at Noon-day. These, and the like, and greater punishments, as need requires, are used often more strictly by the constitutions of the most ancient City *Vibic*, in the Island of *Gubland*, that is by a perpetual right subject to the Dominion of the



the King of the *Suedes* and *Goths*. And though that City was formerly most potent and exceeding rich, and was humbled for a very small occasion, namely for breaking of one pane of glaiss of a window, nor worth a half penny: yet the Laws for Sea Affairs, and the decisions of all Controversies severally, far and wide, as far as *Hercules* his Pillars, and the utmost *Scythian* Sea, are fetcht from thence, and are observed, being given, that all things may be done in a due tranquillity, that may be fit and agreeing to peaceable Commerce.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the swimming of Horsemen.

Though it be no less unhappy than it is rash, for an armed Horsman or Footman, to venture himself to swim in his Armour: yet because the *Goths* would use all means to adorn Military business, they have left nothing unattempted that is fit for Military Exercise: Wherefore they were so cunning in the art and use of swimming, that oft-times in their Armour, riding on Horses, they would swim over great parts of Rivers, between their Enemies Armies, either to fight or fly. Nor was their Industry the less to use their Horses to the Custom of swimming; as *Cornelius Tacitus* affirms of the *Germans*, whose most noble practice it was, to teach their Horses to swim, and to take the Waters boldly on Horseback, when the Horses had skill to swim. Nor is *Saxo* his Testimony in this Case to be omitted; for he saith, that one *Biorn* of *Norway*, a noted Champion, had a very well made horse, which was exceeding swift, and so courageous that he would never faint in swimming over a roaring Whirl-pool; the Water whereof runs so swift and downward, that all other Creatures almost were retired out and drowned in it: yet he lost that Horse, *Fridlevus*, a most valiant Champion, putting him to his shifts, (of whom I spake before in the fifth Book) and in respect of the stony and unfortunate place he was in; and at last by a stratagem of his Enemies, and the error of his horse, he was taken prisoner, so that *Sejanus* horse seems no where for fashion or nature to be wanting. But that the Horses of the *Goths* are said to be so well skill'd in swimming, there is a necessary cause for it, by reason of their great and broad Rivers every where. For there can hardly be any Battails fought amongst the East or West *Goths*, the *Finnlanders*, *Russians*, or *Muscovites*, but they must swim over huge swift Rivers.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the swimming of their Foot Souldiers in Arms, especially such as are fat.

I Shall here alleadge a singular Example out of *Saxo*, of one *Sivardus* of *Norway*, who after that he had shewed many famous Actions in the Wars, was intercepted by the Enemies, and was carryed in a ship to be drowned in the deep Sea. As if he would precede his funeral by funeral-Solemnities, he made the Mariners drunk, buying drink for that purpose; and when they were merry, he desired of them, as the last thing he should ask, that he might steer the ship; and desiring the Mariners to sail faster, when he saw the ship run very swiftly, he cast away the Helm, and threw himself headlong into the Sea, and came to shore before the ship could, and so killed King *Harald* unawares of him. Afterwards fighting a Sea-fight with them, by a most incredible and gallant courage, he alone, for a good space, defended his ship from the Enemies, when his Company was killed.

But

But at last he was forced to yield to their multitudes, trusting to his excellent skill in swimming, though Winter were at hand, and his Armour on him w. heavy, he cast himself into the Deep, and swimming under the Waters, he made it a question, whether he shewed more gallantry in the ships poop, or agility in swimming when he was in the Waters.

For he took off his Coat of Mail that was about his body, and the rest of his Armour, as he swam under water, that they might not hinder his swimming, and then when he rose above water to take breath, and was pointed at by one of his acquaintance to shew him to the Enemy, by his cloths he wore, he dived under water again, and took off his Coat that he suspected he was known by. And when he could not pass, but he must be known by him that betrayed him; at last he put off his cloaths: And when he could not to remain undiscovered, when he alone was left of all his Companions, and he found that he had tryed all these things gallantly and cunningly in vain: at last he counterfeited himself to be dead, staying very long at bottome of the water, that the Enemy doubted whether he were drowned or not. But last of all, when he must rise up to take fresh Air, he laid hold of a strong Helm of a Ship with both his Arms, and stuck fast to it secretly a long time, until at last he was discovered by one that curiously lookt after him, and was put to death.

## The End of the Tenth Book.

Olaus



# Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *UP SAL*:

OF

Wars upon the Ice.

*An Epitome of the Eleventh Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Bloody Wars in the Northern Countries.*

**V**EE find in the Chronicles of the *North Countries*, both of old, as of later time, that oftentimes most cruel Fights have been fought between the *Russians* or *Moscovites*, and the *Swedes* or *Finlanders*, for divers very weighty causes, both by Sea and Land, and the plain Ice, and thick deep Snowes; and sometimes as it hapned, now one, then another got a notable Victory, as Fortune changed, and this again was a lamentable affliction to the Conquered. The cause of this difference is from the Circumstances of Time, Places, and Commanders, that in such cases hasten a speedy occasion: Wherefore there are two most strange Castles, the one whereof, a deep Gulph being between, belongs to the Dominion of the great Mr. of *Livonia*, (for so is the Prince of that great Province called) the other belongs to the great Duke of *Moscovie*. But one called *Narven* is subject to the Government of the Christian *Livonians*, and another to the Schismatical *Moscovites*. The Fort that is subject to the *Moscovites*, is so fortified by Nature, by the Waters that run round it, and the Forces there, and thinks it self so safe, that it fears the Assaults of no Enemies, be they never so mighty.

But

But this madnesse as it proved false, so it felt an inevitable calamity. For the most illustrious Princes of the *Swedes* and *Goths*, *Steno* that was before *Stur*, and *Suanto*, being provoked by many great injuries and frauds of the *Moscovites*, after most high wars and damages by the *Moscovites*, brought upon potent provinces; and people, setting upon an army of 50000. armed men, and the foresaid Fort of the *Moscovites*, with fire and sword (whilest their friends in the Castles of the *Livonians* looked on) they won with incredible fury, that the *Moscovites* being cruelly wounded, and many slain and burnt, could scarce save themselves by running away. And this Fort being taken, the Princes of the *Swedes* and *Goths* aforesaid and their Souldiers got an inestimable spoil of Silver, and costly Sabel-skins, that from thence they ever gloried, that for the great troubles they had sustain'd in fights, as well in hot as cold weather, they now triumphed, loaded with great plunder. But these rich booties, as they were to the conquered enemies an irrecoverable losse and grief, so they caused such discords amongst the foresaid Princes, and their friends and people, and such a pernicious and implacable hatred, that from thence afterwards arose the ruine of the Kingdomes. Wherefore this fort, taken from the enemies by force of Arms, when as the great Mr. having it freely given to him for a gift, by the conquering *Swedes*, leared to annex it to his dominions, the conquering army left it, putting fire to it, first having taken out all the rich spoil that was in it, and returned by *Finland*, *Sweden* and *Gothland*: yet there was such abundance of Wax left in the said Castle (whereof the Eastern factors make a vast gain, and it is a rich tribute for the Governours) because they could not carry it away with them, it being so heavy, that it melted in the flames and made such a steem that one might have said a great way with it.

## CHAP. II.

*Of Fights upon the Ice.*

**N**Or do the *Swedes* and *Goths* fight against the *Moscovites* or *Russians* that break their leagues with a hot desire of *Rapin* on the borders of the *Finland* Sea, with lesse eagernesse on the brittle Ice, than they do on the most firm Land: and as I said before, where they fought in Summer most fierce navall battails, in the very same places, when the Ice is frozen, they set their armies in battail array, and place their Canons, and fight horribly. So firm is the Ice to bear troops of horsemen at a distance or drawn up close in a body. Nor let it seem strange or incredible to any, especially to any *Italian*, how the horses hoofs can stand fast upon the slippery Ice; nor onely to run with the greatest violence, but also to wheele about, and run round to fight with an armed enemy. For the horses are made fit for it by having their feet shod with crooked Irons, and sharp nails, that the rider need never fear falling, be the Ice never so smooth; also such pieces of Ice are cut up with the horses shoes, when they run away, and are cast into the face of him that follows, that he is knocked down dead with them, or wounded not easy to be cured.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the breaking forth of the Moscovites or Russians.*

**T**He *Moscovites* for the most part go forth not so much to war as to plunder, keeping either very little or no military order at all; especially those that enter the borders of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and of the great Dukedome of *Finland* to fight or pillage; as it is recorded in the Annals of the same Kingdom, especially in the year of our Lord 1495. when they came

with 60000 men. The cause of their inroad they made to be, their demand again of 3. parishes adjoining namely *Eggrupe, Lasse, and Savalois*, as if they did rather belong to them than to the Kingdom of *Sweden*. But the truth is to great a flood came in by the provocation of *John King of Denmark*, that a mighty Province of *Sweden* being subdued, he might bring part of it under the Dominion of the *Moscovites*, and part of it should be joynt to the territories of the said King of *Denmark*; as afterwards, a few years being past, Anno 1500. in the Kingly City *Holm*, the *Moscovite* Embassadors propounded it to the same King *John* in the Lent, affirming that this League was confirmed between both Princes by kissing the holy Croſſe solemnly to humble and subdue the Crown of *Sweden*. But both parts became vain suddenly in their imaginations, that King *John* was forced to fly in haste into his *Denmark*; leaving Queen *Christina* a valiant woman descending of the Dukes of *Misnia* and the great tumultuous forces of the *Moscovites* were humbled by force and were driven away like Thieſs, and compelled to get them gone to their habitations at home, receiving such a notable defeat, that he never durst any more, by the *Danish* invitation, or of his own presumption attempt to come upon the Dominions of the Kingdom of *Sweden*. However it is, since the Kingdom of *Denmark*, as *Saxony* is, is contain'd in a very narrow Land, the most important, and crutially to provide that he may usurp the valy Dominions of *Sweden, Gelland, England*, that great advantage by the confederacy, and assistance he obtains from many Princes, especially of *Russia*, or *Moscovia*, from the East; and from the West of the *Scots* or *English*, and *Germans* from the South: all these Nations joyning together and coming into *Sweden* no subduer, sooner find a grave than a victory.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of a fearfull founding Cause, the Common people call Smellen.*

WE have shewed in the former Chapter that the Ice is so strong that it can easily bear troops of armed horse and foot. And now I shall shew that there is a cave under the Barre near *Pibungu* a City near the Thore, which is a close neighbour to the same Lands of the *Moscovites*, that hath such a secret issue, that if a living Creature be cast into it, it will make such a horrible noise, that such as are near to it, according to the greatness of it, can neither hear, nor speak nor stand; by which vehemency it kills more in a moment than the greatest Cannon, or else it debilitates them. Nor doth this workmanship of Nature seem so bold. For when any enemy comes on, the Governour of the Land bids all men to stop their ears with wax; and to hide themselves in caves and dens that they may live; and then fortifying himself, he calls in some living creature that hang long into the mouth of the cave, or bound with a cord, whence there ariseth such a horrid noise, that the enemies that are besieging round about, fall down like sheeps to the slaughter; and when they are fallen if the Inhabitants will they stay so for a long space to be poss'd by them. But the Conquerours find no pleasure to revenge themselves on them, when the enemies seem to be so strongly oppressed by the power of nature, who as soon as they come to themselves, have no mind to fight but to run away, least if this noise should be heard again, and they should dy of it, or having got some mortal disease thereby, they should live but in a short time though they did fly. In which case it happeneth that they who cannot be subdued and repress'd by arms from their warlike fury, are daunted by the noise of nature, rising, and seldom or never recover their former strength.

## CHAP. 5.

CHAP. V.  
*Of the same.*

A More miserable and unhappy example of this calamity was once left to posterity by the *Moscovites* or *Russians*, above all other enemies, losing many thousands of their men, that they may learn not to proceed to oppress their neighbour Nations by proud multitudes especially the *Finlanders*, giving them no cause so to do. For these *Finlanders* are wont to keep firmly themselves and their Country, by mutual help, and by the Arms of *Goths* and *Swedes*, by Magick Arts and the secret force of the Elements. But whatsoever is the reason of this cave it must be always held and governed by a provident Man, and that with many walls built round about it, because there is great power in the secret nature of it, as there is in other things.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the battail of the Finlanders against the Moscovites.*

A S the principallity of the great Duke of *Moscovia*, and of *Russia* is most large and most potent; so also he enlargeth and extendeth the Title of his Government, as his last Letters testify that were sent by one *Demetrius* to Pope *Clement* the 7th. after this Style. The great Lord *Basilius*, by the grace of God Emperour and Governour of all *Russia*, and great Duke of *Volodemia*, *Moscovia*, *Norvogradia*, *Fermia*, *Petcha*, *Bolgaria*, &c. the Lord and great Prince of *Novogradia*, the lower, *Cernigovia*, *Raxania*, *Polotchia*, *Rozeria*, *Belchia*, *Roschovia*, *Jaroslav*, *Belozeria*, *Vdoria*, *Obdoria*, and *Cordinia*, &c. Given in our City of *Moscovia* in the year from the beginning of the world 1307. April the 3d. But this so great and large Title is more admired by neighbour Nations, than feared by reason of his forces, especially the *Finlanders*, who often being provoked, do not leave off to beleaguer his mighty forces and to conspire against his Potent Titles. Yet not so frequently in the field (unless the winter be extreme sharp,) as in waters that are divided into many Rivers and Lakes. But for the most part they are Robbers on both sides, who fight, as I said in heat of plunder. And for this small occasion the Princes of the North will not fall to open war.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Moscovites way of Stealing.*

THE *Russians* or *Moscovites* have a most pernicious craft and subtilty in piracy and robbing, as we shall shew briefly. For when they purpose to invade, like thieves the *Careli* or other neighbour Nations, they gather their men together, and instruct them by certain laws and agreements, and they make long light fir tree barks that will carry 20. or 25. men, and these are made in the defarts with plain and thin cloven boards, namely in this order, that some of them hew them hollow with axes, others boyl pitch in holes underground (that they may not be discovered by the smoke) from pine tree boughs, or pieces of them: some burn the points of their darts that they may be hard; others make ready their bows and tirings and arrows: For they have most fit matter for all such Instruments in their defarts. These Barks being made ready, they Theevishly Lanch them into the waters like a Navy of Ships, and furnish them with arms; and when they set upon Villages, Farms, Castles, and Marchants Ships, in the white lake or *Venedick Gulph*, or the *Livonian* Sea, as they lay at anchor, to rob them. Nor are they content to pillage them and spoil them of their goods, but also by an imbred cruelty, without any difference or

discretion, all they can thus master, they cast into the sea, and drown them,

#### CHAP. VIII. *Of the same.*

**A**Nd relying upon such prosperity, they grow so insolent, that they will not fear to set upon and molest men of war, that are wind bound, and bore holes in their planks next the waters; for with their arrows they fight fiercely to hinder them that are above that they may not defend their Ships, yet they seldom get the victory by their great presumption and boldness, because they are frequently repulsed with Guns, Cross-bows and throwing of stones at them. Then when they consider that they cannot stay long in security among men distressed by them, when they have used violence and Rapine, or, by any further mischief to all, exercise their publick piracy any longer, they take their barks on their shoulders, and carry them back into some secret places of the woods, for they know the most secret places of them: that they may another time make use of them to prey abroad as they did, upon more fit occasions; setting guards in the woods that there they may live as in the most private places of the wilderness by the abundance of their spoils, and defend themselves by arms. But as their wickedness is horrid and pernicious, so it suddenly finds some men to revenge it. For by the diligence and skill of hunters they first search out these Thieves that hold guards in the woods, then the people go forth in troops putting on black armour, and utterly destroy these enemies, yet they cannot do it but by a bloody victory, for these Thieves being conscious of their wickedness, will strive and fight stoutly for their lives. But at last being overpowered, some run into caves in the mountains, others to hollow places in the earth, and some climb up into thick trees to hide themselves thinking themselves the more safe, as they had in the vast desert made choice of those most private places to conceal themselves in before they did their robberies. But God's revenge following them, they deserve not to enjoy their lives or liberties, by that means or in that place, who are wont with so cruel torments to oppress the Innocent. For they put them all into their barks and houses of defence, and so without any mercy burn them alive. But those that lie hid in Caves and Dens, are kept in with great stones and planks and Stakes of wood, that they may dy with hunger a more lamentable death. They that think themselves safe amongst the thick boughs are discovered by the barking of Dogs; and unless they do Compound for their lives, they shoot at them with arrows, and make them fall down dead. And they have no more powerfull and effectual course to find out these Rogues and Thiefs, than by the scent and cry of hunting Dogs.

#### CHAP. IX.

*Of the way of receiving Embassadours amongst the Moscovites.*

**S**OME old Histories of the Northern Kingdoms relate, that some Princes of *Moscow* did receive the Embassadours of Kings and Princes with wonderful delusions, & they do the same yet. For they chose then, & so they do now, for that occasion many common people that were very tall men, & very ancient, & grave, & graceful, with grey long beards, in gallant cloths for the Prince cloths them for it, that being set in the ample company of the Nobles scattered here and there amongst them, and saying nothing, they may with the Splendour of their Ornaments, and great multitudes, ravish the eyes of the Embassadours that come in: who being charmed or terrified with so great state, may propound nothing that is harsh, or if they do propound, they may consent to have it ended by the

the common votes of them all. But that state as it is but counterfeit magnificence, so it is supposed that it grows contemptible in the end of it. For they are far from that esteem they thought to win. For the more perfect Embassadours, who have gone into the world upon great affairs, despite and are ashamed of all that counterfeit state and false pomp. Moreover it is a custom amongst the *Tartars* that the Embassadours before they propound their Embassage to their Emperour shall be forced to passe between two fires, especially for this reason, that if they carry any poison to destroy the Prince, it may first kill those that carry it, being dissolved by the heat of the fire. And they will not otherwise hear those Embassadours, unless they bring presents, and deliver their Embassage, on their knees, and give such honour to a mortall man that is due to Saints and Angels in heaven: and they that refuse to do this are scarce absolved without danger of their lives. But that this custom of entertaining Embassadours amongst the *Moscovites*, may appear by more clear examples, I shall insert the Embassage of the most illustrious King of *Poland*, Anno Domini 1551. which was directed to the great Duke of *Moscow* in the order that here follows. The Embassadour of the King of *Poland* *Mathieu Baribloniewicz Kneze, Gedwoitzki*, a very noble man, coming 200 German miles, from the famous City *Vilna*, of *Lithuania*, to *Moscow*, the Metropolis of *Moscovia*, when he was to have his entrance, after he had gone the foresaid journey, he was entertain'd by some Knights, that were appointed by the great Duke for this purpose: and afterwards a few days being past, he was brought into the Castle in great solemnity (such as the *Moscovites* thought fit) to deliver the King's Letters, & he passed through two portals, where very tall men that had huge long beards, (who are most commonly of the baser sort of people) sat round upon seats and were clothed in very glorious clothing, that belong'd to the great Duke, that so he might boast of the glory of his court to men that came from far Countries, at last he was brought into the Palace where the great Duke with his Princes all cloth'd as the other were, stay'd for him. But the great Duke sat upon a seat, that was far off from the other Princes, and was clothed with a long robe down to his heels, of piled velvet and the outward skirts of it were Embroidered with pearls and Jewels: and he held in his hand a Scepter or Staffe, guiled on the upper part, but it was Silver'd over on the lower part, that he leaned upon: Lastly he had on his head a Miter, which they in their Language call, *Kapak*, which was made of the best black fox skins, which are of a huge price in that Country, and far dearer than Sabels. But when the Embassadour entered into the Palace, presently they that brought him in, and presented him to the great Duke, cast themselves down upon the pavement before him, and they knocked their heads against the ground 3 or 4 times, as the custom of the *Moscovites* is, to shew their reverence to their supreme Lord. But when the Embassadour came to the doors 50 foot off from the Duke, together with his 12 servants that came with him, he was commanded by an Advocate with him, (which they call *Przyslaw*), to stand still, and this was done by order from the great Duke, nor was he suffered to come any nearer to him: and there he stood untill he had made his speech to the great Duke; and delivered his Kings Letters to the Duke's Secretary appointed to receive them. The Embassadour of the great Duke had on a time when he was in *Poland* refused to receive the Letters of this King, because he had not filed his Lord *Czar Ruski*, (that is Emperour of *Russia* as he was created by the Metropolitan of that Land, and for this reason the same Duke had sent his own Embassadour. After this the said Embassadour of the King of *Poland* was brought back again by the Advocate in great state to his Lodging for *Ostentation* sake. And let this suffice concerning the manner of entertaining Embassadours amongst the *Moscovites*.

## CHAP. X.

Of the Italian Embassadour cruelly slain.

**M**oreover *Albertus Cranzium*, a famous German Historian, affirms in his *Vandalia*, that an Embassadour of *Italy* was most miserably murdered, because he did not uncover his head when he was to deliver his message before the Prince of *Moscovia*. For when the Embassadour alledged the custom of his Country (to that no majesty nor power could be supposed to be offended for the Embassadours head being covered) the cruel Prince scoffing, said, That his hit should be nailed to his head with an iron pin; and that he would not violate such a custom but confirm it the more.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the Ingenuity of the Merchants of *Moscovia*.

**I**T is the fashion of the Merchants of *Moscovia*, to build new Ships, because there are so many Lakes and Rivers, and to carry their goods in them. For in the North Countries, they traffique at least 300 or 400 Leagues off: and since in so long a journey many woods and long Rivers and Lakes are found, they use these ships ready made, or else they make new ones to transport their Merchandise. And there is no man that complains of Injury for the cutting down of woods, or for fishing by these Merchants, so they usurp nothing else besides these benefits of Nature, the Patrons being ignorant of it, against their wills, or either to use their cattle to draw their Ships, or to feed on their sheep, but instead of them, they kill wild deer abundantly with their arrows as they travel on the way. Their Merchandise are precious skins, of all sorts, as Sabel skins, Mardure skins, and *Vorolima*, which are called vulgarly in *Italian Doffi*, whereof both before and after something is observed, and is to be observed further.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the divers ways of the Finlanders making war.

**B**ecause amongst the *Finlanders*, a Northern people, by reason of their too great fierceness, it is published under severe punishments and their Kings Censure, that they shall not use military Arms, at hand to destroy one the other; namely Lances, Spears, Darts, Swords or long daggers: yet they are suffered to have hatchets and axes, to use on all occasions for the necessity of their houses: wherewith also they will build admirable buildings. But that they may not seem to want arms to defend themselves from the thieving *Moscovites*, that live too near them, when they have occasion, they repulse and keep off their first assaults with slings like Spears; then when they come to fight near hand they defend themselves with Stones tied to their girdles: that they can throw at them. For they have very strong Arms, and are very cunning in throwing Stones, that they will never misse. They have also very long fir-tree Spears, that are dried in the Sun: and they sharpen the points of them with nails, or burn the ends of them sharp, and with these they first repulse the force of the light horsemen. Some use cords that they can cast on high, and draw them in again, as nets for wild beasts. For when they fight with their enemy hand to hand, they cast these cords as snares over their enemies heads, and will draw a horse or a man to them.

Some also bind a Stone as big as a man's fist to a cord, that is a foot long, to a staff, (those that have no iron nor leaden bullets, nor chains,) and with these they involve the rider's arms, or horse's legs, and draw them to make

make them fall suddenly. And the same *Finlanders* have no less help from their huge biting Maltives; which the *Muscovian* horses are as much afraid of, and run from, as the *Perjian* horses do from Camels. For these dogs, as they are taught, fall on with leaping, and biting upon the horses' noies, and therefore they being fearfull of it, will suddenly rise upon their hinder feet, and cast the Rider, who is presently taken prisoner, or slain.

## CHAP. XIII.

More of their Arms and Ammunition.

**T**he same *Finlanders* use also, for to defend their bodies, partly corselets of Sea Calves skin, tanned with lime; and some use Elks skins with the hair on: and this they suffer to freeze, if they war in Winter, by pouring cold water on it: nor will that Ice that sticks to the hairs without melt by the sweating of him that carrieth it, when it is once frozen: Some of them use Helmers, like the scales of Fishes, made of the hoofs of Elks, or ranged Deer, or Oxen, ingeniously framed together: some use the skins of certain birds fastned on the inside with iron wires curiously. Some use Helmers of skins, that are moyst, thick, and green, boyld in lime, drawn upon wood after the form of the head, and drying this by degrees in the Ayre, it proves a safe-guard for the head. But that these Helmers may not flag, when their heads wax hot, they fortifie them with in with fish-lime and thin bark of the poplar Tree, which resist all moisture.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of the Northern Governors, or the King of Sweden.

**A**S I said before of the Officers of *Iceland*, that is, of the Land of *Iceland*, how, by the Edict of the King of *Norway*, dispensing of Laws, they might put an end to contentions that are moved in the harbours of that Country, or amongst the *German* Merchants falling out, that they might punish justly those that sail there, that the Merchants might not be deprived of their lawful gain, or the Inhabitants of their profit, or the Treasury of the due tribute, and all of the pleasant society of peaceable traffique; so in these *Finlanders* Countries, that are most populous and rich, the Officers of the King of *Sweden* are appointed, that are prudent and knowing men, valiant and courteous, that they may remove quarrels as well of the Inhabitants as of Strangers by a right rule of Justice, and may settle everyone in peace. For the more fierce and sharp the people under that Climate are found to be, (as they are so indeed) the more need have they of the more prudent men, who can better persuade, (saving Justice) than rigidly compell, speak, or torment them: and in this case they are most ready to make them obey them, if they refuse to pay their tribute as they ought, or do what they command them, though it be joynd with mortall dangers. The Northern Kingdoms alwaies flourished with such Officers that were just and prudent, and moderate, with their Kings and Princes, as I can sweetly remember Old *Steno Sture*, who for 24 years Ruled valiantly and peaceably, this rigid people, to wide as 2000 Italian miles: and again King *Charles*, who was banished 7 years, because of his covetous, reproachfull violent Officers set over all his Provinces:

## CHAP. 15.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of burning the Forts of violent Governours.*

**T**He Commonalty when they feel that they are vexed by implacable violence of wicked Governours, besides all right, being provoked to anger, they come all as one man with their Troops and Companies, and encompass their Forts that are largely surrounded with Ice, and encamp against them to beat them down, in the manner that follows: For as oft as in these Northern Kingdoms intolerable burdens are laid on the people, when there is no necessity, or any other cruel oppressions used, so often they rise together with arms to injunge and break off all such heavy burdens; namely so, that the Inhabitants or Peasants (who are always potent, and united together in that place) striving to demolish those Forts, at a set time many thousands of them meet in the Woods, and upon the Ice of that Territory, near to those Forts, and by a common severity, they suddenly advise what to do, and conclude upon it. Amongst these, men of the sharpest understanding, by first making a short speech to the multitude to stirre them up, concerning the burdens they have suffered, and are like to suffer, assign and appoint the duties to every Company under severer Commanders; To some, that they shall forthwith build Engines of wood that are very strong and high, upon the Ice: To others, that they shall cut many thousands of faggots in the woods, and carry them along. To some, that they shall defend the Masters of the work with their crosse bowes and weapons, by keeping watch against their Tyrannicall Incursions; untill they are all ready, and fall on upon the business decreed on together. Hence it is that they securely thrust before them upon the slippery Ice such Engines or fences, that may keep off the Guns and Arrows of their Enemies; and they have by files as they march infinite numbers of faggots carried in Carts and on their shoulders, which they cast about the walls, untill they are as high, or higher then the walls, and to these they put fire and consume the besieged with flame and smoke; who are neither able to turn away this danger, nor yet to defend themselves by reason of the vaste heap of combustible matter; nor yet can they make any conditions with the furious people that will not hear them, or be intreated by them: nor can they flee away, because the multitudes are all over, ready to destroy them, and to kill all; and these Forts are burnt as with burning towes: if they can be burnt. For, for the most part they are not built of burnt brick or stones out of the fields; but, of beams fainned together, cut out of the thick woods, they build their houses that are vaulted (to keep off the cold) as I shall say underneath concerning the houses of the Northern Countries.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of their Engines for the Ice.*

**A**s to the *Goths* and *Swedes* use, when they set upon and spoil the most strong Forts, Castles, and Cities, oblique Engines, and fences, that are made most strongly of fir-beams, and these Engines they set against the walls, that are easily driven upon the Ice by violence of their hands; and being fenced by these, they avoid all stones or logs that are cast upon them directly, either from above or beneath, that they can do them no hurt. For nothing by force from above, or by the weight of it falling, how violently soever it be let down, can break or dissolve those Engines, because they are made overthwart, nor can they be burnt by casting fire upon them from the besieged: because in violent cold weather they alwaies cast water on them, which freezeth very thick, and they continually

continually thrust them nearer to the gates and walls, by their armed violence; and they taken them with Troops of Souldiers, using almost the same commodity under their Engines, and guards in their Camps, that Travellers use to enjoy in houses of Ice, where they have wood enough to keep off the cold, and provision sufficient, and pay enough for their Souldiers, and by this means they put the besieged to greater difficulty. When they see this, the trembling Souldiers that are besieged, are forced to keep themselves with more trouble within the Walls and Forts; untill such time as no place is left free for to hurt or repulse the enemy, that hath beleaguer'd them round. For they cannot burn their Engines because of the Ice upon them, nor can they break forth by digging mines under-ground, because the Earth is frozen as hard as a stone; nor is there the least place for them to kill the Enemy with their Guns or Cannon, or to bat them off with arrows and slings, nor can they safely resist them in open fight, nor can they leave their Forts and run into the woods to hide themselves, the cold being so sharp; yet they that are beleaguer'd defend themselves with great courage and with their Arms, untill such time as the besiegers fearing lest the Ice should melt, do either willingly let the Engines on fire, or going farther off carry them to the shores with them back again. Yet the besieged are not so freed from their fierce besieging them. For they presently turn the same Engines into most broad Ships, and easily make them ride on the same waters where they stood on the firm Ice before; or else they make them larger than they were, and let them swim on the Ice that is thawed, and they joyn barks and kinds of small vessels to them, whereby the most skillfull Archers can defend these Ships, and keep night-watches, that none of the besieged can escape. And the same is done by all that have the command of their Bullwarks in the fields. For they prosecute the besieged with the same cruelty, by whose wicked cruelty they were provoked to so great a fury to revenge themselves. Hence it is, that most commonly they that are thus straightly beleaguer'd begin to bethink themselves, Whether they shall hang or drown'd, or burn, or cast themselves down headlong, or poyson themselves, or one kill the other.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of Fire Chariots.*

**W**hen a fight upon the Ice is threatned either with Horse or Foot by the *Danes*, *Moscovites*, or *Germans*, or other internal enemies, against the *Goths* and *Swedes*; and those Enemies to offer violence, hide their Engines in the hollow places of the Mountains or Valleys, whereby they may break forth upon the Inhabitants, who are gathered in Arms for the same purpose to defend themselves; that they may afford them no time or place of robbing, they use all the skill and force they have, and they fill long Chariots with dry boughes and other combustible matter, that they may oppose against their Enemies a most black smoke and intolerable stinke, when fire is put to them by those bold guides, and is drawn on by wild and furious horses: and this is done the sooner, when the mad Horses standing side by side are forced to run, perceiving the fire in the Carts behind them; and they never leave running, till they have disordered the Enemies Army, that in that place, or elsewhere, they are forced to yield to the furious enemies that came on collaterally with all their forces, or else they pursue them, who counterfeite as though they ran away from them, and so being drawn forth or disperfed, they may be destroyed in the secret gulphs in the Ice, rather than by the snares of armed men. And if need be, more company breaks forth of the Woods and joyns with them, with their crosse-bows and weapons to joyn in battail, and to oppose the Enemy, and they



they never leave following till they have driven the Enemy away, and more yre engaged themselves. But where these Battails on the Ice use to be fought, or on what Lakes and other places, I shall shew more at large in the following Chapters.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of Canons and Bullets to be carried forth, and of the manner of shooting.*

**H**ere I shall shew clearly, what crafts and Arts the Northern people use in making Battail either in the fields, or upon the Ice, and undoubtedly fight against their Enemies when they are injured by them. They have also Chariots (for so they call their winter or Ice ploughs) that are long before, and for their better agility in turning, they are made wedge fashion, or bended in; the commodity and firmness of them is so great, that against the risings or waies, or hills of Ice and Snow that swell up, with one or more horses to draw them, they will carry more burden than 5. or 6. Carts with wheels can upon plain and firm grounds. Yet they chooe rather to go with one horse upon the glib Ice, or beaten Snow, than with two; that when Waggon's meet them in narrow waies, they may the better passe, by declining a little; also by reason of the depth of the Snow, they are enjoy'd, by a penall Law, not to drive a crooked Chariot, or more heavy Waggon's. But on the Ice, because there is breadth enough, they find no rubs, unless it be in some certain places, where the Ice is broken. that is caused by the violence of Exhalations coming from beneath, as by force of Thunder. by reason of the farnesse of the ground. I say as it were by force of Thunder, because there is heard such a horrible noise and roaring under the Ice for a long way, as on the sides of thick clouds here and there that of necessity this crack must come, as by the violence of Thunder, that is, 2. 3. or 6. foot broad according as the Exhalation is, and the spirit that riseth from the bottom.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Again, of the same, and of the manner how to passe over these ruptures in the Ice.*

**T**hat Travellers may passe over these broken places, they presently take pieces of Ice they find lying by, and hew them with their axes, and hewing tools, and square them fit, as it they made bridges with stone. But if an Ox or horse seeing the breach were drown'd there in a dark night, then presently is he drawn forth with cords and small pieces of wood they ever carry about with them, by their usual nimbleness. But if men, as it oft happens, fall in, they are straight pulled forth again, and those that help to pull them out, are a pleasure to them to think on. And they are not any waies frighted thereby, though their cloaths are frozen about them; for by running and stirring they soon grow hot again. Wherefore in these Chariots, when a battail is to be fought on the Ice, provision, bullet, powder, and other things necessary for Wars, at a certain price are easily carried by the Inhabitants, as in Summer by use of Ships, in the same windings of the Sea or waters, or in Carts with wheels, by Carters or Mariners they are wont to do: also these Chariots growing to great numbers are set as Forts and Bull-works against the enemy, (as Carts are in the Wars of the *Cimbrians*) and arrows for Bows or Guns are easily shot from them against the Foe, until they make an agreement and depart, or are forced to hasten away for fear the Ice should melt; or continuing obstinate, they sink to the bottom like lead.

## CHAP. XX.

*Of their hindring the Waters to freeze.*

**T**he most fenced Cities and Forts in Winter time, when all places, passable and unpassable, are bound up with Ice, are oft closely besieged, which otherwise in Summer seem to be inaccessible, and cannot be approached unto: Wherefore I shall here shew how they that are subject to dangers and streights defend themselves. When therefore any publick or private Hostility is near hand, if the places stand in the middle of Rivers or Pools, they that are shut up are exceeding careful to keep the Ice open with their Marchers and Spades, and make it like Ditches round about, at the least 24. or 30. Foot broad, drawing the pieces of Ice unto them, that being left upon the Ice, as the Cold increaseth they may freeze in heaps; and having made such an open place, they presently pour in the fat of Whales or Sea-Calves, and with their Spears they dilate and spread about what they poured in in great quantity. Thus the Waters that were frozen deprive the Enemy of his hopes, because he cannot come near to enjoy the Victory he so long looked for; and it is more frequent for them to slip in and be drowned, than boldly venture to come on, than they can come to the fight of the Besieged; nor because the Ice it self is weak in a deep Lake or River, but perhaps the bold Enemy enters there, where the Rivers run in from the Banks of the Lakes, and where the Ice is suddenly weakened and cut away.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of Walls of Ice.*

**T**here is also another way observed, or to be observed in fortifying when there is a siege upon the Ice: Namely this, that when a stubborn Enemy, sending his horses away, or that they are drowned in the Gulph of Waters, will pass over that open place, that is filled as I said with the fat of the Sea-Calf, that it may not freeze, using very long Beams, and laying Boards or Shingles upon them joyned together, like to a broad Ladder especially in the night, and thrusts in with what violence he can, to pass over the Waters, toward those that are or shall be besieged, that he may pass over the Frontier of Ice. Against this violence, where the Enemy being exceeding fierce, and making extreame halt regards not the resistance made with Guns and Bows: Then the Besieged pour Water upon the Walls and on every side; which being suddenly increased more and more, the bitter Cold co-operating with them, all along the streets they appear as Looking-Glasses, and these Walls are bound up with the Winter Cold and Ice, weak Women Boys, and young men coming together, and bringing Pitchers of Water: so whilst the Cold lasts, they fear not to endure the shooting of any Canon or Shot with undaunted valour. Also Women tucking their Coats above their knees, take up full Pitchers of Water between the frozen Waters, and deliver them up. So in this straight they are in necessity of invention makes them to dare and attempt any thing. But whilst men fight by such stratagems one against another, one side or other at last shall win the Victory as God pleaseth, a new difficulty arising, but it is not a Victory without blood which is usually won with as many Funerals as Trophies, that Army being not wearied that is hemmed in with Warlike men: Wherefore hanging their Engines upon the Ice, those that are without, and those that are within, do for many days, weeks, or months, fight one against the other, until such time as the Ice, ready to melt, forceth the Besiegers (if they mean to save their own lives) to be gone suddenly as they came before.

It is worth laughing at to see it, (if any man can laugh upon such an occasion) and should take pleasure to behold the danger and shame of others) especially when they must hold a fight more against the Waters, than Weapons, which also is perceived to be more terrible and near hand, when a sudden Tempest arises, and the Ice breaks, and they seem all to sink as low as Hell, where but a few days before they went on, and made their approaches continually like Triumphant Conquerours.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of Watches kept on the Ice, and in the Night.*

**T**He Northern Souldiers bring in Arms, both the Horse and Foot, when Forts, Cities, or Cattles are besieged, keep diligent Watch, either in the Fields, or upon the hard frozen Waters, all the long nights that are 20, hours long almost, and they divide the Night into two; and they change their Centinels, not with Horns, or ringing of Bells, as though they were asleep, but by secret Signs, that in the Night, if any man come from any other place, they can understand by the Word who and whence they are: If any man should forget the Word, which is the Sign, he deserves to be condemned for his life or goods by the Prince, as a Traitor, if Military Law be taken upon him: and this falls out so seldom, that it is held monstrous if any man be found guilty of that fault. But the greater force is in the impatience of the horses, by reason of the Cold, for they make a continual noise by trampling upon the Ice, when they carry their armed Riders wrapped up in Skins in this extreme Cold: yet the Centinels keep themselves awake, & stay they where they are appointed to stand; and that with more care and diligence as the morning comes on: about which time the most violent Wyles are practised, when mens Forces are bound up with astonishment and sleep: and then are all that lay snared above other times, as if they were tyed to do it, more attentive about their business.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the more fortunate Battails in the Morning.*

**V**Vherefore it is the fashion of the most valiant souldiers to ride about early in the morning, or to fight with their ships, and not to fear Hail, Clouds, Dew, Snow, Cold, or Enemies, that may hurt them. And this is done not only for love of the Prince, but in imitation of valiant men, to endure all hardships, and to confirm it by an Oath, that they will not for any fear forsake their station; and there is also a penalty annexed. If a Horseman forsake his standing, he is disarmed and his horse is taken from him, nor is that all, for he is deprived of his Fame, Honour, and faithful Estimation, and the circumstances being weighed, he is also punished severely. If he be a Foot Souldier, he receives so many stripes, all the rest looking on; yet the punishment of perpetual Infamy lyes on them both, as a scar that cannot be taken away. But if he be not weary with fighting bravely, or constant keeping of his station, in the bitter cold Weather, then is there a liberal stipend appointed him out of the Exchequer, according to his quality and honour, whereby he may live handsomely for the time to come, which was the Custome of the Wars in old time: and this is favourably augmented by the Kings magnificence. But for a special remedy of their body scorched with Cold, they use the Ashes of a Hare skin burnt, and this is an excellent remedy to assuage the infirmity of their feet, of which also I shall say something underneath, when I speak of the more simple Medicaments used by the Northern people.

## CHAP. 24.

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Of the besieging of Forts fenced with Ice.*

**T**Here is also another very common and usuall way of fighting upon the Ice. When in Summer the Enemy cannot come near because of deep waters: so soon as mighty Frosts come, and the Ice grows hard, and the people desire to be revenged on their cruel Governour, they can upon the slippery Ice set up their Engines, and easily make their approaches. And thus they shoot as fast into the Fort and against the enemy, as if they had their Bulwarks made in the most firm field. But where the Fort is in an Island, they place their Engines to it, they fight continually against on all sides; and the besiegers proceed the more violently as they are united and agree to ether, being people of one Religion, and one manner of Ceremonies. Because an Army levied of divers kinds of men, that cannot understand one the others language or manner of living, they one distrust the other, and are not fit to effect their business; and from thence discord arising, they go on faintly, or fly openly, or prove treacherous: and chiefly, because such foreign Souldiers not used to the cold, cannot endure it, to draw off or on, to fight far off or near hand. For it is far another thing to fight upon the Ice or Snow, (as I shall shew elsewhere) than upon Mountains, in Woods, Fields, or Valleys. A battail upon the Ice is fought with woollen socks on their feet, not with skins, or hides greased. For the force of the cold turns what ever is only into an icy slipperiness. But the outcome of the Souldiers is to use cutthroats or triangle irons, or 3 points, that they may run and stand the faster. But some purposing to make an assault at midnight, strew ashes upon the Ice, and so they can run and stand securely.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Of assaulting the Enemies Ships that are frozen in.*

**I**T often happens on the shores of the Gorbick Sea, that the Enemies Ships, as well those that have hooks on their stems, as those that have grapples and other terrible ammunition and weapons to do hurt, being long vexed with a contrary wind, a sudden Frost coming on, they are shut up as within walls by the Ice that freezeeth so strongly; nor can they get out, or get help from beyond Sea, or stay for it, or obtain it, nor can they receive provision by their company, whose Ships are shut in as well as theirs by the Frost. Wherefore in the most sharp Winters, they being held with these and such like difficulties, chiefly by the dearth of wood, deadly necessity forcing them, they either yield themselves, or run the hazard of present death. Moreover, by reason of their horrid wickedness, (whereby they had raged in murders and slaughters, and cruelly spoiled the Nations round about, beyond all humanity) they often run to extremity, and work indefatigably in the dark nights, trying to break the Ice, that if they can cut the Ice for ten or more German miles, they may come to the wide Sea. Yet in the mean while, the Inhabitants coming to subdue or spoil them, shoot arrows at them as thick as hail, which falling upon their ships, puts them all in danger of their lives. And oft-times kill'd with cold, they are put in a Coffin by their fellows, and buried in the Ice, because they cannot well be carried to Land. But if they be Nobles, or men of great quality and repute, they are kept without any great stink, as green wood that is frozen as hard as a stone, by their fellows that escape the danger, for a more honourable buriall, that they may not be left in an Enemies Country. But intreating

intreating and obtaining a truce, if they desire to bury their dead on the Land, it is never denyed them: and the most noble and best men of the Inhabitants will honour them with their presence at their Funerals: which is also observed with great Ceremony when they fight on land in an Enemies Country. As we had an example lately of a most potent Knight, *D. Acha Hanson* a Western *Goth*, Anno 1510, who was slain at *Schoeningia*, and was run through with a Lance of his old acquaintance that was a *Dane*: and all the Nobility of the Land came to his buriall, where he was honourably interred.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Of the punishment of unfaithfull Servants, that is inflicted on them by cold frozen water.*

**P***aulus Jovius* Bishop of *Nucerum*, and a curious searcher and writer of the actions of other Nations, supposed that it was a most bitter punishment of Theeves and Robbers, and such like villany, to have cold water drop upon their necks, to make them confesse their wicked actions. For so he testifies in his *Sarmatin*. The *Moscovites* examine Theeves, Cutters, Murderers, asking them questions, after this manner; letting cold water fall by degrees from a high place upon their heads; and this they hold to be an intolerable Torment. These are his words. But the truth is, that good Prelate was thus informed by mockery, by the crafty Embassadour of the Emperour of *Moscovia*, called *Demetrius*, in the time of Pope *Clement* the 7th, at *Rome*; or else being intent upon some other curious matters, he did not fully understand him, who related the Customs of his Country, that this should be held for a most intolerable torture in that hard Country, where fire and the Rack being put to them, they will hardly confesse any thing. Yet the *Swedes* and *Goths* are stronger than the *Moscovites*, who onely in *January* inflict these punishments upon Rebels disobedient, and insolent people, especially for that cause, that they did not follow and wait upon their Princes and Lords coming to the solemnities of Christs Nativity, first by Night, next by Day: and whoever in a private house or family doth not do the same, or speak ill words, or commit scandalous actions, those their fellows, witnesses, accusers, and Judges, with the sound of Trumpet and Bells, bring forth with a long train, to the waters that are frozen, and make them kneel down, and make their neck bare, holding their faces toward their knees, and they drop cold water on their necks, all shouting when they do it. But those that they intend to punish in a compendious way, (who promise to mend their errors) to them they grant this favour, that all at once, their whole heads being naked, a whole picher of water is poured upon them. Onely the *Egyptians* because of their extream bald crowns tremble at this punishment, who though they seldom come to the Northern Countries, yet they come sometimes amongst the auxiliary Souldiers that were sent from the *French* King to the King of *Denmark*, to fight against *Sweden* and *Gothland*. Oft-times therefore when these *Ethiopian*s, as well as the *Danes* fight with ill successe, they are not punished with cold water, but with hard bondage, and inevitable death.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of the same Punishments.*

**T**Here is also another way of punishing obstinate and stubborn people, appointed by the Ancients for all other times in Winter, namely, that boring holes in the Ice 20 or 30 foot under, they should have a cord tied under their Arms, and put into one hole under the Ice, and be drawn forth by the cord at the other hole of the Ice. If this be done quickly, they thank their friends for doing it so suddenly: but if they be long about it, as may be the stubborn offender deserves it, when he is drawn out, he finds that he had severe Censurers and Judges, because he was in great danger of being drown'd. It is not to be admired, that these things can be done upon the Ice that is as slippery as Glasse; because by 3. points of Iron onely, or else made fast to their shoes, they can use themselves not onely to do this, but any other action upon the Ice, as I shall say underneath concerning their fishing upon the Ice. But this ducking them in the waters is appointed for the Schismaticall *Moscovites* upon point of Religion, because they dipping their young Children under the Ice that is perforated, they baptize them after their manner, and if they be carried away with the swift stream, they think that they are gone to the gods presently.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of a Horse-race for a Cloke, or a prize.*

**W**hen their Chariots are filled with many men, (for so the Nation calls the Winter Waggon or Coach) with one horse alone before them, they will run five or six *Italian* miles so swiftly, that you would think they did not run but fly; especially because the horses are frost-nail'd, and have iron points in their shoes. The prize (as I said, *lib. 1.* upon the like race) is a garment, or the horse beaten, at a certain measure of Salt, or Corn to be sowed, and this is tax't to be paid at a set time; and if he that is bound pay it not, he is never dismissed.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Of the wild Ases or Elks running on the Snowy Ice.*

**T**He wild Ases or Elks will run most swiftly on the snowy Ice amongst the Northern *Swedes*, especially beyond the Kingly *City Holm*, toward the upper Ports Northerly, but lower toward the South: which though there be great multitudes of them in the vast Woods, yet by the Kings Decree they are not to be used, lest by their swift running, which is far beyond horses, Trays might have an opportunity to reveal suddenly to the Enemy, the secrets of the Nation. For this beast can exceedingly endure hunger, thirst, and labour, that night and day running 200 *Italian* miles, which is a great way, he will do it, and eat nothing. The other virtues of this Creature shall be shewed in the book that follows concerning living Creatures.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Of the Ranged Deer running in the Snow.*

ALso there is a great multitude of another kind of ranged Deer in the Northern Countries, who are used not onely to draw their Chariots, (as I shall shew underneath, (speaking of living Creatures) but to draw loaded Carts over the tops of snowy Mountains. And these ranged Deer (so called from the Instruments they draw with) are forbid by the Kings Decree to be made use of by the South part of the Country, for they are wonderful swift as the Elks are, that they will soon run a long and hard journey. But their Chariots differ from the forms in other Countries, because before they are made wedge-fashion like shoos to penetrate into the Snow, or like Ships at Sea to divide the floods and waters.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the drowning of the Enemies in the Snowy Valleys.*

WHen the Swedes and Goths greatly provoked by injuries are forced to prepare for a Winter-battail against the Germans, Danes, or Muscovites, they use all means to find out how great Forces the Enemy marcheth with, be they Horse or Foot: And finding that they came with great Horse for War, and armed men from top to toe, for the most part, with an invincible number almost, and strength, and that they will cast down by their force all that resist them, the Inhabitants go forth to meet them, man by man, not so much armed with weapons, as with courage, especially that they may kill and spoil such cruel enemies, who are beateh and waiteth with the difficulty of the waies, and his own Forces: For they know by certain experience, that it is no hard matter to conquer such an Enemy who is entangled and shut in between the deep Snowes, dark Woods, secret precipices, and gulphs of Snow and Ice, and loaded with his Armour of proof; for were there no man to defend the Country and stop him, he must needs fail by the nature of the place: and the sooner do these Enemies come to ruine, as they have been finely bred, and are ignorant of the places and dangers, whilest the Northern people who are used to the hardnesse of the Climate, are not afraid to march through Mountains and Desarts, that in the coldest Winter are deep with Snow, and to fight with their Enemies in the way. And when the battail is near to begin, they seem to run away, and draw the proud Enemy after them, either into places full of Snow, where they are drown'd by the weight of their Arms, as if they were in a gulph of mud, and like beasts taken in nets, they are killed by the Country people that are unarmed, or else they draw them forth into Lakes, Pools, and Rivers, because the water lies under the Snow, and so they fall continually and are drown'd. The Snow indeed seems firm on the top, but underneath where the waters run and eat it, it is so weak that it will hardly bear a Wolf, much lesse a Man, and he in his Armour.

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Of Snow-balls sticking in the Horses hoofs.*

MOREover, there is another danger for Enemies on horseback, and it is to be feared as being inevitable; that under the hoofs of the horses being shod with Iron, by reason of the cold Snow, water being under it, or dew above it,

it, Snow-balls will stick like to Tennis balls, as big as Childrens heads; and these stick so round, and hard frozen, that it is impossible but the Rider must fall off from the horse, or with the horse, and so be killed or taken prisoner; for he cannot bound above four or six times either right forward or obliquely, by reason of the Snow-balls sticking to his feet, but he will presently fall: and the more he spurs his horse to make him run or bound, the sooner he falls, and falling suddenly he is bruised and dies of it, or else falls into other misery, may be, worse than death. But they that fight to defend their Country, so soon as they are entering battail pull off their horses shoos, that those Snow-balls not sticking, they may the better assault the enemy. The Enemy dares not use this convenience and safe way, because they have no place to retreat unto as the Inhabitants have, and friends to help them. Nor is there any lesse danger for the Foe, when he is constrain'd to ride up or come down the sides of Valleys and Mountains, that are as glib as glasse; and this danger is the more when this Ice is covered with thin Snow, that is blown thither by the wind, and fills up all the concaves and hollow places and deep pits, making them to appear like to plain champion ground. These places the Germans, and Danes, and Muscovites fall into, because they know them not, and in their rash passage they are miserably destroyed; and many most warlike Souldiers who with sword and fire made the World to tremble, were here easily drown'd in the Snows.

*The End of the Eleventh Book.*

V  
 Claus



# Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSALA:

OF

The Buildings in the North.

The Epitome of his Twelfth Book.

## CHAP. I.

Of the Variety and Forms of their  
Stones.

**B**ESIDES the Works wrought with hands, there are found in many Mountains of the Northern Provinces, heaps of Stones, that are so framed with divers Figures by Nature, as chiefly square and long fashions that there can hardly be any thing more added to their perfection, than the polishing of them to make them shine. As it appears in a certain vast Mountain called *Amaberg*, which is not far from the famous Monastery at *Vastum*, which was built by that most illustrious Woman St. *Brigit*, whose body is there kept in the most famous memory, and the body of her Daughter *Katharine*, which was the first Abbess and now rests there: Also in another Monastery of St. *Bennet*, called *Alvastra*, out of which are taken Stones of divers colours, especially black, and that freely for any Buildings of the Inhabitants; and these are carried away with Barks or Caravels, and are made to serve for most beautiful and commodious use from the Foundation to the tops of houses, onely Windows being placed between them. Leaving here a Dispute, whether Art may seem to exceed Nature, or Nature Art. I said, freely, because they are not bought from the possessors of the ground, either for money, or begging, there being such an infinite number of these Stones, that they are allowed for the publick and private good. And

And that Mountain to all of delight, that is broad and high, is seen by those that sail afar off as a City with a Spire, and compassed about with Walls. There are at this day many Buildings of the aforelaid Monastery of *Alvastra*, and of the City *Lincop*, that was built with the same kind of Stones in former time, square and very comely. There are also other Mountains of the *Ostregothi*, toward the more Easterly places of the *Gothick* Sea, that produce shining Stones like to Diamonds, with six Corners like Crystal, in long Rows, to be found here and there: of which, if a man would be prodigal, he might frame shining Walls, that men would admire at. Moreover, amongst the *Vestregothi*, there is a Mountain called *Kindaberg*, that hath round about Marble Stones, so finely differing in colours by Nature, that, set in any Building, they are very handsome and commodious. Lastly, in the Islands under the Poles, there are found Mountains of Load-Stones, to pieces whereof, Beech-Wood being joyned for a set-time, will grow hard as a Stone, and attract as the Load-stone doth. Besides, there are found very many Natural Stones in the Fields of divers Forms, as well as others that are made, that will serve for Houses, Walls, and any other Buildings.

## CHAP. II.

Of building their Houses, and of the divers forms of them.

**T**HERE are in the Northern Kingdoms many strange Buildings, some Pyramidal; others Wedge-fashion; some arched, others round; some square: Pyramidals are made with Spears, onely bound together at the top, and set wide below, for the Summer time alone, that Mannual Artificers may not be troubled with smoke and flame, as they are with the heat of the Sun. All the Wedge-fashioned Buildings are built very high, that the thick burdensome snow may sooner be blown off with the Wind, that this may not weigh down their houses, which are covered with the Bark or Birch, or with Tiles, or Planks cut thin from the Pine-Tree, by reason of the imbred Pitch, or Fir-Tree, or Oke, or Beech, but rich mens houses are covered with Plates of Copper, or Brass, or Lead: as also the Churches are. Their Arched-houses are built very artificially against the force of the Winds, and falling of the Snow, for divers and very necessary uses, as well with Stones, as with Wood. And such are found in great mens houses to keep their Domestick or Countrey Household-staff in Round Buildings; and these are very rare, that divers Workmen may enjoy the same light at their labour, by reflexion from the top of the house. Square houses are the most frequent; but these are fastned together with huge pieces of Timber, in a wonderful combination at the Joynts in the Corners: and these have also Windows that stand very high in the houses, whereby the Light may descend inwardly upon every one. But these Walled Houses have Dores proportionable, but narrow Windows, by reason of the bitter Cold, and Dews and Snow; for were they great and large after the *Italian* manner, the houses would presently be filled up with small snow driven in by the strong Winds, (as it were with small dust, driven in by a Whirl-wind) and would be ready to fall down with a weight they cannot bear.

## CHAP. III.

Of the same.

**T**HE most common Windows in the Northern houses, especially in their Stoves, are made in the oblique Roots, whereby a clearer light comes down from Heaven, but they are framed of Glasse or Oyl Cloth to keep out the Rain. But they are made on the sides in the Cities, because the streets are narrow, and they have Iron Frames to shut with all. The Dores of the Inhabitants

bitants who dwell in the utmost parts of the Kingdoms, are narrow and low, that they may not lye open to Thieves and Enemies. And that they may resist open Enemies and Robbers they have holes in their Walls to shoot out at, Also they have secret Ditches of Earth cast up, that are covered with Reed or dry Sticks, or Boughs, lest they should not be able to destroy the Enemy the other way. But their houses are joyned together with Beams, and Planks of Firr, with Poplar-bark and green Turfs of Earth, in a double order, casting a little Oats or Barley betwixt them: and this is done, that they may not be burned with Lightning, and rather, that when they are besieged by the Enemy, by casting on Water, they may have Pasture for their Sheep and Lambs as I shewed before. Some also in Cities, so build their Houses, that by a mutual charge and agreement, five or six houses being joyned together, may make one Castle, and before every house they make a most strong Iron door, that if the Enemies should gain the Walls, he may be forced to fall back again, as in the Metropolitan City *Holm*, he is every where beaten off from the tops of the houses. Now the skilful Artificers know how to find materials in all places that shall be strong, and long lasting, and graceful to build their Houses with, and to abtain from Trees, that being laid upon their Works, may do hurt to the Walls, and kill men most miserably.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the great multitude of huge Trees in the Northern Parts.*

**I**n the Northern Woods there is a very great plenty of Fir-Trees, Pine-Trees, Junipers, and Larch-Trees, and they are as high as high Steeples: and therefore those that grow nearest the Sea, are made use of for Masts and Fore-yards for great Ships, and chiefly the Pine-Trees; which by reason of the Resin and Pitch in them, are wont to last long against Rayn, and they will not soon corrupt. But the Fruits of Firr or Pine-Trees are for no use as they are in *Italy*, where they make pleasant Medicaments with them. The Pine-Trees being sawed, are made fit for Boards to cover the ships. Also the Inhabitants feed on the sweet Pitch in the top of them (which they call the Marrow) especially the *Laplanners*, gathering them in Summer, eat them for bread, as the *Parthians* do Dates. The Boughs of Firr-Trees serve for Hoops about Vessels, and to make fences for fields, and for Crois-Bows; so do the *Larch* Boughs that are more flexible. But Firr-Trees Rapiers are highly esteemed, because the Tops of Churches are covered with them being strong to last, and light, and they grow the taller, the more gravely the ground is they grow upon: but they have slender bodies, because they are nourished but little by Sandy Nutriment; from whence that most fat juice which sends forth Resin or Pitch seems to proceed. Besides there is great plenty of Birch-Trees in all the North parts; the virtue whereof is this, that being cut between the Bark and the Tree, they will send forth Water that is potable, as the Fruit of them in time of Famine serves for Bread, and the Bark for Clothing. As also Juniper-Berries, and the Roots of it are eaten for Bread, though men can hardly come at them for their Prickles: In these Prickles or Thorns, live-Colours of Fire will last a whole year: And if the Inhabitants do not quench them, when some great Tempest or Whirlwind arise, the Woods take fire that spreads all over, and burns the Fields that are round about.

## CHAP. V.

## CHAP. V.

*More of the Trees in the North.*

**T**HE Oke will remain uncorrupted under Waters, and therefore is most fit for the Ribs of Ships. Hides are tanned with the Bark of it, as I shall shew underneath, concerning Buildings upon the Ice. There are other Trees also that are harder, of which they turn Rings for the use of the Sail-yards, and Bottles and Vessels that must be tinned within with Resin, that they putrify not. Besides there are others that grow up of themselves that have no names, which yet for their effects in weight, colour, hardness, roundness, tallness, and Fruits, are held to be most profitable. There are also found there Quinces, and Elders, and most sweet Jujubes. Also there are observed to be two sorts of Willows, which Hares feed on to stay their hunger. And tho' be barren; yet the thick Boughs being cut off and planted, they will grow again, as other Springs of Trees cut up from the Roots use to grow from their Roots. Also many Trees are found, which because they have many deep Roots that cannot be pulled up, unless they be blasted with Lightning, or Thunder-stricken, they will last always; but it is not an easie matter to give the reason of them, since others there are, that grow else-where. Moreover, the flustering Ivie is so common and burdensome, that being fostered by Snow; unless it be rooted up, it will by degrees overthrow the Walls.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the diversity of Trees.*

**T**here are also many sorts of Trees in those cold places, as Poplars, Ashes, and other Juniper Trees, which by reason of their fit Tallness, and their sweet smell, like Cyprus Trees, are used for choise Houses, and for Fuel, both in the Plague time, and for daily use at other times. For these Trees growing of their own accord, grow perpetually, new Plants rising up, and cannot be rooted out; so that when they come to their full growth, (as I said) they are employed for strong Beams in high Houses and Buildings. But Okes and Beech are not found beyond the seventy Degree of altitude of the North Pole toward the Frigid Zone: and but few of the other kinds, except the Birch-Tree, and crooked Shrubs, in the utmost shores of the *Scythian* Ocean, because of the frequent Tempests. But in the Lands toward the South, there is a very great increase of Fruit-Trees, the Fruit whereof the Inhabitants eat in time of Famine for Bread, as other Creatures do eat them; as Acorns, small Nuts, and Beech mast: yet these Creatures, as Mice, Dormice, Birds, to prevent a Famine to come, are more fore-seeing than men; for they will carry their Fruits to their Dens and Holes, whereby the provident Inhabitants perceiving a Famine like to come, take more diligent care to their business, than they used to do. Beech Nuts are triangular, shut within a reddish shell, and within they have a hairy covering: Hogs are wonderfully fattened with these, as they are with Acorns, onely with this difference, that these make harder Fat; those, softer and more fluxible.

## CHAP. 7.



CHA<sup>9</sup>. VII.*Of the quality of Fruits.*

**S**mall Nuts grow in such abundance there, that there are sufficient for the Inhabitants, and for strangers, for all uses they can desire: Whence it comes, that for gain and profit of Merchants, some thousand Vessels of them are transported out of the North into *Germany*, and *Hazel-Wands*, whereby all Vessels are hooped almost, being they are so flexible to be wound every way. Apples and Pears of divers sorts being sowed there, or transplanted, will grow in abundance: of which there is some one kind most noble, that like an Olive-Tree (which grows no where in the North) grows ripe in the greatest Cold: Also there are Wild Apples that will last so long as Nature hath ordained they shall; for they first grow ripe in *December*, and these taste like Wine, and therefore they make Syder of them, by pressing out their juice; and this is called new Wine.

Some also are found so sower, that they will dull a Swords-Edge with their juice, and they are used instead of Vinegar: some of these are round as Apples; some coppid as Pears, some are oval to whom Nature gives peculiar Honour. But such as are Forraign Fruit, and come from beyond Seas, because they are more fleshy and sweet in mens opinions, they are more esteemed. Likewise Pears and Plummes dried; for there are but two kinds of Bread in the North, namely White and Black. Cherries are of two sorts, Garden-Cherries, and Wild. But such as are too sower, and let mens Teeth an edge, are used for Vinegar: and this comes, because they grow in shady places, and dark, where they want the heat of the Sun; but such as the Sun shines on, are pleasant enough. There are moreover some Trees of an unknown virtue, that produce Fruit as white as Snow without Flowers: yet Fruit-Trees desire to be transplanted, and they will grow sweet; but the Wild-Trees yield a wild taste, it may be by reason of the hoary Moiss of the Trees, that keeps off the Suns heat: otherwise some might be of a pleasant taste.

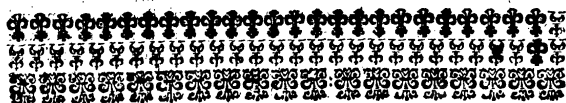
## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Firr-Tree Gum, or Resin, and of the Original of Amber, or Succinum.*

**B**ecause there is found great variety in Authors, concerning the Original, and Nature and Quality of Amber, especially as *Perottus* relates it, who by great diligence endeavoured to reconcile the several Opinions of many men; from whence and how this admirable and lovely Liquor proceeds: Therefore I shall here shew what is most probable, according to the Opinions of the Northern people. The Firr or Pine-Trees, that are by Nature resinous, and shoot forth exceeding tall, be it, that they grow near the Sea-shores, or Banks of Rivers, or other steep places of Woods, do sweat forth Amber, especially when the Corn is ripe, and the Sun shines hottest and scorchereth it, (as I shall underneath shew) in *June* and *July*, and toucheth the Bounds of *Cancer* and *Leo*. Then those Trees, the strong heat chopping their Bark, sends forth a Liquor, which is Amber, into the Waters and Rivers that are near, to be hardened there; and so dropping

and so dropping forth, what ever body it meets in the way, it is so clammy, that it holds it fast as Glue: Hence it is, that Frogs, Mice, Gnats, Spiders, Flies, Ears of Corn, Pulle, and the like are found wrap up in this Resiny Bird-lime, and there they grow hard: also if these continued Drops fall into the Sand, because when the Rain comes upon them, they are carried away to the Rivers, and so to the greater Waters, and at last to the Sea: where like to other Trees, they are at a certain time made so hard, that being boil'd as a Stone, by a cruel Tempest it is cast forth through the *Gothick* or *Finland* Sea, and *Livonian* Sea, upon the *Prussick* shore; namely the South shore, directly opposite to the North: and at all times this is done when the waters are driven by the winds to the *Prussian* Land: where, by reason of the Kings Command, none may gather it unless they be deputed and sworn Officers.

*The end of the Twelfth Book.*Olaus  
A



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,  
Arch-Bishop of U P S A L :  
O F  
Husbandry and Mans Food.

*The Epitome of his Thirteenth Book.*

CHAP. I.

*Of the diversity of gathering in of  
Harvest.*

**A**Dmirable is the Dispensation of Nature, that after another manner; and at another time, and by other means and Industry, the North Climate is dressed (as I said); and the *Ethiopick* or *African* Land is otherwise tilled; and again, the new Islands are ordered otherwise than these. As for the Northern Countries, this is certain, That in many fields of the *Västrogöthi*, on that part which is against the South, barley is ripe and mowed in 36 days from the time it was sowed, that is, from the end of *June*, untill the middle of *August*, and sometimes sooner. For that maturity proceeds from the nature of the soil, and the mildness of the Ayr, and the moisture of the Stones that foster the roots, and the Sun scorching, that it must needs grow so and come to be ripe: and such ears of Corn have six ranks in number, but they are smaller than the common ears, and they are very fit to make Beer with. But other grain cast into the ground in the beginning of *May*, are gathered in the middle of *August*, by the mutual help of the Country-men, not with any great pains, but with alacrity and willing minds, lest cold wind should blow upon it, and blast the Corn. And they desire no other reward for their daily labour, than a merry Feast at night, where the young people of both sexes, by reason of their faithfull labours in the fields, by the judgment and consent, and permission of their provident Parents, are made choice

choice of not to be married: but not for marriages for delight, though they be Noble people, but to live privately, in an honest and commodious way, to govern their Families wisely and contentedly.

CHAP. II.

*Of their Bake-houses, and baking of Bread.*

**B**Ecause it is a received opinion amongst the Antients, that *Ceres* found out Corn, and *Pan* is reported to have made Bread of it, (and from thence he had his name *Pan*); he is praised for finding it, and he for applying it to man's use. Wherefore I shall here enquire what kinds of Corn are good for this use; and to whom this office belongs amongst the Northern people; which, as many Countries, distinguished as well in Situation as Manners, are divided and parted one from the other: so those things that grow on the Earth, according to the variety of Climates, vary also. Wherefore the more North you go, the lesse plenty of Wheat there is, and there is more plenty of it found every where toward the South. Yet the *Suedes* or *Sweons*, have a world of Wheat, and more Rice. But the *Goths* both East and West, who feed on Barley and Oats, have an infinite abundance given them by the mercy of God. Yet there is use made of all these sorts of Corn in both places. But the *Sweons* provide most for Rice; where their women know so well how to winnow Rice, that for colour, taste and for health, it surpasses the goodness of Wheat.

CHAP. III.

*Of parching their Corn that must last.*

**O**N the hottest daies, when the Sun shines strong, they spread cloaths like ship-sails, or else the sails themselves, upon the superficies of the Earth, or plain tops of Mountains where there is no grass, and they lay the Corn upon these to dry, for 6, or more, or fewer daies, as the Sun shines hot: then when it is cleaved, they lay it up in vessels of Oke, or else they grind it, and so lay it up safe; and when it is so corrected, it will last good many years. But if it be not ground meal, but corn, it is convenient once a year to let it in the Sun to be dried again, and thus new corn corrected may be mingled with it prudently, that there be no want when we need. But the meal thrust into the oken Vessels or Tuns, by strong ramming it in with wooden mallets, and laid up in a dry place, will last many years, and never be worm-eaten.

CHAP. IV.

*Of the manner of drinking amongst the Northern People.*

**I**T will not displease curious Readers, to hear how the custome is of drinking amongst the Northern People. First, that they hold it Religion to drink the healths of Kings and Princes, standing in reverence of them; and here they will as it were sweat in the contention, who shall at one or two, or more draughts drink off a huge bowl. Wherefore they seem to sit at Table as if they had Crowns on their heads, and to drink in a certain kind of a vessel: which, may by, may cause men that know it not, to admire it. But that were more admirable to see the servants to go in a long train in troops, as Patrons of Harts with horns, that they may drink up those Cups full of beer to the Ghefts. And not content with these Ceremonies, they will strive to shew their Sobriety, by setting such a high Cup full of Beer upon their naked heads, and dance and

turn round with it: In like manner they deliver other Cups which they bring in both hands to the Gheits to drink off; at equall draughts, which are full of Wine, Ale, Mede, Metheglin, or new Wine.

### CHAP. V.

*Of their divers manners to boyl Salt.*

**A**Mongst the *Swesns* or *Swedes* and *Goths*, there is no boyling of Salt: not because they cannot draw salt-water out of the depth of the Sea, but because the Nation abounding with other things, can more easily bring in forraign salt, than with greater charge to boyl it on their own shore. For by the coming of great ships from *Holland*, *Germany*, from the Ports of *Spain*, *France*, or *Britanny*, especially from the Port of *Lisbon*, and *Brouas*, Salt comes that is sold at a reasonable price: But in *Poland* there are deep Mountains of Salt, chiefly in *Vielsca* and *Bochna*. Where I was to see it, *Anno* 1528, on the 5th of January, and went down 50 steps, where I saw Labourers in the deepest places, stand naked by reason of the heat, and with Iron Instruments they dug forth a most rich treasure of Salt, as it were gold and silver out of Mines that cannot be exhaulted.

### CHAP. VI.

*Of the difficulty of carrying Salt into the Northern Kingdoms.*

**B**Ut when there happen Wars by Sea in the Baltick Sea, that for want of Salt they may seem to be in danger to be oppressed by their Enemies, then they find an art to make Salt at home, lest for want of it they should yield up their liberty to their Enemies. But that the Inhabitants of Northland might do that more readily, and for a perpetual and continual gain, *R. D. John Magnus* the *Goth*, Arch-bishop of *Upsal*, my most dear brother and predecessor once, *Anno* 1523, being the Legat for Pope *Adrian* the 6th, and after that about two years being elected, and visiting the Diocese of *Upsal*, at his own cost, and bestowing every where sufficient Instruments, he communicated to the most convenient places and fittest for the Inhabitants, the manner and the Art of making Salt, which he had received from experienced men: and these they may easily and freely make use of ever since, and for perpetuity when they want Salt, in time of any hostility.

### CHAP. VII.

*Of the great quantity of Butter.*

**P**Assing over all the Provinces of the North Country from 52 to 84 degrees, of the elevation of the North Pole, every where by reason of their rich Pasture-grounds, and huge herds of Cattel, you shall find a vast quantity of Butter; but it is not all alike good, by reason of the variety of Salt, as also because of the more tender and rich grails, that they feed on in Provinces, far distant one from another: For where the fields are more grosse, and the Salt is more gros the Butter is season'd with, it is not of the same efficacy, as the other butter is that is well salted, and where the Pasture-grounds are finer. Yet they all alike in every County have a custome to sell it away, whether it be salted with Bay-Salt, or White Salt, and they sell or barter away many thousand barrels of it to forraign Merchants, (unlesse it be forbidden by the Kings Proclamation when there is Wars coming, or already begun) as also for Corn, Bacon, and other food necessary, there is care taken that it may not be transported to the Enemy. More over,

Moreover, there is an Island of South *Gothland*, called *Oeland*, where the Ayr is wholeome, and the ground far, which produceth most pleasant grasse; and with this grasse is there abundance of Cows fed, and they give such wholeome milk, that when many Phyticians cannot help sick people, their Butter-milk alone will cure them: and this Butter as aromatically is preferred before all other butter.

### CHAP. VIII.

*Of the greatnesse and goodnesse of their Cheese.*

**I**F *Parma* or *Placemius*, or other Countries and Cities of *Lombardy* may be commended for their many great excellent Cheeses, truly they must think the original of it, which is the *Peninsula Scandiana*, and especially the Country of the *West Goths* in the Northern Kingdoms; For these *Vestrogoths*, above all Northern people, obtain this greatest commendation, That no Nation is like to them in making Cheese: which seems to proceed from their most plentiful pastures: wherein also there are many strong tall Warlike Horses, and many tall Oxen bred almost infinite for number. Wherefore oft-times they make such huge Cheeses, that two strong men can scarce carry one of them a little way; Yet men never have any hand in making them, but only women; which from all the Villages near bringing great quantity of milk, coming in Summer to the house of one that will make a Cheese, heat the milk in great Cauldrons, and putting runnet to it, they presse it in a frame of Wood, that is commonly square, and they break all little cheeses dried in the Sun, into small crumbles, and put them into the same milk when it is almost scalding hot; as it is used in great Walls, where by piling one stone upon another with mortar, they are made the more compact. Nor is any man thought fit to be present at this work of the women, though he should beg of them never so much. For those most strong women have several offices in their houses, that their husbands never meddle with; as Spinning, Weaving, baking of Bread, boyling Beer, to deck themselves, to make Beds, and lay on the blankets, to provide for Lambs, Calves, and other small creatures; but men have greater Labours to take care for; as to till the ground, thresh the Corn, to break horses, (which also women oft-times do) to sharpen weapons, and to make fences, and to order Ploughs, and dresse fields. But the cheese of the *Ostrogoths* made of sheeps milk in great quantity, is highly commended; so also is the cheese of the upper *Sweden*, especially among the *Helsing* and *Norwegians*, who having their cheeses all as it were rotten, and full of Worms, are much delighted with them. Also when the cheese is eaten out within-side, they use the out-side, like a dried Hide instead of a buckler in the War. Also the cheeses in *Finland* taste most pleasantly, and they make them very rare of Goats-milk, many thousand pound weight; and they make them the more commendable and savory by putting under them the smoke of Myrtills; for so they will keep many years without Worms, chiefly for to hold out Sieges in Forts. For amongst the Northern people, namely the *Vestrogoths* they are so temper'd by Nature, that when they grow old they will smell of Spices, and taste most pleasantly. Marriners feed on these also, when tempests hinder them from boyling other meats at the fire.

### CHAP. IX.

*Of Weavers.*

**T**He Northern Women do busie themselves in Weaving Linnen and Woollen, and they are very ingenious in it; except the Women of *Lapland*, who (as I said elsewhere) make their webs of the nerves of living Creatures, and

fit garments of the skins of divers beasts; because in that outmost Country there grows no Flax; nor do sheep breed there; but where Flax is in the hotter Northern parts, they weave such Webs of it, and colour them, that you would think they were woven in *Italy*, they are so well made. I saw formerly amongst that people, a Piece of Linnen woven, that was of Sky-colour, most curiously wrought with divers threads: and just such a one I found when I came to *Rome*, as if one hand had made and order'd them both: only with this difference, that as the *Roman* Women, or rather men, are more ingenious Weavers, so they work more neatly with their hands: it may be, because they follow the Examples of the most noted Painters, whereas the Northern Women take their patterns from flowers, as the Flower-de-luce, or shadows of leaves, cast upon the waters, when the Sun shines. But in making embroidered networks, (such as are seen in the houses of Princes at *Rome*, the Northern Women seem far to exceed all other Artificers of the World, since Noble Persons to avoid idleness, do much use themselves to this exercise for the hereditary ornament of their houses; and they make them very fine: For they alwaies, as it is their custome, adorn their dwelling-houses from the very top with that white Net-work, which they call *Spraegning*, except the Lords that hang their Palaces with silk cloths: and this for Bride-Chambers and ornament of Illustrious Women, and for nuptiall Feasts.

### *The End of the Thirteenth Book.*

Olaus



## Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L:

O F

The various Conditions of the Northern People.

### *The Epitome of the Fourteenth Book.*

#### The Preface.

**M**EN may not wonder, that in the large Northern Countries, especially in the Peninsula Scandiana, (which Pliny because the largeness of it was not found out, calls another world; and Jordanes and Paulus Diaconus call the Sheath or Shop of the Nations) men wear diversity of habits and clothing; and are of divers manners and customs, in their diet and living, brought in from forraign parts, I shall passe censure on them both, and shew how sincerely and quietly they lived formerly, without discord, sticking to their old Lawes; whereas now discord increasing, very few seem to be content with their own conditions wherein again it is not to be admired, since the subtile wickedness of man hath proceeded so far, that every man is grown ingenious to destroy himself; with his cloths shabty in pieces outwardly, and his mind corrupted inwardly; outwardly they seem to obey Lawes, and in all places they sowe deceit, but the end of it is, that a man grows infamous by it, and dies hated of all men.

## CHAP. I.

## Of the diversity of Habits.

**T**He Cloathing of the *Northern* people was formerly far otherwise made than it is now a days, especially for the outward and inward Cloathing of Women. I say the outward, because of old time the famous women used Coats bound very straight to their Breasts and Arms, but they were monstrous wide in the Skirt, that one Maid was scarce sufficient to carry these Trains; and she also in this abuse was something like to her Mistresses, but on their Heads they wore fine Linnen Kerchiefs, brought in from far Countries, by Seaby Merchants for their profit; but under these Coverings they wear Golden Crowns, interwoven with precious Stones, according as they were in quality and Riches: but as far as their Navel, they used Gold Ribband for a Girdle, a Plate of Gold or Silver being woven, cast or beaten forth long, and two fingers broad. The other Women had very large sleeves, but these were Wedge-fashion in the middle, and they were shut together with Silver or Gilt Buttons. Moreover the Ornament for their Heads was made of red Cloth that was narrow and Wedge-fashion on the top, and it had Silver Buttons to shut or open it; and these also had gilded Roles under Linnen Coifs that were very fine. And as their Gowns, especially of the Noble and Peasant Women, were very straight and short, (except onely the price of the Cloth) so the Citizens wore very long Gowns, having square gilded Plates on the fore-part, from their necks to their feet, hanging down on both sides above the Skirt. But the Maids used a Garment over their shoulders, which signified the preservation of their Chastity.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the chaste adorning of Virgins, and rigour of Chastity.

**T**He Ornament of Maids consisted in pretious large Gold or gilt Crowns, worn upon their Heads; and to preserve their Chastity, there hung down from their Necks both before and behind, a white silk or Linnen Mantle: which the Religious now call a *Scapular*, or *Patience*; with this Habit or Cloak they guided all the parts of their body as with a bridle, as they walked or conversed with any one, with an admirable modesty and grace, (never seeing or talking with men, unless their Parents gave them License) and they were so modest, that they would scarce be intreated to look upon a man in publick, until they were married, and but seldom then: so modestly did they carry their Eyes in all places, with-holding them from things lawfull. Also the *Northern* women have a wonderful and constant desire to preserve their Chastity, that when they are honestly married, at certain times they will refrain their Husbands Embracements, and with that constancy, that they will lay a drawn sword between them in the bed to keep them asunder; as *Saxo* speaks of one *Thira*, Daughter to a King of *England*; and moreover concerning the singular Chastity of many Virgins of that Age.

## CHAP. III.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the Benediction of the Catholick Kings.

**H**E that must reign over a faithful people, after a Catholick manner, is wont to be blessed with many and great Benedictions, that he may be more accepted by God, more profitable for the people, and more secure for himself. But first he wears freely by the sacred Evangel of God: and in the presence of God and his Angel, he promitteth that he will keep the Laws, Justice, and Peace of the Church of God, and for the People subject to him, with the Observation of all the Rights and Privileges, and all things for their good: and hereupon he requires the Benediction of the Church, and it is given him, that he may multiply in the Gifts of Graces, and may every where be compassed about, and protected by the right hand of God: that being adorned with *Abraham's* Faith, *Moses's* Meekness, *David's* Humility, *Solomon's* Wisdom, he may please God in all things, walk uprightly, fight faithfully and victoriously over the Enemies of the Cross of Christ, and keep Peace, which is to be desired in all things. Then he is annointed with visible Oyl, which is consecrated in most sacred words, that he may receive invisible Gifts, and when he hath justly discharged his Temporall Kingdome, he may eternally reign with God the King of Kings. Moreover the Church prays, that by the efficacy of that holy Unction the Government may sit upon his shoulders, and that he may be a just, valiant, faithful, provident, unwearied Governour of the Kingdome and People, a Conquerour of Infidels, a Preserver of Justice, a Defender of the Holy Church and Christian Faith, to the honour and praise of the glorious Name of God. Lastly, that he may use the Sword given him by virtue from God, to take Vengeance on wicked men, for the praise of good men, that he may do Justice with it, destroy Iniquity, defend and protect the Holy Church of God, and the faithful people belonging to it, that he may destroy false Christians, and in mercy help and defend Widows and Orphans, restore what is made desolate, and so preserve them, that in this triumph of Virtues, he may deserve to reign without end, with the Saviour of the World, whose person he represents. Moreover there is a Crown set upon his head: thereby is meant Glory and Honour, and valorous Actions: that he shall in all Adversities take part and defend the Ministers of the Church of Christ; and that he may always appear a faithful Executor, and good King, in the Kingdome given to him from God, and by the Papal Benediction, in place of the Apostles, who through Faith subdued Kingdoms, and of all the Saints, to the people under his Government. That being adorned with the Jewels of Virtues, amongst the glorious Champions, and crown'd with the reward of Eternal Felicity, he may triumph with Christ for ever. Then taking the Scepter in his hand, he understands that he is bound to, cherish the good, to fright the bad, to reduce those that wander out of the way, to lend his hand to them that slip, to bear down the proud, and to relieve the humble. After this, when the King is enthroned, and sits on his Throne, the Arch-Bishop saith to him, (who brought him in with the help of the rest of the Bishops) Stand, and hold from henceforth the place, God hath made thee, his Vicegerent, by the Authority of the Almighty God, and our delivery of it, namely of all the Bishops, and other servants of God: and the nearer you see the Clergy attend at the sacred Altar, remember to give them the greater honour in convenient places, that the Mediator of God and Men, may confirm thee a Mediator between the Clergy, and the people in this Throne of the Kingdome, and that Jesus Christ may cause thee to reign with him. Last of all the Metropolitan, amongst other Ceremonies, makes a Prayer to God for the King: Be thou a Coat of Mail for him, against the Armies of his Enemies, a Helmet in Adversity, Wisdom in Prosperity, and an everlasting Buckler to defend him; and cause the people to be faithful to him, the Nobles

may

may live peaceably, and love Charity, may fly from Coverousness, and speak Justice, may keep Truth, that they may always triumph and continue Conquerours in peace. Also changing what must be changed, he prays for the Queen, in what concerns the female Sex, and wisheth many such wishes to her, in a reverent manner from God, &c.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of Knights, and their Oath.*

**H**AVING now dispatcht the Coronation, according to the premised Ceremonies towards God and Men, which are to be commended in all Ages; the King himself, according to the ancient Laws of his Kingdoms, freely grants new privileges to divers conditions of men, so far as it is fit, and to whom it concerns, or else he confirms some that were formerly granted by his Ancestours; and augments them. Lastly, he creates Knights abundantly, bestowing on them Fee-Farms, giving them a Girdle, a Sword, and a Buckler: yet such an Oath is first taken, which is administered by some Bishop, who assists at the Coronation; I, N. pray God so to help me, and the blessed Vir. in Mary, and St. Ericus, as I will to the utmost of my power with my life and estate, defend the Catholick Faith, and the Holy Evangel, and defend the Church, and the Ministers of it, in their Liberties, and will stand against all Injustice, and will maintain Peace and Justice, defend young Children, Orphans, Virgins, Widows, and poor people, and will be true to my King, and to the Kingdome, and my Countrey; and justly will use and exercise my Military condition, to the honour of God, to the utmost of use and exercise my Military condition, to the honour of God, to the utmost of my power: So God assist me, and all his Saints, Amen. And they were wont so faithfully and strictly to observe this Oath, that when they heard War proclaimed against the Enemies of the Faith, especially the Ichilmatical Moscovites, in the Eastern part, or the Kingdome of Sweden, and Finland; and when the Pope proclaimed a *Cruciat* against the Turks, they presently at their own cost would come well armed, cheerfully to fight the Lords Battails, or travel to the Holy Land, receiving at the Sepulchre of Christ a Warlike Girdle, and they would of their own accord joyn with the Armies of the Christians, to fight for their Religion against the Turks: and by this means it oft fell out, that they returned glorious Conquerours into their own Countrey, and at last into their Heavenly, and everlasting Countrey, to receive a Crown there.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Marriages of the Commons.*

**I**T is a Custome of the common people amongst the *Goths*, and *Swedes*, and such as desire to be married, to use many Ceremonies, repeated at divers times, in divers manners and orders, and before divers Witnesses, especially for this reason, that they may with more constancy live together, that there may be no need of a Divorce, though the Law allow it. For the Parents of the Maid that is to be desired in Marriage, do diligently enquire of what Stock, Honour, Fame, or Infamy, Honesty, or Dishonesty, Manners, and Industry, the Suiter is: also whether he be no Bastard, and understanding the man to be virtuous, two Witnesses being present of the Father and Mothers Kindred, the Father presents his Daughter in these words unto her Suiter that stands by;

I give

**I** Give thee this my Daughter, for an honourable wife, to have half the Bed, and to possess the Dore and Keyes, and every third penny in thy Gods moveable and unmoveable, and to all Rights that Upper Swede hath from St. Ericus, and St. Ericus gave to them. In the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, Amen.

And thus the Marriage Agreement takes force, and making haste when things are ripe, other better Ceremonies being added, they make an end of it, especially with such, that the Kindred, Acquaintance, and Friends, with some prudent Man to lead on the Men, and some grave Matron to lead on the Women, at a day appointed they may ride in pomp to their Parish Church in greater honour: where burning Torches, made after a wonderful manner, are lighted, and the Bride with a Crown on her head, is brought forth to receive the Benediction of the Priest: and she standing before the High Altar by her Bridegrooms side, both of their Contents being solemnly asked, for their living together in prosperity and adversity, by putting on of a Ring, and by a Nuptial Benediction, all the premised Ceremonies are ratified. Nor shall I pass over it, that when the Ring is put on, those that stand by, hold their Fists one against the other behind her back, that by this means they may confirm this Act, as it is wont to be observed in creating of a Knight, that he may remember. They that are present at such Marriages, as Friends, Kindred, Acquaintance, freely give them many gifts, as Horses, Oxen, Sheep, Beds, Woollen-Cloth, and Corn; that by those happy beginnings, they may live the more cheerfully together. But a Horse, an Oxe, and an Axe are delivered to them with special Ceremonies, that they may know they come to the same labour, and to partake of the same danger, that they must, will, and shall the same things, until they be divorced by the Law, or by Death. There are also many Ceremonies used when they go to bed, that the Priest of the Parish, or the Clerk, must sing a Carol, or Psalm.

*Come Holy Ghost, with an Invocation of Divine Assistance, that he would from above bestow all happiness on this Married Couple.*

Also it is the Custome, that some of the choicest Dishes shall be presented to the married Pair, sitting on the bed, that they may eat with the standers by for a short time; and then their Friends taking their leaves of them, they are left in peace: but the next day the new Bride, with her hair wrapt close in, comes very affably, and brings Silver Cups filled with some chaste Liqueur; and for a sign that she is now Mother of the Family, she drinks freely to them.

Y

## CHAP. VI.



## CHAP. VI.

*Of Adulterers, and their punishments.*

A Woman committing Adultery, if she be proved so by the Testimony of six men, loseth her Dowry, and whatsoever she brought along with her, when she came to her husband, who is to have all. For he hath power of both her lives, and is Heir to her in them, by virtue of the municipal Laws of the Countrey of the *Goths* and *Sweds*: But if he will be content with the forfeit, he hath that determined by the Laws of the Land: yet I paid that over willingly, though there is a set part due, severally to the King, the Bishop, and to the Chamber of that City. If an Adulterer cannot pay a *pecuniary mulkt*, then must two stones be laid upon the Womans shoulders; and she binding a Cord about his privities, must draw him through the City in the sight of all the people. And lastly, he must forswear the City, that he will never come there again. If one of the two commit the like fault, the party offending onely is punished, and the other is declared innocent. But there is a special gift or reward set for the City-Officer, who serves upon such occasions.

*The end of the Fourteenth Book.*

Olaus

## Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *U P S A L*:

O. F.

## The divers Exercises of Men.

*An Epitome of the Fifteenth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Exercise of Children.*

THat the Children of the *Goths* and the young men might not be suffered to wax dull in idleness, or employ the first years of their youth in wicked Acts, it hath been alwaies a custom, that their tender age should be exercised in divers recreations; but chiefly in military actions, in shooting, and according to every ones capacity to employ themselves with diligence: after this manner, that they will not give their Children any bread unless they first hit the mark with an arrow, that is placed of purpose for them by their Governours. Wherefore there are some boyes scarce above 12 years old, that are so cunning in shooting, that being commanded to hit the head, breast, or feet of the smallest birds that are very far from them, they will do it infallibly with a shaft: and so will old men that have their sight. *Saxo* the *Danish* Historian brings a monstrous example of this, concerning a certain old man, whose crosse-bow had such a huge nur, that he could set ten arrowes to the string: and these being shot vigorously against the Enemy, made so many wounds in his body.

## CHAP. II.

*Of their custome of driving away the Winter, and receiving of Summer.*

**T**he Southern *Suedes* and *Goths* that are very far from the *Pole*, have another custome, that on the first day of *May*, when the Sun is in *Taurus*, there should be two horse Troops appointed of young and lusty men; as if they were to fight some hard conflict. The one of these is led on by the Captain who is chosen by Lot, who hath the name and habit of Winter, and is clothed with divers skins, and armed with fire-forks, casting about Snow-balls and pieces of Ice, that he may prolong the cold; and thus he rides up and down in triumph, and he shews and makes himself the harder, the more the ice-flicks seem to hang from their flocks: On the other side, the Captain of the other Troop is for Summer, and is called Captain *Florio*, and is clothed with green boughs and leaves, (for there are scarce any flowers then) and Summer garments that are not very strong; and both ride forth of the field into the City, Winter and Summer, but from divers places, and one after another, and with their fire-Spears they fight, and make a publike shew, that Summer hath conquer'd Winter.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the same.*

**T**herefore both sides striving forcibly to get the Victory, that side more forcibly assaults the other, which on that day seems to borrow more force from the Ayr, temperate or sharp. If the sharpness of the Winter yet breathes froth, they lay aside their Spears, and riding up and down, and cast ashes mingled with live-sparks of fire taken forth from the graves, or from the altars, upon the spectators. Also they who in the same dressing and habit, are auxiliary Troops, cast fire-balls from their horses upon those that come to see them. But that the Person of Summer with his band of Horse may not be deprived of his desired honour, for want of green boughs and flowers, he shews openly his boughs of Birch or Tiel-Tree, that are made green long before by art, as by the heat of their Stoves, and watering them, and these are privately brought in as if they newly came from the Wood. But upon this occasion, because Nature is defrauded, those that fight for Winter, presse on the more, that the victory may not be got by fraud, or may consist in a pleasing Triumph; yet the sentence is given for Summer by the favourable judgment of the people; who are unwilling to endure the sharp rigour of Winter any longer; and so Summer gets the victory with the general applause of themselves, and he makes a gallant Feast for his Company, and confirms it by drinking cups, that he could scarce win with Spears.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the May-Feasts.*

**A**t last when all Meadows, Fields, and Woods grow green and flourish, the Sun being in *Cancer*, that is, in the vigil of St. *John* the Baptist, (which day our Ancestors held solemn with great festivity, and taught and commanded their

their posterity to observe it with great solemnity) all the people of both Sexes and all Ages, meet by Troops in the publick streets of their Cities, or in the plain fields, making every where huge fires to dance and skip up and down with, and there they sing as they dance the noble actions of famous Men of old times both at home and abroad performed over the World; and what the most illustrious Women did to win to themselves eternal praise in preserving their chastity, which they loved. Also they sing in their Country Rimes, Harps, and Pipes, sounding by turns what the d. generous and ignoble Nobility, cruel Tyrants, and base women, not regarding honestly, have committed. Moreover, the Maids, as their Mothers have first taught them, disclose in singing how many and great faults their husbands are guilty of, in playing at Dice, brawling in Taverns, luxury in Cloths, keeping of bale company, and continually drinking and glutting themselves. Again, the more ingenious Youth know how to sing together, how most irksome, deceitful, unruly, brawling, prating, theevish, flattering and unfaithful Women are, that the men alone may not be complain'd of. Then they sing what the perfidious Citizens, crafty Artificers, unconstant Merchants, snoring Sea-men, false Peasants, and the most cruel and covetous Governours of the Earth do; and this is set forth with variety of singing and musical Instruments: especially moved for that reason, that young men may learn how magnificent and glorious virtue is, and worthy of eternal commendation, to follow the steps of good men, and to take heed and fly from the Examples of the wicked.

## CHAP. V.

*Of their Dice-playing, and playing at Tables or Chess.*

**I**t is a Custome amongst the most illustrious *Goths* and *Suedes*, when they would honestly marry their daughters, to prove the disposition of the Suitors that come to them, and to know their passions especially, by playing with them at Tables or Chess. For at these Games, their anger, love, peevishness, covetousness, dullness, idleness, and many more mad pranks, passions, and motions of their minds, and the forces and properties of their fortunes are used to be seen: as whether the Wooer be rudely disposed, that he will indiscreetly rejoyce, and suddenly triumph when he wins; or, whether when he is wronged, he can patiently endure it, and wisely put it off.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of their dancing in Arms.*

**M**oreover, the Northern *Goths* and *Suedes* have another Sport to exercise Youth withall, that they will dance and skip amongst naked swords and dangerous weapons: and this they do after the manner of Masters of defence, as they are taught from their Youth by skillful Teachers that dance before them, and sing to it. And this play is shew'd especially about Shrove-tide, called in *Italian*, *Maschiararum*. For before Carnivals all the youth dance for 8. dayes together, holding their swords up: but within the scabbards for 3. times turning about, and then they do it with their naked swords lifted up: after this, turning more moderately, taking the points and pummels one of the other, they change ranks, and place themselves in an hexagonal figure; and this they call *Rosam*: and presently they dissolve it, by drawing back their swords and lifting them up, that upon every ones head there may be made a square

square *Rosa*, and then by a most nimble whisking their swords about collaterally, they quickly leap back and end the sport; which they guide with pipes or songs, or both together, first by a more heavy, then by a more vehement, and lastly, by a most vehement dancing. But this speculation is scarce to be understood but by those that look on, how comely and decent it is; when at one word, or one commanding the whole armed multitude is directed to fall to fight; and Clergy-men may exercise themselves, and mingle themselves amongst others at this sport; because it is all guided by most wise reason.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of their Dancing in Rings.*

There is also another Exercise for young men, that they may by a certain rule lead on and back again a Dance round about with other Instruments; but by the same art that was used by the Dancers with swords. For first, being included in circles, or rings, they sing modestly the Deeds of famous men, and with Pipes or Drums playing they go round, and turn back again, by the word onely of him that is the Leader, whom they call the King. Then loosing their round rings, they make a little more speed, and by a mutual inclination (as they did before with their swords) they make a *Rosa*, that they may appear in a hexangular figure. And that this may be done more solemnly, and with greater noise, they bind little brass bells to tinkle at their knees, like Morris-dancers. There is also another kind of Dance or Play, where, upon a wooden Engine men are carried in the Ayr by the motion of Wheels: or else they sport otherwise, being very nimble of body: as with Spears, about which they will turn themselves; also with Ropes that they will walk on by turns; and with hoops, and they will slide through these like fish; also with Planks, whereby they will hang by one hand in the Ayr, and this is called tumbling, because the youth dance more lightly. Also they cast the Sledge, the Barr, and w<sup>ch</sup> many more recreations, according to the season of the year; as Running, Leaping, Wrestling, and walking on their hands with their heels upward. They use also to dance in their harness that rattles as in the Wars, and these are goaded by the Minstrel that plays slower or faster, that they may leap so with their Swords and Bucklers.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of their Dancing about the Fire.*

It is the custome to make great fires in cold weather before the Pallaces of Northern Kings and Princes, with Fir-Trees chiefly, whereof there is great plenty there: for by the burning of them there is made such a noise, that those that see it not, but hear it afar off, suppose that the beams and Houses fall down. And that that natural noise may not appear to be in vain, by the sound of the Drum the most valiant men are called, and they dance round these fires; and they dance so violently, and hold so fast, that the last man must needs fall in the fire, as if he should break a strong chain; and then leaping forth again by the applause of the rest that dance, he is set in the highest Seat; that he may presently for spoiling the Kings fire, drink up one or two great Cups of the strongest Ale. For by that most sound drink, yet drank off very soberly, he may regain his forces; and so he quickly returns to his fellow-

low-dancers that ran round the fire; who likewise roped by motion, fire and thirst, are willingly drawn presently to the punishment appointed; except those who by custome were so rowzed by the fire when they dance, and are so strong and nimble, that they can scarce ever be thrust into the fire any more. For holding very fast, they learn by experience, to be more cautious at this sport. And therefore these are honoured to drink greater cups, though they are no delinquents against the Kings fire. But the rest also continuing their dancing by course merrily till midnight, they fall almost by turns into the flame; and by this means, fresh-water Soldiers, and by many exercises, gain such strength of body commonly, that they will endure firmly in fire, dancing and hard rubs, that when Wars come indeed, they can the better sustain all violences of it. Also they cast Dice who shall leap through the fire in his clothes. But if any man by malicious presumption shall in jest commit an offence at the Kings Gate, he will scarce escape from being burnt in the fire.

*The End of the Fifteenth Book.*

Thus

# Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L:

OF

Ecclesiasticall Fashions.

*The Epitome of the Sixteenth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Custome of praying in Churches.*

**T**He Northern people being to come from most remote Villages to their Parochiall Churches for Baptisme, bring no other weapons with them besides a crosse-bow, a Sword, and an Ax. Crosse-bows, I say, by reason of cruel beasts, namely, huge Bears, and devouring Wolves, who in three moneths, *January, February, and March,* are more fierce than at any other time of the year, which are then killed, with a vow first made to God, and they keep it faithfully. That the skins of the wild beasts slain by them, shall be offered as a sacrifice for the Priests to tread on when they lay Malle at the Altar: and hence is the original of it, that when the weather is extrem cold, the Priests stand upon Bears skins; but if a Wolf, or Lynx, or Fox, or any other kind of beast were catched in their nets, they sell that faithfully to buy wax Candles for the Churches. I speak also of Swords, that if need be, they may keep off villains from them. Then they carry Axes, by reason of Trees cast down in the waies by cruel Tempests, that they may passe freely, and remove them, or may quickly make up Bridges that are beaten down by sudden inundations. Also they carry long Spears for slaves to leap over great ditches: yet they have also slaves with Calenders upon them to carry in their hands, as I said in the first Book: wherewith they teach, dispute, and demand questions, and agree upon the conjunctions and oppositions of the Moon, and her course; and

and upon their fixed and moveable Feasts, also the signs of the daies by infallible experience, as if they read it out of a book, are expounded and interpreted thereby.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Funerals and Burials of Princes.*

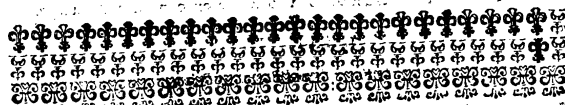
**I**T was a custome amongst the Antients to hang up the bodies of Princes in green Trees, especially Oakes, as in sacred places consecrated to the gods, or to burn them with flames of Juniper-wood, or to bury them in the ground with a sword and a club, in certain Mountains, and to set a stone about them of great stones in a round or square fashion; as *Saxo* speaks of *Haralds* (*lib. 8.*) King of the *Danes*, who was conquer'd and slain; for the King of *Sweden*, *Ringo*, that conquer'd him, made him a stately Funeral. For this is their piety, That the Conquerour will follow the conquer'd with funeral solemnities; and he that performs these Rites for his enemy that his dead, (as the same *Saxo* saith, *lib. 3.*) gains the good will of him that succeeded: and he conquers him that is alive with his good turn, who shews humanity to the dead.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the variety of the sick, and of their Disorders and Medicaments.*

**T**He peculiar diseases of the Northern people are these: The Cough, Stone, Tooth-ach, pains in their Eyes, Collicks, Agues, Elegme, Scabs, the French Pox, and small Pox; the Plague also, but that comes but seldom: and therefore when it comes, it more cruelly destroys those that are over-given to gluttony and excess. There is also another disease in the Camp, that vexes the besiegers and the besieged, and it is such a one, that their fleshy parts grow stupid, and melt like wax, with corruption under the skin, and will pit with your fingers touching them; and the teeth are ready to fall out; their skins grow white and wan, and they grow sluggish, and nauseate meats, desiring to have help. In the vulgar tongue of the Nation it is called *Schoerburgh*; in Greek, *Kaxestia*, it may be, by reason of that soft corruption under their skins; and it seems to breed from eating salt meats, that are not digested, and to be fostered by a cold exhalation from the walls. But it is not so forcible where the walls are covered with boards on the in-side. But if this mischief grow spreading over-much, they strive to cure it by drinking Wormwood Beer, as they use to cure the Stone perfectly by drinking old Ale and Butter boyl'd: and thus they totally help, or much ease the pain of the Stone in the Kidneys.

*The End of the Sixteenth Book.*



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U.P.S.A.L.

Tame and Domestique Creatures.

The Epitome of the Seventeenth Book.

The Preface.

**A**s there are many and divers sorts of Creatures, all the world over, disposed of as proper to their places and natures; as Elephants; Camels, Leopards, Lions, Ostridges, Tigers, Apes, and such like, that multiply innumeraibly in both Countries, and are without any thick hair, so also in cold Countries very many beasts are found, but they are very hairy because of the sharp Winters; as are white Bears, black Bulls, high Elks, tall ranged Deer, fierce Wolves, devouring Gules, quick-lighted Lynxes, false Otters, medicinall Beavers, fearful Does, crafty Foxes, both white and black, and other beasts that are of unknown names and natures elsewhere, which I shall write of severally underneath in their particular Chapters, in order; especially for that cause, that the Pious Reader may see how admirable is the love and affection of the most high Creator toward all his Creatures, in preserving them all the world over, subject to his disposing, especially in the most cold Northern Climate, having given them a natural sagacity; namely, that when they are shut in on all sides with Snow and Ice, and no food to be found on the ground, they will not only live, but bring forth young ones and feed them, and amidst the sharpest Elements take no harm.

CHAP. I.

## CHAP. I.

### Of Rams and Lams.

**T**Here is an Island in the Gothick Sea, which is subje& to the Kingdome of the Goths or Sweden, called *Gothland*, that is good Land, by all that frequent it; because amongst the Northern Islands, it ought deservedly to be reputed and magnified for a happy and plentiful Land, by reason of the many Natural Gites bestowed upon it. This Land produceth larger and stronger Rams or Weathers, than any other place doth, and they have 4. or 8. Horns; and they are so fierce, by reason of their Horns, that at Rutting time, unless their Horns be first filed or saw'd off, they will hurt other Creatures, and run at the shepherd himself. They have lost long Wool, which formerly at *Rome*, being wrought into a small Garment, the Artificers that make *Burrae* highly commended. Also all the North Countrey hath great multitudes of great Rams and Sheep, and the Females of them have crooked Horns. There are also many places toward the North Pole, where neither Rams nor sheep, Bulls nor Cows have any Horns.

## CHAP. II.

### Of Oxen and Cows.

**T**HE Northern Kingdoms, especially *Vermelandia*, and *Dalia*, by reason of their gallant Pastures, breed most stately Oxen: Also the Provinces of the *V. Frogoths* do the same: And these Oxen yearly are multiplied, not so much in the growth of their Bodies, as in Multitudes, *Norway*, *Sweden*, and *Finland*, hath the like, that are fit for their Summer or Winter Carts, or else to be used in the fields; and they use there as they do Horses to draw the Plough: but Cows are never let to draw Waggon, or to go to Plough: nor do they do any work, because of the hope of their Calves: yet these when they are very young, being parted from their Dams, when cold weather doth rage, are kept in Stoves prepared for it, and fed there: and when the Winter is sharp and long, their Cattel feed on Oken Bark, instead of Hay or Straw. But in Summer, and clear Nights, they are kept in Pastures by Shepherds, for fear of hurtful Worms, and Grass-Worms; which their Keepers in all places, with making a smoak with Pitch, and burning Pine-Trees, either burn or drive away. But not all, for when Autumn comes, the Grass-Worms will go into the skins of the Lean Oxen, and there keep winter; and in the Springs they will eat their skins, and vex their Host, as Caterpillars that feed on leaves of Trees, and these sticking in the small leaves where they breed, pals over the Winter more freely: but Oxen who are troubled with these Worms, are parted from the rest as much as they can, to be fatted and slain, and then their skin on their backs appears like a sieve with many holes, and loath the price for anothers fault. But in those places they are kept more healthful, and sooner grow fat, where they are neither tortured and wearied with the stings of Flies, nor bitings of these Ox-Flies, and do not want their fill of green grass.

2 2

CHAP. III.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the Northern Horses.

**T**He *Norway* Horses are small of stature; but wonderful strong and swift to pass over Mountains, and stony ways; but those of *Sweden* and *Gotland* will travel incessantly, and very swiftly with more meat, over Lakes and high Hills, and deep Thickets. But those of *Oeland*, because they are small, are more fit for light service, though amongst them there are found of a different kind that are notable for labour. Also the *Finland* Horses are of good qualities.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of their War-Horses.

**B**ut the greatest Horses that the North produces, especially in the Kingdom of the *Vestrogths*, are not only by a publick Edict forbidden to be used by Carriers, but there is a very strict command to breed them up, & teach them for service in the Wars, and defence of the Country. For such Horses used to Wars in Winter that are fought in the Northern Kingdoms, being accustomed to the Cold from their Birth, can well endure the Winter, and will carry the Armed Rider with much courage and strength whither soever they are directed by him, and never stumble when they go or run; and for this cause they may be compared with all the best Horses, that *Spain*, or *Naples*, or *France*, or *Germany* breeds, if not prefer'd before them. Yet they are not so swift as the *African*, *Namidian*, or *Turkish* Horses; but they satisfy for their want of swiftness by their great boldness and strength, that they are found to be fit for the greatest wars, considering the nature of the people, the place and quality of the Season.

## CHAP. V.

## Of their Cats.

**C**ats, which the *Greeks* call *Lions*, are very great and common, especially they are white, that are found in the Northern Climates; and these will not only clear the houses, and mens Habitations, Barns, and Granaries; but also Fields near to Houses, of Rats and Mice, and Dormice, by a wonderful sagacity: But Wild Cats lye in wait for Birds, and small Creatures, to feed on; and these Cats skins, if Garments be lined with them, are wonderful profitable against the Winter Cold.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of He and She-Goats.

**T**here is greater store of He and She-Goats in the Northern parts, than in any other parts of *Europe*, because of the Mountain feeding, and the Goat-Keepers most diligent care: Wherefore She-Goats there have great bodies, thick legs, short full necks, long Ears hanging down, little Heads, long naked thick necks below the *Cervix*, with tall broad Horns; they are stout, warlike, and strong, so that they fear not to fight with small Wolves, when the Dogs help them. They are almost all white, and so are the She-Goats: In the Winter they feed on the Kinds of Pine-Trees, and Moss, and Poplar Boughs. Their skins are carried forth in great

great ships for to make gain of in *Germany*, and they are made up by Tens: and from thence they are dispersed again into the World: so are their cheeies, because they nourish much, and are medicinal, where the Flesh is gross, or twels. The Inhabitants feed more greedily on their Flesh dried in the Sun, Wind and with Salt, than when they are new killed; and that in Summer, and time of Husbandry.

## CHAP. VII.

## What Gifts are given to the new Married.

**T**He Northern people have a Custome, that when the Maid new married is in a mean condition, to begin and to increase their stock and household stuff, they will freely give them a Hog, a Sheep, a Cow; and to the man young Colts, a Dog, a Cat, and a Goose.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of Ranged Deer.

**I**N the North parts of both the *Bothnians*, (for so are the utmost parts of the North Country called, as if it were from the bottoms of a Vessel) and great *Lapland*, there is a Beast with three Horns, that is of the kind of Stags, but is far taller, stronger, and swifter; and it is called *Rangifer*, for two reasons; one is, because it carryeth high horns on the head, like the Boughs of an Oak-Tree: The other is, because the Instruments that are put upon the horns and beams, to draw their Waggon withall in Winter, are called in that Language *Rancha*, and *Lo-chai*, of these horns it hath two bigger than the rest, growing as the Stags horns do: but they are with more branches, and farther out, for they augment to fifteen branches. Another stands in the middle of their head, with little small branches shorter than the other, standing round about it. These arm the head on all sides against the beasts that are Enemies unto it, especially Wolves; and it shews comely, and to be admired amongst other strange things. The meat this beast eateth is Mountain Moss, that is white chiefly in Winter, that lyes on the Superficies of the ground covered with Snow. And though these Snows be thick, yet by an Instinct of Nature, will it dig in them like a wilde horie to seek for its meat. In Summer it feeds on Leaves and Boughs of Trees, better standing and going, than stooping down the head, (because the horns are too crooked forward) and that inclining the head obliquely, and on one side. It hath a Mane like a Horse, and the Hoofs are divided in two, being almost round by Nature, because it runs or goes over the high snow, carrying a man on its back, where the snow is hardened in Valleys, Mountains, or Fields.

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the Proofs of this Creature.

**T**hese Creatures made tame as Sheep, afford great profit to their Masters; in their Milk, Skins, Sinews, Bones, Hoofs, Horns, Hair, and dainty Flesh to feed on: some of the Inhabitants them fifteen, thirty, seventy, one hundred, or five hundred; and their Keepers drive them to Pasture, and home again, and they shut them up in Stalls, by reason of whole Troops of Mountain Wolves, that are most fierce, that prey up and down.



If they be carried into other Countries, especially beyond Seas, they will not live long: either by reason of the Climate changed, or unusual food they feed on, which their ordinary Keeper feeds them: as I remember that formerly the most illustrious Prince of Sweden, *Sveno Svere*, the younger, sent six of these Rangiers to *Fredrick Duke of Holsatia*, and he sent two Keepers with them, the Man and Wife that were *Laplanders*; these being carried out of their Native Countrey, and being under the Government of others, because they wanted their rest, and manner of living, neither they nor the Beasts wanting a particular care for them, did live long. Likewise in the year of our Lord, 1533, *Gustavus King of Sweden* sent ten pair of these Beasts to some Noble men in *Prussia*, both for sight, and for propagation, and they were all let free into the Woods. But there came nothing of it, and changing the place did not profit for their increase.

## CHAP. X.

*Of the Chariots for men, drawn by ranged Deer.*

WE must know that there are two sorts of these Rangiers, Wilde and Tame; that being brought under, will faithfully serve mens use. But the rest that are Wilde and live in the Desarts, are given onely to increase, and serve to be hunted. The tame ones are fitted for mens Chariots, and these will excellently well draw the most loaded Waggon through Countries and Fields, and they are lauded usually with precious Skins, Cloths, Fish of divers kinds; because for the most part the *Laplanders* feed on Fish, living upon catching of Fish in Waters that cannot be emptied of them; as I shall make it appear underneath, when I speak of their divers Exercises. Their Journey therefore is through plain Valleys, and tends most to *Norway*, whither they commonly go, as a place nearest for their Traffique, and a people most faithful to hold Friendship with. Those that are the Waggon-Masters, are commonly called *Quenar*, and if they please, or it need require, they will travail every day one hundred and fifty miles, that is thirty *Gothick* miles, or *German* miles; and these Creatures will run as fast as Hories.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the Winter Chariots for these Rangiers.*

THE foresaid *Laplanders* get great commodity by their Winter-Chariots, especially because by the glibbiness of these Carts made conformable to the Snow, they will make long journeys to places appointed for Merchandice, as I said before in the 11th. Book, speaking of the fashion of them; and of the proclamation, that they shall not be lent to strangers, because of the great swiftness of them. But here I shall shew, that that swiftness is caused by the skins of the ranged Deer outwardly made fast under their Winter-Chariots, and the art chiefly is this: That the former part of the skin shall be sowed fast before under the Chariot: whence it comes that the hair being turned outward, not onely makes it glib to go on, but strong to resist, that the Carter cannot fall back: otherwise in high Mountains they could never proceed or end their voyage they desire. And by this short way will the Travellers kill wild ranged Deer as they go, with their Bows and Arrows.

## CHAP. XII.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Commodity of the Parts of this Creature.*

THEIR Milk serves for daily Food, and the Whey of it for convenient Drink. Their Skins serve for Mans Covering, both of his Body, and of his Beds. Also they serve for Saddles for Horsemen, for Sacks, and Bellows for divers Artificers: for it is very tenacious, strong, and durable. The Sinews serve instead of Flax, that grows not in that cold Country, and they make Thred of them for Cloathing, as I said before, *Lib. 4*: concerning binding ships together, where they want Iron. Their Bones and Horns are used by Artificers to make Bows, and Crois-Bows, and they seek after them much to make profit by them. Their Hoofs are good against the Cramp. Their Hair serves to foken and stuff Horsemen's Saddles, and Cushions, for to honour Gifts with, and to keep off the Cold. The Flesh of this Creature is excellent and very wholesome, dried with Salt in the Wind, it will last many years; yet the Custome of the people is, when they catch new to put it to the old.

## The end of the Seventeenth Book.

Olaus



# Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *UPSALA*:

O F

Wild Creatures.

## *The Epitome of the Eighteenth Book.*

### CHAP. I.

#### *Of the Elks or wild Ases, and the manner of taking them.*

**T**He Elks go in herds in the vast deserts, as Deer do; and by the Industry of the Hunters they are often shot with bows, or else by great dogs they are forced into caves in Rocks, and they seldom come forth alive; also when the greatest Elks lie on the ground, or stand up, a little Weazel sometimes will leap and catch them by the throats, that they will bleed to death; this small beast is so unsatiable in sucking of bloods, that there is scarce the like for its bignesse amongst all the Creatures. And some put this creature in a hollow Cave, and direct it with a string, and so they rob Swallows, Pigeons and Hens nests, and pull forth their young, and he will prey after them exceedingly, onely for this end, to suck their blood, as if he had a belly bigger than an Elephant.

### CHAP. II.

#### *Of the Battel of the Elks or wild Ases, against the Wolves.*

**B**Ut it doth not suffice, that this commodious creature is hunted by men with sharp and broad arrows, and a thousand traps that are laid for them in the vaste wilderness, and by the foresaid Weazels that are comparable

comparison of its height; but there are most fierce Mountain Wolves also, that lie in wait to destroy them: and the way is this; When the Winters be sharp, and the Snows deep, the Wolves being hunger-starved, run in huge Troops and the Desarts over to seek for their prey; and when the Lakes are frozen, they search for Elks, but they will run at them with their horns and hoofs, and kill them or drive them away. For a blow with the hoof is so forcible, that it will kill or wound the Wolf: and the Hunters find this to be very often true in their strongest dogs; and when a dog falls upon a Tree it will break like a Mushroom. The Elks by instinct of Nature know the most fit places for to fight in, namely, upon the slippery Ice, for there they are stronger with their sharp-pointed hoofs, and the Wolves keep their claws, as it were, wrapt up, and have no force with them: and whilest they fight, the Hunters commonly are not far off, who follow the conquer'd party that leaves off first, untill they have killed him; and they get the greatest spoils by others dangers. The fight is very fierce; for many Wolves, and some Elks, will lie dead on the ground: and these the Hunters take for the worth of their skins; and the rest of the Elks retire to safe places. Doubtlesse the Wolves would get the victory, being nimble on the tops of the frozen Mountains of Snow, when the Elks being heavy-loaden with their burdens, must needs sink in and become a prey to the Wolves. So provident Nature seems to have appointed to every creature a fit place to defend it self in.

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of Harts and Does.*

**T**Hough the most severe cold seems more to predominate in the Northern parts than in any other place, yet there is found an innumerable number of strange Creatures, as I have said in part, and shall say more: amongst these for man's food, these Elks I spoken of, and Harts and Does, and Goats are most esteemed; and therefore none were allowed by the ancient Law to hunt them but Noble men and their Officers, and privileged persons, and men of hospitality, and chief rulers of Churches. And that by the covetousnesse of hunters, (whereof there is great number there) the Desarts may not be emptied of them, but that they may propagate: yet such as find their horns in the woods, have a pledge of their future prey; and it is as hard to find there, as to see the Hinds calve, or to see an Elk that is at liberty lowing, near the Sea-side.

### CHAP. IV.

#### *Of Castors.*

**I**N the Northern waters there is great abundance of these Creatures, because they are more still than the Rhine or Danow: where there is a perpetuall noise and roaring of Marriners. In the North the Rivers are infinite, and the Trees are most fit to build their houses with, and they build them with wonderful Art, Nature teaching them. They go in troops to cut wood, and they hew them down with their teeth, and when they have eaten them off, they carry them to their caves by a wonderful way. For they cast one upon his back upon the earth, that is of their company, and not fit for labour, or one that is idle, or old, but chiefly one that is a run-away from some other company, and he serves for their Carr, they lay the wood between his hips and thighs, and they draw him home to their houses and unload him; and then they go forth again and return till their houses be made, that have two or three Chambers

A a

one

one above another, that their body may be above the water, and their tail hang down, which, as his hinder feet, are a bait for the fish. For the tail is scaly like a fish, hard and thick as leather, and is distinguished triagely with many secret knots, and it is most delicate meat and medicine for those that are hurt in their guts. And skillfull Cooks know how to dresse it for meat or Physick. The Carver hath such sharp teeth that he will mow down Trees by the Rivers as with a Scythe of Iron; and when he catcheth hold of a man's limbs, he never lets go his hold untill he break the bones.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Gulo.

**A**Mongst all Creatures that are thought to be insatiable in the Northern parts of Sweden, the *Gulo* hath his name to be the principall; and in the vulgar tongue they call him *Jeffer*, but in the German Language *Vielfraß*, in the Slavonish speech *Rossamaka*, from his much eating; and the made Latin name is *Gule*; for he is so called from his gluttony. He is as great as a great dog and his ears and face are like a Cats: his feet and nails are very sharp: his body is hairy with long brown hair, his tail is like the Foxes, but somewhat shorter, but his hair is thicker, and of this they make brave Winter Caps. Wherefore this Creature is the most voracious: For when he finds a carcase, he devours so much, that his body by over-much meat is stretched like a Drum, and finding a streight passage between Trees, he presseth between them, that he may discharge his body by violence; and being thus emptied, he returns to the carcase, and fills himself top full: and then he presseth again through the same narrow passage, and goes back to the carcase, till he hath devoured it all; and then he hunts eagerly for another. It is supposed that he was created by nature to make men bluish, who eat and drink till they spew, and then feed again, eating night and day, as *Mechovita* thinks in his *Sarmatia*, The flesh of this Creature is altogether uselesse for man's food: but his skin is very commodious and precious. For it is of a white brown black colour, like a damask cloth wrought with many figures; and it shews the more beautiful, as by the Industry of the Artills it is joyn'd with other garments in the likeness or colour. Princes and great men use this habit in Winter made like Coats; because it quickly breeds heat, and holds it long; and that not onely in *Swethland*, and *Gothland*, but in *Germany*, where the rarity of these skins makes them to be more esteemed, when it is prized in Ships among other Merchandise.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of honoring strangers with the coverings of these Skins.

**T**HE Inhabitants are not content to let these skins be transported into other Countries, because in Winter they use to entertain their more noble guests in these skins; which is a sufficient Argument, that they think nothing more comely and glorious, than to magnifie at all times, and in all orders their good guests, and that in the most vehement cold, when amongst other good turns they cover their beds with these skins.

And I do not think fit to overpasse, That when men sleep under these skins, they have dreams that agree with the nature of that Creature, and have an insatiable stomach, and lay inares for other Creatures and prevent them themselves. It may be it is as they that eat hot Spices, Ginger or Pepper seems to be

be inflamed; and they that eat Sugar seem to be choked in water. There seems to be another secret of Nature in it, that those who are clothed in those Skins, seem never to be satisfied.

The guts of this Creature are made into strings for Musicians, and give a harsh sound, which the Natives take pleasure in: but these temper'd with sweet sounding strings, will make very good Musick. Their hoofs made like Circles and set upon heads subject to the Vertigo, and ringing ears, soon cure them. The Hunters drink the blood of this beast mingled with hot water: also seasoned with the best Honey it is drunk at Marriages. The fat or tallow of it, smeared on putrid Ulcers for an ointment, is a sudden cure. Charners use the teeth of it. The hoofs newly taken off will drive away Cats and dogs, if they do but see it, as birds fly away if they spy but the Vultur or the Bullard.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the way of hunting of Gulo's.

**B**Y the Hunter's various Art this Creature is taken onely in regard of his precious skin: and the way is this, They carry into the wood a fresh Carcasse; where these beasts are wont to be most commonly; especially in the deep snows (for in Summer their skins are nothing worth) when he smells this he falls upon it, and eats till he is forced to crush his belly close between narrow Trees, which is not without pain; the Hunter in the mean time shoots and kills him with an arrow.

There is another way to catch this beast, for they set Trees bound asunder with small cords, and these fly up when they eat the carcase, and strangle them; or else he is taken, falling into pits dug upon one side, if the carcase be cast in, and he is compelled by hunger to feed upon it. And there is hardly any other way to catch him with dogs, since his claws are so sharp, that dogs dare not encounter with him, that fear not to set upon the most fierce Wolves.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of Hares.

**B**ECAUSE in cold Northern Countries there is a great multitude of Hares, I was desirous to set forth the Nature of them, chiefly in the strange changing of their Colours: For it is most certain, that all Northern Hares, after the Autumnal Equinoctial, especially so soon as the Snow first falls, become white, and are no longer grey. I have seen Mice also, who by always eating white Sugar, grew white, and lost the same again, when the Sugar was taken from them. Wherefore what concerns the Food of the Northern Hare, it is most certain, that when the Earth is bound up with Snow and Cold, they feed on the Pine-Tree Bark and of the Oke, and Alp, and Poplar, and such like, that they naturally finde out, and not upon Snow, as *Pliny* thought, lib. 7. in the Winter-time. And they sleep under the thick boughs of Firr-Tree, that the Snow lyes thick about, but there is a Form left for them. For this Tree hath leis Cold, because of the thick boughs, and hath more secret places to hide Creatures in, than any other Tree. In Summer the Hare chooeth a safe Harbour in Rocks, and Cliffs, because she is naturally fearful, and knows that she is made a prey to all Creatures; and where she can escape, she hopes to do it by swift running: Yet not when she plays with a Weevil; for this, though it seem to play, yet sitteth so close about the neck of it, that she will presently fetch blood at the Hares throat, run the never to fall, and will feed upon her; and thus is she overcome by craft, not by strength: also by the Hawk flying swiftly, against which she can hardly ever save herself, as she

can by turning from a Dog. Hares are very common meat in the North, especially iod with black broth, as the manner of the Country is, it is very wholesome; also they roast the flesh of them: yet some great bellied Women find one inconvenience by it, that when they feed on Hares, or a Hare is trod upon by them, they bring forth Children with Hare Lips, their Lips being always parted between their Nostrils and Mouth: unless they presently sew on a piece of the breast of a very young Chicken, newly killed and bloody. They that have the Goat-bathe their feet in boy'd Hare broth, when it is warm. Also the loyns of an old Hare, bound to the feet, ease the Gout: Against Kibes in cold Weather, they apply the burnt hair of a Hare. The Factors of *Moscowia* make great account of Hares Skins, especially such as are white, who sell many thousand Garments to the *Tartars*, or exchange with them, that they may live peaceably.

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the Lynxes, and their Skins.

IN the Northern Woods the Lynxes are not so commonly bred, as Wolves, though they are as greedy as these. The Nature of the Lynx is never to look back, but he always runs and leaps forward. The meat he commonly or chiefly eats is Wild Cats; and as he most willingly feeds on them, so he always lies in wait about their holes to catch them. The Skin of them, as they are framed with light Down, and rare Spots, are sold very dear, especially such as are taken in the most sharp Winter, for then their colour and virtue is best, but in Summer they are far worse.

## CHAP. X.

## Of Wolves, and their fierceness.

AS *Africa* and *Egypt* produce weak small Wolves, so the cold North brings them up that are fierce and cruel; and that they are so indeed is seen by their fierceness, especially when they lime the Bitches, and when it is extrem cold; for then Travellers must go in Arms, to keep themselves and their Cattel safe, especially great bellied Women, whom the Wolves most hunt after, when they scent them. Therefore no Woman is suffered to travel alone, but she must have a Souldier to guard her. For it falls often out, especially in *January*, that men travelling in Winter Chariots, if they will save their lives from Wolves, that flock abundantly about them, they must drive them off with Bows and Guns; Wherefore Travellers when they go upon their private occasions, or come to their Parish Churches, are always provided with such Instruments, as if they were to go to battail; and sometimes they fall on so fiercely, when Hunger, and Rage, and Cold, drive them on, or Natural Copulation, that they will come into mens houses, and eat up their Cattel, or carry them into the Woods with them when they have torn them: yet they do not do this unpunished, for the Country-men have Remedies in these distresses, that they lay Iron Gins with a Carca's tyed to them in the Snow, and when the Wolves come to eat the prey, the Iron Sickles cut off their feet, or else they kill them suddenly with their arrows, or else they fall into holes under the Earth, being greedy of the prey, and so die of Hunger.

## CHAP. XI.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the many sorts of Wolves.

THEre are in the Mountains called *Desfrine*, that part the Dominions of *Swethland* and *Norway*, white Wolves that go in flocks, like sheep, wandring in the Valleys and Mountains. They feed on weak Creatures, as Mice and Moles, &c. The wild common Wolves are those that lye watching extremely after the Heards of the Inhabitants, as after their Cows, Calves, Sheep, and Goats, &c. against the e that make the people poor, they have a general hunting day at the places and hour appointed, that they may kill them with Nets, Dogs, and other Devices. But they take not so much care to destroy the old Wolves, as to destroy their Whelps, that they may not increate. Also some of these Cubs taken home, though they seem to be tame, yet will they never forget their fierce Nature, though they be kept in chains, for they will prey on any other Creatures, even small Birds. But a Mongrel bred of a Wolf, and a Houle-Dog, grows a great Enemy to all Wolves that prey on the flock. There is also a kind of Wolf called *Thoes*, that is taller than all the rest, but his legs are shorter, he will leap nimble, and lives by Hunting; he will not hurt a man, and he changes his Coat nor his Colour; for in Winter he is hairy, and naked in Summer.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of Otters, and their diversity and falseness of their Skins.

THE Otters have a square mouth, and bite as Beavers, they are like them in their Skins; but they are a third part longer: and they are found in the Northern Waters, especially of the Upper *Sweden*, *Helsingia*, *Medelpadia*, *Angermannia*, *Jemphnia*, and both *Bohnia's*: whole skins, as of Beavers and other Creatures, are carried forth in great abundance toward the *Moscovites*, and thence to the *Tartars*, because in those colder places they are procured for mens clothing very greedily, and that by bartering rather than for money. But in *Sweden* with some great men they are made so tame, that when the cock gives them the sign, they will leap into the fish-pond, and bring forth a Fish of that bignesse he commands them; and then another, and a third, untill he hath done enough as he was bid. The flesh of them is good onely to bait and catch beasts in hunting. And their skins are greatly used by the Northern people, to enlarge the borders of their garments, because their skin will hold fast. They are sold by rens, as Beavers and Foxes, and Martins skins are: and they are falsified with smoke of a yone-tree upon poles, that they may appear to be of a shining black; but if you rub them presently with a white cloth, the colour is gone, and the sophistication is discovered. So Wolves skins powdered with Coal and Chalk, rubbed with a Linnen cloth, are proved to be falsified. So Squirrels skins, called in *Italian* *Dasse*, strewed over with chalk, are discovered to be false by a black cloth. We must search out which colour is natural, and which artificial, and so prize them.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of Squerrils.

THEre is an infinite of these small creatures in the Northern Woods, and they differ in the thicknesse and colour of their hair; by one infallible rule, that the farther North the creatures are taken, the more costly are their skins, the

the cold being the cause of their colour. For under the elevation of the pole at 77 degrees, beginning at the very height of the pole: in all this space the Hunters are more tired than fatiated, there is such an infinite number of these creatures in the Trees; as there be fish in the waters, and they have this commodity, that the Trees are not tall where these Creatures sport themselves. But turning about to the South parts, the more we return South, the worse and darker their skins are. The flesh of them roasted is sweet meat for the Hunters. Their teeth are used by Wizards to discover future things.

## CHAP. XIV.

More of this Creature to foretew things to come.

THIS little Creature will swim over the Rivers upon a piece of Wood, and hold up his tail for a sail: for Nature hath granted him no other way to swim, because of his small body, thick fur, and huge tail covered with hair. Nor are his feet fit for this use. Otherwise he is most cunning in time of hear, that he will lay up his provision for great part of the Winter, where he makes his nest to sleep and rest in; and there he opens and shuts as they find the weather cold. Their meat is Hazel Nuts, and Beech Nuts, or Pine-Tree leaves. There is another sort of them which feed on sleep for meat. They are wonderful nimble to leap from one Tree to another: and with their Tails they balance their motion, and by the nimbleness of their sharp claws, they will skip upon the boughs; and they will play on the frozen Ice very finely, that men are much pleased to see it. Their Skins are carried by Tens, many Thousands of them into all Europe in Factors ships, and they increase the price by the length of the way, and the love men do bear them. It is good for old men, but it is not fit for soldiers, and lusty men: for them a Fox or Gulo's Skin is better.

## CHAP. XV.

Of Martins, and Sabels, and their Skins.

MARTINS, and Sabels, are Creatures of cold Countries; all know them by their names, but few by their virtues, unless by the quality of their Skins a man may know what Creatures they are. This is known of them, that they run and leap strongly and very swiftly; for like the Squirrels almost they use their Tails for their Helm, and leap from Tree to Tree, catching hold of the boughs with their claws. They will bite terribly for their bigness: For they have Teeth naturally, as sharp as Razours, and exceeding small and sharp Nails. But as their flesh is said to be nothing worth, so their Skins are of huge prices, especially amongst Forrainers, that use them more for their pleasure, than commodity. The difference between them is this, that the Martins are of a grosser Fur from the crown of their head to their tail, but not if you rub them the contrary way: but the Sabels are not so; for if you stroak them with your hand from their tail to their crown, they are equally smooth: because they are furry, and their hair is thicker: and therefore they are sooner eaten by the Worms, than other skins are, unless they are constantly used, or Wormwood leaves are put between them to preserve them. And if Sabel Skins are laid in the Sun to dry, they will consume more in one day, than if they were worn a whole year, when the Beast is alive, he always lyes in some shady Grove, and gets his living by lying in wait for small Birds. It is a most lascivious Creature, and very foul in his Natural Copulation, as I shall shew underneath, concerning the Pontick Mice or Ermins: yet both these kinds of Skins are of softer hair, and serve for vain Luxury; because they are soon eaten with Worms, and that pleasure that was bought at so dear a rate from

from others, doth decay continually. The Sabel is found in the utmost Woods of Moscow's, and is carried far by Sea and Land unto other Countries.

## CHAP. XVI.

Of the Ermins, which (according to Pliny) I take to be Pontick-Mice.

PLINY, l. 8, ch. 37, saith, that Pontick-Mice lye hid in Winters, and they are one lye white; how may this be understood, nor let every man judge of it, as he please: so he do no injury to Natural Philosophy. If they be shut up all the Winter, and in most bitter Cold, the Skin of this Creature would never appear whiter, which appears reddish in Summer; in the end of May he is not white, when he minds propagation, at what time green grass comes up, as I contes I have seen them by accident, as I rode along in Helsingia, a Northern Countrey, Anno Dom. 1518. In that in their coupling, by reason of their overclose sticking together, they would stick fast, when they ran along most swiftly, and they would crush their teeth together, leaving such a stink behind them, in great part of the wood, upon divers Trees (for there were many that coupled at once) that I never remember that I smelt a worse. The same Pliny l. 10, c. 65, affirms, that Mice are generated by licking; but this seems not in these Creatures to have any resemblance with Truth; for these couple as other Beasts do: yet I voluntarily conceal the manner of their copulation. But these small Beasts, for the most part, every three years for the Merchants exceeding great gain, grow to have their Skins very long, because they eat so much: which after the same manner happens out not only in Norway, but in the foresaid Helsingia, and Provinces that are near to it in the Dioceses of Upsal, namely that small Beasts with four feet, that they call Lemmas, or Lemmings, as big as a Rat, with a Skin diverse coloured, fall out of the Ayre in Tempests, and hidden shows; but no man knows from whence they come, whether from the remoter Islands, and are brought hither by the Wind, or else they breed of feculent matter in the Clouds: yet this is proved, that so soon as they fall down, there is found green grass in their bellies not yet digested. These, like Locusts, falling in great swarms, destroy all green things, and all dyes they bite on, by the venom of them. This Swarm lyes so long as they feed on no new grass: Allso they come together in Troops like Swallows that are ready to fly away; but at the set-time they either dye in heaps, with a Contagion of the Earth, (by the corruption of them, the Air grows pestilential), and the people are troubled with vertigo's of the Jaundice, or they are devoured by Beasts, called commonly Lekas, or Hermelins, and these Ermins grow fat thereby, and their Skins grow longer. And these Skins also are sold by Tens, especially forty in a bundle, as Sabel, or Martins, Fox, Beaver, Squirrel, or Hares Skins are, and are carried forth by Shipping into far distant Countries.

## CHAP. XVII.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the hunting of Ermins.

**B**UT how the *Ermins*, (to use the *Italian*, and *Gothick* word also) are taken by the Hunters, and for what use they serve, it is shew'd in brief: and chiefly by setting sticks a cross, and tying them with a string, and when three or four, or eight *Ermins* go in together, this being moved, presently shuts them in: and such Engines of Wood, by reason of the exceeding multitude of these Creatures, are set every where. Also there are long Pits or Ditches made, and there are thin boards placed over them, and so lay laid upon them: these Creatures falling in great numbers into these Trenches, are taken by him the ground belongs unto, or by his servant, and kind. There are also Dogs so swift and cunning, that they will catch and kill them, and bring them to their Master, laying heaps of them at his feet: so there are young men such cunning Archers, that they will never fail to hit them with an Arrow. The flesh of this Creature is nothing worth to eat, onely their Skins are good, which by reason of their pure white colour, are highly esteemed in the Courts of Kings and Queens. Though the Beast is felt is most luxurious, as I said before; yet in one thing it is to be admired, that about the end of *May* it propagates for certain days, and so is content with the Laws of Nature. Noble persons of both Sexes use these Skins that are all white, with black Tails set between, which are very rare, especially for the large borders of their garment kept from their Ancestors.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of the Nature of Badgers.

**B**ADGERS, because they dwell in holes and Caves under ground they frame their houses after a wonderful manner, so that they appoint one *Badger* to carry forth the earth they dig up with their feet: he lyeth on his back with his feet upright, and all the Earth dug forth, is layd upon his belly; others taking him by the feet carry him out, and they do this so oft, till the house be large enough for them to dwell in. But this house they have made with so much labour they can hardly keep afterwards. For the Fox he lyes in wait for them who never makes his house, but trutting to his shifts that are usual and bad enough, he enters the Cave of the Badgers, and so defiles it with his stinking dung; that they are forced to leave their safe Habitation, by reason of the stink. But that this crafty Fox may not scape unpunished, the Hunters with good Dogs catch him, and pull off his Skin.

## CHAP. XIX.

## More of the same.

**A** Badger therefore is a wild Creature, as great as a Fox, though he be lower of stature, because he hath crooked legs, and more white hairs than he hath black, especially on his back & sides. His hairs are stiff and his Skin is thick and strong; his Teeth are sharp, and he will bite fiercely: Wherefore when Dogs or other Beasts molest him, he lays himself on his back, and fights with his mouth and feet, especially against the Foxes; by whom they are not driven out of their Caves with any other Weapons, than by their stinking dung.

There

## CHAP. XX.

## Of the Fishing-Bears.

**T**HE Bears are huge, white, and strong, and they will break the Ice with their Paws: they make many Dens, and they are found in *Iceland*, often mentioned before: and through these Caves of Ice, they plunge themselves into the Sea; and catching Fish under the Ice, they draw them out, bring them on shore, and live upon them: and do this as oft as they have need, to feed themselves, and their Whelps; and by a natural instinct, they teach them also how to fish. These white Bears Skins are wont to be offered by the Hunters, for the high Altars, or Cathedrals of Parochial Churches, that the Priest celebrating Mass standing, may not take cold of his feet when the Weather is extreme cold. In the Church at *Nidrosun*, which is the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Norway*, every year such white Skins are found, that are faithfully offered by the Hunters Devotion, whensoever they take them, and Wolves-Skins to buy Wax-Lights, and to burn them in honour of the Saints.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the cunning in killing Bears.

**I**N killing black and cruel Bears in the Northern Kingdoms, they use this way, namely that when in Autumn the Bear feeds on certain red ripe Fruit, or Trees, that grow in Clusters like Grapes, either going up into the Trees, or standing on the ground, and pulling down the Trees, the cunning Hunter, with broad Arrows from a Cross-bow shoots at him, and these pierce deep; and he is suddenly so moved with this fright and wound received, that he presently voids backward all the Fruit he ate, as Hail-stones; and presently runs upon an Image of a man made of wood, that is set purposely before him & renJs and tears, that till another Arrow hit him, that gives him his deaths wound, shot by the Hunter that hides himself behind some Stone or Tree. For when he hath a wound, he runs furiously at the sight of his blood against all things in his way, and especially the Shee-Bear, when she sucketh her Whelps.

B b

CHAP. XXII.





For he still courted her, and satisfied his Hunger by lying with her; and to feed her the better, he would roe abroad, and let upon a Heard of Cattel that was not far from thence, and he used her to feed on raw flesh, who was wont to feed on more dainty meat. For the Captive Maid did to bridle his fierceness, that whom she feared as one that would devour her, he was onely in love with her, and she had meat from him, who feared that he would devour her. At last, the Bear was hunted with Dogs and Nets, and was killed with Javelins: That therefore Nahunter, that is a bountiful Artificer of a double matter, might colour the deformity of the Marriage, with the fitness of the Offspring, she was brought a bed of the Monster after an ordinary fashion; and he was like to a Wild-man, and had his Fathers name given him of necessity, who when he came to know the truth how he was begotten, revenged himself cruelly of those who slew his Father. His Son: *Trugillus*, *Sprachaleg*, nothing inferior to his Father for virtue, begat *Ulsa*: from whom descended King *Sveno*, and others of the Line of the Kings of *Denmark*; & they derive themselves from this Original, by a long order of succession, as *Saxo* testifies, But how such like Births should be judged of, *August, de Civ. Dei*, speaks much; and to which Sex there ought to be most ascribed.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Of the Swineheards that are taken away with their Pipes.*

IT is well enough known, that Bears, Dolphins, Stags, Sheep, Calves, and Lambs, are much delighted with Musick: and again they are to driven from their Heards by some harsh sounding Pipes of Horns, that when they hear the sound they will be gone into the Woods a great way off. Now the Shepheards of the Cattel know this well enough, they will play upon their two-horned Pipes continually, which sometimes are taken away by Bears, until such time as the Bear is forced by Hunger to go away to get his food. Wherefore they take a Goats Horn, and sometimes a Cows Horn, and make such a horrid noise, that they scare the Wild Beasts, and to return safe to their dispersed Flocks. This two-horned Pipe, which in their Tongue they call *Swee-pipe* they carry to the fields with them, for they have learned by use, that their Flocks and Heards will feed the better, and closer together.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of the dancing of the Bears in Lithuania.*

THE *Russians*, and *Lithuanians*, are more near to the *Suedes* and *Goths*, on the Eastern parts: and these hold it a singular delight, to have always the most cruel Beasts bred up tame with them, and made obedient to their commands in all things. Wherefore to do this the sooner, they keep them in Caves, or tyed with Chains, chiefly Bears newly taken in the Woods, and half starve them: and they appoint one or two Masters, clothed one like the other, to carry Victuals to them, that they may be accustomed to play with them, and handle them when they are loose. Also, they play on Pipes sweetly, and with this they are much taken: and thus they use them to sport and dance, and then when the Pipes sound differently, they are taught to lift up their legs, as by a more sharp sign, to end the Dance with, that they may go on their hinder feet, with a Cap in their fore-feet, held out to the Women and Maids, and others that saw them dance, and ask a reward for their dancing; and if they give not freely, they will murmur, as they are directed by their Master, and will nod their heads, as desiring more, as they are directed by their Master, that cannot speak the Language of other Countries, will get a good gain by his dumb Beast. Nor doth this

this seem to be done onely, because that they should live by this small gain: for the Bearheards that lead these Bears, are at least ten or twelve lusty men; and in their company, sometimes, there go Noble-mens Sons, that they may learn the fashions, manners, and distances of places, the Military Arts, and Concord of Princes, by these merry Pastimes. But since they were found in *Germany*, to spoil Travellers, and to call them to their Bears to eat, most strict Laws are made against them, that they may never come there again.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the Agility of Bears.*

THere is another Sport, when Bears taken are put into a ship, and shew merry pastimes going up and down the Ropes, and sometimes are profitable for some unexpected accident. For Histories of the Provincials, mention, that it hapned, that one was thus freed from a Pirate that was like to set upon him; for the Pirate coming on, was frighted at it, when he saw afar off, men as he supposed going up and down the Ropes, from the Top-Mast, as the manner is to defend the ship. Whereas they were but young Bears, playing on the Ropes. But the most pleasant sight of all is, that when the Bears look out of the ship into the Waters, a great multitude of Sea-Calves will come and gaze upon them, that you would think an innumerable Company of Hogs swam about the ship, and they are caught by the Sea-men with long Spears, with Hooks, and a Cord tyed to them; and so are also the other Beasts, that come to help the Sea-Calves taken, and crying like to Hogs. Also the Bears are let down to swim, that they may catch these wandring Sea-Calves, or else when it thunders, and the weather is tempestuous, they be taken above Water.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Of Bears turning Wheels.*

BUT that tame Bears may not onely be kept unprofitably to feed and make sport, they are set to the Wheels in the Courts of great men, that with one or two, or more company to help them, they may draw up Water out of deep Wells; and that in huge Vessels made for this purpose, and they do not help alone this way, but they are set to draw great Waggones, for they are very strong in their Legs, Claws, and Loins; nor is it unfit to make them go upright, and carry burdens of Wood, and such like, to the place appointed, or they stand at great mens doors, to keep out other hurtful Creatures. When they are young, they will play wonderfully with Boys, and do them no hurt.

## CHAP. XXX.

## CHAP. XXX.

## Of Foxes and their sleights.

There are in the Northern-Woods, Foxes, white, black, red, crossie bearers on the back, and others of a blew colour, spotted, but they all partake of the same malice and fraud; the black skins are dearest, because the Emperours of *Moscovie* use them often; next are the crossie-bearing skins, that is, such as are marked on the back with a black crossie by nature, because they are more adorn'd, and the skins are greatest: for the Foxes have not this crossie till they grow of a full age. And these skins as well as the black are sold by a great Commerce held between the *Muscovites*, *Russians*, and *Tartars*: yet the black skins are suspected that they are made black with the smoke of links. The white skins are lesse esteemed, and such as are blew or sky-colour, because of the abundance, and falling of the hair; for they last not long, that will not stick to their skins: yet such as are curious, or love their profit, will mingle divers skins together, and make them cloaths to keep off the cold when they sleep; because they will soon grow very hot and hold it, and are light and fit for old people. The red Fox skins are the most frequent of all, and are found everywhere, and they are easily taken by swift dogs and cunning Hunters, by the prints of their feet left in the Snow, as are Hares, Bears, Stags, Wolves, Lynxes, for their own feet betray them to the Hunters; but in Summer by the scent of the dogs.

## CHAP. XXXI.

## Of the crafty wit of Foxes.

When the Fox is pressed with hunger, cold and Snow, and he comes near mens houses, he will bark like a dog, that house-creatures may come nearer to him with more confidence. Also he will feign himself dead, and lie on her back, drawing in her breath, and lolling out her tongue. Then birds coming down unawares to feed on the carcase, are snapt up by him, with open mouth. Moreover, when he is hungry and finds nothing to eat, he rolls himself in red earth, that he may appear bloody: and casting himself on the earth, he holds his breath, and when the birds see that he breaths not, and that his tongue hangs forth of his mouth, they think he is dead; but so soon as they descend he draws them to him and devours them. Again, when he sees that he cannot conquer the Urchin for his prickles, he lays him on his back, and so rends the soft part of his body. Sometimes fearing the multitude of waips, he counterfeits and hides himself, his tail hanging out: and when he sees that they are all busie and entangled in his thick tail, he comes forth and rubs them against a stone or Tree, and kills them and eats them. The same trick almost he useth, when he lies in wait for crabs and small fish, running about the bank, and he lers down his tail into the water, they admire at it, and run to it, and are taken in his fur and pull'd out. Moreover, when he hath fleas, he makes a little bundle of soft hay wrap in hair, and holds it in his mouth, then he goes by degrees into the water, beginning with his tail, that the fleas fearing the water, will run up all his body till they come at his head: then he dips in his head that they may leap into the hay; when this is done, he leaves the hay in the water and swims forth. But when he is hungry, he will counterfeite to play with the Hare, which he presently catcheth and devoureth, unless the Hare escape by flight as he often doth. Sometimes also he escapes from the dogs by barking, feigning himself to be a dog, but more surely when he hangs by a bough, and

and makes the dogs hunt in vain to find his footing. He is also wont to deceive the Hunter and his dogs, when he runs amongst a herd of goats, and goes for one of them, leaping upon the Goats back, that he may sooner escape by the running of the Goat, by reason of the hirefull Rider on his back. The other Goats follow, which the Hunter fearing to molest, calls off his dogs that many be not killed: if he be taken in a string, he will sometime bite off his own foot, and so get away. But if there be no way open, he will feign himself dead, that being taken but of the Inare, he may run away. Moreover, when a dog runs after him, and overtakes him, and would bite him, he draws his bristly tail through the dogs mouth, and so he defudes the dog till he can get into the lurking places of the Woods. If a Wolf in the Rocks of *Norway* a Fox with a huge tail, who brought many crabs out of the water, and then he ate them. And that is no rare sight, when as no fish like crabs will stick to a bristly thing let down into the water, and to dry fish laid in the waters to dry. They that are troubled with the Gowr, are cured by laying the warm skin of this beast about the part, and binding it on. The fat also of the same creature, laid intreated upon the ears or limbs of a gowry person, heals him: his fat is good for all torments of the guts, and for all pains, his brain often given to a child will preserve it ever from the Falling-sicknesse. These and such like simple medicines the North Country people observe.

## CHAP. XXXII.

## Of the Fiercenesse of men who by Charms are turned into Wolves.

In the Feast of Christs Nativity, in the night, at a certain place, that they are resolved upon amongst themselves, there is gathered together such a huge multitude of Wolves changed from men that dwell in divers places, which afterwards the same night doth so rage with wonderfull fiercenesse, both against mankind and other creatures, that are not fierce by nature, that the Inhabitants of that Country suffer more hurt from them, than ever they do from true natural Wolves. For as it is proved, they set upon the houses of men that are in the Woods with wonderfull fiercenesse, and labour to break down the doors, whereby they may destroy both men and other creatures that remain there. They go into Beer-Cellars, and there they drink out some Tuns of Beer or Meade, and they heap all the empty vessels one upon another in the midst of the Cellar, and to leave them: wherein they differ from natural and true Wolves. But the place where by chance they stayd that night, the Inhabitants of those Countries think to be propheticall: Because if any ill success befall a Man in that place; as if his Carr overturn, and he be thrown down in the Snow, they are fully perswaded that man must die that year, as they have for many years proved it by experience. Between *Lithania*, *Samogetia*, and *Chrenia*, there is a certain wall left, of a Cattle that was thrown down; to this at a set time some thousands of them come together, that each of them may try his nimblenesse in leaping; he that cannot leap over this wall, as commonly the fat ones cannot, are beaten with whips by their Captains. And it is constantly affirmed, that amongst that multitude there are the great men & chiefest Nobility of the Land. The reason of this metamorphosis, that is exceeding contrary to nature, is given by one skilled in this witchcraft, by drinking to one in a cup of Ale, and by mumbling certain words at the same time, so that he who is to be admitted into that unlawful Society, do accept it. Then when he pleath he may change his humane form, into the form of a Wolf entirely going into some private Cellar, or secret Wood. Again, he can after some time put off the same shape he took upon him, and resume the form he had before at his pleasure.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Examples of those men that were turn'd into Wolves, and contrarily.*

**B**UT for to come to examples: When a certain Noble man took a long journey through the Woods, and had many idle Country-fellows in his company, that were acquainted with this Witchcraft, (as there are many such found in those parts) the day was almost spent: wherefore he must lie in the Woods, for there was no house near that place: and withall they were fore pinched with hunger and want. Last of all, one of the company propounded a reasonable proposall, that the rest must be quiet, and if they saw any thing they must make no tumult; that he saw afar off a flock of sheep feeding: he would take care that without much labour they should have one of them to roist for Supper. Presently he goes into a thick Wood that no man might see him, and there he changed his humane shape like to a Wolf. After this he fell upon the flock of sheep with all his might, and he took one of them that was running back to the Woods, and then he came to the Chariot in the form of a Wolf, and brought the sheep to them. His Companions being conscious how he stole it, receive it with grateful mind, and hide it close in the Chariot: but he that had changed himself into a Wolf went into the Wood again, and became a man. Also in Livonia not many years since it fell out, that there was a dispute between a Nobleman's Wife and his servant, (of which they have more plenty in that Country, than in any Christian Land) that men could not be turned into Wolves: whereupon he brake forth into this speech, that he would presently shew her an example of that business, so he might do it with her permission: he goes alone into the Cellar, and presently after he came forth in the form of a Wolf, the dogs ran after him through the fields to the wood: they bit out one of his eyes though he defended himself stoutly enough. The next day he came with one eye to his Lady. Lastly, it is yet fresh in memory, how the Duke of Prussia giving small credit to such a Witchcraft, compelled one who was cunning in this Sorcery, whom he held in chains, to change himself into a Wolf; and he did so. Yet that he might not go unpunished for this Idolatry, he afterwards caused him to be burnt. For such hainous offences are severely punished both by Divine and Humane Laws.

*The End of the Eighteenth Book.*

Olaus

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L:

OF  
Birds.

*The Epitome of the Nineteenth Book.*

CHAP. I.

*Of the Hawk; and the divers kinds thereof.*

**I**N the Northern parts the nature of this Bird is more generous and stronger, than it is thought to be in other parts of the World; especially because of the coldness of the Climate, and the abundance of birds to feed on, that agree with the nature of it for solid nutriment. For she feeds more eagerly on their blood, heart, and breasts, and grows very bold and greedy after the prey: and by her natural pride and Tyranny oft-times rather than for necessity she is provoked to fall upon the prey, and delights in it. Some there are that eat nothing but the heart which they pull forth at a hole they make in the side. Sometimes also they desire the brain not touching any other part of the Body. They that love Hawking, give their Hawks Crabs to eat, and they feed on them exceedingly, and will fly more greedily after Birds, that they may bring a reward for their dainty meat: and this they easily do, flying so swift above other Birds; and having sharp feathers which they moult every year, and they grow up new again. And the nature of him is this; That the Bird he catcheth last at night, he holds in his Talons under his breast to keep him warm, and in the morning he freely lets him go, and will not catch him again.

CHAP. II.

*More of the Nature of Hawks.*

**T**HE same Hawk will bring his prey to the Faulconer, and he hath the Heart and Entrails for his pains. And these are most delighted with the warmer places

places, and are sooner fatted with Oxe or Hogs-flesh; as they grow lean, by eating young Pullets, but temperate of body by feeding on old Hens. Before Hawking time, they are best kept in places not over dark, and to be brought forth every other day. But above all, heed must be had, that they kill not young Children. For no Creature, of all tame Creatures, so much preys upon Infants, as Apes and great Hawks, who fly to the Cradles, and fasten so strongly with their Talons, on the Eyes and Noies of them, that they will pull them out, and can scarcely fly away. These have great bodies, various shining Eyes, a pleasant countenance, grosse Feet, long Talons, they feed daintily, and seize upon all Birds, for they fear no Birds but the Peacock. Also they fly at Hares, Coneyes, Foxes, Hogs, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Woodcocks; especially when they are forced by Hunger and Cold, then they fly to mens houses; where, striking small Threds, with their Pinions, they are shut in and taken. Lastly, by long fasting, they are made tame as Falcons are. There is also another kind of Hawk in the Northern Countreys, that preys on tame Fowl, as Geese, Ducks, and Poultry; and in Winter, knowing its time, lies close in Nests, being bold in small matters, and fearful in great. A Musker, and a Cock will drive him away: and last of all, he dies for hunger. The greedy Musker that preys on its own kind, besides the nature of all other fierce Creatures, even as man doth, is found there in great plenty. He flies commonly alone, that he may have no partner in the prey. Sparrows, and other small Birds, to avoid his snare, fly presently to prickly bushes.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the Nature of Eagles, and their differences.*

**I** Take it for granted, that the noble and rapacious Bird the Eagle, called so from his sharp sight, is known to all men: yet because in the North, there is huge multitudes of them, by reason of the abundance of Wild-Beasts, I shall interpose something concerning their Nature, with premising a distinction. There are six kinds of Eagles: The first is *Herodius*, called also a *Gir-Falcon*, the most noble Bird of all, of a blew colour, tending to white, except the Breast and Wings, where it more evidently represents a celestial colour: she is so strong, that she will carry away an Eagle, and so full of animosity, that if she be let fly in the Ayr after four or five Cranes, she will never forsake the prey, till she strike them all down to the ground one after another, and a Dog bred for the sport, takes them away. Nor will this *Gir-Falcon* come down for indignation, till he takes away what is fallen. She never breeds more than one young one.

The second noble kind after this, is that, which when she hath young ones, flies at Geese, Swans, Coneyes, and Hares chiefly. This is lesse then the *Gir-Falcon*, of divers colours, her Feathers are white, and ash-colour, mingled, and she hath white Feathers in her short Tail.

The third, which sits on the bodies of Trees, whose tops are cut off, whence it hath its name; and it is of an ash-colour: she flies at Geese and Ducks, and is lesse in body and courage, than the former two.

The fourth, which carcheth Fishes, is of divers colours under the belly, white and black on the back, and upon the bunch it hath black spots: it hath one foot like a Duck, to swim with; another like the Hawk, to catch the prey: she sits on Trees over Rivers, lying in wait for Fish; and there are great multitudes of them in the Northern Waters.

The fifth kind is small, and various in colour, but notable cunning; for she will carry bones into the Ayr, and let them fall down upon a stone, that she may break them, and so come at the Marrow.

The

The sixth kind is white, and lives by flying at Hares, Coneyes, Hogs, Whelps, Foxes, and such like: yet the Eagle loves her Young, that she will put her self like a Buckler, between her young ones, and the Arrow shot.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the property of Eagles, and their sitting.*

**B**UT all the kinds of them have this property, that they wrap their eggs in Fox or Hare Skins to be hatched, which they find by chance, or else flea them themselves, and these they leave in their Nests to come to maturity by heat of the Sun. For they cannot always sit, and stay in their Nests, because their Talons would grow so crooked, that they would not be fit to catch their prey: yet they have a huge care to bring up their young ones, bringing to them Fish, Birds, and Hares, to feed on. Cunning Fawknars, who know this, climb up into their Nests, and bind the young ones Fundament with a string, that they may be hindered to eat. The careful old Eagles, that strive to free their Young from this misery, catch all kind of wild Creatures that are to be found in the Ayr, Earth, and Sea, and bring to their Nests, that by such diversity, they may find one or other that may cure them. They heap up great plenty of Food for this purpose, which the Fawknars take away, and either eat it, or sell it. Nor is it a small profit, when as sometimes they find Hares, Woodcocks, Geese, Ducks, Pikes, and great Fish, that are fould for many Franks; and these they eat, or else sell at good rates. It is supposed, that a Fawknar will gain more by two young Eagles, than a Husbands-man can get by two Farms: yet that these young ones may not dye for hunger, they untie the Arse-gut, and let them feed again, and then tye them up again, so long as Nature can suffer it. For the Eagle is so noble minded, that she will never leave her young Ones, till they know how to feed themselves. Nor will she bring them rotten meat, but fresh killed. The Eagle, by the nobleness of her nature, will suffer no bird to feed with her; and when she wants food, will cease upon them all: whence it is, that Eagles Feathers, joynd with other Feathers in Quivers, Arrows, and other things, will devour them, especially Geese-Feathers. Also when other birds see an Eagle, they are so frighted that day, that they will scarce fly abroad to stay their hunger.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Duck, and its kinds.*

**T**HE Duck is so called from its continual swimming, all men know her, both the wild and tame Duck; and as she is divided by any other way or kind: Here it is to be observed, that in the Northern Waters there are such plenty of them, that they seem almost to cover all the Waters. Fowlers seldom trouble them, because Ducks flesh is cold and gross nourishment; but rather, because they catch far more wholesome flesh in the Woods, than in the Waters. And though Ducks be of divers kinds, yet they all agree in the fashion of their broad bill, and their fashion of their skinny feet to swim with, only they differ in colour, according to the Climate. All the tame ones are almost white; but the wild ones remain no where, but in warm waters, whose Veins under the Earth do continually send up a hot sulphureous Vapour. But that these Waters may never freeze by the Ice, they swim by the instinct of Nature round and overthwart, and so keep the Waters open; and they quack so loud, that you shall hear them cry afar off.

Cc 2

But

But when the vehement Cold compels them, they rise high, and fly to the main Sea, being their only safeguard to maintain themselves.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the admirable Generation of the Ducks of Scotland.*

Moreover near *Glegorn*, as a later *Scottish* Writer testifies, two leagues off is the Rock *Bassenis*, wherein there is an impregnable Fort, about which there is a strange multitude of great Ducks, which they call *Sollenda*, which live on Fish: and these are not the same with wild or tame Ducks, in the *Species Specialissima*; but because they are like them in colour and form, they are also called Ducks: but for difference sake *Sollenda Ducks*: These Ducks come yearly by flocks in the Spring, from the South, to the Rock *Bassenis*, and they fly about this Rock two or three days: they that live in the Rock, make no noise all that time. Then they begin to build, and stay all the Summer, living on fish; and the Inhabitants of the Rock are fed with fish, which they catch. For they go up to their Nests (as I said before of the Eagles young ones) and take what fish they please. This Bird is wonderful in her industry to take fish. She sees with sharp Eyes the fish at the bottom of the Sea; and she casts her self head-long upon it, as the Hawk doth upon the Hern: and with her mouth and claws, she brings it forth; and if it be far from some other Rock, and she chance to espy some better fish, she will let the first fall, that she may catch the latter, and so the Inhabitants have fresh fish all the Summer. The young Ducks, or small Geese, they sell in the Land near adjoining. If a man eat of them twice or thrice, they will taste most sweetly: for these Birds are extream fat. They use art to draw out their fat, because it is good in many Medicaments, and they sell the lean parts. At the end of Autumn, they fly three days about the Rock, and then they fly by Troops to the South parts, to live all the winter; that they may return in Summer: because when it is Winter with us, it is Summer time to those that live in the South. These Birds live very long, which the Inhabitants have found out by some tokens. The profit of these Birds maintains 30 or 40 souldiers on the Rock, and some Tribute is paid to the Lord of the place. Moreover, another *Scottish* Historian, who diligently sets down the secret of things, saith that in the *Orcades*, Ducks breed of a certain Fruit falling into the Sea; and these shortly after get Wings, and fly to the tame or wild Ducks.

## CHAP. VII.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of Geese.*

There is a wonderful multitude of wilde and tame Geese in the Northern Countries; and chiefly at sitting-time, when the wilde Geese return from the Southern parts; that is, about the beginning of *April*. And these are black and ash-coloured, with red feet and bills; as all the tame ones, almost are white and large. The wild ones are of divers sorts in their magnitude, colour, flight, and production: some are greater than others, and ash-coloured: some are black and ash-coloured, and fly high: some are white, having very black Feathers at the ends of their Wings, and these fly highest: some breed from Trees, as I said of *Scotland* Ducks in the former Chapter. The Northern people use the fat of tame Geese to dress their meat with, instead of butter: also in Medicaments to smear on parts, against Convulsions, and sudden and secret pains. This Fat, with Butter mingled with it, stops blood; and with it, *St. Ambrose's* fire, Carbuncles, Ulcers of the Tongue and Lips, and Skin of the Face, and hard Hearing, are cured. The Northern people use Goose-grease for chaps of the Lips and Face, that arise from Cold; and that Fat joyned with Honey, and applied to the biting of a Mad-Dog, will soon cure it. The Northern Inhabitants eat Goose-flesh seasoned with Salt, and dried in the Wind, both boyled and raw, after the Summer Solstice, as they do of all other Creatures. But before the Winter Solstice, they collect the greatest sign from the Breast-bone of the Goose, how long the Winter shall last; and they do it thus: If the bone be clear from flesh, they judge of a cold Winter: If it be thick and dark, there will be much snow, and a mild Winter that follows. The Goose, when the Night is long, cries before day in cold Weather, more than ordinary, as being weary of it, because she is wasted with Cold and Hunger; so that her very bill and feet grow white: the only remedy she hath, is to sit upon straw: she will cry as much when any Enemies lay siege, or any fire happens in a place.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of Sea-Crows, or Cormorants.*

There is a kind of Water-Crows, or called Eel-Rooks. These Birds are extream black, except their breasts and bellies: for they are all ash-coloured, and they will eat exceedingly. They hunt for fishes, they fly slowly, and they stay long under Water when they dive, their bills are made tooth-ways, as Mowers sickles, and with those they hold fast slippery fish, chiefly Eels; which they so greedily hunt after and devour, that they will scour them out again through their guts alive, as through a Channel. These Birds are also most ingrateful; because with their dung, they spoil the Trees and Boughs where they live, that they will wither presently. So doth the Hern also, which builds upon high Trees, as well as they near Fish-Ponds, as almost all kind of Water-Fowl do. They lay Eggs in the Spring. There is also another kind of Crows, that at beginning of Winter makes her Nest in seven days, and in seven days hatcheth her young ones. The beginning of Winter is, when the fourth part of the Heaven makes Winter, namely when the Sun enters into the Tropick of *Capricorn* in Winter, till he come to *Aries*.

There



There is another Water-Fowl to be joyn'd with this Crow, (an ungrateful Bird) called *Morfe*, and is cole-black, and preys up on him, having a Bill like a Saw, and strong Talons: and she diving into the Water, catcheth great Fish, and feeds on them. They build by Troops, in Trees, near the Waters, feeding their young with Fish. She leaves her Nest, if she perceives her self over-charged, and vomits up her meat the last eat, or else she dies. When she is full, she stretcheth out her Wings, and dryeth them in the Sunne, and she flaps her Tail a long time in the Water, before she will rise up to fly: Wherefore she hath another name, which is *Humifculus*, or *Humidifculus*. Both Winter and Summer, this Bird is found on all the Northern Coasts.

### CHAP. IX.

*Of that Bird which is an Enemy to these Crows.*

There is a Bird called a *Shreveler* that is in the Northern Waters, that is a cruel Enemy to Birds, that dive in the Sea to catch Fish: Wherefore she lyes in wait for them thus: She flies upon them, and bites their heads, and rends them till she hath got the prey for her self; and they, thus tormented, soon let it go. She sometimes filling her self with Shell-fish, when she finds her stomach charged with the shells, she having half concocted them with the heat of her stomach, casts them up again, and so eats largely the Oyster and Fish that is within. Moreover, amongst broad prickly Sea-Fish, there is one called a *Ray*; that defends a man from Sea-Dogs, that take him, when he swims, to devour him; and he will never leave him, till he see him safe from danger. This Fish often sets upon the Corporant, when he dives under water, and eats him, that he may meet one in the Water who shall revenge his gluttony.

### CHAP. X.

*Of Falcons, and their distinction.*

THE Northern Mountains breed Falcons very fierce, but generous, and white ones; that are never shot at with Bows by the Inhabitants; but are held as sacred, unless they do too much hurt and rapine: but if they do mischief, how white and noble soever they be, they shall not escape their Arrows. They live in almost inaccessible Rocks, and feed on fish; which are so many, that innumerable men cannot diminish, unless ravenous Beasts should help them. So Nature sports in her wisely-tempering things with superfluity and defect. Hawks and Kites are there in abundance, also Crows; because Water-Fowls are slow, and fly heavily: and because they are over-sated with the fruitfulness of the ground.

### CHAP. XI.

### CHAP. XI.

*Of Swallows drawn forth of the waters.*

THOUGH many Writers of Natural Histories have written, that Swallows change their stations; that is, when cold Winter begins to come, they fly to hotter Climates; yet oft-times, in the Northern Countries, Swallows are drawn forth, by chance, by Fishermen, like a lump cleaving together, where they went amongst the Reeds, after the beginning of Autumn, and there fasten themselves bill to bill, wing to wing, feet to feet. For it is observed, that they, about that time, ending their most sweet notes, do so descend, and they fly out peaceably after the beginning of the Spring, and come to their old Nests, or else they build new ones by their natural care. Now that lump being drawn forth by ignorant young men (for the old Fishermen that are acquainted with it, put it in again) is carried and laid in the Sea-shore, and by the heat of the Sun, the Lump is dissolved, and the Swallows begin to fly, but they last but a short time; because they were not set at liberty, by being taken so soon, but they were made captive by it. It happeneth also in the Spring, when they return freely, and come to their old Nests, or make new ones, if a very cold Winter come upon them, and much snow fall, they will all dye; that all that Summer you shall see none of them upon the Houles, or Banks, or Rivers; but a very few that came later out of the Waters, or from other Parts, which by Nature come flying thither, to repair their Issue. Winter being fully ended in May; For Husband-men, from their Nests, built higher or lower, take their Prognostication, whether they shall flow in Valleys, or Mountains, or Hills, according as the Rain shall increase, or diminish. Also the Inhabitants hold it an ill sign, if the Swallows refuse to build upon their houses: for they fear those Houle-tops are ready to fall.

### CHAP. XII.

*Of Birds shut up under the Snow.*

There are in the Northern Countries Wood-Cocks, like to Pheasants for bigness, but their Tails are much shorter, and they are cole-black all over their bodies, with some white Feathers at the ends of their Tails and Wings. The Males have a red Comb standing upright; the Females have one that is low and large, and the colour is grey. These Birds are of an admirable Nature to endure huge Cold in the Woods, as the Ducks in the Waters. But when the Snow covers the Superficies of the Earth, like to Hills, all over, and for a long time presse down the boughs of the Trees with their weight, they eat certain Fruits of the Birch-Tree, called, in Italian, (*Gambio*) like to a long Pear, and they swallow them whole, and that in so great quantity, and so greedily, that their throat is stuffed, and seems greater than all their body. Then they part their Companies, and thrust themselves all over into the snow, especially in January, February, and March, when Snow and Whirlwinds, Storms, and grievous Tempests, descend from the Clouds. And when they are covered all over, that not one of them can be seen, lying all in heaps, for certain weeks they live, with meat collected in their throats, and cast forth, and resumed. The Hunters Dogs cannot find them; yet by the Cunning of the crafty Hunters, it oft falls out, that when the Dogs err in their scents, they, by signs, will catch a number of living Birds, and will draw them forth to their great profit. But they must do that quickly: because when they hear the Dogs bark, they presently rise like Bees, and take upon the Wing, and fly aloft. But if they perceive, that the Snow will be greater, they devour the foresaid Fruit again, and take a new dwelling, and there they stay till

till the end of *March*: or, if the snow melt sooner, when the Sun goes out of *Aries*: for then the snow melting, by an instinct of Nature (as many other Birds) they rise out of their holes to lay Eggs, and produce young ones; and this in Mountains where bryars are, and thick Trees. Males and Females sit on the Eggs by turns, and both of them keep the Young, and chiefly the Male, that the Eagle nor Fox may catch them.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of hunting them out of the Snow.

These Birds fly in great flocks together, and they remain in high Trees, chiefly Birch-Trees; and they come not down, but for propagation, because they have food enough on the top of their Trees. And when Hunters or Countrymen to whom those fields belong, see them fly all abroad, over the fields full of snow, they pitch up staves obliquely from the Earth above the snow, eight or ten foot high; and at the top of them, there hangs a snare, that moves with the least touch, and so they catch these Birds: because they, when they couple, leap strangely, as Partridges do, and so they fall into these snares, and hang there. And when one seems to be caught in the Gin, the others fly to free her, and are caught in the like snare. There is also another way to catch them, namely with arrows and stalking-horses, that they may not suspect it. At the time of propagation, they sing continually, one striving to exceed the other, especially the Males, that men may hear them far and near all the Woods over, and they oft betray themselves. There is also another kind of Birds called *Bonsa*, whose flesh is outwardly black, inwardly white; they are as delicate good meat as Partridge, yet as great as Pheasants. At the time of propagation, the Male runs with open mouth till he foam: then the Female runs, and receives this foam; and from thence she seems to conceive, and bring forth eggs, and to produce her Young. The flesh of the forelaid Birds; namely Wild-Cocks, are very delicate and sweet temperate meat, as Capons are; and therefore they are caught with Art; in Winter, with Snares; in Summer, with Arrows.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of Snow-Birds.

Also some Northern Birds are of a strange Nature; for they will so remain in Woods and Desarts, and breed there, that they will never, or very seldom, come near to mens habitations. In Summer they are as great, and of the colour of Stares; but in Winter, when the snow is multiplied, they are as white as Swans. Their feet are red, as of black Storks: but they have a comely yellow bill, very short and sharp. Their meat is, as of other Birds, the little Worms that lye hid under barks of Trees, that are chaps, or the dry Fruit of the Pine, Fir, or Hazel-Nut Tree; which in the most cold Winter, lose not their nutritional force. But they are hardly taken with Snares, Nets, Bows, or Slings, because of the deepness of the Snows, for they have a fairer colour than they have a taste. But when these Birds can find any secret holes in the Snow, they will creep in, and bask themselves in it, as a Cock doth in the Dust, or a Stare in the Sand. Then they fly to the tops of Trees full of Snow, as a place that is more natural and pleasant to them; and it is necessary for them so to do, that they may the better prevent the importunate Snares of the Hawks: for when they see the Hawks, they thrust themselves into the snow, as a Sparrow hides himself in a bush, against a Kite; and in Spring-time, when the snows are gone, they hide themselves amongst thick Trees: when they pisse from white to an ash-colour,

as they naturally vary, they live pleasantly, having no Bird almost to prey upon them, but the small Hawk, which is their greatest Enemy.

## CHAP. XV.

## Of the weighty Snows, and Winter-Gnats.

And this great weight of Snow lasts constantly, until the Sun mounts, and the South-wind blowing consumes it. Then after so long and great Contest of Nature the Sap ascending, makes the Trees straight again that were bowed down with snow, and sets them at liberty; and they rise the higher, as the Earth is made fruitful, when the Snow is melted, that makes it so: and this is great profit to the Husbandmen. For the melting of the Snows makes the fields the more fat, and they sooner yield grass, than any other grounds prepared by any art of man: also the Pasture-grounds grow so plentiful with all manner of Herbs, that we are forced to drive away the Cattle, lest they hurt themselves, or be hurt by it; and also we use to mow the Meadows, and cut away the grass. There is also another strange thing in Nature toward the North, as in many places where there are hot hollow passages, Gnats breed; and when the South-Wind blows, they rise a little from the ground, and they fly in huge heaps over the Snow; and as they trouble no man, so are they all killed with one Northern blast, as Creatures that live but one day. But when the South-wind blows again, it raises new ones out of the same holes, or the like, that for the most part of the Winter, you shall see Gnats singing in the Air. And though the Trees flag with the thick Snow, and the tender Boughs bend like Bows by the huge weight, and many Trees lye all along on the ground: yet under them, as under shadowy places, where the cold wind cannot come, many Beasts dwell in great security. Also I shall tell you, that Travellers passe under these crooked Trees, as under Arches; yet sometimes they have some light knocks by the fall of the Snow.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Eggs of divers Birds in Islands.

Because it is not safe for Water-Fowl to lay their Eggs on firm Land, or to produce their young ones far from the Waters, for fear of hurtful Beasts, as Foxes and Weasels: therefore by the Instinct of Nature, many thousands of them, of divers kinds, live in Islands, (as there are infinite of them in the North) and upon naked tops of Rocks: and some of them make their Nests upon the bare silt, some upon dry straw, or grass, and lay innumerable Eggs there: and all that fall thither take them freely, that they will gather great Vessels full of them, and bring them to Market to sell, or they will take off their shells, and with Salt, they will keep them for to eat at home for a long time, as they are very good meat; though the Fowls be wild. Yet the Duck brings forth her young ones on Land, near the Waters of Islands. Amongst whole Birds, there is the Fen-Duck, or More-Hen, of a black colour, of the kind of Dy-pappers, and is less than a Duck: she dwells in the Sea, and about Lakes, wandering not, but remaining where she was bred. She lives on the Carcasses of Fish, that devouring Birds let fall: and besides, she hunts craftily for others amongst the Rocks; and she again freely parts with what she catcheth, to other Birds: She rejoiceth in Tempests, for then she dives and plays in the Waters. When she cries in the morning, she foretells a Tempest.

## CHAP. XVI.

*More of the Eggs of certain Birds.*

ON the shores of *Norway* also, there are multitudes of Islands, till you come under the Pole: in which as there are many Birds found, that are to be found no where else; so they produce abundance of Eggs, that any man may take: yet there is one more strange than the rest; that a Hen is bred of a Ducks Egg, and she produceth her own young ones, and sits upon her own Eggs: the other is, that dives to find its meat, and doth not know the Dam, when she calls.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of Peacocks.*

IN *Ostrogothia*, and *Vestrogothia*, and *Sweden*, many Peacocks breed, and they are bred up very carefully: to that at first they are fed with pellets, made of Barley meal: After that with New-Milk-Cheese pressed from the milk (for the Whey hurts them;) then when 5 days are past they are fed with whole Barley; and next in the open fields, where, by instinct of Nature, they can feed themselves more freely, especially where Foxes cannot come at them. The reason why they are fostered more than other Birds is, the profit they make, and their fine Feathers, which Painters and Weavers imitate in the North, to make distinction of colours, because the Pictures of great Artists are seldom brought hither from far Countries, because the way is so long.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of Birds, whose name is not known in the white Lake.*

THE white Lake is between the *Serifinni*, *Biarmians*, and *Muscovites*, toward the North-Pole; and these are the Bounds of it: It is long and broad, and so full of Fish, that all Fisher-men may freely fish there, and never do any hurt, especially in Summer: Wherefore many Nations come thither to make their Household provision for the whole year. In that Lake, and near to it, dwell infinite sorts of Birds, that make a continual noise for almost six months, night and day, in a most clear Light, that men are almost tired with them. Some of them have no known names, but very soft feathers, that the Inhabitants that catch them, gain huge profit by them. For in these cold Countries, we have need of very soft beds of feathers to drive away the cold, especially for strangers that are not used to hard Lodgings, and such sharp Weather. You shall see here diversity of mens fashions. In ships of the *Muscovites*, *Finnlanders*, and *Sorick Finnlanders*, they are called *Sirduzar* and *Haapar*, and so long as peace is in these Countries, they all fish peaceably, that there is nothing taken from any man, (which is very strange) for his gain he makes by taking of Fish: unless he deal from others, or exchange, which is seldom done, because there is continual day. The *Muscovites* are very crafty, like the *Greeks*, and falsify their words. There are also Birds called *Bitours*, that have a sack under their throats, that an unskilful Bird may be known: whereof I take something in its proper place, as of the Crow and others. Also in this Lake are found innumerable Swans, Geese, and Ducks.

## CHAP. XX.

## CHAP. XX.

*Of Birds called Alle, Alle.*

THERE is also in this Lake a kind of Bird very frequent; and in other Coasts of the *Bothnick* and *Swedish* Sea, that cries incessantly all the Summer, *Alle Alle*, therefore they are called all over by the Inhabitants, *Alle Alle*. For in that Lake such a multitude of great birds is found (as I said before) by reason of the fresh Waters that spring from hot Springs, that they can cover all the shores and Rivers, especially Sea-Crows, or Cormorants, Coots, More-Hens, two sorts of Ducks, Swans, and infinite smaller Water-Birds. These Crows, and other devouring Birds, the Hunters can easily take, because they fly slowly, and not above two or four Cubits above the Water: thus they do it on the narrow Rocks, as in the Gates of Islands, on the Banks of them, they hang black Nets, or dyed of a Warty colour upon Spears: and these, with Pulleys, will quickly slip up and down, that in great Shoes they catch the Birds that fly thither, by letting the Nets fall upon them: and this is necessary because those Birds fly so slowly, and right forward: so that few escape. Also, sometimes Ducks, and other Birds are taken in these Nets. Wherefore these black or slow Birds, whether they swim or fly, are always crying *Alle Alle*, which in Latine signifies *All, All*, and they do so when they are caught in the Nets: and this voice the cunning Fowler interprets thus, that he hath not as yet all of them in his Nets; nor ever shall have, though he had fix hundred Nets. These Birds are also in great numbers on the Rocks of *Swedeland* and upper *Gothland* though not so many, as in the foresaid Lake, and the Rivers near to that. Also Water-Fowl are taken in Vessels, made of Trees, that grow by the shore, and the boughs are made like to nests: and into these Ducks chiefly creep, to lay their Eggs, and to hatch their young ones, because of the Foxes that trouble them on the Land; and small ones, especially, are taken with Bird-lime.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Whonps, or Lapwings.*

LAPWINGS, when at a set-time they come to the Northern Countries from other parts, they fore-shew the nearness of the Spring coming on. It is a Bird that is full of crying and lamenting, to preserve her Eggs, or young. By importunate crying, she shews that Foxes lie hid in the grass; and so she cries out in all places, to drive away Dogs, and other Beasts. They fight with Swallows, Pies, and Jackdaws. On Hillocks in Lakes, she lays her Eggs, and hatcheth her young ones. Made tame, she will cleanse a house of Flies, and catch Mice. She fore-shews Rain when she cries: which also Field-Scorpions do, called Mares, Cuckows; who by flying overthwart, and crying loudly, fore-shew Rain at hand: also the greater Scorpions, with huge long inous, fore-signify Rain: so do Wood-peckers. There is also a Bird called Rayn, as big as a Partridge, that hath Feathers of divers colours of a yellow, white, and black colour: This is supposed to live upon nothing but Ay, though she be fat, nothing is found in her belly. The Fowlers hunt her with long poles, which they cast high into the Ay, to fright her, that so they may catch the Bird flying down.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of the Cuckow, and divers sorts of Wood-Peckers.*

There is also in the Northern Woods a Bird that brings good luck, which all men know, called a Cuckow, who about the beginning of *May*, falls to crying aloud, and so continues till the end almost of *July*: But this is done in vast Woods, by reason of all the other Birds that hate her naturally, and hinder her, because she (called, in *Greek*, *Coccyx*) lays snares for others. For she makes no nest of her own, but lays her eggs in the Turtle, Lark, or Wood-Sparrows Nests, to be fate upon, and hatcheth her young ones by anothers labour: when they come forth of the shell, they are so comely, that the Nurle is provoked to feed them; and she is so delighted with this fat bird, that she suffers her own Young to starve, that she may foster this; and when this Baltard-brood is able to fly, it kills the Nurle; and at last, the Cuckow is killed by the Hawk that is of the same kind. Moreover, there are many kinds of Wood-Peckers in the North, as great as Jackdaws, that in the most sharp Winter, seek their food in the barks of Trees: some are cole-black, with a red Crest; some grey, some green; others of divers colours; and these, by crying, fore-shew the sharper Winter coming.

*The End of the Nineteenth Book.*

Olaus

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSALA:

OF

FISH.

*The Epitome of the Twentieth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the three-fold Bothnia in the North,  
and the abundance of Fishing  
there.*

**B**othnia, that terminates the *Gothick* or *Swedish* Coast toward the North, is a very large Countrey, divided into three great Provinces, West, North, and East. They that live in the North Province, live most by Fishing: because they have such abundance of excellent Fish, that is sufficient abundantly to barter for all necessary Commodities. They are very rich in all things: for they get from *Spain* and *Portugal* the best Wine, and Salt; from *England*, and *Flanders*, precious Cloth; from *Germany* much Household-stuff of divers sorts; besides their Ornaments they have at home: from *Swedland* and *Gothland*, Wheat, Rye, Barley, and all kinds of Pulse necessary, brought to them in ships. Every Shore, Island, Creek, River, Stream, there, yields an overflowing plenty of Fish all the year, especially in Summer, when all things there are most pleasant. There are many Islands near the Sea-shores, and they are very delightful, by reason of their grass. In the Trees, Birds of divers kinds sing harmoniously: there is great variety of Fish, that sport themselves above Water: there is great profit for Fishers every where: there is no hurtful beast in the Sea there, nor any pernicious formidable creeping Creature near the Land: All the Summer there is no darkness, no great heat of the Sun; the Air is wholesome and temperate; all things are there pleasant, quiet, and peaceable. But which is most wonderfull, in so great pleasantness of divers places and times, and liberty, yet is no lascivious act committed amongst them: they live, both Sexes, chastly and modestly; they neither commit Incest, Fornication, nor Adultery; nor so much as name them. For the pure Law of God is so much observed

ved by thoe simple people, that many most learned in the Divine Law, may seem to yield to them for Chastity. There runs out of the Mountains of this Northern *Bothnia*, (that is of the bottom of the Sea) a huge deep River; which runs into the Sea at two mouths, with a short space between them; whereon is built the Town called *Thorna*, that is the Towing Island, the Elevation whereof for Latitude is 82 degrees, the Longitude 42. This Town is situate in a most pleasant and commodious place: and there is no more frequent Mart in all the Countrey near the Pole than is this *Thorna*. For the white *Russes* come to it; so do the *Laplenders*, *Biarminians*, *Bothnians*, *Finlanders*, *Suedes*, the *Tavasti*, *Helsingers*; and many more, from the parts of *Norway*, over the most high Mountains, and vast Desarts, and the Countrey of *Jemphnia*: and all these use partly long ships, fitted for the swift courses of Rivers, or else Chariots drawn by Ranged Deer, and partly crooked poles, wherewith they can soon pass over the Cliffs of Mountains covered with snow, and slide down suddenly, as I explained it at the beginning of this Book.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the Multitude of Fish at this Mart.

Fishes of divers sorts that are caught in sundry places, are brought together to this Mart, and are sold to Merchants of forraign Provinces by exchange, and that in bundles bound together, that weigh five hundred heavy pounds; which weight is most usual there. Moreover in great Vessels there are Salt-fish or dried Fish, what way soever, to make them taste the better. The *Holmenfies*, *Aboenfies*, *Rangmenfies*, *Eregrundenfies*, sayl most frequently every year to this Island, to win great gain; and they make their profit, not by taking money, (for that people regards not money) but by bartering for necessary Commodities, as I shewed in my fourth book. And this is done, because they are a simple and credulous people; and oft-times cheating Merchants will bring false money to this Mart, especially the cunning-witted *Moscovites*, that comes there in great numbers about the Summer Solstice (as I saw it in the year 1519.) and they will sometimes carry their ships on their shoulders, over the spaces, between the Waters. But when they are caught in their Roguery, they presently take revenge of them.

## CHAP. III.

## Of fishing for Salmon.

There is scarce any place in all Europe, where there is more plentiful fishing for Salmon, than in the *Bothnick Sea*; toward the *Laplenders*; from whole Mountains and Lands, there run forth huge fresh Water-Rivers: against which it is a most gallant fight to see the Salmon swim in the heat of the day, like soldiers in bright Armour; and in such plenty, that the upper Waters of the Mountains are unfish'd. He is called a Salmon from his leaping; for he takes his tail in his mouth, and holds it fast, and bends it double, till he can leap over a place that is broken off: and he swims to this against the stream, and he will never leave off leaping, till he cast himself into fresh Waters, which he eagerly hunts for; and afterwards leaping down again, he returns to his old habitation amongst the hollow Rocks; For he delights, by turns, to live in salt and fresh Waters. This Fish will grow to be six or seven foot long, very strong and heavy: his flesh is red; which though it be sweet and pleasant, yet they soon fill thoe that eat salt: and it is true, if one eat it greedily, when it is fresh: But when it is salted, it is held to be more pleasant, that they are bought at great rates and abundance, and

and carried into *Upper-Germany*, first in ships, then by Cart. Nor is there found any want of this Fish, catch as many as they will, in the place where they breed. For I saw about the Summer Solstice, on the utmost shores of *Bothnia*, about *Thorna*, such a great multitude of them taken, and drawn forth in such abundance, that they brake the strongest Nets. For this Fish, when he finds himself entangled, strives with all his force to free himself, putting his Tail in his mouth, to leap forth in a hoop: and though he be slow and sluggish, he will suddenly shew that, by reason of his Fat. His heart taken out, moves longer than the heart of any other Creature: Salmon are procured at a great rate in the *Rhine*, and *Wesil*, and *Danow*, or *Deuma*, near the Kings Court in *Livonia*; and they are dryed in the smoak with Oken Wood, to make them taste the better, as they generally do by all the Northern Waters. Many of them are taken in the Countreys of the *Ostrogoths* and *Vestrogoths*: For there are Rivers in many places 20 or 30 foot deep; especially amongst the *Vestrogoths*, in the Province called *Wermelandia*, which was formerly a Kingdome: where there is a Lake of fresh Water, which is one hundred miles long, and forty miles broad, called *Vener*; into which there run 24 great Rivers from the Mountains of *Norway*, and they have but only one outlet toward the South, which is called *Trolhetta*, that is, the Devils Hood: In thoe fresh Rivers, Salmon are taken in great abundance: and they lay huge eggs in their kind, bigger than Chiches or Peas, and being all spotted on the outside very handsomely with black spots. Also great is the profit of thoe Fish where ever they be taken, and where men have Art to take them, it increaseth daily.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of Fishing for Sea-Calves.

BECAUSE in the *Bothnick* and *Finland* Sea, there is a vast company of Sea-Calves: therefore I will set down briefly the nature of them, and the way to catch them, which I have seen. The Sea-Calf, which also in Latine is called *Helous*, hath its name from the likeness of a Land-Calf, and it hath a hard fleshy body; and therefore is hard to be killed, but by breaking the Temples of the head. It hath a voice like a Bull, four feet, but not his ears; because the manner and mansion of its life is in the Waters. Had it such ears, they would take in much Water, and hinder the swimming of it. It produceth a perfect Creature, and brings forth at all times, as Women do, but chiefly with the first Goats. The Sea-Calf is hairy, and sticks backward in copulation as a Dog doth, whether he will, or no. She bringeth forth her Young on the Land, as Cattel do, but never more than two at once, though the Author of the Nature of things say three: She doth not bring her Young from the Land into the Sea before it be 12 days old, and by degrees teach it to it. They will swim in their sleep, thence are they called Calves. They will learn, and with their voice and countenance salute the company, with a confused murmuring: called by their names, they will answer: no Creature sleeps more profoundly: The Fins that serve them for to swim in the Sea, serve for legs on Land, and they go hobbling up and down as lame people do. Their Skins, though taken from their bodies, have always a sense of the Seas, and when the Sea go forth, they will stand up like bristles. The right Fin hath a soporiferous quality, to make one sleep, if it be put under ones head. They that fear Thunder, think thoe Tabernacles best to live in, that are made of Sea-Calves Skins, because onely this Creature in the Sea, as an Eagle in the Ayre, is safe and secure from the stroke of Thunder. This Animal sucketh her Whelps at her dugs.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the way to fish for them, and their Physical use.*

THE Fisher lyes crooked upon the Ice with a counterfeit black Skin, and with a long Spear, and a crooked Iron at the end, and he lows, and calls the Sea-Calf; who comes presently thinking to find a new Female, his own being slain: for he is of all beasts the most cruel murderer of his own Female, that he will take one Female after another, until he be killed by one of them in their own defence. But here he finds not a Consort, but a Dart; not Luxury, but a snare to destroy him: For the Dart shot through the Spears, sticks in his body, till the beast being weakened by the wound, is drawn forth by the Rope. He is also taken napping, with a Spear, because he sleeps most profoundly, as some other fishes do, of whom I shall speak underneath concerning the *Rosmarus*.

As a man and a horse, so doth the Sea-Calf grow grey: and the Young ones always reverence the Elder. For where 30 or 40 lye in the Rocks asleep, as flocks of sheep, it hath been faithfully observed, that the young ones and the old ones sleep alunder: and when one of the elder goes down into the Waters, not one of them will stay behind on the Mountain, Rock, nor Plain, or any part of the Ice, unless it be to bring forth. If the Sea be boisterous and rife, so doth the Sea-Calfs hair: if the Sea be calm, the hair is smooth; and thus may you know the state of the Sea in a dead Skin. The *Bothnick* Mariners conjecture by their own cloaths, that are made of these Skins, whether the Sea shall be calm, and their Voyage prosperous, or they shall be in danger of shipwreck.

## CHAP. VI.

*More of the virtue of this Creature.*

THESE Creatures are so bold, that when they hear it thunder, and they see it clash and lighten, they are glad, and ascend upon the plain Mountains, as Frogs rejoice against Rain. When they of *Bohemia*, or *Northern* Sea, are to sail forth toward *Germany* in bitter Winter, they smear the planks of their ships with the fat of this Creature, that they may not freeze and drown the ship. Also this fat is commonly called *Seeltram*, it is good to smear divers sorts of Skins, and Hides, which they call soft Leather: of which they make soft stockens, as one may see in *Prussia* how this soft Leather is prepared by Water-Wheels, and to vent it, it is carried into *Flanders*, *Italy*, *France* and *Germany*. Also Ox-Hides, unless they be smeared with this Fat, or Whales Fat, are nothing worth to make boots for Travellers in Rain; because it drives away all moisture and preserves them very long; nor will Mice eat boots or shoes smeared with this Fat or Horse-head stalls tied to the Mangers, as they will those that are smeared with Ox, or Sheep's Suer. Also this natural good is in this Leather, that it will never be Thunder-stricken, where ever it be ryed.

## CHAP. VII.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the perplexity of those that eat the flesh of Sea-Calves in the Lent.*

SINCE this Creature hath flesh and lard like to Hogs about the House, many trouble themselves with a great scruple, whether a man may securely feed on the inward flesh of these Creatures in Lent; because they are fat as Bacon outwardly, and when that is taken away, the flesh is next to it. Wherefore this cause is wont to be remitted to the Ecclesiastical men to decide; and whilest, on both sides, many Arguments from Natural Reason use to be given, to prove this or that, and it cannot be defined and agreed upon; the men of a more clear judgment, rejecting many Reasons, brought on both sides, do say and prove, that the demonstration must be fetcht from the Sea-Calf it self, namely thus; that when the Sea-Calf brings forth on the shore, if the Beast driven by the Hunter run into the Woods, men must forbear to eat of it in Lent, when flesh is forbidden: but if he run to the Waters, one may safely eat thereof. And so it is, that infinite multitudes of people use this Fat instead of Oyl. And therefore their flesh is powdered up in abundance, as Pork is, and Filiches of Bacon; but the more solid Fat of this Creature is carried to Upper *Germany*.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of Jacks, or Pikes.*

THERE are Lakes of fresh Waters in the Mountainous parts of *Lapland*, that are four hundred *Italian* miles in length, and one hundred in breadth, and more, wherein there is such a multitude of Water-Wolves, or Pikes, (and other Fish besides) that they not onely suffice to feed men in four most ample Kingdoms of the North, but much farther, being dried with Salt in the Sun, and carryed in ships, as great heaps of Wood, into large *Germany*, to be sold there. In like manner must we think of the Lakes of *Finland*. The Pike is a River-Fish, with a large mouth, and very sharp teeth, and devours smaller fish; yet the Perch, with her Scales, and most prickly Fins, stands against him, that he cannot devour her. Yet he will cunningly come upon her overthwart, and bite her in small pieces, and swallow her down; so that no fish, be he never so well armed, can be safe from his devouring cruelty. The Pike or Jack feeds on venomous Beasts, as Toads, Frogs, and such like: yet when men are sick, Physicians counsel them to eat the Pike, as being wholesome meat. Caught in a Net, he will easily escape, if the Fisher-men draw the Net softly: but if you draw the Net very fast, he cannot avoid you. This is called the Water-Wolf, and if he have River-Water and meat enough to keep him, in time he will grow eight foot long: and will devour a fish almost as big as himself. For when he conquers his prey, he first eats the head: when that is done, he eats the rest by degrees, till he eats up all. Also he will not spare his own kind, either by reason of his natural cruelty, or because he is greedy and rapacious. Moreover, he pursues his own feed, so soon as they have the form of fishes, nor will he abstain from such as have sharp prickles: for his throat and stomach so joynt together, that sometimes he casts it forth, being greedy to swallow a fish.



## CHAP. IX.

## Of catching the Pike.

**T**HE Female of this Fish, when she scatters her Eggs, she goes farre from the place where she is wont to stay, and there she lays her Eggs, that her Young may not hinder her in taking the prey : and the doth this, either by natural cruelty, or envious Rapine. He is taken many ways, either by a broad Hook, or Alchymy, or shining Brais, made for the purpose ; and there is a fish hanged at it, that is white. Also with an Iron-toothed Fork, when they make a fire in the pitchy dark night ; for while he gazeth greedily on the fire, he is stricken with the Iron Fork. Moreover, when the plays under the Ice in the end of March : for then she lays her Eggs, and makes such a noise in the Water, by strong motion of her head, that she discovers herself to the Fisher how to take her. Also she is taken in Weels made of thin boards, and placed in Reeds : and when she gets in, she falls upon all fishes there to devour them. Fine-mouth'd Gluttons, that keep their fish in Fish-ponds, to entertain strangers, chiefly in Germany, spend more on this in one moneth, than they do on horses for the War. For sixty great Pikes in one moneth, will consume more fish, which they call Carps, fetched from other places, longer than a mans foot, put into the Fish-ponds, than ten horses would do at grass. Some also have not onely for their pleasure, but for their Household maintenance, Fish-ponds made hard by the Banks of Waters, where fish play in Sholes under a free captivity, delighting the eyes of the beholders, and procuring an appetite to the Guests. They run greedily at mens hands, and they covet meat before they are to be eaten themselves. Man feeds his own delights, and when he hath somewhat in his power that he may take, it often falls out, that when he is full, he is taken himself, and leaves all behind. Pikes pickled, will keep a long time in Camps for food. But dried with the Sun, Wind and Salt they are far more commodious : for when they are raw, bruised with a Club or Mallet, they will be very good meat. But seasoned with Salt, they still hold their Native clammy substance. The Teeth of Pikes burn'd a little, and powdered, strewed on the ruptures of horses, under the Harnesse, and a Skin laid upon the place, is a certain Remedy.

## CHAP. X.

## Of fishing by Flames.

**B**ECAUSE I mentioned before the Iron-toothed Fork, wherewith River-Pikes are easily caught ; therefore I shall here shew the chief property of it, because wise Fishermen commonly use that instead of many hooks, to catch Pikes and Eels with, and they make great profit by the use of such easie Instruments : yet they use them the same way that they do in Boats made of one entire piece of Wood, or two pieces joyned together ; on the fore-part they set Torches of Pitch, because it is dark, and make a great flame, and the Pikes and Eels are seen to come gazing at the light, and then they strike them with this armed Iron, and draw them to them for their use. Sometimes also they lay heaps of great Wood upon pieces of Ice swimming up and down, and make a fire with them ; and with the like Iron, as if they stood in a ship, they catch fishes, who are so astonished, that they think of no danger near. Also they are taken with boughs set upright in the ship, and the Fishes come under their shadow to rest,

Also, oft-times it falls out, that when it thunders fiercely, the Eels, as if they were not safe in the Water, desirous to go out of the Waters, are taken either with Nets or Hooks, or Hoys, and Wooden-square Buildings, bored through with many holes, and so they are caught in great numbers. And the Inhabitants get more profit when Thunder troubles the Waters, and rowzeth up the Eels from their Dens, than else will hardly come forth. Likewise, hanging a huge Stone at it, they keep a Wedge-fashion'd Vessel of Wood, bored full of holes, and filled with Pease-braw, and let it down to the bottom of the Water for fish to creep into. Nor is this in vain ; for with Ropes bound to them, they are drawn forth, fill'd up to the very top. This is a new-found way, and wonderful profitable. In Winter they lye hid in the deep Mud, where the Lakes freeze not : but if they be all frozen over, they all dye, having no breathing from the Ayre, as I have seen it, and as I shall say underneath concerning fishing. Also, Eels use to live long, sometimes for six days in the fields sowed with Peason, especially when the North Wind blows ; but they are so smeered with Gravel or Ashes, that they cannot get forth again. They much delight to be under Corn-Mills, by reason of the sweet Meal that descends by little and little. There is found a huge multitude of Eels in the Northern parts, salted or dried with smoak ; and these they eat raw.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of Fishing in Summer, and Hawking.

**P**ROVIDENT Fisher-men observe two things chiefly, that in the morning before the Sun rise, and when the sight of Fishes is most deceived, and they come in Sholes to feed, they may fish silently. To do this, they choose dry Birch-Wood Sponges, as that Countrey brings forth very great ones ; and these they cast upon the Foorde, that the Birds that wander may be the more secure. The Fowler puts a great Sponge upon his head, to cover it like a Helmet, and goes into the Lake up to the chin, that he may ensnare them, he goes forward toward the birds that swim, they seeing this Spongy Wood upon the Fowlers head, thinking that it is one of the other Sponges that twims, come near, and are caught by the Fowlers hand ; and so one after another, many come, and are caught and killed. For the Fowler puts out his hand privately, and catcheth the silly bird by the legs, and draws him down, and puts him in his bag prepared for it. The other birds supposing that their fellow dived under water or himself, to seek for food, as they do, thinking nothing, they all go the same way, and fall into the Fowlers hand. And as he fisheth with the other hand with a large Net, it is not lost labour ; for the Water troubled with his feet, blinds the fish that otherwise have but weak eyes, and makes them not to beware, but that they run of themselves into the Nets. Moreover, he fishes to the purpose with a Hook that hangs behind his back, over his arm, with a Line. For so many fish are to be found every where, that with all fishing Instruments, upon every joyn, almost, they are easily caught, especially in Creeks of the Sea, and Rivers, where fish come in great multitudes, that they may be the more quiet, and secure from Tempests. But they are safe no where, if mans Wit can catch them.

## CHAP. XII.

*More of ingenious Fishing.*

There is also another way of Fishing found out, with Snarers: by making a noise, since it is apparent, that most Fish can hear, and are taken with sweet Musick. The Nets are pitched long-ways in the Water, or else overhauled; and before the Nets, upon the Water, an Instrument like a Bowe, that is may float above the Waters; at the upper end of this Bowe, is hang'd a single Ringing-Bell, and the Fishes come in shoales to the noise of it, wending at the fame, and so they are caught with apparent snarers: I shall relate one accident which I saw; a Lutenist playing on his Lute, and fing'ing to it, called many Dolphins together; and after that for an hour's space they had heard this found on the very calm Sea (for not one blast of Wind stir'd) they puff'd, and with their Tails troubled the Waters, as it were in token of thankfulness when they departed: and presently there followed such hideous Tempests, that we could scarce save our lives from great danger. Some Fisher-men also eye living small Fish to their Lines, and draw their Lines long-ways, and broad-ways, that they may circumvent the great ones that seek after their prey, with their Nets. Others make Ditches near the Sea-shores, that the Water may come in, and they cover them with boards, that the fish may lye and rest there; and then they catch them in snarers: and this falls out more frequently in Autumn, than in Summer, by reason of the more cruel Tempests. Others set long Wedg-fashion'd Hedges made with Bones and wood like a Pyramid, as far as to the middle of the River: yet not to stop from their Neighbours the publick way for the fish to pass; that runs in the middle of the River, and is called by the people there, *The Kings Vein*; and so in this Pyramid Office, where the Weel is set open, they are taken.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Of their Fishing on the Ice.*

Here is shew'd a different way how Fishes are taken under the Ice, called *Berboche*, or Lake, in their Vulgar Tongue: which when the Fishers perceive under the thin Ice, they astonish them with the stroke of a great Hammer, and endeavour to make them stop underneath, and to lye upon their backs, and to turn up their bellies, that breaking a hole in the Ice, they may take them out half alive. And this Custom is most used about the Winter Solstice. There is another way to fish under the Ice, that is the most common, and it is with Hooks to which small fishes being tied, allure the great ones to prey upon them, especially Pikes, which are held to be more insatiable than other fishes. A small cord is let run out 60, or 100 paces, between two holes that stand far off, and right one against the other, all the night, and lies under the Ice, baited with many Hooks; the Fisher-men draw this forth the next day, and find multitudes of fishes caught upon it: and these fish are of divers sorts, and frequently very fat, by reason of their good feeding, and safe rest, that they have in cold places, especially such as remain in Lakes: The Males are fatter than the Females, except the Herring, as I shall shew at the end.

## CHAP. I

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of fishing with Horses.*

This way of fishing upon the Ice, is observed in great Lakes, and fresh Waters, and Creeks of the Salt-Seas, every year from the month of November, to the end of March, and longer, as often as there is need, and as the fishes are in multitude. For whether the Ice be thick, or covered with Snow, or clear, or slippery, or however it appears, as it is bound up with Cold, or however Nature makes it, there never wants Wit nor Will to serve the Publick faithfully in necessary things. So the Northern people endure Heat and Cold alike, with a contented mind. To walk upon the Ice, they have Wooden shoes fit for their feet, and these are tyed on; and they have three points of Iron fastned to them, that with their points downwards tread even upon the slippery Ice: and thus they tread sure upon the Ice, as upon firm ground. If they want these Irons, the Fisher-men will go firmly with naked soles, and never fear falling. But with shoes of Oyl'd Leather they cannot stand fast by reason of the Frost, for this Leather will presently grow hard and slippery as Ice; especially if thin Snow for one night, or but half a night, be scattered upon the Ice: for this makes them fall unawares suddenly. When it is deep or thick, the Foot-steps take more hold of it: Wherefore when they will fish under the Ice, they open two great holes, some 8 or 10 foot broad, and a 150 or 200 paces alunder one from the other in a right Line: and between these, they make 30 or 40 lesser holes, about one foot and half broad, and on both sides distant between them 30 foot: Then they put their Cords into the Water, under the Ice, through them, and guide them with long Spears; and directing them to the other great hole, they give the Cord ride on horseback both ends of the Ropes to draw by, and they charge to drive their horses on the faster, to make them draw, as the Nets seem to be almost drawn forth, lest the fish, when they perceive that they are entangled, as great Pikes may strive forcibly, and break the Nets, and escape. And so they are drawn forth oft-times, and it is a very handsome sight, in such great multitudes, and divers kinds, that they do not divide them there with balance, of which they have no use, but by whole Waggon-Loads of great Vessels that they measure them by.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of running on the Ice for Fish, and why they fish so often.*

It falls out oft-times, that when they take such multitudes of fish, the young-men that want money, find favour amongst the Fisher-men, that they may run a long course upon the slippery Ice, and win some fish by running: and they will not deny to pay them what they deserve honestly for their pains, or else they freely give them some. Commonly 20 or 30 fishes are set out for them to win, which at Rome were worth so many Franks. There are many Reasons why they must take such pains, and fish under the Ice, namely the time of the fishes breeding, whereof many kinds give eggs in the most bitter cold Weather: and these have many fishes in their company, not that are by Nature friendly with them, but as such who come to devour their eggs. Also the publick profit and necessity urgeth them, that there must be provision made for the people, of the abundance of fishes: and the nature of fish requires it; who if they had no breathing places by holes made in the Ice, all that are in the River, or Lake, would soon die. Long fishes are wonderfully made for by a North-Wind, as broad ones are by a South-Wind. And not onely in one Lake, but almost over all, is this Winter-fishing held upon the Ice, especially in the larger Lakes, as *Maler*, and *Vener*, and *Pether*, that

that are fresh Lakes; and these shew the time, by their natural property, wherein a man cannot fish in them safely. But *Vether*, more than the rest, shews its nature to men that they may run no hazard. For at the time when the Ice begins to thaw, it begins to boyl with a mighty noise, and to come up from the bottom; and it breaks with mighty violence into small Cliffs or Chaps, that commonly are made into the Ice; and in a little time it will widen them very much. And though the Ice be then more than six or seven hands breadth thick; yet the wind above, working with it, it all divides into many small pieces, that many both foot and horse, that are upon it, are usually drowned if they know not, or neglect the nature of it, and fly not suddenly to the shore to save their lives; or when they hear and see the horrible clashing of the Ice, to stand fast on some great piece of Ice, that is soon driven to Land by the Wind.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the admirable event of the Ice Lake Vether.*

A Certain Countrey-man who was on one side this Lake, was to drive over a Wayn-Load of Hay to the other side of this Lake, which is sixteen Italian miles broad, and sixty miles long. He heard the Crack, and the Ice breaking by degrees into small Chinks: Wherefore, understanding the nature of it, he suddenly in great fear that it would all break, to provide for his life, felt to running to the other side of the Lake, as fast as his horses could drive, leaving his Wagon-Load of Hay behind him; there were four armed Horsemen that were behind him, and they ran after him as fast as they could, supposing he was some Thief, and had spied them, and therefore ran away for fear of being taken, and they caught him on the shore, and when they understood that he fled not for any fault, but because the Ice crack, and would speedily be dissolved, as he had learned by Experience, they rejoiced much that they had escaped drowning, besides their intention, and besides their industry. And then the Countrey-man shewed them his Wagon swimming, not upon the Ice, but in the most open Waters; and had not they hastened away, they had fallen into the same danger. Over this Lake, however it be frozen, men use to travel from the *Ostrogathi* to the *Vestrogathi*, and back again; but it is never successful for Troops of Horsemen, who intend to come in a hostile manner. Nor did they finde it successful in the Neighbouring broad Wood, which is called *Holviden* by the people, namely when the *Danes* oft-times tryed to shew their strength there, and there they found their first graves, that they might have no need to proceed to farther Torments. Lastly, the Army of the *Ostrogaths* used here to give the first Onset upon the *Danish* Souldiery, and pay them their first Wages with their Swords.

## CHAP. XVI.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of Fishes of the black River at the new Fort in Finland.*

There is a Fort in the utmost parts of *Finland* that is under the Pole, and it belongs to the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and it is called the New-Fort, because it was wonderfull cunningly built, and fortified by Nature and Art: for it is placed on a round Mountain, having but one entrance and one let toward the West; and that by a ship that is tyed with great Iron Chains, which by strong labour and benefit of Wheels, by reason of the force of the Waters, is drawn to one part of the River by Night, by Keepers appointed by the King of *Sweden*, or such as farm it. A very vast River runs by this Castle, whose depth cannot be found; it riseth from the White Lake, and falls down by degrees: at the bottom it is black, especially round about this Castle; where it breeds and holds none but black Fish, but of no ill taste, as are Salmon, Trout, Perch, Pikes, and other soft Fish. It produceth also the Fish *Trebim* that is black in Summer, and white in Winter, who, as *Alberus* saith, lib. 24. grows lean in the Sea; but when he is a foot long, he is five fingers fat: This, seasoned with Salt, will draw out Gold out of the deepest Waters that is tallen in, and make it float from the bottom. At last, it makes the black Lake passing by *Viburgum*, as *Nilus* makes a black River where he dischargeth himself.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the strange Harper of this River.*

When the Image of a Harper, playing as it were on his Harp in the middle of the Waters above them appears, it signifies some ill Omen, that the Governour of the Fort, or Captain, shall suddenly be slain, or that the negligent and sleepy Watch-man, shall be thrown headlong from the high Walls, and die by Martial Law. Also this Water is never free from Ghosts and Visions that appear at all times; And a man may hear Pipes sound, and Cymbals tinkle, to the shore.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of Fish of divers kinds.*

THE various and unlike Figures of them, shew that a wonderful multitude of Fish is found every where on the North Coasts; the use whereof, names, natures, and proprieties, are neither to be relolved by Philosophers, nor by other Nations. As the form of a small Fish, that is not above a hand-breadth long, having a face like a Hare, and prickles on the back, that will terrifie and put to flight any great Fish, by but looking upon it. Then there is Fish with sharp backs like Saws, which with those sharp prickles, and pointed Fins, will hurt all the rest, by bringing their fins forward, as they do when they mean to do hurt. And these two, like Thieves of the Waters, and of Fishes, when they are taken, are good for nothing, by reason of their prickles, and unfavoury flesh, and therefore they throw them away. There are fish also that wear a horn on their heads before, like the Stem of some great ship, and their mouths are upon their bellies; they are lean and unfavoury, by reason of their starved bodies, which they make themselves by pursuing after other fishes.

There

There are also round Fishes, with heads like to Oxen, and they are like a Horse-shoe: These are very frequent meat, when they are caught amongst the choicest fish to be eaten. But the most choice, as men esteem them, commonly are these. The *Quaviers*, that hath Spears on his fore-legs, wherewith he strikes such as come near to him, hath also on his back tall prickles, that will do hurt likewise. The *Aniger* hath good white flesh, and is long and round, and of a sweet pleasant taste. The fishes called *Praemi*, are fat and broad, and are one or two foot long. The *Borbocha* are River-fishes, that live in Lakes, shorter than Eels, but they have huge bellies: they go to the bottomes, unless it be in Winter, when they are caught above the Ice (as I said before) and stunnied with a Mallet. Their flesh is sweet, their skin clammy, not thick; they have a great liver round and sweet. In 12 years it grows very great, and changeth the name, and is called *Solaris*.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of Salt-fish dried and smoaked.

I Shall now speak of the many sorts of Fish that are salted, dried, and hardned in the smoak, especially for that reason, because the most hard Northern bodies feed on dry Fish, as Pikes, Mulletts, Praemi, Borbochi; and those they call *Sijck* in *Gothland*; all which, like piles of Wood, are commonly sold by Reed-measure, or Cubits, or greater weight, as by hundreds, thousands, and those which in Vulgar *Gothick* Language are called *Schippant*, rather than by weight in a ballance. These fishes therefore to be prepared for mans eating, are steeped two days in strong Lie, and one day in fair water, to make them soft as they should be: then they are sod, and salt butter is poured on them, and are set even upon Princes Tables, as a Food to be desired, and very pleasant. After this, Fish of divers sorts, both fresh and dry, are set one with another in order, and are fed on at meals with great Feasivity, especially at the Houses and merry Drinkings of such who place much felicity in eating, and are luxurious. The rest of the Commons are always urged by the cold Climate to take care not so much to eat dainty meat, as strong meat. Some knock the fish with Mallets, made of strong Wood, before they boyl them: some also dried in Salt and the Sun, are knocked and eaten raw: which in their common speech they call *Sijck*; and they are of two sorts, especially in the *Bothnick* Sea, into which run very great Rivers from the most high Mountains of *Normy*. Dried smoaked Fish are not least esteemed as Salmons, Praemi, *Sijck*, Herrings, Mulletts, Lampreys, Boches: yet Salmons exceed all the rest, because it supplies the place of all Food with its goodness, also because eaten before we drink, it gets an appetite, and it is a pleasant and welcome Food to Travellers: for, raw, they taste excellent well: the same must be thought of broyled Herring, which the *Germans* call *Bucking*: which are bought dear enough by the *Romans*, and are eaten very greedily by them; and cause no loathing, which is far from the nature of other fish. These are yearly carried, if Wars hinder not, in *Flanders* Bortoms, into the *Spanish* Ports. There are also *Boites*, and *Oreches*, dried Fish in the smoak, that are eaten by the Northern people.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of Salt Fish.

INfinite multitudes of people feed on Salt-fish. Almost all those fish that are dyed in the wind, or wasted in the smoak, are also seasoned with Salt, that their internal favour may endure the longer: and these are sold by just estimation, not by the ballance (as I said) but by Tale of Tens, and great quantities. The greatest and most necessary use of these, is, in the besieging of Castles, and fights at Sea, such are Herrings, Eels, Braimi, and those we call in our Language *Torsck*. If any man falsifie these, and sell rotten fish, or salts them up in stinking Vessels, he is highly amerced by the *Fiscals*, and compelled to restore the money he sold them for: and such fish are cast into the Water, or else they are burned in the publick Market. They are but seldom thrown into the Water, lest other good found fish feeding on them for Hunger, might die. But sound fish, in huge multitudes, are sold with the Magistrates Seal upon them, that they may be carried into other parts in Vessels, made for the purpose. And that all things may be done justly, and rightly, there are sworn Officers appointed; and as there are some set over the Corn, so there are over Fish, and Skins, to search them, and to set a just value upon them.

## CHAP. XXII.

## Of the Herring.

THE Herring is taken oft-times in such multitudes, in the beginning of Autumn, near the Coasts of the Southern *Gothland*, about *Schoningia*, that of ancient right belongs to the Kingdome, and is salted in infinite Vessels and transported; that it will suffice amongst Salt-fish to feed the greatest part of Europe. For there comes together upon long and large Banks, in their Houses, and Tents, for two moneths time, from all Countries, Merchants of divers sorts, to buy these Herrings for money, or by exchange, and to carry them away in their ships. Sometimes it falls out that they may be had for a very small price, because there is such plenty, and they come in such huge shoales to the shores, that not only the Fishermens Nets are broken, but in that great Troop, an Ax, or Spear, thrown into the Thrung of Fishes, will stay fast there, and this is a huge gain for the Kings Fiscal. For there is a strict Law, confirmed with great penalties laid upon the Merchants, that before all, they must pay the Kings Tribute; and returning home, they must have a safe Conduct or Testimonial from the Kings Governor: namely for two causes, both that they may have free leave to pass; and that returning to their places, they may plainly demonstrate, that they have done no man wrong in that place, nor used any violence or injury, where they trafficked or fished. Herrings are also taken two or three miles from thence; but it is one that is far worse in taste and estimation, and is held nothing worth. There is also at the same time most plentiful fishing for Herrings on the Coasts of *England* and *Scotland*, which is used by the *Flemings* Fishers; and from thence afterwards it borrows the name, that that Fish carried to *Rome*, is called the *Flanders* Herring: yet it is not so far a kind of fish, though it be long and thick, because it is a barren ground, and the food is not much, and the concourse of waters, as the Northern Herring is; which, for its pleasant taste, is esteemed more every where.





# Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L :

OF

*Monstrous Fishes.*

*An Epitome of the Twenty-one Book.*

## The Preface.

**T**HE vast Ocean in its Gulph offers to all Nations an admirable Spectacle, and shews a new sort of Fish; and these not only wonderful for magnitude, as the Stars are compared one with the other, as they are terrible in shape; so that there is nothing in the Air nor Earth, nor Bowels of it, or in domestic Instruments that may seem to the mind, that is not found in the depth of the Sea. For in the Ocean that is so boundless, and by an easy and fruitful increase, the Seeds of Generation there are found many monstrous things in sublime Nature, that always produce something which being perplexed and rolled up and down one upon another by the ebbing and flowing of the Waters, they seem to generate Forms from themselves and from other principles; that whatsoever is bred in any part of Nature we are persuaded is in the Sea and many things are to be found there, that are to be found nowhere else. And not only may we understand by sight that there are Images of Animals in the Sea but a Pitcher, a Sword, a Saw, and Horse Heads apparent in small Shell fish. Moreover you shall find Sponges, Nettles, Stars, Fairies, Kites, Monks, Cows, Wolves, Ratchets, Witches, Mice, Sparrows, Black Birds, Crows, Frogs, Hogs, Oxen, Rams, Horses, Asses, Dogs, Locusts, Cuckers, Trees, Wheels, Bees, Lions, Eagles, Dragons, Swallows, and such like: Amongst which, some huge Monsters go on Land and eat the roots of Trees and Plants: Some grow fat with a South wind; some with a North wind blowing. There are also Monsters in the Sea almost like to men, that sing mournfully as the Sea-Nymphs: Also Sea-men, that have a full likeness of body, and these in the night will seem to go up into the ships; and it is proved, that where they approach there is some danger coming; and if they stay long the ships are drowned. Also I shall add from the assertion of the faithful Fishers of Norway, that if they take such, and do not presently let them go, such a cruel Tempest will arise, and such a horrid land-mutation of that sort of men comes with it, and of some other Monsters joining with them

them, that you would think the Skie would fall, and the Fisher-men, with all their labour, can scarce save their own lives, much less can they catch fish. Wherefore in such a case, it is provided and observed by the Law of Fishing, that when such monstrous fish are drawn up as their form is various, so they must be presently let go, cutting away the Hooks and Lines.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of the dangerous Fishing in the Norway Ocean.*

**T**HE Fishing is said to be dangerous in the Norway Ocean for many Reasons, because men fish in the open Sea very far from Land: When great Tempests arise, the Fisher-men are soon drown'd by the Waves: Where great Sholes of Ice float, they are dispersed by the fighting of Whales, and other Monsters, they are distracted. Moreover, sometimes they are debilitated in their hands by the horrible form, and attraction of some monstrous Fish out of the Sea; and if they do not presently let them go, a Tempest riseth and drowns them. Therefore some rash Fisher-men, fighting with some Sea-Monster, pull him into the ship, that is like a Fryer with his Cowl, they are presently overwhelmed with howling and crying of these Monsters, that they can neither cast forth their Hooks to catch fish nor row with their Oars, and they can scarce hoist up Sail to be gone, unless they let go the Monster. These Monsters, though they often be taken in Nets as well as choice Fish, (commonly called Stock-fish) yet are they cast out as unprofitable, but the choice are kept in the ship, and are sold for great gain both in the place where they are taken, and in Neighbouring Kingdoms, and utmost Coasts of Germany. Many Thousands of Fisher-men dwell in the Villages in the utmost Borders of Norway, called Andenes, Trondanes, Duvenes, Gamblawick, Nyarwick, and in other Lands that lye round about at Harad, but that is the Castle, or House of Guard, for the whole Kingdome. In February and March, and also in January, the Inhabitants of this Country go in strong ships to fish from the shore into the Deep: as far as they can sail in two days, carrying with them necessaries for their Food for 20 or 30 days. But the place where they most frequently exercise their Fishing, is between Norway and Island. Nor do the Fisher-men when it is Tempestuous Weather, ride at Anchor, but they fish floating up and down till their ships be full. All their safety consists in coming again to the shore, as they are directed by the Marriners compass; for by this, when the Winds rise, they know how to steer their course. And it is observed, that when ever monstrous fish are drawn forth of the Sea, with men or Lions faces, and the like, that this always fore-shews Dilcords and War in the Land.

E c

CHAP. II.



## CHAP. II.

## Of the Danger of the Fisher-men, and the quality of the Fishes.

NOR is the danger small that hangs over the Fisher-men themselves, when they draw with hooks huge strong fishes, that are about twelve foot long, as Turbots, Scates, and other fanned Fishes; who when they are ready to be drawn forth of the waters, to oft pull the Fisher-men into the waters, unless they fence themselves well with Cords before-hand in the ship, or else help one the other as they labour. But such as with a prosperous Gale, having passed such great dangers at Sea, come safe home with their Fisher-boats to Land, they pull forth their fish, and make them clean, and cut them in pieces, or else salt them whole with pickle, and lay them in the Sun, and moist sharp Winds, to dry by the cold piercing Ayr; then they pile them up like great Piles of Wood, and put them again into ships, and they carry them forth to the most famous Mart-Town of all Norway, called *Bergen*, to be bartered away by exchange, or sold for money. And hence it is, that this kind of fish is more properly called in their Language *Bergen-fisk*, and not *Stock-fisk*, from a stick or staff, that being often beaten, it may be made the softer to boyl. Yet this *Bergen-fisk* is not all of one kind, but is esteemed of by the quantity or goodness. For there is another kind which is longer, called the Cod-fish, whose bellies cut into lengths like cords, and dried in the Ayr, are sold, and chosen by the Northern people, as being far the more delicate meat; they call this *Reed-fisk*. Also they keep the ends of the Tails of those Fishes, in great Vessels, for profit, or for dainty meat, which the Germans call *Spore*. Moreover, of the bellies of Byrns, they make Laps, a Cubic in length, or two Cubits; but broader than the others, very fat, which the Inhabitants call *Raff*; and these the people use for bread and meat. This Food agrees with strong men, not with those that are delicate. It tastes as the Spawn of fish dried, almost; that, in Italian, is called *Postargi*; but they are much fatter. The Inhabitants of Norway use the heads of these Fishes instead of wood to boyl their meat with. Also there is taken on the Coasts of Norway, especially on the Rocks called *Aloenjes*, a certain Fish in great quantity, called a *Makreel*; well seasoned with Salt, it is the best fish; and, without Salt, the worst.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the Fishes of Island.

THERE is also another distinction and quality of Fish, which are taken in infinite multitudes in some places of Island, by the Inhabitants, and they differ from those I spake of before, by reason of their soft flesh, and length. Moreover, there are Cod-Turbot, Sea-Calls, *Merlusia*, called by the Goths, *Torsk*; amongst which are Whales, Sawers, and other Sea-Monsters: by whose unnamable cruelty strange troubles arise in the Waters. Also some dainty Fishes are there taken, called by the Italians, and Spaniards, *Marluce*, and are carried as far as Rome by the Spaniards, or Portugals. The time to take them, is in February, March, or April, and the Fishes taken, are dried in cold Winds. And lastly, in open fields are they piled up like Piles of Wood, and are sold by Measures, or long Cubits, or by Reed-meet. Italian measure, to many thousands, to German Merchants, or they are vented for Corn, Beer, Cloth, and the like, by way of exchange. If they must be sold by weight, that is wont to be done by estimation, by counting Hundreds and Thousands. This weight, in their Language, is called *Waag*; as also in Gothland, Swedland, and Germany, it is commonly called *Schippunt*: it weighs 300 great pounds, and is observed for weight. The greater and better profit

profit almost of this Nation consists in Fish; and for the there are fought very great Battails at Sea amongst the Merchants of divers Nations; because Merchants sailing to this Island, only to win profit, do provide themselves, as if they were to fight some cruel Battail: And, as if men were not sufficient Enemies, huge Beasts, like Monsters, come in great multitudes, and endanger the Sea-men, if they look not well to themselves. But amongst other Remedies, the sounding of the Trumper gives some help, for these Beasts hearing the sound of it, and not being able to bear it, they fly all away to the bottom of the Sea, as I shall shew underneath of the whirl-pool.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the wonderful abundance of Island Butter.

MOREOVER, in the same Island, or Iceland, there is found such plenty of Salt-Butter, by reason of the multitudes of Cattle, and fat Pasture, that their Vessels or Tuns will not suffice to hold it, but they make Coffers or Coffers of most sweet Wood, 30 or 40 foot long, and 4 or 5 foot high, which they fill yearly with Butter in many places, and keep to send home, or to exchange abroad. For they frequently feed on broyled Fishes, mixed with this Butter, in place of Bread; whence also they are called Fish-eaters. But Coffers of this Butter do abound, are found in the Abbot-ship of *Helgusfel*, as they call it in their Language, which is founded on Butter, and dried Fish, as being the best Treasure; as are also two Cathedral Churches *Schalhildensis*, and *Hollensis*, with many Monastical-houses of many Noble-men, that have the like in store. That Nation, for Beer use Ale from other places, that is brought from the cities of Germany to the Sea, in ships. Moreover, there are in those Nations, Fountains, that yield us sweet Waters, as Beer, that suffice all their Necessities for Drink, and taste well and pleasant. These Islanders are found, merry and free-people, they live long without any Physick above one hundred years. They are easily provoked to War, and they fight cruelly enough, Also they have all things ready for an Expedition with foot or horse, upon all occasions.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the horrible Monsters of the Coast of Norway.

THERE are monstrous fish on the Coasts of Sea of Norway, of unusual Names, though they are reputed a kind of Whales, who shew their cruelty at first sight, and make men afraid to see them; and if men look long on them, they will fright and amaze them. Their Forms are horrible, their Heads square, all set with prickles, and they have sharp and long Horns round about, like a Tree rooted up by the Roots: They are ten or twelve Cubits long, very black, and with huge eyes: the compass whereof is above eight or ten cubits: the Apple of the Eye is of one Cubit, and is red and fiery coloured, which in the dark night appears to Fisher-men afar off under Watts, as a burning fire, having hairs like Goose-Feathers, thick and long, like a Beard hanging down; the rest of the body, for the greatness of the head, which is square, is very small, not being above 14 or 15 Cubits long; one of these Sea-Monsters will drown easily many great ships provided with many strong Mariners. The long and famous Epistle of *Ericks Falchendorf*, Arch-Bishop of the Church of *Nidrosus*, which is the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom of Norway, and it was sent to Leo the Tenth, about the Year of Grace, 1510, and this confirms this strange Novelty: And, to this Epistle, was joined the head of another Monster, seasoned with Salt.

## CHAP. 6.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Whirl-Pool, and his cruelty against the Mariners.*

THE Whirlpool, or Prifter, is of the kind of Whales, two hundred Cubits long, and is very cruel. For to the danger of Sea-men, he will sometimes raise himself beyond the Sail-yards, and calls such floods of Waters above his head, which he had sucked in, that with a Cloud of them, he will often sink the strongest ships, or expose the Mariners to extreme danger. This Beast hath also a long and large round mouth, like a Lamprey, whereby he sucks in his meat or water, and by his weight cast upon the Fore or Hinder-Deck, he sinks and drowns a ship. Sometimes, not content to do hurt by water onely, as I said, he will cruelly overthrow the ship like any small Vessel, striking it with his back, or tail. He hath a thick black Skin all his body over, long Fins like to broad feet, and a forked Tail, 15 or 20 foot broad, wherewith he forcibly binds any parts of the ship, he twists it about, a Trumpet of War is the fit remedy against him, by reason of the sharp noise, which he cannot endure: and by casting out huge great Vessels, that hinders this Monsters passage, or for him to play with ail: or with strong Canon and Guns, with the sound whereof he is more frightened, than with a Stone or Iron Bullet; because this Ball loseth its force, being hindered by his Fat, or by the Water, or wounds but a little his most vast body, that hath a Rampart of mighty fat to defend it. Also, I must add, that on the Coasts of Norway, most frequently both old and new Monsters are seen, chiefly by reason of the inscrutable depth of the Waters. Moreover, in the deep Sea, there are many kinds of fishes, that seldom or never are seen by men.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Fight of the Whale against the Orca.*

A Whale is a very great fish about one hundred or three hundred foot long, and the body is of a vast magnitude; yet the Orca, which is smaller in quantity, but more nimble to assault, and cruel to come on, is his deadly Enemy. An Orca is like a Hull turned inside outward; a Beast with fierce Teeth, with which, as with the Stern of a Ship, he rends the Whales Cuts, and tears his Calves body, or he quickly runs and drives him up and down with his prickly back, that he makes him run to Fords, and Shores. But the Whale that cannot turn its huge body, nor knowing how to resist the wily Orca, puts all its hopes in flight; yet that flight is weak, because this sluggish Beast, burdned with its own weight, wants one to guide her, to fly to the Fords to escape the dangers.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the many kinds of Whales.*

There are many kinds of Whales, some are hairy, and of four Acres in bigneis: The Acre is 240 foot long, and 120 broad: some are smooth-skinned, and those are smaller, and are taken in the Welt and Northern Sea; some have their Jaws long and full of Teeth, namely 12 or 14 foot long, and the Teeth are 6 or 8, or 12 foot long. But their two Dog-Teeth, or Tusks, are longer than the rest, underneath like a Horn, like the Teeth of Bores, or Elephants. This kind of Whale hath a fit mouth to eat: and his eyes are so large, that 15 men may sit in the room of each of them, and sometimes 20, or more, as the Beast is in quantity. His

His Horns are 6 or 7 foot long, and he hath 250 upon each eye, as hard as Horn, that he can stir (stiff or gentle, either before, or behind). These grow together, to defend his eyes in tempestuous Weather, or when any other Beast that is his Enemy iers upon him; nor is it a wonder, that he hath so many Horns, though they be very trouble some to him; when-as, between his eyes, the space of his Fore-head is 15 or 20 foot. But how great and long his Ribs are, or Bones, and for what use his Skin kept, might serve, alio his flesh and fat, I shall shew underneath.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of a monstrous Fish found on the North shore of England, Anno 1532.*

THOUGH this strange Beast was held for a Wonder by the people of that Countrey, and looked on with astonishment, by reason of its unusual magnitude; yet the Norway Coasts, between the mouths of Berg and Nidrasum, have such a Beast as a constant Guest. Wherefore this is placed amongst the greater fishes of the Sea, by that Relation, as it is described by a certain Noble-Englilshman in this form. In the Moneth of August, 1532, our Seas cast upon the shore at Timmouth a dead Beast of a vast magnitude, which is now the greatest part wasted; yet there remains still as much of it, as about one hundred great Waggon can draw. They that first saw this Beast, say it was about thirty Ells long; that is 90 foot from the belly to the back-bone, as it lay in the Sands, it was about 8 or 9 Ells; but the certain measure is not set down. I came thither the 27 of August, when this Beast stank, that we could scarce endure it: Some conjecture that his back was three Ells under the Sand, because it is continually waited and covered with floods of Sand. His wide Chaps were six Ells long and a half; his Mandible contained seven Ells and half, in some places they were an Ell and half about, in some places lesse, and were as great as an Oke. He had 30 Ribs on his sides; for the most of them 21 foot long a piece, a foot and half about; it had three bellies like vast Caves, and 30 throats, whereof five were very great. It had two Fins, and each was 15 foot long, ten Oxen could scarce draw one of them away. There grew to his Palate, Plates of Horn; on one side hairy, whereof here you see one above a thousand. It is none of Polydorus's Tales, but a certain truth, though they be not all of one magnitude. The length of the Head, from the Crown to the Chaps, was seven Ells: Concerning the Tongue, they differ; the most say it was 7 Ells long. They say his Genital-members was of a prodigious magnitude. When a certain man rended off his share, he was like to be drowned, falling into the belly of the Beast, unless he had caught hold of one of his Ribs to support himself. The space between were 6 Ells. His Eyes and Nostrils were like to an Oxes, and were far too small for so great a body. His tail was forked and Saw-like, 7 Ells broad. In his head he had two great holes, whereby it is supposed this Monster cast up Water, as by Spouts. Lastly, he had no Teeth, whence we collect, it was no Whale. For they say, that Whales have huge Teeth, excepting some plates of horny substance, that were in the mouth of this Creature.

## CHAP. X.

*Of the Sword-fish, Unicorn, and Saw-fish.*

**B**ECAUSE this Beast is conversant in the Northern Waters, it is deservedly to be joyned with other monstrous Creatures. The Sword-fish is like no other but in something it is like a Whale. He hath as ugly a head as an Owl: His mouth is wondrous deep, as a vast pit, whereby he certifies and dries away those that look into it. His Eyes are horrible, his Back Wedge-fashion, or elevated like a sword; his Snout is pointed. These often enter upon the Northern Coasts, as Thieves, and hurtful Guests that are always doing mischief to ships they meet, by boring holes in them, and sinking them. The Unicorn is a Sea-Beast, having in his Fore-head a very great Horn, wherewith he can penetrate and destroy the ships in his way, and drown multitudes of men. But divine goodness hath provided for the safety of Mariners herein; for though he be a very fierce Creature, yet is he very slow, that such as fear his coming may fly from him. The Saw-fish is also a beast of the Sea; the body is huge great; the head hath a crest, and is hard, and dented like to a Saw: It will swim under ships, and cut them, that the Water may come in, and he may feed on the men when the ship is drowned. There is also another sort of Saw-fishes that rise against Mariners, that presently after 30 or 40 Furlongs is weary, and goes down into the Sea. The Sea-men are often wounded with the sword of the *Orca*, which sticks upon his back, that they die of it: So by touching the *Torpedo*, their hand is drawn back stupidly.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the manner of fishing for Whales.*

**B**ECAUSE the Whale falls greedily to eat the Herring, and Sea-Calves, as Fish better than all others; therefore he often in danger on the Sandy Rocks, that by the ebbing and flowing back of the Waters, are often left naked without Waters; & this Beast sunk into them, can find no way out, that he might return to the next deep Water: and therefore he works so forcibly with his strong Tail, that he makes a large Ditch, and is bound up as in a Nest, the sand stopping him on all sides, that he cannot swim away. When Fisher-men know this, they run in Troops, and bind this Creature with strong Cords and Anchors, between his Chops and Gills, that he may not get off when the Sea comes in; and with a strong hand, and many together, they draw him to the Land, or bind him so, that by no force he can be able to return to the Waters. And upon such a chance, they all joyfully divide the prey, and every one returns presently to his Household occasions, until the like, or more fortunate prize come again. And in Tempests it happens, that some huge Beast, either wounded, or tired by his Foe, or having lost all his might, is cast on the shore by force, or the Winds, as a prey for those that can lay hold of him. But when they doubt that he may revive again, they thrust in swords or huge great and sharp pikes into his sides, as he lies still; that much blood running forth by the sword's motion, he may die. Also it may fall out, and that more easily, that they may bind this Beast with Cords and Anchors, whilst he lies in the Sand very fast asleep, the Sun shining upon him, and so he may be made a prey.

## CHAP. XII.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the wonderful affection of the Whales towards their Young.*

**W**Hales, that have no Gills, breathe by Pipes, which is found but in few Creatures. They carry their young ones, when they are weak and feeble; and if they be small, they take them in at their mouths. This they do also when a Tempest is coming; and after the Tempest, they vomit them up. When for want of water, the young are hindred, that they cannot follow their Dams, the Dams take water in their mouths, and cast it to them like a River, that the may so free them from the Land they are fast upon. Also she accompanies them long, when they are grown up: But they quickly grow up, and increase ten years.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Of Sperma-Ceti, which is called Amber-Greece, and the Medicaments thereof.*

**T**HE Whale copulating after the manner of men with the Female, by reason of the velocity of coition, he ejects much Sperm, and dissolves it; and when it is so dissolved, the Matrix doth not receive it all. It is scattered wide on the Sea, in divers figures, of a blew colour, but more tending to white; and these are glew'd together: and this is carefully collected by Mariners, as I observed, when in my Navigation I saw it scattered here and there: This they sell to Physicians, to purge it; and when it is purged, they call it *Amber-Greece*, and they use it against the Drop-sie and Palsie, as a principal and most precious unguent: It is white, and if it be found, that is of the colour of Gyp, it is the better. It is sophisticated with the powder of Lignum-Aloes, Stryax-Musk, and some other things. But this is discovered, because that which is sophisticated, will easily become soft as Wax, but pure *Amber-greece* will never melt so, it hath a corroborating force, and is good against swoonings, and the Epilepsie.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the use of the parts of Whales.*

**W**Hales, Hees or Shees, drawn out of the Sea by the Fisher-mans Art, or brought in by the force of Tempests, or driven on the shore by the fury of some other Creatures, are divided by the Inhabitants, with Axes and Hewing-Tools for a prey, so that of the flesh of one Whale, Fat & Bones, 250 or 300 Waggon may be loaded. They salt up the Flesh and Fat, in many great Vessels, amongst the rest of the huge Sea-fish; and they use these for their commodity, and Household-food, and they sell it to others for the same use, to be carried into remote parts of the World. The Fat of the Whale is very much in all the body, but chiefly in the head, about the marrow of the brain: so that sometimes 12 Flagons are taken out thence, whereof a man can hardly carry one, and sometimes 30 or 40 Flagons full of this Fat, (and each of these is greater than a Roman Barile) that can hardly be carried by so many strong men. The profit of this Fat is, that powred into Lamps, and always augmented, it will burn continually before the Altar, and other sacred places, both night and day: also it much serves for domestic use in private, since in the Winter there is no day at all. Moreover, the lesser bones of the Whale are burnt instead of wood in their houses; as are the heads of other fish. Lastly, of the Whales Skin, they make Belts,

Bags, Ropes, or draw Bells, that will last long: Also when the Skin of one Whale is parted, 40 men may be clothed with it. The Sea-men chiefly use the Fat of it to smear the planks of their ships without side, that in the most rigid and sharp Winter, the Ice may not stick to the ship to drown it, or freeze about it, for this hinders the freezing of the Waters. Also Carters find great need of it to smear their Wheels; and Skinners or Tanners; as I said before concerning the Fat of Sea-Calves.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of Buildings of Whale-Bones.*

**H**AVING spoken, that the bodies of Whales are very large, for their head, teeth, Eyes, mouth, skin, the bones require a place to be described; and it is thus: Because the vehemency of Cold in the farther parts of the North, and horrid Tempests there, will hardly suffer Trees to grow up tall, whereof necessary houses may be builded: Therefore provident Nature hath provided for the Inhabitants, that they may build their houses of the most vast Ribs of Sea-Creatures, and other things belonging thereto. For these Monsters of the Sea, being driven to Land either by some others that are their Enemies, or drawn forth by the frequent fishing for them by men, that the Inhabitants there may make their prey of them, or whether they die and consume. It is certain, that they leave such vast bones behind them, that whole Mansion-houses may be made of them, for Walls, Gates, Windows, Coverings, Seats, and for Tables also. For these Ribs are 20, or 30, or more feet in length. Moreover, the Back-bones, and Whirl-bones, and the Forked-bones of the vast heads are of no small bigness: and all these by the Industry of Artificers, are so fitted with Saws and Files, that the Carpenter in Wood, join'd together with Iron, can make nothing more compleat.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of their houses, by raising up whole Ribs.*

**W**HEN therefore the flesh of this most huge Beast is eat and dissolved, only his bones remain like a great Keel; and when these are purged by Rain, and the Ayr, they raise them up like a house, by the force of men that are called unto it: Then by the industry of the Matter-Builder; Windows being placed on the top of the house, or sides of the Whale, it is divided into many convenient Habitations: and gates are made of the same Beasts Skin, that is taken off long before for that and some other use, and is hardened by the sharpness of the Winds. Also a part within this Keel raised up like a house, they make several Hog-Ries, and places for other Creatures, as the fashion is in other houses of Wood: leaving always under the top of this Structure, a place for Cocks, that serve instead of Clocks; that men may be raised to their labour in the night, which is there continual in the Winter-time. They that sleep between these Ribs, see no other Dreams, than as if they were always toiling in the Sea-waves, or were in danger of Tempests to suffer shipwrack.

## CHAP. XVII.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of Anchors fastned upon the Whales back.*

**T**HE Whale hath upon his Skin a Superficies, like the gravel that is by the Sea-side: so that oft-times, when he raiseth his back above the waters, Sailors take it to be nothing else but an Island and sayl unto it, and go down upon it, and they strike in piles unto it, and fasten them to their ships: they kindle fires to boyl their meat; until at length the Whale feeling the fire, dives down to the bottome; and such as are upon his back, unless they can save themselves by ropes thrown forth of the ship, are drown'd. This Whale, as I said before of the Whirlpool and Priftes, sometimes so belcheth out the waves he hath taken in, that with a Cloud of Waters, oft-times, he will drown the ship: and when a Tempest ariseth at Sea, he will rise above waters, that he will sink the ships, during these Commotions and Tempests. Sometimes he brings up Sand on his back, upon which, when a Tempest comes, the Mariners are glad that they have found Land, cast anchor, and are secure on a false ground; and when as they kindle their fires, the Whale, so soon as he perceives it, he sinks down suddenly into the depth, and draws both men and ships after him, unless the Anchors speak.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the monster from Hog of the German Ocean.*

**I** Spoke before of a monstrous Fish found on the shores of England, with a clear description of his whole body, and every member thereof, which was seen there in the year 1532, and the Inhabitants made a prey of it. Now I shall revive the memory of that monstrous Hog that was found afterwards, Anno 1537, in the same German Ocean, and it was a Monster in every part of it. For it had a Hogs head, and a quarter of a Circle, like the Moon, in the hinder part of its head, four feet like a Dragons, two eyes on both sides in his Loyns, and a third in his belly, inclining towards his Navel; behind he had a Forked-Tail, like to other Fish commonly.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of the Rosmarus or Norway Morfus.*

**T**HE Norway Coast, toward the more Northern parts, hath huge great Fish as big as Elephants, which are called *Morfs*, or *Rosmarus*, may be they are so from their sharp biting; or if they see any man on the Sea-shore, and can catch him; they come suddenly upon him, and rend him with their Teeth, that they will kill him in a trice. Therefore, these Fish called *Rosmarus*, or *Morfs*, have heads fashioned like to an Oxes, and a hairy Skin, and hair growing as thick as Straw or corn-reeds, that lye loose very largely. They will raise themselves with their Teeth as by Ladders to the very tops of Rocks, that they may feed on the Dewie Grass, or fresh Water, and role themselves in it, and then go to the Sea again, unless in the mean while they fall very fast asleep, and rest upon the Rocks, for then Fishermen make all the haste they can, and begin at the Tail, and part the Skin from the Fat; and into this that is parted, they put most strong Cords, and fasten them on the rugged Rocks, or Trees: that are near; then they throw stones at his head, out of a Sling, to raise him, and they compel him to descend, spoiled, or the greatest part of his Skin which is fastened to the Ropes: he being thereby debilitated, fearful, and half dead, he is made a rich prey, especially for his

his Teeth, that are very precious amongst the *Seythians*, the *Moscovites*, *Russians*, and *Tartars*, (as Ivory amongst the *Indians*) by reason of its hardness, whiteness, and ponderousness. For which cause, by excellent industry of Artificers, they are made fit for handles for Javelins: And this is also testified by *Adebovinus*, an Historian of Poland, in his double *Sarmatia*, and *Paulus Jovius* after him, relates it by the Relation of one *Demetrius*, that was sent from the great Duke of *Moscovy*, to Pope *Clement* the 7th.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of Winged-Fish.

There is found a Fish in the *German Sea*, between *England* and *Norway*, which hath two feet, and four wings, and these move flopping to his breast and lower part of his belly, as the wings of other Birds do. They are two before about his Gills, and two behind before his Tail, and these are Parchment Wings, very thick near the body, in that part which stands in stead of an arm, and more thin, in the upper part of the Wing; and so it is with the hinder Wings. The gills of this fish have not a cleft that goes toward the belly or breast, but these fish have gills that terminate above the shoulders of the former wings, with four square holes, two of them are nearer to the head, and two to the right wing; and in like manner are the gills on the left side disposed of. But the head of this fish, colour, Skin, figure of his body, and cast of his flesh, is like that fish we call a *Ray*. His legs are gristles without joynts; and under his feet he hath holes, that he may take the better hold. But his Tail is not like the *Ray*, but like to the Tail of other fishes, only that it is something longer. Lastly, before the Tail, on that part of his back, where the solid part of his body is fastened, which is after the hollow of his belly, he hath a fin also as other fish have, yet very large, in respect of his body. This fish is taken between the Rays and the Skares, and most commonly is little worth, because of his lean flesh, and no fat almost at all: yet he is hardly pulled from the bottom with Hook and Line, because of the resistance he makes with his wings, &c. Moreover some fish have very long bodies, which have four wings, two on the belly, and two on the back: and these fins they use are called wings; and such have those fish called the *Sea-Hares* like to them in all; for these have two fins on their bellies, and two right above them on their side toward their back. There is also of the sorts aforesaid one called a *Ludo-Lutra*, that is a *Sea-beast*, which hath four wings, two on the face, two on the back, and with these he is carried exceeding swiftly to what place he will.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the Polypus.

ON the Coasts of *Norway* there is a *Polypus*, or Creature with many feet, which hath a pipe on his back, whereby he puts to Sea, and he moves that sometimes to the right side, sometimes to the left. Moreover, with his Legs as it were by hollow places, dispersed here and there, and by his Toothed Nippers, he fastneth on every living Creature that comes near to him, that wants blood. Whatever he eats, he heaps up in the holes where he resides: Then he casts out the Skins, having eaten the flesh, and hunts after fishes that swim to them: Also he casts out the shells, and hard out-sides of Crabs that remain. He changeth his colour by the colour of the stone he sticks unto, especially when he is frighted at the sight of his Enemy, the *Conger*. He hath 4 great middle feet, and in all 8; a little body, which the great feet make amends for. He hath also some small feet that are shadowed, and can scarce be perceived. By these he fastens,

stains, moves, and defends himself, and takes hold of what is from him: and he lies on his back upon the stones, that he can scarce be gotten off, unless you put some stinking smell to him.

## CHAP. XXII.

## Of the cruelty of some Fish and the kindness of others.

There is a fish of the kind of *Sea-Dog-fish*, called *Boloma*, in *Italian*, and in *Norway*, *Haafisk*, that will set upon a man swimming in the Salt-Waters, so greedily, in Troops, unawares, that he will sink a man to the bottom, not only by his biting, but also by his weight; and he will eat his more tender parts, as his Nostrils, Fingers, Privities, until such time as the *Ray* come to revenge these injuries, which runs thorow the Waters armed with her natural fins, & with some violence drives away these fish that set upon the drown'd man, and doth what he can to urge him to swim out. And he also keeps the man, until such time as his spirit being quite gone, and after some days, as the Sea naturally purgeth it self, he is cast up. This miserable spectacle is seen on the Coasts of *Norway*, when men to wash themselves, namely Strangers and Mariners, that are ignorant of the dangers, leap out of their ships into the Sea. For these *Dog-fish*, or *Boloma*, lie hid under the ships riding at Anchor, as *Water-Rams*, that they may catch men, their malicious Natures stirring them to it. But the *Urinators* avoid this danger with sharp stiles tyed by lines; for with these, they kill these *Sea-Rams*, and *Dog-fish*: and unless they be stricken through with these, they will scarce retreat. So cruel a fight is fought with them under water. For these Creatures covet for a mans privities, and his heel, and all parts that look white. The Skin of this *Dog-fish*, for the roughness of it to polish wood and bones, is of the same nature with a *Ray's Skin*.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## Of Sponges.

Sponges are much multiplied near the Coasts of *Norway*; the nature of it is, that it agrees with other living Creatures in the way of contracting, and dilating it self: Yet some of them are immovable from rocks, and if they be broken off at the Roots, they grow again: some are movable from place to place, and these are found in huge plenty on the foresaid shores. They are fed with mud, small fish, and Oysters. When they are alive, they are black, as they are when they are wet. They flick neither by parts, nor altogether; for there are some empty hollow places, between four or five, whereby they are thought to feed. There are others, but they are grown together above, and it is known, that there are some membranes under their bottoms. It is apparent, that they live along time.

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Of very long Worms.*

**A**Lso there is, on the Coasts of *Norway*, a Worm of a blew and gray colour, that is above 40 Cubits long, yet is hardly so thick as the arm of a child. He goes forward in the Sea like a Lipe, that he can hardly be perceived how he goes; he hurts no man, unless he be crushed in a mans hand: for by the touch of his most tender Skin, the fingers of one that toucheth him will swell. When he is vexed and tormented by Crabs, he twines himself about hoping to get away, but cannot. For the Crab with his Claws, as with Toothed Pincers, takes so fast hold at him, that he is held as fast, as a ship is by an Anchor. I oft saw this Worm, but touched it not, being fore-warned by the Mariners.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Of the Fish which the Norway people call Swamsfick; and of some other Sea-Monsters.*

**T**HE variety of these Fish, or rather Monsters, is here set down, because of their admirable form, and many properties of Nature, as they often come to the *Norway* shores amongst other Creatures, and they are caught for their Fat, which they have in great plenty and abundance. For the Fisher-men purge it, by boiling it like fish on the fire, and they tell it to annoint Leather, or for Oyl to burn in Lamps, to continue light, when it is perpetual darkness: Wherefore the first Monster that comes, is of a round form, in *Norway*, called *Swamsfick*, the greatest glutton of all other Sea-Monsters. For he is scarce satisfied, though he eat continually. He is said to have no distinct stomach: and so what he eats, turns into the thickness of his body, that he appears nothing else than one Lump of conjoynd Fat. He dilates and extends himself beyond measure, and when he can be extended no more, he easily casts out fishes by his mouth, because he wants a neck, as other fishes do. His mouth and belly are continued one to the other. But this Creature is so thick, that when there is danger, he can, like the Hedge-Hog, re-double his flesh, fat, and skin, and contract and cover himself: he doth he that but to his own loss, because fearing Beasts that are his Enemies, he will not open himself, when he is oppressed with hunger, but lives by feeding on his own flesh, choofing rather to be consumed in part by himself, than to be totally devoured by Wild-Beasts. If the danger be past, he will strive to save himself. There is also another Sea-Monster, called *Sahab* which hath small feet in respect of its great body, but he hath one long one, which he useth in place of a hand to defend all his parts; and with that he puts meat into his mouth, and cigs up greas. His feet are almost grifly, and made like the feet of a Cow or Calf. This Creature (wimming in the Water breathes, and when he sends forth his breath, it returns into the Ayre, and he casts Water aloft, as Dolphins and Whales do. There is also another Monster like to that called *Circhos*, which hath a cruelty and soft Skin, partly black, partly red, and hath two cloven places in his foot, that serve for to make three Toes. The right foot of this Animal is very small, but the left is great and long; and therefore when he walks, all his body leans on the left side, and he draws his right foot after him: When the Ayre is calm he walketh, but when the Wind is high, and the Sky cloudy, he applies himself to the Rocks, and reits unmoved and sticks fast, that he can scarce be pulled off. The Nature of this is wonderful enough, which in calm Weather is found; but in stormy Weather is sick.

## CHAP. XXVI.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Of the Cow, Calf, &c.*

**T**HE Sea-Cow is a huge Monster, strong, angry, and injurious; she brings forth a young one like to her self; yet not above two, but one often, which she loves very much, and leads it about carefully with her, whither soever the swim to Sea, or goes on Land, she is great ten moneths. Lastly, this Creature is known to have lived 130 years, by cutting off her Tail. The Sea-Calf, in the former Chapters, was described in part, but I shall add this one thing to its story, that amongst all Sea-Monsters, none devours Herrings more; for he will come to the Net where the Herring is caught by the Gills, or other parts of her body, and will eat one after another, that he will leave but a few hanging there. The Sea-horse, between *Britany* and *Norway*, is oft seen to have a head like a horse, and to neigh; but his feet and hoof are cloven like to a Cows; and he feeds both in the Sea, and on Land. He is seldom taken, though he grow to be as big as an Ox. He hath a forked Tail like a Fish. The Sea-Moufle makes a hole in the Earth, and lays her eggs there, and then covers them with Earth, on the 30 day he digs it open again, and brings her young to the Sea, first blind, and afterwards he comes to see. The Sea-Hare is found to be of divers kinds in the Ocean, but so soon as he is caught onely, because he is suspected to be venomous, how like soever he is to a Hare, he is let loose again. He hath four Fins behind his head: two whole motion is all the length of the fish, and they are long, like to a Hares ears; and two again, whole motion is from the back, to the depth of the fishes belly, wherewith he raiseth up the weight of his head. This Hare is formidable in the Sea; on Land he is found to be as timorous and fearful as a Hare.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of the greatness of the Norway Serpent, and of others.*

**T**HEY who in Works of Navigation, on the Coasts of *Norway*, employ themselves in fishing or Merchandise, do all agree in this strange story, that there is a Serpent there which is of a vast magnitude, namely 200 foot long, and more over 20 foot thick; and is wont to live in Rocks and Caves toward the Sea-coast about *Berge*: which will go alone from his holes in a clear night, in Summer, and devour Calves, Lambs, and Hogs, or else he goes into the Sea to feed on Polypus, Locusts, and all sorts of Sea-Crabs. He hath commonly hair hanging from his neck a Cubit long, and sharp Scales, and is black, and he hath flaming shining eyes. This Snake disquiets the Shippers, and he puts up his head on high like a pillar, and catcheth away men, and he devours them; and this hapneth not, but it signifies some wonderful change of the Kingdom near at hand; namely that the Princes shall die, or be banished; or some Tumultuous Wars shall presently follow. There is also another Serpent of an incredible magnitude in a Town, called *Moor*, or the Diocess of *Hanimer*, which, as a Comet portends a change in all the World, so that portends a change in the Kingdom of *Norway*, as it was seen, *Anno 1522*, that lifts himself high above the Waters, and rolls himself round by sight afar off: there followed this the banishment of King *Christiernus*, and a great persecution of the Bishops; and it shew'd also the destruction of the Countrey.



## CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the diversity, and divers colours of Serpents.

Many think that Serpents inhabit onely in hot Countries, because of the imbred Cold that is bred in those Creatures, because in heat they multiply more, and sooner come to their growth: Yet the truth is, that cold Climate in the North hath it, and breeds many of the filthiest Serpents, though their Venome be weaker naturally, than they are in *Africa*: However this Conect may be it is certain, that there are many and most dangerous Serpents in the cold Northern Climate; namely Land-Serpents, which fiercely follow the Water-Serpents, and these live upon Land; and feed greedily on divers Nutriments of small Herbs, wherein they know there is a greater venomous force contained, especially such as grow in Mountainy places: and these are worse to hurt men, than those that live on Banks and shores of the Sea. Hungry Serpents are more cruel than such as are full; so also are such as are angry and provoked. They are distinguished by divers colours, as black, ash-colour, sandy, white, red, various, changeable: And lastly, with spots. The Remedies that the Northern people use against stinging of Serpents, are *Venice-Treacle*, which is wont to be repured for the best before the other kinds; and it is brought into those Countreys by foreign Merchants, in great quantity, for to win profit. Black-coloured Serpents, partly live on Land, partly under Toad-stools, that are in the Lakes, (in *Garland* they call them *Tovar*) and partly in hard Rocks, hard by the Waters. These Serpents are a kind of Water-Snakes, and are dangerous: amongst which also, a Water-Serpent, called *Beru*, is concluded, which is subtle, dangerous, and deadly. Serpents that live in Rocks are commonly black; and these they call in the Vulgar Tongue they use, *Smek*, though there be many found there that are divers, and in great multitudes. There are not a little trouble to men that live in Rocks, especially in Summer: for they will kill men with their venomous fire-quick. There are also many sorts of Lizards living in Caves and Holes, they are not so hurtful as Serpents; yet we must take heed of them. The Shrew-Serpent is two-fold in shape: The one detains the beholders by its admirable beauty, it is slow and small, and of a fiery venom: so that he whom he hurts, shall presently die of it: in *Garland* they call it *Slea*; This casts his Skin in the most cold Winter, as the stupifying Alp doth, that changeth her Skin. This also, like other Serpents that lye hid in Winter, gets into the bowels of the Earth, namely from the time the Sun enters *Libra*, till he be gone past *Aries*: In which time, if allowed by the Sun, he come forth of his Hold, and lay too long, delighting himself in the unseasonable heat, he is left, and dies, by reason of the Cold and Frost that freeze up his Hole, as I said before of Swallows. Another Serpent is called *Amphisbana* because it hath two heads, one in its proper place; another in the Tail, running from both heads with a circular drawing of his body. This Serpent onely commits himself to the Cold, and comes forth before all the rest.

## CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Habitation and Mansion for Serpents.

It is seen, though but seldom in the Northern parts, a strange spectacle, how Serpents will rest deep under the Roots of Birch-trees, and the multitudes of them can't heat in the Roots with their breath; that the leaves of this Tree will continue always green so long as Winter lasts. Wherefore the people not knowing Nature's secrets, think this an holy Tree, as consecrated to some great Deity. Yet Serpents lye in hollow Rocks or Trees all the Winter, and sleep instead of eating, but in Summer they eat flesh, herbs, and birds; and afterwards they pue up their feathers and wings again. Lastly, if they can get it, they drink milk and wine, or else a little water.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXX.

Of the fighting of the Shepherds against Serpents.

There are also Vipers in the Northern parts, with a rough Skin, hard and dry, and ash-coloured, with sparkling eyes, and 3 or 4 Cubits long, that will kill men with the sharpness of their Venome in 4 hours time, unless it be stopp'd in time with fit Remedies, as with *Venice-Treacle* or Garlick drunk with Ale, or the juice of the Ash crushed forth and drank, or with Bran laid on for a Cataplasme. Shepherds use these Remedies to keep themselves safe; but they use their Treacle for their sheep, to annoy round about the Tumour. For these Serpents will spit themselves on their breasts, and go half a Cubit high, and will spit forth their venom in great quantity, and of divers colours, that they collect in their throats, against a man that resists and comes against them: and then they will quickly run away into their holes, and under Stones. I can prove this to be true by my own example, because above 50 years since, that accident betel me, in the fields at *Arres*, whilst as other Schollars did, in the middle of *August*, I was gathering Juniper-berries, which are then the first that are ripe in the North. There are also some Serpents, who with a secret or wheeling motion move wittily, and will leap ten foot, and fight, besides making a most vehement noise amongst the dry grass, which the Sun hath withered, but by the bounty of Nature it is that they are discovered by their sound when they run to do hurt. The venom that they spit forth on the garments of him they meet, is of divers colours, as it runs down, and when the Snake hath been to bold, as to spit her venom at a man, she will appear no more. There are also House-Serpents, that are accounted in the farthest Northern parts to be as Household-gods, and are fed with sheep or Cows milk, and play with the children in the houses, and are oft-times found to sleep with them in their Cradles, like faithful Keepers; and to hurt them, they count it a deadly sin. But these Customs are but the Reliques of the old Superstition, and are forbidden since the time of the reception of the Catholick Faith. But if by Lightning or Fire at home, these houses chance to be burnt down, or when the plague spreads, are emptied of the Inhabitants, the Serpents will remain in the Dens of the house burnt, and lye close together in such great heaps, that the next Inhabitant is in a great distress how he may live safely amongst them. Also innumerable Serpents are seen under Okes at the beginning of Summer, following their Captain, who wears a white Crest, like to a Crown, as Bees do their King. As the Antients say, they are supposed by their breath to produce a stone, that comes from some venomous part found between the leaves where they lye, or brought forth there by them.

H h 2

CHAP. XXXI.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the Fish called Thrissa, that was lately also found in Prussia.*

Since the *Italians* are persuaded, even to this day, that they onely enjoy the Sdelights of that fish, which men commonly call *Thrissa*; and the *Grecians* of our time call it corruptly *Phrissum*: the *Romans* call it *Laccia*: Some think it to be the *Cimpea*, because the *Venetians* call that kind of fish *Chiapa*: Also such fish is reported to have been taken in great multitudes this year in *Prussia*, about the new Seas as they call it, in that place where it exonerates it self into the Baltic Sea, or Codanus, according to the *Celtes*, namely about the Castles of *Balge & Locksted*, that belong to the Duke of *Prussia*: For of those fish which the *Prussians* call *Purpel*, (a name never known before) a certain Fisher-man catcht 600 and 12000 or which is the same 60 times (as they say) 1800 in the month of *May*, in 14 days, besides other fish, of which also there was no small number. Wherefore *Italy* must not longer boast of this, as given onely to them by God, when as by the goodness of God, the very same kind is to be found in other parts also.

*The End of the one and Twentieth Book.*

Olaus

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSALA:

OF

*Insects, Living-Creatures.*

*An Epitome of the Two and Twentieth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the most troublesome Gnats of the farthest Northern parts.*

There is a great trouble with very great Gnats, toward the utmost North-lands and Waters, especially for their biting, and most tedious noise, when men must sleep in the Light that shines night and day. But to avoid the trouble of these, the Northern people use Wormwood, steep in Vinegar, and burnt and smoakt, that when they perceive that strong smell, they may fly away. Also they will likewise depart, when a mans head is sprinkled, and all his body, with the decoction of Wormwood, or of Rue, or Nigella, when they can be procured. Or with Vitriol mingled with Juniper, burnt and made a smoak of. But when men sleep, it is necessary to make themselves a Covering of some Linen-cloth, or some Bark of a Tree; under which, as under a safe guard, one may rest quiet against the injury of the Gnats; and that there may be no place left for those loud Insects to creep in at, lest those that sleep should be troubled with a double mischief, namely their stinging and tedious noise.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Remedy to drive away Gnats and Wig-lice.*

Moreover, that the Cattle at Pasture may be free from being troubled with Gnats and Flies, the shepherds are wont every where to set Juniper bushes on fire by the Roots, which are abundant, both in fields and woods, or else Pine-trees, where their Cattle feed: likewise sweet Bull-rushes, and dry Roots of the Herb *Serpentaria*, because by the smoak of all these, they are strangely driven away. Then to drive away Gnats and Woodlice out of their houses, they make a fums with very small Saw-dust of the Pine-tree, which are collected in great mul-

multitudes whilst it is sowed : or with Nigella ; alſo with the dry Myrtle, and Brimſtone; and Bdellium, or with the ſinking Thorn, and with Cow-dung; Alſo, to drive away the ſame miſchief, ſprinkle the houle with the decoction of the Root of Lupinus, or of Nigella, or Wormwood or Rue. The ſtrong ſmell of Red-Skins, which the Germans call *Reiſch-Leder*, doth wonderfully drive away Wig-Lice, and theſe are carried from *Muſcovia*, through *Bulgaria*, to *Italy* and *Rome*, to be ſold : ſo Quick-Lime, with Brimſtone, kills them. Moreover, Wig-Lice are killed with a mixture made of Oyl, Quick-filver, Salt, Vinegar, and a bit of Apple ; and theſe are pounded together, and boyled, and are put twice or thrice into the chinks of the beds : but the moſt plain and frequent way, is to deſtroy them with ſcalding water, which penetrates more inwardly, and deſtroys the very ſeed of theſe hurtful Worms. But that Gnats play up and down ſo frequently in thoſe Countries under the Pole, this is the chief Reaſon : Becauſe there are no Flitter-Mice that uſe to prey upon theſe and ſuch like Inſects in the night, becauſe of the continual light night and day, that can remain there : nor any other birds of the night that fly from the light of the Sun ; yet there are ſome depured by Nature to gather up Flies and Gnats for food, But as they appear to receive increaſe ſuddenly from corruption ; ſo one ſcarphall makes them commonly vaniſh preſently ; for when they want food, they fly to their Native putrid air to feed and here they conſume.

#### Of Bees, and their Food.

THE Northern Countries abound with very many things, as well neceſſary, as ſuperfluous, to communicate to other Nations for their uſe : ſo by a ſingular providence of Nature, they have great plenty of honey, and they take great care always, and in all places, about their Bees, that they may be kept clean and proſper. But when they take the honey out of the Hives, the Cuſtome of the Nation is to leave ſo much behind for the young Bees, as may be thought ſufficient to keep them all the Winter ; namely two parts, becauſe in Winters, and beginning of the Spring, before flowers appear, they chiefly live of honey, bruifed Figs and Rayſins. But becauſe thoſe things are ſcarce commodities, and are but ſeldome found, honey is left them for their principal food ; and becauſe it coſts leſs than the former, yet when Neceſſity compels, in place of honey, they uſe bruifed Beans, Peaſe, Cakes made of Poppy, and Wheat-meal, mixed with Medieg, and with ſheep alſo of Pullets newſlain, broken into very ſmall parts, to feed them.

#### CHAP. IV.

##### Of Honey, and the proof of it.

There is great abundance of Honey in the North Countries, as *Pliny* teſtifies, that the Northern Combs are greater than others are ; and he gives for an example a Comb that was ſeven eight foot long. But there are far longer found in *Podolia*, a Land ſubject to the King of *Poland* : where Bees, by reaſon of the rich Nature, ſweet ſmall, pleaſant Taſte, fill great Caves, in the dry grounds, full of Honey. Combs loaded with Honey ; ſo that huge Bears falling into ſuch Caves, are choaked with eating too much honey ; and hence it is, that ſo many great Kings of the Eaſtern Countries, full of Wax, are diſperſed into all Europe : The Wax indeed, they ſend to the Coaſts near them ; But they keep the honey for themſelves.

ſelves in great abundance for all manner of uſes, eſpecially for all kind of drinks, becauſe they want Wine, as I ſhewed before, *Lib. 13*. After the Summer Solstice therefore, as the beſt honey is gathered, (excellent above the reſt) ſo in thoſe Countries they keep it in its purity, without fraud or deceit ; though when it is once tranſported beyond Seas, it is adulterated by the unſatiable Covetouſneſſe of the Merchants. Honey that is gathered after the Solstice, is ſo wholeſome, that it is not only uſed for ſome Meats, Bread, and Drink, but for Sauce for Meats alſo, and is kept for the moſt choiſe Phyſicks. Becauſe in the Northern Countries there are very few Phyſicians ; but there is wholeſome Ayer, wholeſome Food, and Honey-drink ; and theſe are their beſt Phyſick. This the older it is after it is boyled, namely fix or twelvet years old, the more ſtrong it is found to bequell as a Remedy for many Diſeaſes.

#### CHAP. V.

##### Of Ants.

THE Northern Countries have Ants of many kinds, ſome with Wings, and ſome without. The great ones, and ſuch as have Wings, dwell in Houſes in Deſerts, which they make of the Capillary leaves of Pine-trees ; and ſometimes of Fir-trees, and Sticks, heaped up into great heaps. The Bears when they ſee them, their Noſes do mightily trouble theſe Ants, but they ſoon get away from them, left they ſhould carry ſome of them home to their own Dens, which ſometimes breeding there in great multitudes, may drive them out of their own houſes. Moreover, they make their Neſts on high Towers of Churches, and in fair Orchards of Kings ; where ſometimes they are obſerved to denote the ſhortneſſe of the Reign of Kings, by a wonderful Omen, namely that Kings ſhall be killed by the common people, or driven forth of their Kingdoms. But when any ſuch monſtrous thing is near at hand, then the ſmaller Piſmires, moved by the Injuries of the greater, aſcend up into ſome old Tree, commonly a Pear-tree, where the great ones reſide, and that in great multitudes to revenge their wrongs, and there they fight a ſierce battail with them ; and they are reſolved never to give over, though on both ſides multitudes of them fall dead from the leaves of the trees, until they have conquered the great ones, and got their houſes from them. This kind of Wonder was obſerved to have hapned in two places, *Anno 1521*, namely at *Upſal*, and *Helm*, when the King of *Denmark*, *Chriſtiernus* the 2d, was driven forth of the Kingdoms of the *Goths* and *Swecons*, by the Inhabitants of *Svecon*, and ſpoiled of all his Fortunes. For ſuch creatures being of no eſteem, if they be provoked by injuries, are invincible, and will cruelly revenge themſelves, and are thought to be no other than prodigious Meſſengers of the angry God, and ſignifie no good by their Battails. There are alſo red Piſmires, ſmall ; that with their piſs will raiſe a moſt hurtful tingling ; and theſe are called venomous by the Northern people, and they dwell in hills in the fields. But this kind of Piſmire, for his continual labour, ſeems nothing behind the others I ſpoke of before ; for he will alſo leave the print of his way upon the hard ſtint.

#### CHAP. VI.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of Pearls, and the Generation of them.*

THat I may not leave untouched, the delicate matter of Pearls, after that I have spoken of fish, I must first say, that in the Northern Countries there are some Rivers that bring forth Jewels; because they produce Shell-fish, out of whose shells are taken white Pearls, though they be pale by reason of the cold Ayre. For that Ayre mingled with Dew, about the middle of August, descends into the shell-fish, and gives the cause that Pearls suddenly come to perfection. These when they are taken forth, serve in the North parts for an Ornament, and are held to be dear; and when they are set in due order, they shine very finely, and with the illustration of Bawds, for beauty, this brightness is increased. And these also bring the more splendid oriental pearls in great number to the Northern coasts, especially for the use, or rather abuse of the Noble-women; and of women sometimes of the common sort, who delight in such ornaments as rarities, and they use them in Coronets, Bracelets, Ornaments for their shoulders, and coverings for their heads. Yet no Woman there, how noble soever she be, was ever seen to wear Pearls or Jewels in her ears, to avoid a greater disgrace, as if God, the Author of Nature, had not given to every part its comeliness and grace; but that they must borrow some lustre and handiements from contemptible Worms.

---

F I N I S.

---

OF THE  
Goths, Svvedes, & Vandals,  
*AND*  
Other Northern Nations.

---

WRITTEN BY  
Olaus Magnus,  
*Arch-Bishop of*  
UPSALL,  
And Metropolitan of  
SVVEDEN.

---

TO THE  
RIGHT HONOURABLE,  
SIR

Bulstrode Whitlock,

Knight, &c.

Late Lord Ambassador to the Crown of  
*SWEDEN.*

My Lord,

**I***T is your honour, to be the great Patron of Learning; and its Proselytes, when Kings (saith an Ancient) be Philosophers, then Kingdoms enjoy the fruit of Learned Peace; the same may be said of inferiour Princes in their Spheres, the European World is sufficient Witness of Your polite Accomplishments, both infused and acquired, whereby You have shined like another Cassiopeian Star in the Swedish Hemisphere: Your own Native Countrey received the Reflexion of Your Wisdom, in that firm Peace and Alliance we enjoy with that Heroick and Warlike Prince, the present Sovereign Commander of those famous Countries and Territories, described in this Treatise; whose Martial Progenitors destroyed the puissant Empire of Rome, and were the Hammer of Gods wrath, to break in pieces the Italian Luxury, and frowned the great Citie into ashes: Wherefore, it belongeth of right to Your Honour, to patronize the*  
Description



*Description of those Countries, in our own Language, especially, seeing that so Learned a Prelate, Prince of the Gowne-men in those Territories, bath in this Elaborate Work exposed to publick view, the Acts of their famous Heroes, the strange Eccentrick Customs, Fashions, Attire, Sports, Battels, Feasts, Marriages, Religion, and Trades of these Northern Nations: together with horrid Apparitions of Divels, the Antick Prestigations of Conjurers, and Magical Inchantments; the Rarities and Observables of all the Four Elements; but especially the ripping up of the Bowels and Interels of Nature, in their various and admirable Minerals, with many other Stupendious Relations, that create excellent delight and wonder in the diligent and curious Inquirer. The Translation whereof, being not able to abide the Censure of Your acute Judgment: Yet being the Instrument and occasion of its Publication to the World in our Native Tongue, I have made bold humbly to present it to your Lordships acceptance, being confident, that under the shadow of Your Patronage, who have been, doubtless, an Eye-Witness of many of these Grand Wonders, it will shine with the more Orient Lustre.*

Your Lordships, in all due observance,

J. S.



## The Contents.

### BOOK I.

CHAP. I.	
A Description of Biarmia.	Fol. 1
2 A Description of Finmarck.	2
3 The Description of Scricfinnia.	ibid.
4 Of the vehemency of the Southern Wind.	3
5 Of the violence of North-Winds.	ib.
6 The divers Effects of Thunder and Lightning in the Northern parts.	4
7 Of the fierceness of Cold.	ibid.
8 Of Frosts and the falling of Snow.	5
9 Of the variety of snow and glasses.	ib.
10 Of the Forts of Snow made by young people.	6
11 Of the running of Horses upon Ice for Cloaks.	ib.
12 Of the running of men upon the Ice for a wager.	7
13 Of the Inns upon the Ice for Travelers.	8
14 Of the Passage upon the Ice between the Gulphs.	9
15 Of Instruments for the Ice.	10
16 Of the Warlike Obelisks of the Goths, and Stone-Monuments raised.	11
17 Of Obelisks for Sepulchres.	ib.
18 Of stones with Figures.	12
19 Of Dials with shadows.	13
20 Of Tricks to design the Times by.	ib.
21 Of the Goths Alphabet.	14

### BOOK II.

Chap. I. Of Veins of Brimstone, and Combustion of the Waters.	15
---	----

2 Of the admirable nature of some Mountains.	16
3 A Description of Iceland, and of the Nation there.	ibid.
4 Of the horrible sound of the hollow Caves by the shores of the Sea.	17
5 Of the Rock of the Sea-Monk.	18
6 Of the Crowned-Rock, and the multitude of Fish.	ib.
7 Of the flowing and ebbing of the Sea.	19
8 Of Charybdis, and the wonderful Nature of Ice.	ibid.
9 Of the Leather-ships made of Hides, used by the Pyrats of Greenland.	20
10 Of the inscrutable depths of the Coasts of Norway.	ibid.
11 Of the Ports of Iron-Rings.	21
12 Of the dangerous passage of the Mountains, Scars and Sula, between Sweden and Norway.	ibid.
13 Of the Statues on the Waves, in the Snowey Mountains.	22
14 Of Passage in the Dark.	23
15 Of Lights, and Pitch-Torches.	ib.
16 Of the breaking forth of Standing-Waters.	24
17 Of the three famous Lakes of the Goths.	ib.
18 Of dangerous Caves.	25
19 Of the excellent Antiquity of the Kingly Fort Aaranes of the Veltrogoths.	26
20 Of the wonderful Garden of the Mountain Kindaberg, near the said Castle.	27
21 Of the beauty and plenty of the Island Elandia of the Goths.	28
22 Of the famous Island of the Goths called Gothland.	29
23 Of the Bucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mountains of Hanga.	30
	A Of

## The Contents.

- 24 *Of the Mountains with Helms.* 31  
 25 *Of the Straits in the Stoney-Ports.* 32  
 26 *Of Stoney-Rocks, and the dangerous passage through Idenbenkia,* ibid.  
 27 *Of swift Torrents,* 33  
 28 *Of the divers Forms of Stones upon the Coasts,* 34  
 29 *Of the Stones of Giants, and Springs of Waters,* ibid.

### BOOK III.

- Chap. 1. *Of the Superstitious Worship of the Pagans of Lituania.* 36  
 2 *Of the Superstitious Worship of men under the Pole.* 37  
 3 *Of the three greater gods of the Goths.* 38  
 4 *Of the three lesser Gods,* ibid.  
 5 *Of the magnificent Temple of the Northern gods.* 39  
 6 *Of the Religion, and Sacrifices of the Goths.* 40  
 7 *Of the Goths Superstition about Thunder,* 41  
 8 *Of their fighting against the Gods.* 42  
 9 *Of the Fatal Sisters and Nymphs,* ibid.  
 10 *Of the Night-dances of the Fairies and Ghosts,* 43  
 11 *Of the War against the Fanni,* ibid.  
 12 *Of Divination,* 44  
 13 *Of the Magical Art of Ericus, with his Windy-Cap, and of others,* 45  
 14 *Of Women-Witches,* 46  
 15 *Of the Conjurors and Witches in Finland,* 47  
 16 *Of the Magical Instruments of Bothnia,* 48  
 17 *Of the Sea-Magicians,* ibid.  
 18 *Of the same Magicians, and the like,* 49  
 19 *Of a Magician bound,* ibid.  
 20 *Of the punishment for Witches,* 50  
 21 *Of the hurts done by the Devils,* 51

### BOOK IV.

- Chap. 1. *Of the unhappy Battail of Regnerus, King of Denmark.* 52  
 2 *Of the cruelty of the wild Inhabitants,* 53  
 3 *Again concerning the cruelty of these wild men,* 54  
 4 *Of the Five-fold Speech of the Northern Kingdoms,* ibid.  
 5 *Of bartering of Commodities without Money,* 55  
 6 *Of Fairs upon the Ice,* 56  
 7 *Of the Marriage of the Laplanders by fire and flint,* 57  
 8 *Of Mourning-Dances,* 58  
 9 *Of their Exercises by Moon-Lights,* ibid.  
 10 *Of their Ships, Bands, and Roots, bound together,* 59  
 11 *Of the Art of shooting with the Bow,* 60  
 12 *Of the hunting of the Laplanders,* ibid.  
 13 *Of Horses passing over Snowie Mountains,* 61  
 14 *Of the dangerous passage between the Mountains,* ibid.  
 15 *Of the Law of killing Crows,* 62  
 16 *Of the Baptizing of Children of the wild Inhabitants,* ibid.  
 17 *Of the Conversion of North and East Finland, and their great Hospitality,* 63

### BOOK V.

- Chap. 1. *Of Giants,* 64  
 2 *Of the difference of Giants and Champions,* 65  
 3 *Of the sobriety of Giants and Champions,* 66  
 4 *Of the Virtues of the most valiant Starchaterus,* 67  
 5 *Of the Patronage he afforded to the afflicted,* 68

6 Of

## The Contents.

- 6 *Of the Exercises of the said Starchaterus,* 69  
 7 *Of the sum of the Acts of Starchaterus,* 70  
 8 *Of the most great and terrible War between the Swedes and Goths, where Starchaterus was General against the Danes,* 71  
 9 *Of the death of Starchaterus,* 73  
 10 *Of Haldanus, and other Champions whom he conquered,* 74  
 11 *Of another certain Haldanus, and his Actions,* 75  
 12 *Of Olo Vegetus,* 76  
 13 *Again of the same man, fighting valiantly for Chastity,* 77  
 14 *Of the Acts of the Champions Arngrimus, and Arvarodius,* 78  
 15 *Again of the same Arngrimus, and the Charms of the Fins,* ibid.  
 16 *Of the slaying of a Bear, and the drinking of his blood,* 79  
 17 *Of Regnerus, called Hair-Coar,* 80

### BOOK VII.

- Chap. 1. *Of the Artificers of Slings and Darts,* 94  
 2 *Of Arrows, and Warlike Instruments,* ibid.  
 3 *Of the sudden calling the Commonalty to Arms,* ib.  
 4 *Of the keeping of the Ways and Scouts,* 96  
 5 *Of the direction of the multitudes called together,* ibid.  
 6 *Of Battails on the Shores,* 97  
 7 *Of Slings for Stones, and red-hot Iron,* ibid.  
 8 *Of the Velts of the Centurians,* 93  
 9 *Of the manners and time bringing these Velts,* 98  
 10 *Of their Stakes, Darts, and Pits for Snares,* ibid.  
 11 *Of the Stratagems of King Hacho by boughs,* 100  
 12 *Of punishing Hostile fires,* 101  
 13 *Of removing the same danger,* ibid.  
 14 *Of the custody of Banks in time of Hostility, about a place called Meler, in Upper-Swecia,* 102

### BOOK VI.

- Chap. 1. *Of Minerals, and the finding of them,* 86  
 2 *Of the Situation of Mineral Veins,* 87  
 3 *Of the way to dig the Mines,* ibid.  
 4 *Of the distinction of Mineral Veins,* ibid.  
 5 *Of the wheels, Instruments, and dangers of the Labourers,* 88

A 2

BOOK

## The Contents.

### BOOK VIII.

- Chap. 1 Of the Election of the King. 104  
 2 Of the Adoption of Noble-men by Arms. ib.  
 3 Of the same form of the Adoption. 105  
 4 Of the Military Education of Illustrious and Noble men. 106  
 5 Of the reason and manner of Riding. ibid.  
 6 Of the choice of young souldiers for Arms. 107  
 7 Of the same by an outward Ceremony. ibid.  
 8 Of the manner of the old Warfare of the Goths. 108  
 9 Of other Antiquities of Knights. ib.  
 10 Of Military Exercises and Disciplines. ibid.  
 11 Of their Arms and Provisions for Knights and Horsemen. 109  
 12 Of the tyrannical severity, and exaltation of their Governors. ib.  
 13 Again of the same most wicked Knellers. 110  
 14 Of the Causes of perpetual Discord, that the Swedes or Sveons, and the Goths have against the Danes. 111  
 15 Of the same Causes. 112  
 16 Of the same Causes out of the 24. book of the History of Gothland, of Johannes Magness, the Author's Brother. 113  
 17 Of the severity of King Christiernus the second. 115  
 18 More of the cruelty of the same King. ibid.

### BOOK IX.

- Chap. 1. Of turning Swords in Wheels. 117  
 2 Of their Chariots with Hooks. 118  
 3 Of Brazen Horses that vomited out fire. ibid.  
 4 Of the Guns of the Northern People. 119  
 5 Of Triangular Guns. ibid.  
 6 Of Organ-like Guns. ibid.

- 7 Of the burning the Foundations of Castles. 120  
 8 Of burning the Foundations of Forts. ibid.  
 9 Of the cruelty of Flatterers, Traitors, and Strangers, often committed most fearfully in the Kingly City Stockholm. ibid.  
 10 Of the Original and Scituation of the Kingly City. 121  
 11 Of the scituation of the Mountain Bruncaberg, beyond the Kingly City Holm, and of the Battels fought in it. 122  
 12 Of feeding their Cattle in the houses of the besieged. ibid.  
 13 Of supplying their want of water. 123  
 14 How to supply want of bread. ibid.

### BOOK X.

- Chap. 1. Of Fights in Lakes, and of Bridges broken down. 125  
 2 Of the form and use of the old Northern ships. 126  
 3 Of another form of Northern ships. ibid.  
 4 Of the mutual slaughter of the Merchants, for the Harbours of Iceland. 127  
 5 Of the punishment of the Rebellious Mariners. ibid.  
 6 Of the swimming of Horsemen. 128  
 7 Of the swimming of their Foot souldiers in Arms, especially such as are fat.

### BOOK XI.

- Chap. 1. Of the Bloody Wars in the Northern Countries. 130  
 2 Of Fights upon the Ice. 131  
 3 Of the breaking forth of the Moscovites, or Russians. ibid.  
 4 Of a fearful sounding Cave, the common people call Smelien. 132  
 5 Of the same. 133  
 6 Of the Battel of the Finlanders, against the Moscovites. ibid.

## The Contents.

7 Of the Moscovites way of stealing. 133

8 Of the same. 134

9 Of the way of receiving Embassadors amongst the Moscovites. ibid.

10 Of the Italian Embassador cruelty slain. 136

11 Of the ingenuity of the Merchants of Moscovia. ib.

12 Of the divers ways of the Finlanders making War. ib.

13 More of their Arms and Ammunition. 137

14 Of the Northern Governors, or the King of Sweden. ib.

15 Of burning the Forts of violent Governors. 138

16 Of their Engines for the Ice. 139

17 Of Fiery Chariots. ib.

18 Of their strange Artillery. 140

19 Of their manner of shooting. ib.

20 Of their hindring the waters to freeze. 141

21 Of Walls of Ice. ib.

22 Of Watches kept on the Ice, and in the night. 142

23 Of the more fortunate Battails in the morning. ib.

24 Of the besieging of Forts fenced with Ice. 143

25 Of assaulting the Enemies ships that are frozen in. ib.

26 Of the strange punishment of unfaithful servants. 144

27 Of their infliction, by cold frozen water. 145

28 Of their strange Horse-Races. ibid.

29 Of the wild Asses running on the Ice. ibid.

30 Of the Ranged Deer running in the Snow. 146

31 Of the drowning of the Enemies in the Snowie Valleys. ib.

32 Of Snow-balls sticking in the Horses hoofs. ib.

### BOOK XII.

- Chap. 1. Of the Variety and Forms of their Stones. 148  
 2 Of building their houses, and the divers forms of them. 149  
 3 Of the same. ib.  
 4 Of the great magnitude of Trees in the Northern parts. 150  
 5 Of the excellency thereof. 151  
 6 Of the diversity. ibid.  
 7 Of the quality of Fruits. 152  
 8 Of the Fir-tree Gum, or Rosin, and of the original of Amber. ib.

### BOOK XIII.

- Chap. 1. Of the diversity of gathering in of Harvest. 154  
 2 Of their Bake-houses, and baking of bread. 155  
 3 Of parching their Corn that must last. ibid.  
 4 The manner of drinking amongst the Northern people. ibid.  
 5 The variety of boiling of Salt. 156  
 6 The difficulty of carrying Salt into the Northern Kingdoms. ib.  
 7 The great quantity of Butter. ibid.  
 8 The greatnesse and goodnesse of their Cheese. 157  
 9 Of Weavers. ib.

### A. 3 BOOK XIV.

## The Contents.

### BOOK XIV.

- Chap. I. *Of the diversity of Habits.* 160  
 2 *Of the chaste adorning of Virgins, and rigour of Chastity.* ib.  
 3 *Of the Benediction of the Catholick Kings.* 161  
 4 *Of Knights, and their Oath.* 162  
 5 *Of the Marriages of the Commons.* ib.  
 6 *Of Adulterers, and their punishments.* 164

### BOOK XV.

- Chap. I. *Of the Exercises of Children.* 165  
 2 *Of their Custome of driving away the Winter, and receiving of Summer.* 166  
 3 *Of the same.* ibid.  
 4 *Of the May-Feasts.* ibid.  
 5 *Of their Dice playing, and playing at Tables or Chefs.* 167  
 6 *Of their dancing in Arms.* ib.  
 7 *Of their dancing in Rings.* 168  
 8 *Of their dancing about the fire.* ibid.

### BOOK XVI.

- Chap. I. *Of the Custome of prying in Churches.* 170  
 2 *Of the Funerals and Burials of Princes.* 171  
 3 *Of the variety of the Sick, and of their Diseases and Medicaments.* ibid.

### BOOK XVII.

- Chap. I. *Of Rams and Ews.* 173  
 2 *Of Oxen and Cows.* ibid.  
 3 *Of the Northern-Horses.* 174  
 4 *Of their War-Horses.* ibid.  
 5 *Of their Cats.* ib.  
 6 *Of He and She Goats.* ib.  
 7 *What gifts are given to the Married.* 175  
 8 *Of Ranged-Deer.* ibid.  
 9 *Of the profit of this Creature.* ib.

- 10 *Of the Chariots for men, drawn by ranged Deer.* 176  
 11 *Of the Winter Chariots for these Rangifiers.* ib.  
 12 *Of the Commodity of the Parts of this Creature.* 177

### BOOK XVIII.

- Chap. I. *Of the Elks or Wild-Asses, and the manner of taking them.* 178  
 2 *Of the Battel of the Elks or Wild-Asses against the Woolves.* ib.  
 3 *Of Hares and Does.* 179  
 4 *Of Castors.* ibid.  
 5 *Of the Gulos.* 180  
 6 *Of honouring strangers, with the covering of these Skins.* ibid.  
 7 *Of the way of hunting of Gulo's.* 181  
 8 *Of Hares.* ibid.  
 9 *Of the Lynxes and their skins.* 182  
 10 *Of Woolves, and their fierceness.* ib.  
 11 *Of the many sorts of Woolves.* 183  
 12 *Of Otters, and their diversity and falseness of their skins.* ib.  
 13 *Of Squerrils.* ib.  
 14 *More of this Creature, to shew things to come.* 184  
 15 *Of Martin, and Sabels, and their Skins.* ibid.  
 16 *Of the Ermins, or Pontick-Mice.* 185

- 17 *Of the hunting of Ermins.* 186  
 18 *Of the Nature of Badgers.* ibid.  
 19 *More of the same.* ibid.  
 20 *Of the Fishing-Bears.* 187  
 21 *Of the cunning in killing Bears.* ibid.  
 22 *Of the crafty hunting of Bears.* 188  
 23 *Of the Battail between the Hedge-hogs, and the Bear.* ibid.  
 24 *Of killing Bears with an Iron Club.* 189  
 25 *Of the ravishing of a Maid, and the begetting of Ulito, a most cunning and valiant man.* ibid.

- 26 *Of the Swineherds that are taken away with their Pipes.* 190  
 27 *Of the dancing of the Bears in Lithuania.* ibid.  
 28 *Of the Agility of Bears.* 191  
 29 *Of Bears turning Wheels.* ibid.  
 30 *Of Foxes and their sleights.* 192  
 31 *Of the crafty Wit of Foxes.* ibid.

## The Contents.

- 32 *Of the fierceness of men, who by Charms are turned into Woolves.* 193  
 33 *Examples of those men that were turned into Woolves, and contrarily.* 194

### BOOK XIX.

- Chap. I. *Of the Hawks; and the divers kinds thereof.* 195  
 2 *More of the Nature of Hawks.* ibid.  
 3 *Of the Nature of Eagles, and their differences.* 196  
 4 *Of the property of Eagles, and their sitting.* 197  
 5 *Of the Duck, and its kind.* ibid.  
 6 *Of the admirable Generation of the Ducks of Scotland.* 198  
 7 *Of Geese.* 199  
 8 *Of Sea-Crows, or Cormorants.* ibid.  
 9 *Of that Bird which is an Enemy to these Crows.* 200  
 10 *Of Falcons, and their distinction.* ibid.  
 11 *Of Swallows drawn forth of the Waters.* 201  
 12 *Of Birds shut up under the Snow.* ib.  
 13 *Of hunting them out of the Snow.* 202  
 14 *Of Snow-Birds.* ibid.  
 15 *Of the weighty Snows, and Winter-Gnats.* 203  
 16 *Of the Eggs of divers Birds in Islands.* ibid.  
 17 *More of the Eggs of certain Birds.* 204  
 18 *Of Peacocks.* ibid.  
 19 *Of Birds, whose name is not known in the white Lake.* ibid.  
 20 *Of Birds called Alle, Alle.* 205  
 21 *Of the Whoops, or Lapwings.* ibid.  
 22 *Of the Cuckow, and divers sorts of Wood-Peckers.* 206

### BOOK XX.

- Chap. I. *Of the three-fold Bothnia in the North, and the abundance of fishing there.* 207  
 2 *Of the Multitude of Fish at this Mart.* 208  
 3 *Of fishing for Salmon.* ibid.  
 4 *Of fishing for Sea-Calves.* 209  
 5 *Of the way to fish for them, and their Physical use.* 210  
 6 *More of the virtue of this Creature.* ibid.  
 7 *Of the perplexity of those that cat the flesh of Sea-Calves in Lent.* 211  
 8 *Of Jacks, or Pikes.* ibid.  
 9 *Of catching the Pike.* 212  
 10 *Of fishing by Flames.* ibid.  
 11 *Of Fishing in Summer, and Hawking.* 213  
 12 *More of ingenious Fishing.* 214  
 13 *Of their fishing on the Ice.* ibid.  
 14 *Of fishing with Horses.* 215  
 15 *Of running on the Ice for Fish; and why they fish so often.* ibid.  
 16 *Of the admirable event of the Ice Lake Vether.* 216  
 17 *Of Fishes of the Black-River, at the New-Fort in Finland.* 217  
 18 *Of the strange Harper of this River.* ibid.  
 19 *Of Fish of divers kinds.* ibid.  
 20 *Of Salt-fish dried and smoaked.* 218  
 21 *Of Salt fish.* 219  
 22 *Of the Herring.* ibid.  
 23 *Of the Nature of the Herring.* 23  
 24 *Of Fish-Ponds, and the Spawn of Fishes.* ibid.

### BOOK XXI.

- Chap. I. *Of the dangerous Fishing in the Norway Ocean.* 223  
 2 *Of the Danger of the Fisher-men, and the quality of the Fishes.* 224  
 3 *Of the Fishes of Iceland.* ibid.

## The Contents.

<p>4 Of the wonderful abundance of Iceland Butter. 225</p> <p>5 Of the horrible Monsters of the Coast of Norway. ibid.</p> <p>6 Of the Whirl-pool, and his cruelty against the Mariners. 226</p> <p>7 Of the Fight of the Whale against the Orca. ibid.</p> <p>8 Of the many kind of Whales. ibid.</p> <p>9 Of a monstrous Fish found on the North shore of England, Anno 1532. 227</p> <p>10 Of the Sword-fish, Unicorn, and Saw-fish. 228</p> <p>11 Of the manner of fishing for Whales. ibid.</p> <p>12 Of the wonderful affection of Whales towards their Young. 229</p> <p>13 Of Sperma-Ceti, which is called Amber-Greece, and the Medicaments thereof. ibid.</p> <p>14 Of the use of the parts of Whales. ibid.</p> <p>15 Of Buildings of Whale-bones. 230</p> <p>16 Of their houses, by raising up whole Ribs. ibid.</p> <p>17 Of Anchors fastned upon the Whales back. 231</p> <p>18 Of the monstrous Hog of the German Ocean. ibid.</p> <p>19 Of the Rosmarus, or Norway Mor-fus. ibid.</p>	<p>20 Of Winged-fish. 232</p> <p>21 Of the Polypus. ibid.</p> <p>22 Of the cruelty of some Fish, and un-kindness of others. 233</p> <p>23 Of Sponges. ibid.</p> <p>24 Of very long Worms. 234</p> <p>25 Of the Fish which the Norway people call Swamstick; and of some other Sea-Monsters. ibid.</p> <p>26 Of the Cow, Calf, Hare, and Sea-Mouse. 235</p> <p>27 Of the greatness of the Norway Serpent. ib.</p> <p>28 Of the several colour of Serpents. 236</p> <p>29 Of the habitation of Serpent. ib.</p> <p>30 Of the fighting of the Shepherds against Serpents. 237</p> <p>32 Of the strange Fish found in Prussia. 338</p>
---	--

### BOOK XXII.

<p>Chap. 1. Of the Northern Gnats. 239</p> <p>2 A Remedy to prevent them. ib.</p> <p>3 Of Bees. 240</p> <p>4 Of Honey. ibid.</p> <p>5 Of Ants. 241</p> <p>6 Of Pearls, and the Generation of them. 242</p>	
--	--

Olaus



# OLAUS MAGNUS THE GOTH, Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

CONCERNING  
The Rites of Nations, and Nature of  
Things, and Custome of making War; used by  
the Northern People.

*An Epitome of the First Book.*

## CHAP. I. A Description of Biarmia.

**B**iarmia is a Northern Countrey, the Zenith whereof is the Arctic Pole, and the Horizon is the same with the Equinoctial Circle; which cutting the Zodiack into two equal parts, makes the half year one artificial day, and the other half one night: so that the whole year is here but one natural day. Now Biarmia is divided, according to Saxo Sialandensis, into the furthermost, and hiethermost: In the hiethermost, there are Mountains that are covered with snow perpetually, but they do no hurt, for they are never melted by the Sun: between these there are Woods and Groves in abundance, and it is most fertile with Pasture Grounds and there are Beasts very frequent, that are not usual elsewhere. There are many Rivers in it, because there are so many Rocks in the Channels, and they run with a noise and foaming, as they are carried on. But in the further Biarmia there are some monstrous strange people, to whom the passage is difficult, and full of danger, that men can hardly come unto them. For the greater part of the way is constantly blocked up by Mountains of snow, and if any man would pass over them, he must ride in a Chariot, drawn with Stags,

Stags, (as there is a great number of them in that place, as there is in *Italy* of *Asses*) and by the incredible swiftness of them, he may pass over the Cliffs that are exceedingly frozen. *Saxo* mentions one *Meningus*, a Satyr of the Woods, who was very rich and inhabited there; unto whom one *Hothens*, King of the *Suedes*, was brought by tame Stags, and became very rich and happy with great spoils: yet both these Countries are distinguished with Valleys and Fields, and would afford good Corn, if it were sowed there: But there is such plenty of Fish there in all places, and so much hunting after wild Beasts, which is the cause that men do not much desire Bread for use. When those of *Biarmia* go to fight, they commonly change their Arms into Arts, and are won by Charms to the Clouds, to open the Air, and to turn a fair day into rainy weather. The men of *Biarmia* are Idolaters, and Wain-drivers, as the *Scythians* are, and very cunning to bewitch men. For they will so bind men by the Witchery of their eyes, or words, or some other way, that they cannot be at liberty, or in their right mind, but oft-times pine away, and dye of a Consumption.

## CHAP. II.

*The Description of Finmarck.*

*Finmarck* is a Northern Countrey, of the part of *Norway*, of old, by reason of the largeness of it, it was honoured with the Title of a Kingdom. This place is seated in the coldest part of the World: yet the men there are of strong bodies, and stout minds, and they are wont manfully to defend themselves against the assaults of their Enemies. The Air of that and the Neighbour Countries is always cold, clear, yet agreeing with the bodies of men; and in Summer there are very few showers: and the clemency of the Air there, is so good, that Fishes never salted, but only dried in the Air, will last uncorrupted ten years. There is a continual day from the 8th. of the Calends of *April*, unto the sixth of the Ides of *September*, without any darkness coming between, and the Sun is seen from the fourth of the Nones of *May*, unto the Calends of *August* without any night coming between. The distance from this Northern *Finmarck*, unto the more Southern parts of the *Goths*, is above 350. *Gothick* miles, where at midnight, about the Summer Solstice in divers places, namely at *Lincopia* and *Scares* the smallest Letters may be read without any Candle, and moneyes told. Also in these places, under the Elevation of the North Pole, in 60. degrees, from the beginning of *May*, untill the beginning of *August*, no Stars are to be seen: Besides the Moon, which at the Full appears like a Burning Bush, something toward the superficies of the Earth, for that space of time, to the admiration and horreur of those who see it.

## CHAP. III.

*The Description of Scricfinnia.*

*Scricfinnia* is a Countrey between *Biarmia*, and *Finmarck*; yet it hath one strong corner that stretcheth Southward and towards the *Bohrick* Sea; it is called a Tail principally, because the Inhabitants of it slide very swift, having their feet fastned to crooked pieces of Wood made plain, and bended like a Bow in the former part with a staff in their hands to guide them; and by these, at their pleasure they can transport themselves upward, downward, or obliquely, over the tops of snow: yet ever observing that proportion, that one of these pieces of Wood shall be longer then the other a hull foot, according as the men or women are in tallness: so that if a man or woman be eight foot high, the one piece of wood shall be just so long, and the other piece of wood shall be

nine

nine foot. Moreover, they provide that those pieces of wood be covered beneath with the tender skin of a young Fawn; the form and colour whereof is like to a Deer Skin, but it is far longer and larger. But why these pieces of wood are covered with these tender Skins, there are divers causes given; namely that they may transport themselves the swifter over these high Snows, that they may the more nimbly avoid Cliffs of Rocks, and steep places with an overthwart motion, that when they ascend to a place, they may not fall backward: because the Hair will rise like Spears, or Hedge-Hogs Bristles, and by an admirable power of Nature hinder them from falling down. Therefore with such Instruments, and the Art they have to run, they are wont especially in Winter time, to pass over the unaccessible places of Mountains, and Valleys; but not so easily in Summer, though the Snow be there, because the Wood soon sinks into them. Nor is there any Rock so prominent, but they can cunningly run up to the top of it, by a winding course. For first leaving the deep places, or Valleys, they pass over the feet of the Mountains, with a crooked motion round about; and they so turn to and fro, untill they come to the highest parts of those winding Hills: sometimes they do it in heat of Hunting, sometimes to try their Skill, and to contend for mastery therein, as those who run Races to win the price.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the Vehemency of the Southern Wind.*

There is a Port in *Izlands* (a Land that is next to the Frozen Sea, under the Dominion of the Kingdom of *Norway*, commonly called *Vesfraborn*) named the West part; neer which about the Sea shores and Fields, men riding in Armour, by the mighty blast of the Southern Wind, are blown down to the ground like Towes. Likewise, neer those that dwell in Rocks and Caves, especially in that time of Winter, that the Sun goes back to the Solstitial Signes, when the Windes are more temperate amongst the Waves of the Seas. Moreover there are Mountains in *Ireland* not very high, that stick forth in many places; upon which if any man strive to go when this Southern Wind blowes, he must not onely look for danger, but to be suffocated in Bogs and Quick-Sands. But how formidable and hurtful the Windes are on the Western Banks of *Norway*, the Inhabitants, nor such as travel there, can be ignorant: For they shall see no Shrub nor Tree to grow there, by reason of the violence of this Wind: Wherefore, for want of Wood, they are forced to burn great Fish-bones to make Fire, and to boyl their Meats. The Inhabitants that dwell on the West Coasts of *Bochnia*, to the great hurt oft-times, have the trial of it, how cruelly that wind rageth there. For it will carry away the whole tops of houses, and scatter them upon the Land in several pieces, at vast distances.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Violence of North-Winds.*

Whirlwinds and Northerly Tempests, to have a most terrible and dangerous force, no man can be ignorant, who hath learned or searched out the secrets of Nature: especially since the cause and matter of its Original, is mysterious and indelible. Therefore oft-times they take away the Waters of the Sea from under the ships, and carry the ships up into the Air: Also they

let fall stones and other living Creatures, which they have taken up something high; and not onely thole, but the Lead that covers Churches, and divers houses, and the strongest Beams are carried into the Air, and then another more vehement blast comes: they are carried a great way. Also sometimes whole mills with huge stones being compassed about with a Whirlwind, are transported into places far off, the people being safe; and sometimes such a mighty Whirlwind descends, that it involves Cities, Castles, Villages, and scatters houses afar off in the Fields, as I said. In Summer, Winds blow from the West and the North with so great violence, that they will take up whole handfuls of stones from the ground, and will make great heaps of stones, like to heaps of Sand; and sometimes they will draw from men their weapons and clothes, and sometimes take the Rider off of his horse. Also it sometimes fell out in *Visiria* or *Norway*, that great Fish which were to be dried in the Air and Sun, were taken off from poles like planks, by boisterous winds, in great numbers, and carried from rich Fishers houses, unto poor mens, and are received as a gift given them by God.

## CHAP. VI.

*The divers Effects of Thunder and Lightning in the Northern Parts.*

**T**hundering and Lightning have a most formidable effect in the Northern parts, especially in places opposite to the South. There appears often in the North parts, in clear weather, all the night, in *September*, continual Lightnings, that threaten rather than hurt the Beholders of them. But Thunder rising from the Nature of the Clouds, and the Thunder-bolt falling, do bring grievous mischiefs to men, and other Creatures in thole parts. For it kills many men and cattle that are found upon places that are high, and consumes with a flame, not to be put out, the highest Towers, and houses, that are daubed over with hard Pitch, and this is no wonder; it cleaves down-right the loftiest Trees from the very top; or else beats them down, corroding them obliquely.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the fierceness of Cold.*

**I**t may be demonstrated by many Reasons, rather than Examples by Sense, what great power Frost and Snow hath in the North, as in its proper place. For the fearful multitude of living Creatures, feels its force and piercing, though they be many Furlongs from it, and the body and parts are perished and benumbed with a little of it falling upon them. What can it not do, where Cold it self rules in its full force, and according to the Law of Nature; under which, because I was born and bred, (about the Elevation of the North Pole in the Degree 86.) I think I can more clearly demonstrate it in this, and the many following Chapters, than other men that write by uncertain Opinion, how horrible and vehement the Cold is there: because from thence by succession, as it were Beames from the Center, it spreads it self into the whole World, as all Nations that it pierceth into, moved by the sharpness of it, can testify.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of Frosts, and the falling of Snow.*

**S**O great sometimes is the force of Frosts, and the falling of Snow in the Northern parts; and so sharp are the Tempests, and vehement Darkneis, obscuring the Air, that Travellers cannot shun nor know the next man that comes, be he Foe or Friend. That which breeds the greatest difficulty, is that on both sides, there hang over mens heads either high Cliffs, or Snow hardened, and so high, that thole who carry burdens, can neither get forth to the right hand, nor to the left: But because they can seldom find a desired Remedy against these steep places, for the standing of their Cattel, they dig down the Snow with mutual labour, and they turn their wains upside down upon them: that so they may finish their intended Journey. And they do this with that celerity, as if they were urged to do it suddenly, to put away some dangerous Fire, or some most hurtful Danger; lest if they should use any delay by the sudden falling of Snow and Frost, the wayes should be filled, and the Woods, that they should hardly know which is the way, or the field. There is little or no difficulty in the Ice, because it is ever every where, and pleasing to Passengers, onely they must be careful where the Ice breaks, to look to the Signs that are opposite to the Orifice of the breach; which Signs appear by the crazy pieces of Ice left at the mouth of it lying open, or by the green boughs of Firr or Juniper congealed in the Ice, and sticking forth; and that in a long order for many miles, is carefully looked to, as the cost and by the diligence of the Fisher-men, lest Travellers might mistake their wayes. But in the Wood sometimes men meet with no small Obstacles, when they fall together by breaking, or moving of Trees: especially the poplar Trees stand by reason of the thickness of Snow, as bent bowes loaded with Snow; by the least motion whereof great heaps of Snow, falling on the Travellers, do not a little hinder them: Also the Trees themselves falling across, being broken down by the weight of the Snow, makes the way altogether impassible, that they cannot get forth but by Axes, which they carry with them for that use; as I testify it fell often out with me and others of my company.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the variety of Snow and Glasses.*

**I**N one day and night you shall see fifteen or twenty distinct Forms of Snow; and there is no less variety in Glasses that are set for Windows in their Stoves to keep out the cold. For whilst these places are kept hot with fire against the excessive cold, thole Glasses seem to be so painted with the external cold, and Workmanship of Nature, with divers fashions, that any Artift who shall behold them, shall better admire Natures excellence, than imitate it: yet Wit and Industry of Workmen, hath invented and made many kinds thereof for the Ornament and setting forth of houses; the like whereof can hardly be got by other Nations for love or money: and they are made so ingeniously that many of their Cups are thought to be silver. Moreover there are many Woollen and Linnen pretious worn Ornaments, and admirable Pictures, very decent; as I shall speak hereafter something concerning Painters and Weaving Works.



## CHAP. X.

## Of the Forts of Snow made by Young People.

IT is the custome of the young Northern People, by a provident sagacity, to make Castles to fight against, and to employ for divers Arts and Exercises of War, they especially who take pleasure to make their first Attempts against these, without any danger of being wounded or killed: and therefore early in Winter, whilst the Snow lasts, the young men meet in Troops provoked thereunto by their Parents, upon some eminent place, bringing with them, by each mans labour, huge heaps of Snow; and of these, especially on Holy-days, they make Forts like to Castle walls, always sprinkling water on their Building, distinguished with Windows, that the Snow thus incorporated with the Water, when it grows cold, may freeze the harder. By which diligence they are so fortified, that they can endure not onely light blows, but brazen bullets, and the battering of Engines, so far as need is. These things thus prepared, the said young men divided into several Troops, part of them goes to defend the walls; the other part stand without to fight against them. And in these white Castles they want not black or dark Flags, or green Bushes of Juniper: under which, not for money, but for desire of glory, they enter upon a pleasant Combat, and it is fought on both sides with no other weapons, then with Snow-balls, cast by their hands one against the other. For there is a penalty set, that any one shall have his naked body plunged into cold water, who shall in a Snow-ball wrap up a stone, iron, wood, or ice, to cast at one another. There are also amongst the Assailers, some that like Pioneers, mine under the lower part of the Walls or Snow, and enter, that they may beat off the Defendants at the Fort from their stations. And they are not slow to come to handy-blows, until the Standard being taken away, the conquered part yield, that another time, if it be possible, renewing the Combat, may triumph over the conquering part. And they do not more idly or weakly fight these Battails, and endure them, than if they fought for their Lives, their Countrey, their Laws and Religion, in a publike spectacle. But such as are Cowards and run away, they thrust Snow-balls between their shirts and their skins of their backs, when they can catch them, and absolve them punished, first with insolent words and hard language, that another time when they come again, they may fight more valiantly, and defend their castles. They punish some with Ice let drop down between their head and neck when it freezeeth hard; as I shall underneath explain it more, when I speak of punishments by Ice: And all these are pleasant Spectacles, to appoint milder punishments for Rebels and Cowards.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the running of Horses upon Ice for Cloaks.

OF old time it was a Custome among the ancient Goths, in Winter, about the end of the month of December, (whilst the Lakes, Standing-waters, and all the Countrey, were covered with Snow, and bound up with very firm Ice) in every Province to collect all the best horses, that were more comely then Cows with Calves, to adorn their publick shews. But for what concerns their shews for delight, on the 26. day of December, infinite Inhabitants of those Countreys in every Province (though of distinct Societies) do meet to contend on

(swift

swiftest Horses for the prize and glory, upon the Frozen Lakes and Rivers, that shine like glass. The Bounds or Ends of this Race, contain about four or six Italian miles. The prize is some measures or bushels of Corn to brew toed, and new Garments are deposited also on this condition, that the Horse that comes not to the Mark, shall be the Conquerours. But the Spectacles are shewed in no place in all the North more frequently upon the Ice, than amongst the Ostrogothi and Vstrogothi. For their Land abounds with plentiful Pasture, to feed Herds of Horses to many thousands in most choice Grasses where they naturally meet, though it be in very spacious and dispersed Fields, and not in one Meadow.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of the Running of men upon the Ice for a Wager.

TWO sorts of men are found in these places, that run Races for Wagers most swiftly, in a compenious way of the Art fore-shewed. The first is the Wild or Laplander, because upon crooked Stilts, or long Stakes fastened to the soles of his shooes, he transports himself upon the Snow in Dales and Mountains, in a dangerous way, by a winning and arbitrary motion; and he doth it with a most perfect Art whether he be to encounter with adverse accidents, or he doth it for sport in Hunting, whereby he gets his living, and he obtains greater riches, or whether he undertakes this for a prize, or glory. This kind is the chiefest amongst the Scierfinni. Here it shall suffice now to have said, That these men have such nimble agility in running over the tops of the Snowy Mountains also when they run for a Reward, that others who use more plain and shorter Instruments can hardly attain unto, upon the even and slippery Ice. Moreover those that run over the Snow and come to the Mark appointed, will kill a wild Beast in the way with their arrows. But he that holds on his course on the Ice is scarce secure from Pits that are secret underneath; as I shall say hereafter concerning Wars upon the Ice. But the other kind runs swiftly onely upon the slippery Ice, and a ways continues running upon the even Ice, having a plain polished Iron, or plain Deers or Sheeps bones; namely, the shank-bones that are naturally slippery, by reason of their imbeddarnes, and are a foot in length, fastened to the bottom of their feet. In which kind also there are found men every where striving for pleasure and price: the Goal they set is over the congealed Lakes, as smooth as Glass, for eight or twelve Italian miles from both ends, or somewhat lesse. The prize is Silver Spoons, Brasse Vessels, Swords, New Garments, and young Horses; but the more frequently than the other. They that win the prize, must come first to the Mark. They fasten Deers shanks polished broad, to the soles of their feet, beclawed with Hogs-grease, because so they cannot be hindered or stoped by the cold drops of water, that in the most vehement cold weather will rise up as it were through the pores of the Ice: so it is with any Iron that is polished or greased over. For no greasing is more fit for Iron, than for the shank-bones of Deer or Bulls, that have a natural slipperiness in them. And this way to out as the Ice is clear and uncovered of snow, and is two or three fingers thick, then is the time to exercise the sports more easily and freely. But otherwise not at all, because it is never more dangerous, nor is a man nearer to his death than when he runs upon the Ice covered with a very thin snow. For the Rivers or small streams, with a silent swiftness, entering the Lakes from the shores by their corroding and continual motion prevail so far, that the Ice cannot grow thick and strong, unlesse it be frozen with the greatest Frost: yet it falls out that rash Runners, such as know not, or despite the Nature of the Ice,

running

running more boldly than warily, the Ice breaking, and drowning, with their body downward, and their heads above, cut off with the sharp Ice, as with an Axe, and so miserably left behind. But the Inhabitants seldom perish by that or the like danger, only strangers that travel to desery Countreys: who making more halt to serve them elves with the shortest way to make their discoveries, are suddenly destroyed by the fallenesse and brittlenesse of the Ice.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Inns upon the Ice for Travellers.

IT is the custome that the publick wayes which are obstructed by the fall of Woods, by reason of Tempests, should be mended by the common charge and labour, with Axes and Pick-axes: but when they are barred by the thicknesse of the Snow, they are to be opened by the passage of Cattel and Waggon going over the Snow, by every man particularly, or else the way must be made neerer the shoares of the Sea, or upon the Sea congealed, makes being set upon the Ice, whereby the way may ly open to mens habitations. But least by the same reason, the lower Germans that inhabit the Cities & Countreys of the Vandals should be stoped by the great Snows, filling the Woods and Champion wayes, in their great commerce of Merchants; they place Inns upon the Sea shores and plain Rocks, or upon the open Ice, by a wonderfull industry. For they ordain long beams, elevated two or three feet, above the Ice for a distinction of the Foundations and Houses; and upon these they build necessary Houses, and those boarded, standing side by side, and they tie a cold fire in their Stoves plentifully, (as they do all things else that are required for joyfull banquets) and tearing no craft of any spies or thieves, or deivers, they rejoyce because they have gained more security upon the Ice, than they could have in a Palace: and they stay there more securely and merrily, the sharper the cold-weather is, and the stronger the winds are: which blowing underneath the Foundations of their Inns, make them to be more firm and solid, and preierveth them untill such time as all this building about the vernal Equinoctial is dissolved by the hot blasts of the South-Wind, and is carried into the continent, no Pension being paid for their standing place. But as for the cold of that German or Getick Sea, *Albertus Crantzium* speaks many things, who was a most diligent describer of these Countries. For he saith, that in the year, 1323, the Sea was extremely Frozen, that men passed on foot over the Ice from *Lubeck* to *Denmark* & to *Prussia* by Sea, Inns being made upon the Ice in convenient places. In the year of our Lord, 1399, all the Winter the Frost bound up both Sea and Land that went dry-foot from *Lubeck* by Sea into the City *Sunden*, & from thence to *Denmark*. In the year 1523, the Frost was all the Winter incomparable never the like heard of. So that Horsemen passed from *Gedan* in *Prussia* to *Lubeck*, the same way lay'ers do, and then from *Magnopolis* by Sea into *Denmark*, having Inns upon the Ice. In the year 1594, the *Cimbrie* Sea was frozen, that men rid from *Jasbia* to *Astoria*. Moreover, though for many ages after, most bitter cold followed, and freezing of the Seas, yet because they fell so common, they are scarce found to be observed.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of the Passage upon the Ice between the Gulphs,

SInce in the former Chapter concerning Inns on the Ice, too little is spoken, by what marks Travellers are guided in Snowy and Frosty weather, that they may come to the Inns they appoint to stay at; for that the way is to plain and large on all sides, that oftimes men can see nothing but the Heavens, and Ice, and Snow, for that they attempt in the bitter Winter, to passe by the agility of Horses, where in Summer-time the greatest Ships sayle, being driven with the Winds: Therefore you must observe that the Ice being a little bored, into it Juniper or Firr-Trees at every furlongs end, standing upright are Frozen in, being set in the Sea, by the way side, especially where the Ice is grown thicker, and proved by the overseers for high ways. And if these marks were not, the fear would be no lesse, nor the danger of a mans life amongst the Gulphs on the Ice, than it would be on the open Sea, when unarmed Marriners light amongst cruel Pirates, or in a horrid desert, when men fall amongst savage Beasts: wherefore it is ordered by a most severe Law, that no man shall alter or carry off these water marks, unlesse it be in time of hostility, by reason of Spies and Traitors. And farther how dangerous it is for men to passe amongst those Gulphs formerly mentioned, I shall shew by the following reasons. But before all I must premise, that generally all lakes and standing-waters begin to be Frozen in *October*, and the Ice to be so condensed in many places by the increasing of the cold, that where no Veins or Spring-water run not into those lakes and standing-pools, the fish are found to be choked when the Ice thaws. But that this suffocation may not be too great a losse, by the diligence of the Fishermen, the Ice is constantly broken, that it may not Freeze, as I shall shew under this, in my book concerning Winter fishing. Wherefore the Ice at beginning and middle of Winter is so strong and tenacious, that at the thicknesse of two fingers a man may walk upon it, and when it is three fingers thick, a Horseman in Armour: when it is a hands breadth and halfe, whole Troops and Companies of Souldiers; when it is three or four hands breadth, a whole legion of thousands of people, as I shall shew underneath, concerning Winter Wars. This strength of the Ice, though it seem to be so strong, yet naturall Veins and exhalations, springing forth underneath in many places, do so make it cleare and open, that for a long way it will leave an empty place like a passage or path upon the Land: yet the prudent Traveller penetrateth that suture by compassing about, that he may not lose his time and appointed journey. But when such figures happen, especially at night, they are heard afar off, like cruel Thunder or Land Earth-quakes. But for all this the careful Traveller leaves nothing unattempted, but that he will go forward on his journey amongst the Whirl-pools. But when the Ice melts about the beginning of *April*, no man will trust to the thicknesse of it, and lesse to the strength thereof, unlesse it be to walk upon it in the morning: because by the Sun-shine in the day it is made so brittle, that what had a little before borne armed Horsemen, can hardly bear a man without Arms. But the Winter ways, by reason of the hardnesse of the cold, whereby they are made thicker, and more solid, will remain longer like bridges in the Lakes. But when Travellers would descend from the Ice upon the Land or contrarily, he must needs have a bridge of Planks. for the Sun heating the shore, melts all the congelation of the Ice there. I think not fit to let it pass here, that there is a Lake called *Veter*, which is 60 Italian miles long, and 20 broad, in the Kingdome of the *Ostrogots*: which is of such

a Nature, that whenic is frozen by a tempestuous wind, and the time comes for it to thaw, it begins to boyle at the bottom with a most vehement noyse, and to be moved, and with great violence to break into small chops, or iciclures, that are made in the Ice, and make these in a small time very great, though the Ice then be more than an arme or two in thicknesse; and then the upper force co-operating with it, all the Ice is divided into many small peices, upon which Travellers being left can scarce come to shore, otherwise than by the providence of God, because the force of Nature works more secretly there, and more wonderfully, than in other Lakes. Also there is a Lake neere the Metropolis of the Kingdome of Norway, called *Nidrosia*, that is never frozen.

## CHAP. XV.

## Of Instruments for the Ice.

As the people of a hot or temperate Climate seem to be free from cold, Ice, Snow, Frost and Winter noyses, so they can scarce find by what diversity of acts remedies and instruments those that live under this Northern cold, do defend and help themselves against all these sharp weathers, since it is impossible to run over the slippery Ice, or by it to transport the most weighty burdens, at so great a distance to the places appointed, unless it were done by art, to ease our strength. We spake before of wooden shoes, that were covered under with points of Iron, because they are agreeable to the seasonable use of Travellers, Fishermen and Souldiers. Moreover three points of triangles with iron points are made with three corners for going the more sure: and lastly flexible Circles with points every way, sharpened like to teeth: to all which that they may stick fast to their feet, strong bands are tied, that by that firmnesse every man may be the more secure in running or going, and any burden may be carried the better by the strength of one or two men; which otherwise in the Sand or Snow would not be drawn by the strength of horses. They have Axes also that are the chiefeft and fittest Instruments to cut all Ice: for by such instruments they open frozen Rivers for many furlongs, when they set out a Navy against Robbers: or when the Common-wealth thinks fit to mannage the businesse so, to send messengers beyond the Seas. And in this case small ships by the labour of Cattel are carried to the broad Sea in Carts from Citties and Castles suddenly upon the Ice, that by the agility of the Winds and Sayles, they may swiftly dispatch their Voyage by Sea, which they could hardly perform in many days by Beasts. They have also iron Spades made for a certain purpose, because by these, the thick and hardened Ice that will not yeeld to other iron tools is more easily broken, whilst other Axes mingled with steel in a vehement cold with a blow onely upon the Ice or a green Tree, will break like glasse, whereas the foresaid Spades of iron pears, endure strongly, moreover they have harping irons made with a crooked point, whereby the pieces of Ice broken with other instruments are more easily drawn which way they please, or thrust out also in the open Sea, at the time of the Winter Solstice, when they must not only foresee to keep off such a huge weight of Ice, that it break not their Ships, but also against the Rocks that are not seen, and lastly when they are to fight with their cruel enemies. They have also Socks, with which they can walk the more securely upon the slippery Ice, at their pleasure, in a fight on the Ice, to resist strongly, or fly away cunningly.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Warlike Obelisks of the Goths, and Stone Monuments raised.

IT was the most ancient custome of the old *Goths* and *Sueons*, that when they had had the sharpest battels in the fields or Mountains, they were wont there to raise stones, as it were *Pyramids* of the *Egyptians*: and upon these engraving, the famous *facts* with some short inscription, they supposed that the memory of their deeds should be perpetuall, as the usuall Songs composed in verses compendiously, and by succession derived to these daies, have propagated this matter to the memory of posterity. For in the Northern parts, there are seen most hard Mountains of an Ash colour, that are far harder than Marble: these sometimes by an Earth-quake or Thunder, or other motion of Nature are sometimes to be so shaken, that the stones cut forth, and falling downwards, receive the form partly of a Pyramid, and partly of square Pillars, partly of four Corners and Obelisks, as if they were made by the excellent work of Nature, and it is useless, and vain to adde any more to them. But these Pyramids or Pillars are found amongst the *Hessengi* in greater quantity than elsewhere in the North. But Obelisks of high stones, raised by the forces of Gyants, and Champions are seen no where more frequently than in the publick high wayes amongst the *Ostrogoths*, and *Vestrogots*, and *Sueons*: and also in vast desarts, which long since have been made desolate of Inhabitants, by Famine, War, Plague, and are not yet reduced to their former condition, by reason of the sluggishnesse and negligence of the Indwellers, the Land not yet, or very rarely, becoming fallow ground. And these stones, raised in very many places, are 10. or 15. or 30. foot long, and 4. or 6. foot broad, notably scintarated, but in a more wonderfull order, and with some notable Character, for many reasons were placed there: and they signifie by a learned, right long order, the battels of Champions; by a square order, Troops of Warriors: and by a round order the Burials of families: and by a wedge fashion, they shew that there, or neere that place, the Armies of Foot or Horse had there fortunately prevailed. But the writings are begun on the right hand at the foot of the stones, end in the top, and then turning about they end in the left foot; or else the letters are in the same order elevated or pressed down within. And every letter hath the thicknesse and length of the greatest finger of a man. And though many of them by the injury of weather and dirt, and many at the bottom of the stones, by length of time out of memory are eaten away, yet the like effects of them are clearly read in the same manner. I *Ulfio fighting for my Country, killed 32. Champions, and at last slain by the Champion Rolvo, rest here.* Moreover: I *Jugolvas that conquered all violent men, and defended the oppressed, being full of Scars, and grown old, girt about with my sword, am placed here, when as other men sought for glory by Wars, I Halsten striving for peace, deserved immortal praise.*

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of Obelisks for Sepulchres.

BUT neither the old *Goths* nor other Northern Nations, wanted a Remembrance of their Ancestors, but for those they were pleased to lay up in the ground, they set up Honourable Statues of high stones, as we see at this day mighty stones wonderfully joyned together, like to a most high and broad gate, raised

raised upwards and overthwart by the strength of Giants, especially two large miles from the City *Scare* as one goes to the Church of *Kelby* upon a Rock. For there are seen in the High-way three most huge Stones (as I said before) most curiously engraven with *Gothick Characters*. And if any man who is a curious searcher for such like stones, would go over *Deiarts*, as well as open *Fie ds*, to search for them, he shall find infinite Spectacles, that I need not now be more tedious to mention. But there may be one cause more ready, by reason that not far from that most ancient City *Scare* there was a Kingly Castle called *Aarvanes*, (whereof I shall speak particularly elsewhere) about which in former Ages and Generations most cruel Wars were fought: Concerning which my most dear Brother and Predecessour *John*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, writ wonderful things.

There are also amongst the *Ostrogothi*, and the Upper *Sarons*, Castles of great and Noble-men, built every where in the Countries, in places fortified by Nature: near whole Walls and Fields, you shall see huge Stones of the Antients, stuck fast in the ground, in a wedge fashion, round, long, and upright situation: the upper parts whereof being adorned with some Writings of the *Goths*, do teach, as it were by the command of some Governour then living, what their Successours ought to fly from or follow; namely, to embrace *Verue*, and to detest *Vice*, &c. Nor may we doubt but in that Age the like Edict was observed in the *Northern Countries* against the embalming of the bodies of wicked Princes and Tyrants, that they should not have a seemly burial. The Obelisks of good Princes, and Stone Monuments, are yet plainly seen: many years before the *Catholick Faith* was planted in the *Northern Kingdoms*, Signed with the Sign of the *Cross*, having such like Inscription: *After that I, seduced by the fraud of Devils, had erred, I Germundus dy converted to the God of the Christians, and here lie buried expecting his Judgment: Morco et elsewhere upon a Stone these words are found; I Holmstam being dead, who had relinquished worshipping of Idols, am living in the Faith of Christ.*

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of Stones with Figures, &amp;c.

Also in other places there are found very broad Stone Tables, and very high set into the Earth, by the strength of Giants, having the Images of Dragons, Serpents, and Bears, engraven upon them: against which they observed no effect triumph, than against armed Enemies; as I shall shew underneath in the Book of Giants and Champions. Moreover there are huge Stones set upon the Shores of Waters, which shew in old Character: *That in those places some Noble-men, by divers accidents of Rivers, Tempests, Lightnings, Whirlwinds, or Robbers, were killed.* And from thence the Name imposed, endureth to perpetual Cenerations.

There are also high Stones, by the aspect and signature whereof, the ancient Possessions of Provinces, Governments, Forts, Communities of Noble and Country-men, are suffered to continue to every man in peace, without Laws, Suits, or Arbitration, giving an Example to other Nations, that amongst these Nations there is more Right to be found in these Stones, than are Boundmarks, than elsewhere in the large Volumes of Laws, where men think themselves to be more learned and civil. There are also Stones on the Shores that are very high, without Writings, by the industry of the Antients, turned towards unfaithful Ports, without any notable Sign, informing the Mariners, that they may avoid shipwreck.

There is also a huge round Stone, having about 12. lesser Stones lying near it, with Wedge fashioned Stones, raised a little from the Earth, not far from the Metropolis

Metropolis of *Upsal*, called *Morasten*: Upon which a new King to be chosen, is received by an infinite company of people that are present, and afterwards is confirmed with more *Solemn Ceremonies* by the *Catholick Bishops*, taking an Oath before-hand to defend the Faith.

## CHAP. XIX.

## Of Dials with Shadows.

You must know that the Inhabitants of the farthest North, that dwell beyond the 86. Degree of the Elevation of the North Pole, have no use of a Sun-Dial, such a one as *Anaximenes Milesius*, the *Lacedemonian*, is first said (as *Pliny* writes) to have found out; nor of any other Diall that is made with Weights, Wheels, Waters, Measures, by Lines and Distances: but they use only the high Stones of Rocks, that are placed partly by Nature, partly by Cunning, that by an infallible Conjecture, do over-shadow the Sun-Beams, and distinguish the parts of the Day: as also in Winter both by Night and Day (the Moon not shining) they clearly measure the Account of Times by Experience, by the Cries and Actions of Birds and Beasts; whereof there are infinite companies there, and they are content with such obelisks or Rural Marks.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of Sticks to design the Times by.

As both the *Latine* and *Greek* Authors testify, that the *Goths* have a perfect Experience in Arms and Military Disciplines; so also the *Gothick* Writers say that they have both at home and abroad, the knowledge of many profitable things, and experiments thereof, especially the knowledge of the Stars, whereby they can for the most part divine future things. For the *Goths*, both old and young, have a Staff, marked with the Characters of the *Goths*, so engraven, that it may be seen, by what Instruments in old time, when there was no use of Books, they knew by infallible Events the influences of the Moon, Sun, and the other Stars, as at this day almost all the Inhabitants acknowledge: Wherefore a Stone made so long as a man on both sides, with the number of the Weeks of the Year; for every week having 7. *Gothick Letters*, whereby the *Golden Numbers*, and *Dominical Letters* (after Christianity was embraced) are distinguished in their Country Language and Figures: Nor did they use other Books in the manifold Revolution of Times, for the interpretation of the Stars. Moreover, Fathers instruct their Lay-Sons, and Mothers their Daughters, at home on Holy-days, or at their coming to Church, that they are daily made more perfect, as well by Learning as by Experience. For by an old Custom of the Nation, the *Lacks* lean upon these Stakes, in long Journeys they take to visit Country-Churches; and so meeting together, by alleging certain Reasons, they shew the qualities of the following year, by more true conjectures, than perchance others can by their speculative Sciences, or that rely on their juggling *Prognostications*.

Moreover they wonderfully observe the *Arctic Pole*, as the *Gnomon* of the whole *Heavenly Dial*; also the *Bears*, or *Wans*, *Venus's* Distaff and Spindle, as familiar Signs of their ancient Diety; and by looking into the Nature of them, they wonderfully provide for Accidents that shall happen.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the Goths Alphabet.

OF most antient time, when there were Gyants in the *Northern* parts, that is, long before that *Latine Letters* were found out, and before that *Carmen-ta* came out of *Greece*, to the Ports of *Tyber*, and came to the *Romane* Land with *Evander*, and expelling the *Aborigines*, taught that rude people, and almost wild, both Manners and Letters, the *Northern* Countries had their own Letters: A Token whereof is shewed by Stones of a huge bigneis, fattened on the Tombs and Monuments of the Antients. And if any man doubt of what was done by the force of Gyants in old time, let him come thither, and he shall see greater Wonders that will amaze him, more then any Writing can promise or perform. Wherefore they carving these Actions upon Stones, left them to perpetual memory, as I read in the first Book and 7. Chapter, of the History of my most dear Brother *John Magnus*, my Predecessour, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*. Also others for private accounts, like the *Egyptians*, used many Figures of Living Creatures, instead of Letters and do yet use them by a Domestick Ingenuity; as I shal shew underneath by & by: Some like to these are to be seen now at *Rome* amongst the old *Obelisks*, wherein several Letters signified a several name; as a *Wolf*, a covetous man; A *Fox*, a deceitful person; A *Bee*, the King; because it behoves the Governour of the people, to have the *Honey of Clemency*, mingled with the *Sting of Justice*. Moreover, as Epistles written in Paper are now sent amongst men, so formerly the *Northern* people appointed Letters engraven upon Wood, for a famous kind of Paper to be sent from one to the other; and now adayes when they want Paper in the Camp of Souldiers, or in the besieging of Cities, they fely use the Bark of Birch, cut into leaves, or thin plates, to write their Letters upon; and it is so much the safer, for that this Rind is spoiled by no accident of Rain or Snow. Moreover there are found some *Northern* people of so quick wit, who having never learned *Latine Letters*, nor yet the Alphabet of the *Goths*, they make an Alphabet for themselves, from the Figures and Instruments of Things, and they use these to help their Memories, writing them single on a Skin, Paper, or Rind. And they communicate this *Secret* to none but such as are of their own Families, causing Ink to be made of a Cole powdered, and Milk, or Common Water.

OLAVS

OLAVS MAGNUS  
THE  
GOTH,  
Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

CONCERNING  
The Wonderful Nature of *Northern*  
Things.

An Epitome of the Second Book.

## CHAP. I.

Of Veins of Brimstone, and Combustion of  
the Waters.

Here are some Veins of Brimstone, neer to the Rivers of Waters, which being often kindled very wide, like to flames, they spread ready to destroy all round about: which sight, the Inhabitants in *Iceland*, and *Scotland*, very cold Countries, behold by a continual increase of heat: Moreover in the *South Goths* Land, not far from the City *Vexian*, there is a champion and muddy Lake; which by its fiery vertue, doth as it were in a moment, or in a very short time, boyl or burn whatsoever is let down into it to be boyled, and drawn up again with a Cord. And it is found out, that the like Lake neer to the Metropolis of *Nidrosium*, in the Kingdome of *Norway*, hath the same Nature, especially from this Argument, That in the greatest cold it never freezes.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the Admirable Nature of some Mountains.

I Believe that the whole World have had the Experience, of what Nature the Mountains of *Iceland* are; because beyond the Relation of the Antients, in our *Geibick* Maps, that may serve to supply the Description of *Ptolomey*, we shew the Scituation and Nature of these Mountains to be singular; namely that there is on the top of them almost a perpetual Snow, and at the bottome a fire of Brimstone, alwayes burning forth without any consuming of it self. Those that come too near are easily choked by the force of the dult and sparks, and especially because many burning Gulphs, in many places, appear with the Ashes of burnt Mountains and Valleys: which again growing, know by a silent increase of Brimstone, as it were in a circular measure of time, are disposed again for combustion. For there are within the Bounds of *Norway*, most vast and most high Mountains, that men are ascending four days, and as many dayes are they coming down.

## CHAP. III.

A Description of *Iceland*, and of the Nation there.

*Iceland* is a Land lying under the *North Pole*, opposite to the Winds, especially to the South-Weit, and neer to the Frozen Sea, and therefore it is deservedly called *The Frozen Countrey*, or *The utmost Thule*; which was celebrated by all the Antiebrs; whose Inhabitants are said by *Saxo Sialandicus*, to be most continent; and very good Christians in Religion, having their own Writings, and a History of things acted valiantly: And they now write the Acts of their own Time, which they honour with Songs and Rimes, and they engrave them on Promontories, or Rocks, that they can never fail Posterity, unless it fall out by some injury of Nature. The situation of the *Iland* is extended between the *South* and *North*, a hundred *German* miles in length: For the greatest part, it is mountainous, and not manured, especially toward the *North Countrey*, by reason of the sharp blasts of the aforesaid *South-Weit* Wind, which will not let any Shrubs to grow: It is an *Iland* to be praised, for the extraordinary Miracles in it; for there is a Rock or Promontory in it, that boyls like to Mount *Etna*, with perpetual fires; and there it is supposed that the place of Hell is, and of *Purgatory*, to purge foul souls. For there are found Spirits or Ghosts, shewing themselves open for mens Ministry, or by reason of some violent chance where men are killed, some Apparitions do offer themselves so manifestly to lye with those they know, that they are received by ignorant people, as though they were alive; and they shake hands with them; and the Error is not perceived, untill these Visions be vanished. The Inhabitants very often preface the fates of Princes; and by the Revelation of Ghosts appearing, they are not ignorant what is done at a great distance from them in the World.

## CHAP. 4.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Horrible sound of the hollow Caves by the shores of the Sea.

Moreover there is in the Northern parts, a notable Province called *Anger Mannia*, the Inhabitants whereof are most cunning hunters: for by that gaine, namely by selling of precious hides, they obtaine great wealth. There are also excellent husbandmen, so that they know how by the benefit of the Snow and fire, not only to make plain fields, but also the high ndes of Mountains to become fruitful grounds. For they put fire about the Aurummal Equinoctial into the thick shrubs and herbs, and they so carefully dispose of the ashes and dult that ariseth thence against the fall of the Snow that will come upon it, that by the viscosity thereof they grow as fat as with Ox dung? Hence it is that they carry off from thence a greater crop of Corn, and have a more plentiful harvest. But I shall speak of these things underneath concerning husbandry. For this Province hath many most high Mountains, the tops whereof make a high appearance to those that sail in the *Botrick Sea*, all the yeare by reason of the constant whitenesse of the Snow, so that seeing this eminent Sea-mark, they can avoid many hideous dangers, and more securely come to safe Havens. Moreover when they come to the bottoms of them, which stand in the deepest Seas, either by some accident or purpose of Nature, they are so frighted by the high roling waves, that unless they can escape with fast rowing down, or by a strong wind, they are almost killed with fear alone; and in many days they can scarce recover their former health of mind and body, by reason of the trouble of their heads. The bottoms of those Mountains have winding creeks at the entring and going out of the waters, or cliffs made by the wonderful work of Nature, wherein by reason of the long cavities, that formidable noise is made like to Thunder under the ground, the cause whereof when rash youth hath gone in to seek more curiously than securely, their ships have been presently filled with waters from the cliffs above, and by the force of the winds, that they have lost their lives with admiration. But to avoid this danger, the wonderful height of the Mountains, by the Snow that lies alwayes on the tops of them, do clearly warn Sea-men a far off to take heed, and to prevent the danger, least nature which is the Mother of this inscurable noise, might seem to have provided no remedy against this secret and subtil danger. Also for many miles that terrible sound flying through the Ayre, being sent from the same Mountains, is heard by the Mariners, warning them to escape and fly far from the ruine of that sad noise, for if they be neerer, they cannot away with it. But what *Vincenius* in *Spec. hist. lib. 31. cap. 24.* thought of the like matter, I shall shew in his own words. Amongst the Tatars there is a certain small Mountain, wherein there is reported that there is a hole, whence in Winter such great tempests of winds come forth, that men can hardly, and that with great danger passe by it. In Summer time there is alwayes heard a noise of the winds, but little comes forth at the hole. But in the Northern Lakes that are Frozen, under the Ice, by reason of the wind inclosed, no lesser noise is heard than of a most cruel Thunder, shut in on all sides by the thicknesse of the Clouds, Of this I shall shew something in the Chapter concerning fishing in the Ice.

## D

## CHAP.



## CHAP. V.

*Of the Rock of the Sea-Monk.*

There is a high Mountaine in the Sea, it was formerly under the dominion of the rich Kingdom of *Norway*, neer to the Island *Tarens*, which the Mariners by a conformable appellation call, the *Monk*. For it hath by its naturall situation and incision of parts, especially of the Crown, a wrought hood, and also the propriety of it, so that in cruel tempests all that fly to it are consoled and received securely. Moreover wo to all those that being driven by the violence of wind, cannot come to the skirt of it, or to ride neere it: because the South-West winds are so fierce there, and the North winds, that Mariners who would avoid the sharpness thereof, are constrained every moment with all their skill and force, and labour, and experience to look unto it, and to watch, how they may escape to that *Monk* as the most secure port. Moreover in the Northern Seas, there are many high Mountains that are signes as it were of secure Ports, that are to be made against what tempest whatsoever, or calmness of weather. But before the entrance of them there lye hid many blind Rocks, which as they drown'd many Ships when the wind is but small, so when there is a tempest, they save them more wonderfully, by reason of the waves of the Sea rising high. There are also Mountaines of Faulcons, Eagles, Crows, that these security to Mariners that retire, or a caution to those that shun them, that they may not come neere to them. Moreover there are Mountaines of strife, and most strong Castles, especially in East-*Finland*, raised upon the mouths of the Rocks by reason of the Warrs with the *Muscovite*, and they are so fortified by Nature and Art, that the besiegers which way soever they make their approach, may more easily intercept the Mountaines than they can the forts.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Crowned Rock, and the multitude of Fish.*

That no work of Nature may be concealed, it is here shewed that in the the Western *Bothnia* toward the utmost parts of the North, in the Parish of *Lula*, and Diocesse of *Upsall*, there is a Rock in the Sea, men call it commonly *Witoa Blubben*, which with its high top is seen by those that sail farr from it, to have three tops, or else to be round. And if the Inhabitants want the Aspect, shadow or harbour of it, who are most skillfull fishermen at Sea, their way would not be safe, nor could they find food convenient. For by the wonderful height of it, when a most thick darkness of the Clouds rose, being seen in the middle of the waters (as I had tryal of it in the yeare, 1519) those that are out of their way are saved. For so great use to be the obscurity of the darkness and ayre condensed, that one that in a small Ship holds the fore-Castle, can scarce be discerned to the hinder Cattle. But by applying to the shore, there is such an infinite multitude of fish to be seen at the foot of the Mountaine, here and there, that one is much amazed to behold it, and is satisfied in his stomack by it. For part of this fish being sprinkled with Sea water in the plain at the foot of the Mountaine, and to be torrefied by the wind, is wont to be dispersed upon the earth for 2, or 3, Acres of ground: and part of them are put upon spears, and stretched upon the hatches of the Ship, especially the fishes of the greater kind, that they may be dried in the Sun and Aire.

But

But they are all kept either to spend in their Houses, or for to make profit of by Merchandise, and also for their necessities and pleasures beyond Seas, but chiefly that by bartering with them, they may provide themselves with plenty of Corn, (which doth slenderly grow ripe there, by reason of the cold round about) and that they may be able to afford them to Country people in place of dainties, and againe they may receive costly skins which are the Country wealth, in lieu of them. At the foot therefore of this Crown'd Mountaine, there ariseth a smell of fish hanged up, that such who at a long distance saile that way, can smell it coming to them. And when they perceive that smell, though they be tossed in a tempestuous dark night, they know how to preserve themselves and their goods from eminent Ship-wrack.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Flowing and Ebbing of the Sea.*

There are certain Bosoms of the Sea, in my *Gabrick* Map, or Description of the Northern Countries, that are engraved on the shore of *Norway*; namely *Roeft*, and *Lo-Hoeth*; betwixt which, so great is the Gulf, that the Mariners that come thither unawares, are in a moment sucked in by its sudden circumvolution, all force and industry of the Pilot being taken away, especially, those who know not the Nature of the place, or are otherwise driven on by the force of Tempests; or that, by contempt, little regard this imminent danger: Wherefore those that would sail thither from the Coasts of *Germany*, hire the most experienced Mariners and Pilots, who have learned by long Experience, how by steering obliquely, and directing their course, they may avoid the danger better: and these are wont to bend their course over a great part of the Sea, by direction of a *Compass*; that they may not fall into the *Gulph*; and chiefly about the most populous Cities *Andanes*, and *Trondanes*, and three other Islands, where part of the Sea is called *Adosta Sroom*; in which place the Flood is greater then in other waters about it. Also the Sea there, within the hollow Cave, is blown in when the Flood comes, and when it ebbs, it is blown out, with as great force as any Torrents or swift Floods are carried. This Sea, as it is said, is sailed in with great danger, because such who sail in an ill time, are suddenly sucked into the Whirl-pools that run round. The Remainers of Shipwracks, are feldome restored again; and if they be restored again, they are so broken against the Rocks, that they seem all in divers, and covered with hoariness.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of Charybdis, and the Wonderful Nature of Ice.*

In the Chapter immediately before, was said, how dangerous it is to sail in the Seas of *Norway* especially where the Mariners are put in hazard by a vast Gulph; the reason whereof is inscrutable, unless they be very provident to prevent it. For here the Nights are very long, most bitter cold, and hidden Rocks are in many places, like to Towers, and there are most hideous Sea-Monsters, and terrible; as I shall shew underneath concerning *Monsters*. Moreover, the Ice is very hard, like to the walls of huge houses, cast down with Tempests, which are ready to cause inevitable ship-wracks: yet all these are more tolerable, in

D 1

undertaking



undertaking any dangerous Voyage, than to try the mercy of the *Irish* Nation; which (as I can prove by many Examples here omitted) are wont to invite men in misery with tears, that when they have spoiled them of their Goods, they may send them half dead to their torn ships. But what belongs to admitting the Nature of the *Ice*, this is a certain Rule; *That the Ice (as Saxo testifies) is brought in great shoals upon the Island shore; and if a piece of it be kept in a vessel, though with great diligence it will presently melt; but the rest of the Ice of that kind goes back from the Promontory into the Deep: yet it is preserved in vast Desarts, especially under Juniper Bubbles, and also under the Chaff of huge Barns, and under the shingles of Pitch-trees when the Sun is yet in Leo; and Drunkards that take their pleasure, take it out from thence, in the heat of Summer and melt it in Wine or Beer, But none put in Snow to drink any Liquour with, because it is clammy, and not purged from it; for there are in it secret reed-worms, like as woollen cloth hath.*

## CHAP. IX.

### Of the Leather-ships made of Hides, used by the Pyrats of Greenland.

**H**ere I shall shew the passage from the Port *Vestrahord* of the same Island, to the high Rock in the Sea called *Hutisark*, which is half the way to *Greenland*; wherein there is found a kind of Pyrats, that use *Leather-ships*, and by an arbitrary Navigation not so much above as beneath, they lye in wait, boiling holes in the ships of Merchants about the Pump. I saw two of these *Leather-ships* in the year 1505. above the West-part, within the Cathedral Church, also, dedicated to *St. Halvard*, and they were hanged up against the Wall, as to be seen; which *Haquinus*, King of the same Countrey, passing near the shores of *Greenland*, with a Warlike Navy, was reported to have taken, when they thought to have drowned his ships. For the Inhabitants of that Countrey are wont to get no small profits by the spoils of others, by theie and the like treacherous arts, who by their thieving wit, and by boring a hole privately in the sides of the ships beneath (as I said) lye in the water, and presently cause them to sink.

## CHAP. X.

### Of the inscrutable Depths of the Coasts of Norway.

**S**o unmeasurable is the Depth in many Mountainous Coasts of *Norway*, that men can find no bottom with Cords, as many as a ship can hold, the Plummer of Lead being let down; and such is the force of Nature, that the higher the Mountains are, the more inscrutable is the depth of the water at the foot of them; though their height, in respect of Heaven, is held to be very small above the Earth: All the feet of the Mountains are so hollow and deep, and crooked, that setting down plumb Lines, it can hardly be known which way their hollownels bends. Moreover in the Island *Bernholm*, which is under the King of *Denmark*, there are some Lakes found not very large, whose depth cannot be sounded. Lastly, by the *Dalacarly*, by the Mountains, that is, men of the Valleys, there is the Lake *Rundon*, therefore called Round, because the ground of it cannot be measured. Moreover, not far from the Kings Palace *Holm* in *Sweden*, there is a place amongst the Rocks of the Seas, commonly called *Rundisvalin*, that is, the Round Gulph, that there one cannot find how deep it is to the bottom of it. Further, many more Pits and small Lakes are found, whose

whose depth hath been often sought for, but could never be found. There are seen also very long, but very narrow Caves of Rocks and Mountains, as if they were cut out, and made hollow with Iron Instruments, running into dark places of Retreat, wherein the waters making a noise, that come thither by Tempest, or by calm Weather, a terrible sound is raised: from which, unless such as come near, quickly with-draw themselves, their Ears are so overcome with a mighty noise in them, that for many hours they remain deaf, and hear nothing, by reason of the violence of the Object.

## CHAP. XI.

### Of the Ports of Iron Rings.

**I** shewed in the former Chapter, how inscrutable the depth of the Sea is upon the Coasts of *Norway*, between the most high Mountains: now I shall shew how between the Winding Gulphs and Rocks, those that sail thither, may more securely, without Anchors, find and fashion their stations. Wherefore here are seen Iron Rings, larger then a Souldiers Buckler, fastned in melted Lead, at the sides of many Mountains, as the Sea runs on, by the munificence of good Princes, and at their cost, especially toward the rich City *Berge*, that when the Flood or Tempest urgeth, Cords being suddenly put in the greatest ships ride safe, as in secret places. But it behoves them not to be ignorant of the ways, who commit themselves to so dangerous a Labyrinth: For the Coast is so full of Rocks, that such who know not the way, can scarce go forward or backward from thence. Also by reason of the difficulty, and roughness of that and the like places (as I shall shew underneath more particularly, concerning ships of enemies) they will suffer shipwreck; and if ships of War, or of Pyrats, come thither with force of Enemies, or are driven in by Tempests, being destitute of counsel and help, they are oft-times consumed by Famine, Cold, or by the Inhabitants that set upon them, and are made a miserable spectacle, as though they fought against the Elements. And if any man read the Chronicles of *Norway* and *Denmark*, especially about *Christian* the second King thereof, he shall find a most horrible infelicity in all, concerning the lamentable event in such like cases. Wherefore the Enemies are often frightened from entering within these Rocks, least they should be more severely broken in pieces, and more secretly, by the open of secret Rocks between the Mountains, and in the Gulphs, than by any open Enemies.

## CHAP. XII.

### Of the Dangerous Passage of the Mountains, Scars and Sula, between Sweden, and Norway.

**T**here is a Province in the Northern Kingdoms called *Jemphithia*, that is subject to the Arch-bishop of *Upsal*, with the Manor or Court of *Vesterhusia*, time out of mind. From which *Jemphithia*, over those very high Mountains spoken of in the Title, the Inhabitants of the Land, and Strangers in Summer time, make no less terrible, than dangerous Voyage: who yet in Winter over the Frozen Lakes, Pools, and Rivers, can make a shorter cut, and go which way they please. For these huge Mountains, the like whereof are scarce found in *Europe*, on the Eastern part, at the entrance at the foot, have Gates or Passages of most hard Flint, partly cut by Nature, and partly at the charge of bountiful Princes

Princes of Old, either hewed out, or bored through for the publick good. Behind which, between the sides of the Mountains, so great Cold is felt even in the middle of Summer, that unless Travellers, as they do in Winter, fortifie themselves well with Cloths, they almost run an irremediable danger by a sudden change of the Air, until such time as they can pass out of the hollow places of these Mountains, and cold Valleys. Then such as must come down from the mountains, by many dayes Journey, are oft-times in greater danger, where there are Hanging-Bridges fastned on the sides with wooden props from the mountains, which seem to be half broken, by reason of the falling of the Snow and Tempests, that pull up Trees by the Roots, or great Stones that tumble down. And men in this distress have no other hope to rely on; but because they expect a repair of these Bridges by a common industry of the Inhabitants; for there is no way about through the most high Valleys to be found. When Travellers find before-hand that these and such like Accidents are like to befall them, they bring sufficient expences along with them, as if they were there to lay siege to some castle, and were to continue there to defend it: they otherwise take no great care for their Cattle, because they have the commodity of grass and water enough. For in all the passage from the flux of mountains, there run forth most abundant Fountains, that are commended by all for their pleasant taste. But it is no wonder that Travellers should suffer so great difficulties there; because by reason of the high precipices of Rocks, that can hardly be avoided, or mended, all things seem that they ought to be weighed by a most sagacious Wit, especially when in one the situation is unpassible, and the other is full of ruinous heaps and stones. Moreover the Bounds are so narrow, that they will make both men and beasts giddy-headed, especially such as are not used to them, and their eyes will dazle at it, and they will fall down irreparably.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Statues on the Ways, in the Snowey Mountains.

THE Mountains also are called by another vulgar name *Dosfrasil*, or if you please *Dostrini*, that divide Sweden from Norway, of so great bulk and height, that for many dayes journeys, they always appear white, by reason of the Snow not melted, to them that travel East or West, as if they were white Clouds, condensed in the most High Air: Whence it comes to pass, that such who travel that way, by reason of the sudden fall of Snows, seem to be shut up in the wayes, and they are forced to use as much labour to come forth of them, as if they were fast bound in the Ice, and laboured to get out. Wherefore it is provided by the magnificency of ancient Kings, (who were formerly most godly in Norway) that high Statues cut out of the Quarries of Stone, may be seen raised upon the tops of the mountains, and they are firmly bound fast with Lead or Iron, that they be not cast down by the violence of the Winds. Also it is found in *Swethland*, that little Birds in flying, have made great Snow-Balls, by the augmentation, and fall whereof, when the South Wind blows, Forts and Villages have been beaten down: yet there is an Inn in these Mountains *Dostrini*, wherein Travellers in this desperate Voyage, may recreate themselves; but they have no Wine.

## CHAP. XIV.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of Passage in the Dark.

Sometimes also, when either profit or necessity urgeth them, the people of the North have a very ingenious manner, to pass through Woods in the night time; and also in the day time, when in the most remote parts Northward, before and after the Winter *Solstice*, there is a continual Night. And they that want these Remedies, search out for corrupted Bark or Oke; and these they place at a certain distance in the way they purpose to go, that by the Light thereof they may travel which way they please. And it is not the Bark only that will do this, but the body rotten; and that *Mushrom* called *Agarick*, that grows on the top of a Tree bearing Acorns, whose Vertue and Nature it is to shine in the Night; as also those Winged-Worms, that fly to the *Autumnal Equinoctial*: but these, because they presently fall, being killed with cold, are used for no use. Wherefore more frequently they gather the putrid Oke, and *Agarick*, that discover themselves by their own light, for the foresaid use in Woods; and at home also; that by the light of it, as by a lighted candle, they may more securely go into places full of combustible matter, as are Barns for Winter, that are full of ripe Corn and Hay. Also there are some men there so sharp sighted, who will boast, that without any material Light, they can almost see and handle all things.

## CHAP. XV.

## Of Lights, and Pitch-Torches.

THE North people being subject to most long nights, use divers kind of Lights, that they may do their necessary Offices for their Household benefit. Wherefore we acknowledge, that men who live under the Pole, live by using the fat of Sea-monsters in Winter time, in doing all their occasions. They call this fat by a vulgar name *Traan*, or *Lyse*, from Lighting; for put into Lamps, it shines most clearly and largely, especially in the houses of great Families, and in Churches, where there is required a perpetual Light in reverence to the Lords Body.

But least it should be drank up by Night-Ravens, or Owls, or Bats, they keep the mouth of the Lamps always shut with Iron Bars.

Moreover they use in all the North, Pine-Tree Torches, that have natural Pitch upon them, by reason of an universal scarcity; as also other common Candles: namely this way, that employing both their hands, they put the shingles of Pine-Tree, finely divided to a certain number, under their Girdles; which burning at the other end, they hold in their mouthes, or under their Hats: and thus they walk which way they please, being hindered by no blasts of wind, and do what other things they are minded to do. Some of them use to light common candles, as long as ones arm, according to the length of the night. But in the time of Wars, which are more frequently fought in the dark long Winter, than in Summer, they go through their Troops of Horses and Foot, with Torches of the best pitch, and better made with the Resin of the Fir-tree.

## CHAP. 16.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Breaking forth of Standing-waters.

**A**Mongst the wonders of the Northern parts, the sight of waters is one; which is not so frequent as hurtfull to the Inhabitants of the Province of *Swiaenlens* toward the upper places of *Sweden*, where commonly is the greater part of men, they are called Huns, as being people which formerly did more famously make warre against, and Triumph over the Huns. In that Province there is a vast River, the falling of the water whereof, is carried down with so steep a descent, that it oftentimes beats down Creatures that cannot swim strongly; For flowing from the top of high Mountaines whilist it is broken by the Cliffs of Rocks, and runs into them, it falls into the deep Valleys with a main noise of waters. But being alwaies beaten back by stones in the way, it runs alwaies at the same pace and with force. Therefore in all the Channel, the water being every where troubled alike, there is alwaies a white froth upon it. Yet the terrible nature of it is to be considered in this, that every year a little before the Summer solstice, in three places it is filled and bound up with so great a heap of Ice and Trees, fast together, that those who dwell beneath the lower banks of this Channel, when it is ready to break forth, are forced to fly to higher grounds. But in the mean-time they send forth Scouts to find in what part that terrible breach is like to be made, least the swift course of it, should do great mischief, wherefore the River it selfe, though in every breach it makes, it lyes upon all the neighbours to it, yet by the abundance of choise fish, as Salmon and others, it brings great wealth to them all: which do not only serve to supply the Inhabitants there, but they transport them into foreign parts beyond the Seas in great Ships: and it perpetually retunes this virtue, that the nearer it flows to the Channels of the Sea, the more it abounds with better fish. Nor are they wanting in a liberall and free offering and giving of fish, if any stranger come that please to accept of them by way of gift.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the three famous Lakes of the Goths.

**T**here are many famous Lakes in Northern Climates, that are wonderfull for their magnitude and situation; the chief whereof is in the Country of the *Vestrogots*, called *Vener*, which is 130 *Italian* miles in length, and almost as many in breadth, which is divided into many and various Islands, and being charged with many vast Rivers that run into it, and whose very large, about 24, it hath but one place to run out, whereof I shall speak underneath by and by. In this Lake and about it there are many magnificent houses of noble men, the chief whereof is the Castle *Leckio*, built upon a high Rock, by the work of the Bishops of *Scars*, having a well in it cut out of the hard stone above 200. feet deep. This cutting was not done with iron instruments alone, but by flame which was daily fed with 300. fustell fitches of Bacon successively day by day, fire being put in and taken out. For it is found by experience that nothing will sooner penetrate the hard Rock there, than laid and hogs grease. There are also adjoining to this Lake many ancient Towns, as *Lindocopia* and *Trigallia*, which out of mines of the most choise iron and steel make a plentiful gain. There is also another Lake called *Fether*, that hath waters so clear and bright

bright, though they are of a perfect green colour, that a man may see a hallepenny at the bottom of it, which is very deep. Above this Lake, there is a famous Monastery of St. *Brigit*, otherwise *Brigid*, and another daughter St. *Catharina*, which was founded and endowed by the wealth and devotion of them both. Moreover there is another Town called *Jonacopia*, in the Southern parts, memorable to all following ages, by reason of the magnificent Parliaments of the Kings. There are also Mines in this Lake that cannot be exhausted, toward the Coast that is opposite to the North. Lastly there is the Monastery *Alvastrå*, that was sumptuously built, and endowed in the times of St. *Bernard*. Neere this place in the Village *Talsfada*, King *Suercherus* was killed, on Christs Birth night by his own groom, who used a bridle for weapons. The third Lake is called *Melet*: on the banks whereof are built Cities, and Magnificent Houses of Noble men. Moreover not far from thence on the firm land, there are unexhausted Mines of Silver, Copper, and iron, that are rich beyond mans estimation. And hence it comes that the King of *Sweden* and *Goths* is no way inferior in all manner of treasure and riches to the rest of the Princes of Europe. Also there are Lakes of fresh water in the Mountaines of *Lapponia* called *Lalarfesch*, that are in length 300 *Italian* miles, and 120 in breadth. Moreover there are many more collateral standing waters besides, and Lakes not altogether so long and broad, so full of fish, that the like are not found in all Europe, I may say in the whole world. Then there is the most famous Lake *Albus* under the Pole: said of all *Pemthen* in *Finland*, with such like infinite Lakes, standing waters, Rivers and deep minerals.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of dangerous Caves.

**I** said in the Chapter before, that 24. great Rivers ran into that one Lake *Vener*, from the most high Mountains of *Sweden* & *Norway*. And although at their entrance they make a great noise, and are full of whirl-pits, all the way it descends; yet the Mountains for so large a circuit making resistance, they never find any more but one place to run forth, and this is so swift and lowd, that it may be heard above 20 *Italian* miles. The common name is *Trolstena*, that is the Devils coul, it may be by reason of the noise and sound it makes when it falls into a laky plain, or because under the head long descent of it, there is found a most notable den of Thieves: to which there was a narrow passage, that none frequented but Thieves and Robbers, because that River is swift, and full of Whirl-pits, and so it was not suspected, that Malefactors did meet there especially in Summer. But in the Winter they were taken by reason of the exhalation of smoke, and so were suddenly drawn to punishment, and all their spoils of most precious stuffe, of Silver, Gold, and costly skins, were confiscate to the King. But no lawfull accuser coming against them in half a yeare, to whom there might be made restitution of the goods stolen from him, as it is according to law and custome, by the Kings command, to maintaine the publick peace, with them ships were built, and these were sent into Rivers that run into the Sea, or were depured by the wiidome of provincall Governours to defend the ditches and walls.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of the Excellent antiquity of the Kingly Fort Aaranes of the Vestrogoths.

Though formerly the Princes of the *Goths* were more enflamed to wars, than they took pleasure in any other delights, for they held war to be the chiefest comfort both to their bodys and minds, to handle the hard weapons, and in most cruel battles to win divers Triumphs. Yet many of them standing how to add to this delight something more magnificent, they left to their posterities sumptuous and profitable buildings: even as one *Scarinnus* the third Monarch of the *Goths*, a most mighty Prince is found to have done by a singular example, especially in the Country of the *Vestrogoths* which he did illustrate with his more frequent presence; and that by reason of a neighbour King of *Norway* *Sidagernus*; to whom as he was allied by blood, so also he desired to be more near to him in the situation of his Country, and in friendship. He built so wisely the City *Scata* called so, from his own name in a place amongst the *Vestrogoths* that was fenced about with Lakes and standing waters, as his successors have been unwise to let it fall down and come to desolation. This was the ancient seat of the Kingdom of the *Goths*. But not far from it, there are some prints remaining of another Kingly Castle, called *Aaranes*, the situation whereof walls and structure do so allure the beholders to admire it, that they firmly judge that no more stately building at that time was to be found in all Europe: But what will not length of time change? Yet the signs of those ruins put posterity in mind of the magnificence of their ancestors. This Castle had about it all commodities, which never any seat of mortall men could aske & obtaine from Heaven. For on the one side it had toward the West and North the vast Lake *Vener* so full of fish, as we said before, to furnish the Kings Table with delights: on the other side toward the South for a long space, for a perpetuall security, there was a muddy dirty Lake, the superficies whereof was all covered with green grasse, and shrubs, upon which a man cannot goe, and if he do but tread upon it, it sucks him in. For the mud sinking down, it turns to Clayie Bogs, and filthy moisture that attracts those that come unto it. There are also many small and deep Rivers like veins running through these Lakes, that will not let a man come to the Castle, that it were impossible but by the multitude of bridges, (which were formerly 40.) by long turnings like labyrinths to come thither. And the same difficulty continues in the most sharp Winter: For those Lakes seldom freeze, by reason of the hot exhalations of the Mines of *Brimstone*. But in the East side, which is opposite to the first part of the Castle, which had but one approach by land, there were such pleasant Meadows and fruitful fields, that nothing more could be desired for the benefit of Nature, there were also pasture grounds, and excellent places for Hunting; in the Fields and Woods, which you may see at the first sight of that Land: which though it look horridly by the thicknesse of Woods, and hath not been tilled for many ages past, by reason of Warres, Famine, Pestilence, and Domestick discords: Yet any man that views it, may see the prints of turrows and plows, and frequent heaps of stones (whereof the fields use to be cleansed and freed to make them the more fruitful) which are there to be seen among the highest Trees; A certaine argument being thus left to posterity, that the people of former ages were far more in number, and contented with narrower fields, than men are seen to be now adays, wherefore this Castle seems to have been more flourishing about the the year of our Lord 955, when the most magnificent King *Olani*, whose surname

name was *Seot-kanning*, was baptized by St. *Sigfrid*, Arch-Bishop of *Tork*, who went out of *England* to preach the Faith of Christ, to the same King *Olani*, by the Exhortation or intreaty of *Eldred*, or *Mildred*, King of *England*, who also staid a while in this Castle, until another Seat of the Kings called *Husaby*, could be provided, & consecrated for the use of the same St. *Sigfrid* and his Clergy. This being done, he baptized Pagans and Idolaters, first instructed in the Catholick Faith; which also three Nephews of the said Bishop did; namely, *Unamannus*, *Sunamannus*, and *Vinamannus*. (one of which was a Priest; the second, a Deacon; the third, a Sub-Deacon) whom the Bishop left behind him: Yet all three of them, like to blessed St. *John Baptist*, by the indignation of an adulterous woman, were slain with the sword: whose bodies are worshipped by all men with great great honour, in the Cathedral Church of *Uppen*. But of this matter, more at large, as is shewed in the History of my dear Brother, and Predecessour, *Johannes Magnus*, the *Goth*, in the proper places.

## CHAP. XX.

## Of the wonderful Garden of the Mountain Kindaberg, neer the said Castle.

There is a most high Mountain amongst the *Vestrogoths*, not far from the said Kingly Castle, and the Lake *Vener*, and it is commonly called *Kindakulle*, it is so high, that it appears to Mariners that are 40. Italian miles from it in the same Lake, like to a black Cloud in the Ayre. Wherefore many that are driven by Tempests, and force of the Winds, endeavour by all means to come to the foot of it, where they know that there is a most safe Harbour, on the top of this Mountain there are such pleasant Boughs, Herbs, and Fruits, of divers kinds (excepting the Vine) that come up of themselves, not more rare than sweet, as if they were sowed or planted, that there scarce can be found a more delightful place in all the Northern Climats. There is a sweetness that cannot be related, and that is multiplied by the concert of divers Birds, except the *Papiney*. That most pleasant place is known to very few, and they onely old men. Nor is it easily to be discovered to young people, least being released from more severe Discipline, they should cast themselves down to all pleasures, or rather Beastlinesse, and would hardly or never be reclaimed to good manners. For pleasure it self brings on Use and Custome, and constrains men; Custome, Necessity; and Necessity, Despair, without this mountainous place, and elsewhere. Also, farther toward the North, there are found very good and sweet Fruits, as Pears, Apples, Cherries, Prunes, but none before Mid-June, and then hardly any full ripe. And some kinds of these Fruits, as well at home, as in the Woods, grow ripe onely by the cold approaching, and they last hanging the greatest part of Winter, upon the naked boughs, without leaves. But these Fruits are better than any Vinegar, or pleasant sauce; yet they are but small, by reason of the constant Cold round about. But Forraign Fruits soon brought from the Coasts of *Germany* by Sea, as are Apples, are most greedily eaten by the Inhabitants, by reason of the sweet Juice that is in them, that very seldom or never do they escape the danger of divers Diseases (especially *French Diseases*) or such as are mortal.

## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the Beauty and Plenty of the Island Elandia of the Goths.

**E**landia, or Oelandia, is one of the Islands of the *Gothick Sea*, divided from the *Southern Gothland* by a short cut of the Sea, the fairest of all Islands. For it is so replenished with many Goods, whereby it makes recompence for the short cut (that can be passed over in two days) and by the fruitfulness of the ground. The Meadows and Fields are admirable, for the unpeakable sweet smell of Herbs.

There are many Heards of small Horses, but they are very strong; for by their strength and agility they exceed many greater bodied Horses; and Forraign and Domestick Chapmen buy them for their pleasures, and transport them into remote Lands, to be sold as Wonders of Nature. For they are most ingenious, that they can be taught by them to dance and jump, at the sound of the Drum, or Trumpet; and it is their Exercise by such shews to get gain. Moreover, they are taught to leap through Hoops of Iron or Lead, not very large, as Dogs do, and they will turn themselves about with wonderful swiftness. Also being called by their proper names, they do it more or less, as they are commanded.

These Horses feed, when there is necessity, with nothing but broiled Fish, and Fir-tree Wood; and they will drink Ale and Wine till they be drunk, as I shall shew underneath concerning *Elks*. Wherefore this Island abounds so much with Fruits, Pasture grounds, Cattel, Heards, and Fish, that it is sufficient to serve it self, and other places; and the Oxen, Sheep, and Butter thereof are so much approved beyond Seas, as if they were Physical. This Island of Old had many Castles, built in fit places, fenced both by Nature and Art, and well fortified; whereof some are changed into Christian Churches, serving at this day no less to defend Religion, than the Countrey: some of them are wholly made desolate by Wars. But there is one yet left unto this day, which is the highest and strongest of them, called *Borcholm*; and the height of it serves such as sail far off in the *Gothick Sea*, as a Watch-Tower, to direct them for their Winds and Ports, especially the *English, Scotch, Zealanders, Hollanders*, who stand in need of noted places in that Sea.

This Island is almost all compassed in with Marble stones, upward and downward, near the shore, 20. or 30. Foot high, as if they were purposely placed there by Art. Also in the Eastern Coasts thereof that stand open to the wide side, there are many fair Harbours; to which Strangers coming by Sea, no less for curiosity, than necessity, are wont to view it, as a spectacle of Nature. In this Island in the time of peace, the Kings of *Goths* and *Sweens*, were wont to pass their times, because of the great pleasure of it, and their Exercise of Hunting. Also Forraign Princes at a nearer cut over Sea, could more commodiously meet them there, in the expedition of weighty Affairs. Again, near the North Sea thereof, there ariseth a very high Mountain, which the Marriners to avoid an ill Omen, and Tempests at Sea, call the *Virgin*; for such as stay in the Harbour of it, use to please the Maids with small friendly gifts that are wont to be given to them, as with Gloves, Silk Girdles, and the like. And they seem to think that the Diety of that Mountain doth not take it ill, or will be ungrateful, as we read that it was done of Old, when a voyce was heard, that bad him who gave his Gift to change his port, lest he should be in danger, and in so doing he escaped; whereas all the rest were in hazard of all.

In

In that Mountain men lay at set times of the yeare, there is a meeting of all the Northern Hags, that they may try their witchery: he that comes late to the Devils Ministry, is cruelly tormented. But these are but opinions, and no assertions to be granted.

## CHAP. XXII.

## Of the famous Island of the Goths called Gothland.

**T**He Eastern part of *Gothland* is called so, as you would say a Good Land, or Land of the *Goths*. For *Goth* in their Mother tongue, signifies good, or God, and *Landia* signifies Land. For it is good for many reasons: there are good choise fields; it is good for Heards, Horses, Oxen; Fishing, Hunting, Water, Woods, Pastures, most fair Marble, and in all things necessary for mans use. There is also in the North part of it, the famous Town *Vishy*, in which there is a most firm Castle. This City was once the principall Mart Town of the *Goths*, and of many other Lands, so frequented by Merchants, Wares, and plentifull with Riches, that the like to it was not found in Europe. The *Goths, Swedes, Russians, Danes, Prussians, English, Scots, Flemish, French, Fins, Vandals, Saxons, Spaniards*, singular nations, had their severall Streets and Houses to dwell in, and all might be free Men. And coming in by Sea and Land they found all peaceable, untill by discord which is the most pernicious destroyer of all Kingdoms and men, it was overthrowne: as also infinite other nations which flourished in former times. There are this day extant Marble Mines, that testify what the ancient glory amplitude and comeliness thereof were. There are yet Houses covered with scolop shell, dores of iron, windows of brass or copper: they were formerly guided and gover'd over, being an argument of mighty Treasures. Thence afterwards when hatred grew up and fraud, by the superfluous use of them, the Inhabitants divided, went into the Cities of the *Vandals*, who where no little enriched by the wealth of such guests, as *Rome* of old when *Carthage* was destroyed. The first armed Camp of the *Goths* descended into this Countrey, after they came forth of their own land, seeking in Europe and Asia new Lands, by reason of the insupportable multitudes of their Nations. Also many ages past, the *Longobardi* departing from the Island *Scandia*, for the like, or some more grievous cause, passed through this Island in *Rugia*, and went with infinite companies into other nations, and at last making a Kingdome, they sat down in *Italy*: which also *Paulus Diaconus*, their Historian, testifies in his first book. Moreover the great King of *Sweeland* in the yeare of our Lord, 1288, appeared a dangerous Warr, that was between the Citizens of the City of *Vishy*, and the common people of the said Island, and he suffered the Citizens to repair the Walls of the City that were fallen down, and to fortifie them with Bulwarks and Forts. *Albertus* King of Sweden being asked by the Princes of lower Germany, that out of their Sea he would eject the *Vitalians* that were most potent Hairs, he pawned this Island of *Gothland* to the Mr. of *Prussia* for 20000 Crowns, the summe whereof Queen *Magaret* that succeeded him, collected in *Sweeland*, and restored that Island of the Kingdome of Sweden, to its right and properties, to be possessed by a perpetuall right. And *Saxo Grammaticus*, a most famous Danish Historian, in many of his writings, asserts without doubt that this Island belongs to Sweden. By this one of many arguments, because they alwayes use the same language, Laws, Customs, conformity of manners and neighbourhood: also because they are subject to the Bishop of the

Goths

*Goths* of *Lincolnia*, as to the first planter of the faith: from whom they ask, and fetch Episcopall rights. Also from this Island in all Mariners controversies, especially from the consuls of *Fishy*, there is fetcht and given Law, and a definitive sentence, what every man shall have or lose. This Law of Merchants and Mariners is very wisely made; and looner ends controversies concerning unconstant waters, than other Courts do for firm Land.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the Bucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mountaines of Hunga.*

How great care formerly the Kings and Princes of the *Goths* had to perpetuate their noble name, and Marciall prowess, their Armes, Ensignes, and Bucklers engraven in famous places, and left to their posterity do evidently shew, especially in *Ostrogothia*, *Vestrogothia*, and South *Finland*, in the Magnificent Port called *Hunga*: which is so pleasant and late, that in the whole Northern Sea, and perhaps the large Ocean, it hath not one so equall it, or to be compared with it. For it freely receives all that come sayling thither from all parts, and it securely defends them within it, by its naturall strength from all enemies ships, and from tempests, so they be carefull themselves. For that harbour, like to a very large fort is pleasantly situated in the midst of Mountaines and Valleys: and on the Rocks it hath the most ancient Arms of the *Goths* & *Sweons*, in a larned order, engraven according to the ancient simplicity, especially to let posterity know that there rid continually, a Navy for the defence of the Kingdoms, against all assaults of enemies, and from thence as oft as need was, they proceeded to open Warr. And at this day for the like reason both the Prince and Nobility have a Navy in the same port, especially because the neighbouring places can afford all things that may be suddenly required for to furnish a Navy of confederates: and all things will turn contrary to Enemies, if they intending mischief should come into this Harbour. Formerly *Dioms Ericus* King of the *Goths* and *Sweons*, offering peace, when it was despised, he by a Warlike Fleet at Sea, and an Army of Horse conquered the *Tavesti Careli*, and *Bohni*; and forced them to embrace quickly the Christian Religion. For Barbarous people are indocile, and cannot be drawn or invited to take upon them the Yoke of Christ, unless they be compelled by force of Arms. For (as *Albertus Cranzinus*, Lib. 9. c. 37. reports of *Vandalia*) Great is the love men beare to their Ancestors Traditions. In this Harbour the King of *Sweeden*, when they are provoked by great injury are wont to proclaim Warr, with a Navy furnished, or to be furnished, especially against the *Russians* or *Muscovites*: and again in the same Port, upon equall terms, are they wont to preteribute, and receive conditions of peace from the Embassadors of the said Princes. But that this is observed more frequently in this place than any other is by reason of the old custome of their Ancestors which they follow, who engraven their Armes there in the Mountaines, that the perpetuall firmnesse of these, things being seen, which they judged good for the Common-wealth, they might establish them to posterity to hold them with one consent, and an Oath given, by the Arms and liberty of their Ancestors. But what Armes and Bucklers, the old *Goths* and *Sweeds* used hath at home and abroad, may be observed by those present Ensignes, and be shewed by reasons also. For the *Goths* of old had a Lyon rampant regardant with a Crown on his head, leaping fiercely upon three Silver Streams in a field of a sky colour, and they now have the same, onely that dwell at *Origan*, that in conquering they may spare, and looking back they may take heed, how suddenly those that leap, cease from their

their force: yet *Methodius* is pleased to affirm, that the Princes of the *Goths* when they made Wars in Foreign Lahds, and conquered, had a Bear on their Standards. But those that descend from the same *Goths*, as from their Parents, were distinguished by variety of Arms, according to the diversity of their Families; as the *Cimbri* by a Bull; the *Scalovonians*, by a Dragon; the *Gepides*, by a small ship; the *Alavi*, *Burgundians*, and *Sweeds*, by a Car, in their Warlike Standards, as *Plutarch* thinks. But the *Sweeds*, or *Sweons*, had Arms of Old; namely two Virgins crowned with Golden Cloths, mutually embracing one the other in a Green Field, as shewing the excellency of the Nymphs Goddesses in that Country.

But now the Kings of *Sweeden* use three Golden Crowns in a Blew Field, by reason of the inscrutable largeness of their Dominions; and their magnificent Warlike Deeds, and the unexhausted plenty of Minerals. There are also the Arms of many private Noble-men, that are distinguished with a wonderful variety: also of Cities and Provinces, that in Warlike Expeditions, undertaken for their Laws and Countrey, such multitudes of men might be more orderly directed to one end; as I shall shew more at large underneath, concerning the direction of armed multitudes.

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Of the Mountains with Helms.*

As you sail from the *German* Ocean toward the North, three dayes before the entrance into the Kingly City *Holm*, of the Kingdom of *Sweeden* appears you meet with an admirable Port, called in the Vulgar Tongue, *Hielmsnabben*, or *Elgxnabben*, because that Wild Asies, which are named *Elgs*, are wont to come thither, because of the attraction of the sweet Blasts: or also because the Mountaines, in whole sides the Heavens are, seem so to be framed by Nature, that you would think that souldiers Helms were engraven upon them; as if Art were not sufficient to forge Armes, unless Nature should direct her, and shew what belongs to the Warlike Northern People, for handling of their Arms. But indeed as that Port is famous, for keeping away all Winds and Tempests, that there is hardly the like in all *Europe*; so also is it sprinkled with the Enemies blood, that there almost you may find the Original, Middle, and End of all the Northern Wars. For oft-times the Enemies shipping, which by the violence of Tempests was driven in here, and could not in the vast Sea fight in doubtful battail, was either compelled to ask Conditions of Peace from the Adversary, or else did willingly, or fraudulently offer the same, or was constrained to run the inevitable hazard of Death or Captivity. For there was no way to escape by force of Arms. For if they go from the Coast or Port, blind Rocks threaten ruine, and with a light motion cast the Enemy into a Gulph, that he may make peace. But if he would go forth into the open Sea, there is a horrible Tempest against him, that one cannot endure to look upon for the twinkling of an eye, because the North and East Wind is alwayes tempestuous upon those places. Moreover in times of Hostility, the Inhabitants by those Coasts take away all Sea-marks by the shores, that the Enemy may have no place to escape punishment; otherwise with an inaccessible cruelty, the ships of Pirates, and Sea-Rovers would assault this Port: yet the beginning of Battails at Sea, are frequently begun here.



## CHAP. XXV.

*Of the Straits in the Stoney-Ports.*

**T**Here are moreover in the *North Sea* straight entrances, and places to go forth (that cause no small fear, chiefly as you sail from the open Sea, toward the City *Holm*: which is the Kings, and is notably fortified both by Nature and Art, that thole that shall come against it may well be afraid; which is either the assurance or peril of Marriners, in more happily overcoming imminent dangers. But the chief and most dangerous place is, *Stendore*, that is, the Stone-door, because it is made obliquely with narrow mouths, and crooked Horns like the Moon, on every side, that is, sometimes Marriners are forced to avoid it, after the fashion of a *Seythian* Bowe, and sometimes by regarding the point where it falls out that men wander with greater danger by far, because of thick Clouds, and Darknes that rise there, than in the large Ocean, when the greatest Tempest ariseth. And not far from that Bay there are Rocks of Stones that stick up, lying hid under water; and whosoever falls upon them, are swallowed up alive. And the Chronicles of the *Goths* relate, that formerly amongst those Rocks, many thousands of the *Danes* and *Germans* were suddenly destroyed and drowned.

For they entred these Rocky Straights, by a more presumptuous than skillfull Art of sailing; as also into other *Northern* Bays, which appear no otherwise to men sailing at Sea, than mighty Beams standing forth of the Waters, that fright those that look upon them; and have their names from the Events, Cause, Deeds, and Nature, (as I shewed before in the same Book, concerning the irruption of Waters) and these seem more terrible to Pirats that are their Enemies, than any Armies that are appointed with Weapons for War.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Of Stoney-Rocks, and the dangerous Passage through Idebenckia.*

**T**Here are also on the Coasts of the *Ostrogoths* and *Sweons*, mighty Stones, partly apparent, and partly lying hid, placed in a long Ranck, like to Benches, by Art or Industry, they are vulgarly called *Idebenckia*: Upon which unhappily, Marriners are wont to sit fast, and suffer shipwrack, and it was my chance to be in danger there, in a great Tempest, *Anno Dom.* 1517, unless God had delivered me: For by the violence of the Winds, the ship was driven upon those secret Rocks, which for a long way, appear like shelving walls of Towns or Castles. They that fall either by negligence, or inevitable Tempests upon these Stones, especially the ships of Enemies, who come with a purpose to rob the people of those Coasts, who are very rich, are to be held most unhappy, because both by Sea and Land, they are more horribly compassed with Enemies, than if they were shut up in a Prison. For by Land they will soon be consumed by Famine, which is the greatest Enemy; and by Cold, which is a most grievous Torment; the Inhabitants when an Enemy comes, flying away, with all their Heads of Cattel and Goods. And by Sea, because in that place, as I said, there is wont to be a horrible Tempest; from which, if they would escape by Art and Industry, yet they cannot resist the severity of Nature. For in all parts, besides the Distemper of the Ayre (as I said) there are Stones or Rocks, sharp pointed, like steeples, that threaten danger, which must be cunningly sailed about, the Froth discovering the Bent and Compass that must be taken.

The

The Admirals of the Warlike Fleet, using stratagems of War in these places, are wont to place some ships of War, or some like them, of purpose in time of War, that have the Enemies Flags, that when the Enemies see them, they may the more securely run into danger; concerning which, namely when the Enemies ships were thus intercepted, the Annals of the Countrey testify, though I should say nothing of it, and the bones of the Enemies cast upon the Rocks, do apparently demonstrate what is to be avoided with great care.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of swift Torrents.*

**T**Here are almost infinite swift Torrents, chiefly at the time when the Snow and Ice melt; which after the end of *April*, in the *Northern* parts, are found to bring great ruine to the Inhabitants: For by the force of them, which is vehement and terrible, they not onely take away and carry with them, Farms, Houses, and Stone-Bridges, but Trees also that are dug up by Art, or else are yet growing on the grounds; as I said of the irruption of Lakes, and in another case before.

These Torrents give the Name, according to their impetuous Nature, to those Cities and places they run by, as the most ancient Towers of the *Ostrogoths*, called *Scheningia*, from the River, or rather the Torrent, which by reason of its most swift course is commonly called *Schene*, as it were a horse, that having cast off his bridle, is inflamed to run headlong every way. Moreover, there is a Name given to a River, not far from thence, from a continual cracking noise of the Teeth. So also, to the swift Torrent in the Province of *Middelpadia* (as I said before) is the name *Nodna* given; because like to knobs, it takes and carryeth away with it, when it melts, Trees bound up in heaps of Ice, like hard crusts, & most huge Stones also: and this is the more formidable, by how much sooner it is wont to fright and over-run Provinces and People. And hitherto there hath been no other remedy found for this horrid depopulation, than by every mans labour, and by casting up Banks, to turn the course another way: which, though the *Northern* people in many places turn from them; yet they suffer this Torrent, that they may involve a rash Enemy, by opening the Sluces, and the Falls or Waters being let loose. And though before, Names were given to Torrents, from the unhappy event, (as I shall also shew elsewhere, concerning the Bishops that preached the Gospel, which were drowned, and the Marriage sports, and ravishing of Virgins) yet the wiser men thought fit to give the Names from Triumphs and Victories, and not from Calamities.

F

CHAP. 28.



## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the divers Forms of Stones upon the Coasts.*

ON the Coasts of the *Ostrogoths*, that is, the *Eastern Goths*, of the Narrow Sea, called *Broniken*, where also a most vehement Torrent runs through the Town of *Nereop*, there are found divers Figures of the Stones upon the Coasts, as if they were engraven by mans Art, or polished: which doubtless is conjectured to be done by the secret influence of the Heavens and Elements. Some also of these Stones are like to mens heads, hands, feet, or fingers; not joyned together in a whole body, but so wrought by a Distinction of Nature: But that Nation accustomed to such Spectacles, takes no care for these or such like things, any further than as they serve to make their Walls and houses strong. There are also found in the Mountains, which are far from the Seas, Rocks that are naturally made round and concave, that you would take them to be some Bras Cauldron, or Bowl of hot Baths: as you may see it amongst the *Ostrogoths*, in a Mountain called vulgarly *Kerilberg*, (that is, the Mountain of a *Keril*) near the City *Lincop*, where I was born. Moreover, in many Valleys of the Mountains, there are infinite store of stones to be seen, fashioned round, as big as Calves heads, or Goose eggs, bigger or lesser, which without any Art are fit for great Guns. Also there are Whet-stones that are plain and long, and are applied to good use: likewise, there are Rocks of marble amongst the *Vestrogths*, so great and of so various colours, that without any Iron Instruments, as if they were made by Art, they are fit for Grave-stones; as I shall say in the 12. Book, concerning the natural variety of stones, to be applied for all Buildings. Also there are Crystall stones, not far from the Town of the *Ostrogoths*, called *Sudereop* that have six corners, that hang as big as ones fist, or finger: with whole splendour, for the greater Ornament houses may be made, if the Inhabitants regarded Ornament more than they do Strength. But considering, that the rage of Enemies, both could and would more cruelly waste all, by reason of the fair Buildings, they more fortifie than beautifie their houses: though commonly the insides are most curiously adorned: but chiefly, as I shall shew underneath, with glittering Arms, Breast-Plates, Head-pieces, and Bucklers; wherein that Nation conceives all comelines to consist, because great part of defending themselves, depends on these: yet some of them are pitched, and of a black colour, for some Reasons I shall assign hereafter concerning Wars.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Of the Stones of Giants, and Springs of Waters.*

AS I said before in my first Book concerning the *Obelisks* of the *Gentiles*, of *Kings, Champions, and Giants*, whereby they thought to make their magnificent Deeds most known to Posterity, as *Saxo Sialandicus* speaks of his *Regnerus*, King of the *Danes*, who having fought five years in the North against the *Russians*, and *Moscovites*, left his Actions engraven upon the high Rocks, that he might not be forgot, because he had fought them for his honour, when he was pressed with so many streights and difficulties: so also it is concerning many of the Kings of the *Goths* and *Sweons*, and heroical persons, the greatness of whose Actions, is yet discerned in the most eminent places of the *Northern Countreies*. Amongst

Amongst which those are reckoned and esteemed to be the most famous and memorable, who so moderated their care of Warlike Glory, that they seem most to have brought profit to the Common-wealth: such a one was that most excellent King *Ubbo*, the Builder of the most ancient City *Upsal*, and *Scarinus*, and *Ericus*, with many more, whose indelible memory, seems not onely to be written on Stones in the Fields and Mountains, but is continued in their Countrey Verles, and with Musical Instruments, in the most famous places, and eminent dayes, with perpetual Dancings. For the more faithful care of these men was (when there was a general peace) to command the Governours or Provinces, for the publick good, besides arms, to bring the Springs of Waters that fell down rumbling, to drive Mills, for the good of the Inhabitants, or to make necessary Fountains for the general profit. Moreover, there run out of the Rocks such abundance of Springs, in many places, that being brought along by the agility of Nature and Art, for a long way, but very pleasant to behold, they drive about 15, or 30, Water-mills. *Falonia* of the *Vestrogths*, a most noble Province, and populous *Helsingia*, as I shall shew underneath concerning the Artifices of Iron, do represent such, and so commodious Spectacles.

*The End of the Second Book.*

F 2

OLAVS



# OLAUS MAGNUS THE GOTH, Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

CONCERNING  
*The Superstitious Worship of Devils, used  
by the People of the North.*

*An Epitome of the Third Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Superstitious Worship of the Pagans  
of Lituania.*

**A** *Lbertus Cranzius*, as faith German Historians, who was famous, Anno 1500. & after him *Mechavita*, a Poland, do affirm, the *Lituanians*, in the time of *Paganism*, whilst they were detained by the Errors of *Gemilism*, to have adored three Gods especially; namely, *The Fire*, *Woods*, and *Serpents*: *Fire*, because it is better then all Sacrifice; either seduced by the Customs of the *Persians*, who thought the Fire to be a God; as *Herodotus* faith, or led by the Opinion of the *Egyptians*, who were persuaded, that the *Fire* was a living Wild-Beast, and devoured all things that were made, and so soon as it was full with devouring, it died with that it had devoured. They held the Woods to be sacred; and after the manner of the *Egyptians*, they thought that all the Beasts that lived in them were Gods, as the Poet faith;

*The Gods also dwell within the Woods.*

And

And many Nations also led by this confidence, burnt their Kings and Princes, when they were dead, that they might be made Gods, or go to the Gods; or else they hanged them up solemnly in Groves and Woods by a chain of Gold, as if by such sacrifices they should deserve praise for their wickedness, and by counterfeiting a false God. Moreover they adored Serpents as sacred, whilst they seemed to hurt no man, holding them to be the keepers of their houses, and household gods, yet this superstitious worship, though it seem wholly to be taken away, the reliques of it, by the instinct of the Devils, continue in some secret houses in deserts, as also in the Northern Kingdoms of *Norway* and *Vermelandia*. But in the year 1386, the foresaid *Lituanians*, as we read, were purged from that error. For then their most potent Prince *Iagolla* with his eight Brothers, (as *Mechovita* testifies) accepted the faith of Christ: in which even to this day they persevere and increase in Religion. Besides, the foresaid Historian mentions that there is a Statue placed on the high way, on the confines of *Lituania* and *Muscovia*, that in their language is called *Zlatoboba*, that is the golden old Wife, which all passengers pacify with some gift, though not worth a straw, or else their journey will not prosper.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Superstitious worship of men under the  
Pole.*

**N**Or is the utmost part of the North (which many think to be Inhabitable by reason of extreme cold) free from Sacrilegious customs, and worshiping of Devils, that must be performed at their times appointed. For those savage Nations (as other Nations of the world that seem to be more civil) have no small causes, whereby they may debate and defend their publick error, and sained Divinity in frivolous matters. Therefore they adore the Sun that shines to them all the Summer, giving thanks unto him, because he brings them light instead of darkness they endured, and heat against extreme cold: which things however they seem to be intolerable, yet they never upbradingly curse, as some Indians do, but they onely say: These are foolish and foolish colds, and darkness beyond measure, &c: and so likewise they adore the Moon because in Winter, when the Sun is absent, they alwaies enjoy the light of the Moon: but when that fails by reason of the conjunction, they dispatch their business in the day, by help of most clear Stars, which shine the brighter by reason of the white Snow. Moreover those people that live under the Pole are deluded by a more stupid error by the Devils. For they hang a red Cloth upon a Pole or Speare, and with attentive prayers and customs of worship, they adore it, thinking that there is some divine virtue in it, by reason of the red colour which is like to bea's blood. And also because they suppose that by looking upon it, they shall be more fortunate in killing of bea's, drinking their blood, as I shall shew underneath, concerning the manners of the *Laplanners*. Also some people of the North have a custom, that whatsoever they see first at break of day, in the Ayre, Earth, or Waters that is alive, the same thing they faithfully adore for a God, until the evening of the same day, as Birds, Beasts, Fish, and even Serpents, and Worms, and chiefly the horned Beetle: which they honour amongst the more noble creeping things, by reason of its horns that young men use to adorne their heads with. And least the said Northern people should appear empty in the sight of their Gods, they make certaine oblations to them of the Bones of Wild Beasts, and of great Whales and Fish, that they have hunted for: yet in Summer-time they burn not the bones (least they should seem to mock at the Sun's light or heat) but when the cold

cold Winter ariseth, they burn them at publick meetings for the honour of the day, thinking that by that sacrifice they offer due reverence to their Gods, so great is the Religion of the Gentiles in frivolous matters.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the three greater Gods of the Goths.

There are amongst the old heathenish *Goths*, (as my famous Brother and predeceour *John Magnus*, Arch Bishop of *Upsall*, clearly asserts in the beginning of his Histories) three Gods that they worshipped above the rest. The first whereof was the most mighty *Thor*; who was worshipped in the middle of their dining rooms, with a cushion put under him; on both sides of him, were two other dieties, namely *Odhen*, and *Frigga*. *Thor*, say they, was chiefe in the Ayre, where he Thunders and Lightens, governing the Winds and Clouds, and fare weather, giving Corn and all fruit, and removing Pestilences. The other *Odhen*, that is the stronger, is president of the Warrs, affording men help against their Enemies, and his place is next to *Thor* himself on his right hand: and he so famous in mens opinions, that all Nations should worship him as much as they do the light: that is given to the world, nor should there be any place in the world, (as *Saxo* testifies) which should not obey the power of this God. The third was *Friga*, which governed peace, and pleasure: and she carried before her the image of it, which was the foulness of the Sex, and for that she was as much adored by the *Goths*, as *Venus* was by the *Romans*: and Friday is consecrated to her, and so continues even to our times. She was painted with a sword and bow, with weapons, because in those lands, both sexes were most ready at their arms. But *Thor* was set forth with a Crown and Scepter, and 12 Starrs: and they thought that nothing could be offered to him that could equall his greatness. And he had appointed for him one day every week, and the first Month in the yeare, which we call *January*. But *Odhen* is set forth Armed, like to Man, by the same superstition the Gentiles used amoung the *Romans*: and he had a day perpetually consecrated to his name. And because he whilst he lived obtain'd the Title of a God in all Europe, for that he yeelded to none in military art, hence it is supposed that the *Goths*, (as *Dio* the Greek, *Ablabius* and *Jornandes* testifie) said that *Mars* (whom Antiquity thought to be the God of Warr) was born amongst them, as also saith the Poet.

And *Mars* amongst the *Goths*, who is the chiefe in Warr.

The *Goths* alwaies highly honoured him to pacifie him, namely with the death of their Captives, for they supposed that the Ruler of Warrs would be pleased most with mans blood. From whom also they perfectly learned all Martiall arts, so that they conquerd the most mighty Empires of *Europe* and *Asia*, and arrived to the highest degree of valour.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the three lesser Gods.

Besides these three Gods above said, they worshiped many more, who (as *Saxo* reports) being wonderfull cunning in witch-craft, deluded the Minds of simple men, and arrogated to themselves the names of Gods. For they not only tainted the *Goths*, with the principall contagion of their delusions; but al-

so

soall the Northern Provinces circumvented with the snarcs of vain credulity, they stirred up to a desire of worshipping them. For the effect of their fallacies grew so famous, that in them other men adoring some power of the Gods, and supposing them to be Gods, or the Gods companions, they paid their solemn vows to these Authours of witchcrafts, and they gave the adoration due to Gods worship, to Sacrilegious error, amongst whom was one *Methorin*, a notable Magician, who wanted to himself a great opinion of fained dignity, and he drew the minds of simple men, that were seduced by the fame of his tallie impostures to offer unto him juggling sacrifices. This man being the chiefe Priest of the Gods, did so distinguish their sacrifices and ceremonies, and so order them, that a distinct honour and offering should be observed to every God: maintaining that the displeasure of the Gods cannot be pacified by common sacrifices, or mixed ceremonies, at last his wickedness being discovered, he was killed in a concourse of the people, and being slain, he killed many with the pestiferous contagion of his Carkeie, he was pulled out of his grave, and tasted to a stake: as the juggling vanities he used well deserved. Alfo *Froe* the Lieutenant of the Gods had his seat not far from *Upsall*; where he changed the old way of offerings, used by so many Nations, to many yeares, for a sad and unspeakable abomination. For he attempted to sacrifice men, and offered intolerable offerings to the Gods. He being rank amongst the Gods, and because he was held to be the God of blood, dark sacrifices were offered unto him, and in their yearly solemn days, night sports and *Lelisteria* were consecrated to him, as formerly they were at *Rome* to *Pluto* and *Proserpina*, *Vagasthus* and *Hadingus* were adored with equal reverence, because they were supposed to afford principall assistance readily in time of great Warrs. They believed that *Rosthichus Finnonicus*, after he was dead, was translated into the number of the Gods, because when he lived he was excellent to foresee future things. To these is added *Rostlaus*: whose stupendous humanity would be so pacified with the sacrifice of mans blood, that they would dedicate to him the Souls of those, that such as adored him could subdue. Lastly there were many more most potent, thought to be the Sons of *Thor*, or *Odhen*, who were honoured by the people, and thought worthy of publick sacrifices to be offered unto them. But how or by what arts these men and such like, obtain'd so great an opinion of Divinity and to be adored, I shall enquire underneath, *L. V. of Giants and Champions*, chap. 1. toward the end.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Magnificent Temple of the Northern Gods.

Seeing that of old, the whole world almost in every place, was deluded by innumerable superstitions, and instinct of the Devils, I thought it not incongruous, yet further to shew evidently in what places the *Goths* or *Sweeds*, and Northern Nations seduced by heathenish superstition, gave obedience to dumb Idols: that it may be known, that there were many places, (as there are kinds of Devils) wherein unlawfull worship was offered. There was therefore a Temple (concerning which my dear Brother and Predecessour, *D. John Arch-Bishop of Upsall* speaks, *L. 1. Histor.*) that was most famous from the time of *Ninus*, near to the River *Sala*; where at this day is *Upsalia* the principall and archiepiscopall seat of the *Sweeds* and *Goths*, which they so adored, being built so magnificently, that there was nothing to be seen on the walls, roofo or Pillars, but shined with Gold.

Alfo

Also the whole upper part was made with glittering Gold; from which a Golden Chain hung down, and is recorded to have gone round about the Temple to the Walls, and tops of the Houfe. Hence it was, that the Temple situated on a large Plain, by the admirable lustre of it, begat in those that came near to it, a Venerable Awe of Religion. There grew before the doors of it, a huge Tree of an unknown kind, that spread with large Boughs, and was green both in Summer and Winter; yet not of thole kinds, which of their own Nature seem to grow green, as the Bay-tree, Olive, Palm-tree, or Myrtle: For in the North never was any Olive, or Bay-tree seen to grow up, but in a small shrub, as we may see at *Vastens*. There was also a Fountain near this Temple, which ran into the place of their Sacrifices: of which I shall speak by and by underneath. And let this suffice for other Nations, to understand some of the vain Customs of the Goths. Now it is fit for me to shew unto the *Northern* people, that it was not they only that were seduced with this vanity. And now we must come's, that by Gods mercy, in that very place; namely, at *Upsal*, at all times, especially on the 19. day of May, there are Catholick Sermons preached of Divine Religion, to almost innumerable people. The King and Princes, and Nobles of both Sexes being present, where formerly so many wicked and abominable filthy acts were committed, and so many men, both Friends, and dear Parents, were offered in Sacrifice.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the Religion, and Sacrifices of the Goths.

There was formerly in the Sacrifices of the Goths (as it is set down in the History of the *Sweons*, and *Goths*, L. 1. C. 12. a great respect had to the number of 9. It may be, because the *Pythagorean* Philology (which they learned of *Salmox*, and *Dicæneus*, admonished them, that the odd number must be preferred in all things. And although they did weekly and daily give the supreme honour to their Gods: yet every nine months they used a more solemn adoration to them, for nine days together, sacrificing and performing their Rites and Religious Worship; and they offered every day nine kind of living Creatures, and they joynd unto them the Sacrifices of men. But after nine days, by the supreme solemnity of all the Kingdome, the Temple of *Upsal*, that I mentioned before, was visited by the most frequent coming thither of the Inhabitants, and there for nine days they kept Holy-day; and by the foresaid number of sacrifices they offered their Offerings to their god upon an Altar. But that man, who by Lot was to be offered, was plunged alive into that Fountain, which ran into the place of the Sacrifice; and if he died early, the Priests pronounced the Vow to be fortunate; and they presently took him from thence, and hung him up in a Wood hard by, which they reputed sacred, and they affirmed that he was translated amongst the Gods. And from hence that man thought himself happy who was to die, by being sacrificed. It fell out sometimes, that the Kings themselves were chosen by the same Lot, and sacrificed: which because it was esteemed to be a most lucky offering for the Kingdome, all the people with high gratulation and thankgivings, did adore so noble a sacrifice. For they thought that those who departed thus did not die at all, but that they and themselves also were immortal; especially from *Salmox*, *Zenta*, *Dicæneus* as *Dion*, *Ablabius*, *Jornandes*, *Strabo*, and others write: who also assert by many Reasons, that the Goths studied Wildome excellently, and therefore held an opinion of the Souls immortality: for that (as *Herodorus* saith, L. 4.) thinking they should not die, they would say; That those who were departed this life,

went

went to some place more pleasant: Wherein they said, that a certain God *Bleyxer* was chief, to whom they daily sent, besides the manner already mentioned, a Messenger in a Galley, with five Oars, which was some man chosen amongst themselves, commanding him to desire from the bounty of the God, such things as they stood in need of: The manner of dispatching the Messenger was thus: Some of them held some sharp Spears upright; and upon these they threw him who was designed to be sent, catching him by his hands and feet; and if falling, he died presently, they supposed that the God was pleased with them, accepting their Messenger at first. But if it hapned otherwise, they accused the Messenger for being a wicked man, and that he was unworthy to be sent to the Gods. Wherefore casting him away, they sent another, giving him his Arrant whilest he was yet living, what he must sollicite, when he came to the god. Then casting him down, when he was dead, they delivered him into the Gulph of the Sea, by the help of those five Oars.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the Goths Superstitions about Thunder.

Moreover, they were so obstinate in observing the Worship of their Gods (as we find it also in the same History of the *Goths* and *Sweons*, L. 1. c. 12.) that when it thundered in the Ayre, they would shoot up Arrows, to shew their readines to assist their Gods, which they thought were then fighting with others that opposed them. Nor were they content with that rash Superstition, but they had for that purpose great Hammers bigger then ordinary (which they called *Ovials*) that were bound about with huge brais, and which were observed most religiously, that by them, as by the *Claudian* Thunder, and by the usual similitude of things, they might imitate the noises in the Element of the Air, which they believed were made with Hammers, & they thought most devoutly, that the force of such a noise, by imitating the same with the Smiths Hammers, would give assistance to the Wars of their Gods. That Customs of *Jupiters* Hammers lasted until the 1130. year after the Birth of Christ, when as *Magnus*, King of the Goths, hating Heathenish Superstition, for the love of Christian Religion, held it Piety to spoil the Temple of its Worship, and *Jupiter* of his Robes; who therefore for many years was held by the Goths as a Sacrilegious Robber of the spoils of Heaven. Also, the Goths were wont when they were going to Battel, to sacrifice their hories upon Altars, and cutting off their heads, and setting them upon long Poles, they carried them with their mouths wide open, upon these Staves, before their Armies. And they not only offered Beasts in sacrifice before the War, but men also when they had conquered their Enemies; and they made magnificent Playes for the honour of their Gods: wherein were observed effeminate motions of their Bodies, and mimical gestures of Stage-Players, and pleasant ringing of little Bells, and noises of Timbrels. These, and other notable kinds of Sacrifices were the chief cause, that by the assistance of the Gods, they could never be conquered in Battail. For they so loved, and practised Wars continually, that they supposed all other Studies nothing worth, being compared with Military Arts. There were Priests that had the charge of these Sacrifices, who were of different degrees, as the *Pontifex*, the *Arch-flamen*, the *Dancing-Priests*, the *Soothsayers*: the first of these, namely, the *High-Priests*, had equal power allowed them as the Kings had; and so great was their authority, that whatsoever they either perswaded, or commanded, as if it had bin spoken from Heaven, was cheerfully executed by the King and all the people.

G

They

They instructed the Nation in much Wildome; they chose Priests, they founded Religion; *Dion* the *Grecian* testifies, that this Nation never wanted High-Priests, which might teach them Wildome. There was also among them a kind of High-Priests that were more illustrious, which they called *Pileati*, and *Pii*, out of which they fitted themselves with Kings and Priests, as *Jornandes* shews more largely, who said they were wont to be called *Pii*; and that they were wont to go forth of the City-gates with Harps, and white Garments, to meet the *Goths* in triumph, that they might pacify their Gods.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of their fighting against the Gods.

Again they fell into another Folly and Superstition, that when the Gods did not favour them in their Warlike Expeditions, or did not help them, they by setting up divers kinds of Weapons against Heaven, supposed they could conquer them, or compel them by fear and threatening words to do what they required. And in this idle action, they believed that they had no less power upon the Earth, and were to be feared and adored as much, as others that were gone to the Gods above or beneath. But they observed not the old Proverb of the *Goths*. *That we must not dart our Spear against Heaven, for a thicker Club will be thrown back from thence.*

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the Fatal Sisters and Nymphs.

There are also in the Northern Countries some Temples consecrated to *Diana* and *Ceres*, and houses of the Fatal Sisters, that were built by Witchcraft without mans help, which the Antients were wont to come unto praying making solemn Vows, when they went to consult the Oracles of the Fates, concerning their Childrens future Destinies, where looking into the Chappel, they knew that sometimes three, and sometimes more of these Nymphs sat: Whereof some granted to Children a comely face, and favour abundantly amongst men: Others gave them Liberality, or other excellent Vertues: Again, others of a more froward Nature, desiring to hurt the Gifts of the rest, would make Children in their future condition to be  *parsimonious*, or guilty of some other fault. And they did not onely delude Children by these juggling Arts, but sometimes Kings also, and men of years, as is evidently found out. For *Hotherus* King of *Sweden*, and *Denmark*, as he Hunted, by error of a Cloud, being drawn far away from his Huntsmen, fell into the Conclave of some Virgins living in Woods; and being called by his own name by them, he asked what they were; They testifie, that by their leading and good success, the Fortune of the War was chiefly governed. And that oft-times they are present in Battails, when no man sees them, and by their secret assistance, they give to their Friends such success as they shall desire; for they said, it was in their power to make the Event prosperous, or adverse as they pleased; desiring him that he should not make War against *Balderus*, who was born of the secret seed of the Gods: when he had heard this Message, *Hotherus* sees himself to be left suddenly in the open Air, and without any house or shady place to cover him, exposed in the middle of the Fields; but he felt of all wondred at the sudden flight of the Virgins, and the false situation of the place, and counterfeit house, he had imagined to be there.

For

For he was ignorant of those things which were done about him, and thought it was onely a delusion, and fraud, by Witchcraft. After this, some years being passed, the same *Hotherus* being worn out with most cruel Wars, going into the farthest Desarts and Woods to wander in, where men use not to frequent, by chance he found a Cave where Virgins dwell. It proved, that these were the same which had formerly given him a Garment that was Armour of Proof, And being demanded by them, wherefore he came into that place, he relates unto them the unhappy Events of the War; so that condemning their Faith, he began to lament his ill success, and hard fortune, complaining that it tell out otherwise with him, than they had promised it should.

The Nymphs answered, that though he seldom wan the Victory, yet he had done as much mischief to the Enemies, as they had done to him, and that he had been the Author of as great Ruine as his Partnes had: and farther, that he should win the Victory, if he could but first catch away the meat that was provided to increase the Enemies Forces; for by this means he should see all things succeed, according to his wishes. He was thus sent away, and he recruits his Armie, and levies new Forces against the Enemy. And when he came to view their Tents, he saw three Maids go forth, carrying secretly away the daintiest meat: these he ran after. (for he might see the way they went by their foot-steps on the Dew) then he comes to the houses where they dwell, and by the sweet Musick of his Lute, (on which he had excellent skill) he obtained from them a most accurate shining Girdle, and most powerful to prevail with in Battail: so going the way he came, he met the Enemy, and slew him with a great slaughter: so that the next day after he was sent to *Proserpina*, which he seemed to see standing by him in his sleep.

## CHAP. X.

## Of the Night-Dances of the Fairies, and Ghosts.

Also Travellers in the Night, and such as watch their Flocks and Herds, are wont to be compassed about with many strange Apparitions: As King *Hotherus*, (so *Saxo* reports) following three Nymphs to their Caves, obtained a Girdle of Victory from them: yet sometimes they make so great and deep impression into the Earth, that the place they are used to, being onely burnt round with extreame heat, no grais will grow up there. The Inhabitants call this Night-sport of these Monsters, the Dance of Fayries: of which they hold this opinion, that the Souls of those men, that give themselves to Corporal Pleasures, and make themselves as it were slaves unto them, and obey the force of their Lusts, violating the Laws of God and men, when they are out of their bodies, and wander about the Earth. In the number whereof they think those men to be, who even in these our days, are wont to come to help men, to labour in the Night, and to dress Horses and Cattel; as I shall shew hereafter in this very Book, concerning the Ministry of the Devils.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the War against the Fauni.

Since Antiquity testifies that there have been various monstrous things, and almost innumerable Delusions, which have passed almost through the whole World, as Ghosts, Rural Gods, Satyrs, Hags, Hob-goblins, Witches, Fairies, Household Gods, and Shepherds Gods in abundance, by which men were extremely terrified, or torn to pieces and slain: I did not think fit to conceal what Policies and Weapons the Northern people used to resist these Visions and Apparitions. It is a Tradition, that the noble Champions of the *Goths* did often fight

single with Monsters, and huge Beasts, either to free some weak men, or to try their valour, and they took care not to set upon any wild Beast with more company, than the custome of valiant men would permit.

*Regnerus* of Sweden was a Champion, and a King, who fought all night against most obscene Troops of Nocturnal Monsters, which were sent forth by *Thorilda* his cruel Mother-in-law; and when it grew light, he perceived that he met oft-times in the Fields divers forms of Ghosts, and unusual representations of Shapes; amongst which he saw the likeness of *Thorilda* wounded in many places. By this means he acquired the name of a Champion, and took by force his Fathers Kingdom from his Enemies.

Moreover, one *Broderus* and *Buchi*, with King *Gorman*, being more bold than ordinary men are, increasing the Warlike Spirit of the *Goths*, in searching out the foot-steps of natural things, undertook a Voyage full of danger and labour to be undergone by mortal men. For sailing round the Earth, leaving the sun behind them, and passing by the stars that were under the Deep, and lastly coming beyond the Land of *Biarmia*, into places where was no light (as I shewed c. 1. l. 1.) but in continual darknets, they fought with incredible Troops of Monsters. For they invaded Fairies that came upon them, and took away their Weapons from them; and they conquered whole Armies of strange Apparitions, with their Bows and Slings, as *Saxo* the Danish Historian, and most diligent searcher of Antiquities, writes in his Preface concerning King *Gorman*. We find it also related amongst the ancient Historians, how *Hotherus*, Son to the King of Sweden, being waking in the night, and his mind full of care that troubled him, threw his Spear at the Satyr *Ademmingus* that appeared in his Lodging, and having striken him down with the blow & made him unable to fly away presently he held him in chains; and then threatening him with most bitter words, he requires of him his Sword and Bracelets, which he knew he had, and the Satyr soon delivered up what he demanded to save his life. For the life is before all things, and Mortals esteem nothing more than it.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of Divination.

TO satisfy this Title, I must premise the saying of the Catholick Dr. *Chrystostome*, who saith in his Homily, *There shall be Signs in the Sun and Moon, &c.* That there is no Creature which so much desires to know future things, as man doth &c. This being considered, we must farther confess, that there never was any Nation so civil and learned, nor yet so ignorant and barbarous, which hath not used to signify future things, and by some means to understand, and to fore-tell them; but chiefly the Northern people, which I find to have employed themselves in the study of knowing things to come: for by the flyings of Birds, leaping and noise of Fish, and by their fingering; also by exhalations of Mountains, &c. they thought that future Accidents might be declared, as by certain Signs.

No War nor publick business either at home or in Military Affairs, was done without South-sayings; and not onely the Discipline of Wizards was accepted by the chief Governours, but of Fortune-tellers, Divination also by the Ayre, by the Earth, by the Fire, by the Dead, and all Dreams of importance, if any seemed to concern the Common-Wealth.

*Othinus* fore-told to King *Hadrungus*, who went to wage War against *Jocherus Currenus* the Tyrant, that he should be taken captive, and it fell out, as he said.

GORMAN

*Gouarnus*, King of Norway, was so skilful in the Art of Divination, and so well learned, to tell future things, that he being in Norway, could see whatever was attempted against him in Saxony, above a hundred German miles from him.

*Gormo* surname the Wicked, being of a drowie condition, dreamt that his Wife bare two Birds, but one was greater than the other; and that they flew upwards toward Heaven, and in a small time betwixt, they returned again, and sat upon both his hands, one by one; and to the second time, and third: when they had rested a while, they took Wing, and flew into the Ayre; and at last, that the least of the two came back to him without the other, having the Wings all bloody. This Dream was thus truly interpreted: His two Sons, subduing the English, Slavonians, and the Irish, had very good fortune, until such time as the Elder was slain in battail, but the Younger, when his brother was lost, seemed to have his Wings smeared with blood.

*Magnus*, King of Norway and Denmark, that night wherein there followed a War with Slavonia, when he slept, he saw an Apparition of one in his sleep, that told him before that he should conquer his Enemy, and in killing of an Eagle, he should be assured of the Victory. The King awaked, and told his Dream in order, with great admiration, and proceeding with his Army, he saw an Eagle near him, that he had seen in his Dream; and riding swiftly to her, he killed her with a Dart, and fled faster than the Bird could with a swift flight.

Wherefore his Army took the sign of good luck; and laying hold of the first occasion to fight, overcame the Enemy, having the same event in battail, as the *Oman* fore-shewed.

When King *Valdamar* his Army went forth to War, such Troops of Crows, flew suddenly between them, that many were knocked down with the Enemies Spears. King *Sveno* and all his Army were conquered by him, and made Crows meat, which declared the event of the South-laying.

*Biorno*, a noted Champion, compassed in a certain Island, with a choise Band of able Souldiers, which was fenced round with a most swift River: he saw in his sleep a great Beast coming forth of the Waters, that cast forth flames of fire at his mouth, and burnt all presently. The next morning King *Fridleuus*, coming over this violent River, destroyed all these Champions (except *Biorno*) with the sword, and so fulfilled his Dream.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Magical Art of Ericus with his Windy Cap, and of others.

His *Ericus*, King of Sweden, in his time, was held second to none in the Magical Art; and he was so familiar with the Evil Spirits, whom he exceedingly adored, that which way soever he turned his Cap, the Wind would presently blow that way. From this occasion he was called *Windy Cap*; and many men believed that *Regnerus*, King of Denmark, by the Conduct of this *Ericus*, who was his Nephew, did happily extend his Piracy into the most remote parts of the Earth, and conquered many Countries, and fenced Cities, by his Cunning; and at last was his Coadjutor, that by the consent of the Nobles, he should be chosen King of Sweden; which continued a long time with him very happily, until he died of old age.

Moreover, another *Ericus*, whose surname was *Emundus*, when he purposed to sail, and one of the Saylers saw in a Dream himself carried on horseback over the cragged tops of Mountains; and the horse running swiftly, that he was thrown headlong into the shady Valleys, and much torn with Owls Tailants; he related this in the morning to his Companions in jest: the King that was no less



less skilled in *Divination*, than in *Magick*, being as it were forewarned by that Vision of the danger, that he should not have that man to sail with him, he commanded to let him on board another Bottom: and so when the company perished the Kings ship was safe. But *Frotho*, King of *Denmark*, when his own brother *Harald* was treacherously slain by him, that he might not cruelly destroy two innocent Children, his Nephews, *Haraldus*, and *Haldanus*, their Tutors hid them in Caves, under ground, like young Puppies. (as *Saxo* testifies) and fed them there, affirming with divers fictions, that they were devoured in the Night by Wolves.

But *Frotho*, not believing they were dead, purposed to search the Cave, by a Woman that was cunning in South-saying, which had such power in her charms that any thing, how difficult soever it was, if she could but see it afar off, she would call it to her. She related that one *Regno* did secretly educate these Children; and to cover the matter, called them by the names of Dogs; who when they found that by the unusual violence of her Charms, they were teen by her, and carried out of their Kennels, that they might not be discovered by such powerful compulsive command, cast abundance of Gold into her Lap, which their Tutors had given them: when she had received this Bribe, she counterfeited her self to be sick, and lay as one in a trance. When the Kings Ministers sought to know the cause of so sudden downfall, she said it was impossible to find what was become of the Children: whose mighty force did allay the most fierce Effects of Incantations. So being content with a small Reward, she ceased from expecting a greater reward from the King.

Therefore by these and the like Arguments, it is known how much the power of *Divination* and *Magical Art* was adored among the Antients; which now by certain negligence is let go and come to nothing; for it was performed by *Prognostications*, South-sayings, looking into Entrails, Fire, by Water-works, by Lots and Signs, and a thousand more Sacrilegious Rites found out by the Delusions of the Devils: yet men use now a days certain *Divinations* (approved by causes of natural things) and Lots, by calling two or three, or more pieces of Wood into a Pot that by the White, Red, or brown colour of them, they may divide mens Inheritances.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of Women-Witches.

I Shall shew you by a few Examples, how cunning some Women were formerly amongst the Northern people in the *Magical Art*. *Hugbert*, Daughter to *Vagnus* the Giant, was wont to change her posture at pleasure; sometimes she was very great; sometimes less; sometimes exceeding tall; sometimes wretched faced; sometimes beautiful; sometimes she was as tall as the Sky; sometimes so short as a Pygmy; and she was supposed to be able, to pull down the Heavens, to lift up the Earth; to hearken Fountains, to melt Mountains; to lift ships into the Air; to pull down the Gods; to extinguish the Stars, and to make Hell a light place.

When *Hadingus* the King was at Supper, another Woman of the same Art, that carried Pipes, was seen to lift up her head above the ground before the fire; and stretching out her bosom, she seemed to ask in what part of the World so new green Reeds grew; the King that desired to know the matter was carried by her under ground, wrapt in his own Cloak; and having shewed unto him the Monitors of the Infernal Regions, she restored him back to the Earth again.

*Craca*, a Woman of *Norway*, that desired to know the future fortune of her son *Rollerus*, provided Water-grewel, and into this she dropt the venomous moylture

moylture of three Land-Snakes, that were hung up above by a small Twig. But *Ericus*, Son in law to *Craca*, took to himself the Dish that was provided for her son *Rollerus*; and he being refreshed with this happy meat, by the internal operation of it, arrived to the highest pitch of mans wildom. For the force of this meat bred in him the knowledge of all Sciences beyond belief; so that he could understand the meaning of the cries of Birds and wild Beasts. Besides he was so eloquent and curious in his speech, that whatsoever he pleased to discourse of, he would constantly illustrate it with pleasant Proverbs. By his counsell King *Frotho* overcame the Army of the mighty *Huns*, that was assisted by 170. Kings. And at length, *Geistblendus* King of the *Goths*, made this *Ericus* Heir to himself, and to the Kingdom of *Sweden*; and that about the time of Christs Nativity.

But King *Frotho* being hunged at by a Witch that turned into an Oxe, was slain by her upon a certain Sea-coast. *Guthfrida* suddenly blinded the forces of King *Larmericus*, and made them fight one against the other. An Earthen Pot useth to be the common Instrument of all Witches, wherein they boyl their Juices, Herbs, Worms, and Entrails, and by that Witchery meat they allure idle persons to them, and make ships, horses, and horsemen, to be as swift as a boiling pot.

## CHAP. XV.

## Of the Conjurors and Witches in Finland.

ALso, I shall shew very briefly what force Conjurors and Witches have in contraining the Elements, enchanted by them or others, that they may exceed or fall short of their Natural Order: premising this, that the extrem Land of the North, *Finland* and *Lapland*, was to taught Witchcraft formerly in Heathenish times, as if they had learned this cursed Art from *Zoroastres the Persian*; though other Inhabitants by the Sea-coasts are reported to be bewitched with the same madness; for they exercise this Divellish Art, of all the Arts, of the World, to admiration; and in this, and other such like mischief, they commonly agree. The *Finlanders* were wont formerly amongst their other Errors of Gentilisme, to sell Wines to Merchants, that were stop on their Coasts by contrary weather; and when they had their price, they knit three Magical knots, nor like to the Laws of *Cassius*, bound up with a Thong, and they gave them unto the Merchants; observing that rule, that when they unloosed the first, they should have a good Gale of Wind: when the second, a stronger wind: but when they untied the third, they should have such cruel Tempests, that they should not be able to look out of the Forecastle to avoid the Rocks, nor move a foot to pull down the Sails, nor stand at the Helm to govern the ship; and they made an unhappy trial of the truth of it, who denied that there was any such power in those knots. But this Northern Countrey since the time of Christianity received, never durst be seen to use this Art openly, being kept down by the penalty of laws. Moreover, *Sivaldus* the *Swede*, who was corival with King *Holdannus*, had 7. sons, who were such cunning Witches, that they would suddenly in a force of fury roar horridly, bite Bucklers, eat down burning Coles, go through any fires that were made: nor could this motion of madness be allayed, but either by Bonds, or by shedding of mans blood.

## CHAP. 16.



## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the Magical Instruments of Bothnia.

Witches and Conjurers were commonly found amongst the *Northern* people of *Bothnia*, as in their proper place : who by a perfect Art of casting Mitts before mens eyes, could represent themselves and others in divers shapes, & with false Apparitions hide their true faces ; and not only Champions, but Women and young Maids were wont from the thin Ayr to borrow wan Vizards, and counterfeit pale faces : and again making these airy Vapours aside that shadowed them, they would discuss their dark Clouds before their faces with bright day. And it is certain, that their Charms had such force, that they would make any thing clearly to be seen present, how far soever it was off, and however it were bound up fast in never so many knots : and by such juggling Arts, they demonstrate the same thus :

They that desire to know the state of their Friends or Foes, at a very great distance from them, five hundred be it, or a thousand miles off, they enquire of a *Laplander*, or *Finlander*, who is skilled in this matter, giving him a gift ; (namely, some Linnen Garment, or Girdle,) where their Friends or Foes are, and what they do : Whereupon he goes into his Conclave, content with one companion, and his Wife, and he beats upon a Frog of Brass, or Serpent, with a Hammer, upon an Anvil, so many strokes as are prescribed ; and by mumbling of Charms, he turns it up and down ; and presently falling, he is ravished into an extatic, and he lies a short time as if he were dead : In the mean while, he is safely guarded by his fore-said companion, lest any Living Creature, Gnat, or Fly, or other Animal might touch him ; for by the power of his Charms, his Spirit, by the misleading of Devils, brings from far some token, (namely a Ring or a knife) for a testimony of his Embassage or Commission fulfilled : And presently rising up, he declares the same signs to him that hired him, with the rest of the circumstances : And they are reported to be no less powerful in striking men sick of divers Diseases ; for they make of Lead Magical Slugs, as short as ones finger : they send these into men never so far off, which they desire to be revenged on. They by a Cancer rising on their Legs or Arms dye in three days. There are also the Witcheries or Conjurations of the men of *Helsing*, the chief whereof *Vitolphus*, did so strike all men blind when he pleased, that they could neither see the next houses, nor find the way thither : he knew so how to darken the use of Lights, by Cloudy Error.

Moreover, one *Vifinus*, a Fencer of great account, would blunt the edge of all Weapons, by onely looking upon them, yet was he killed with the sword of the *Swedish* Giant *Storchasternus*, of whom I shall speak underneath. For he always kept his Sword covered in a thin skin, (which is said to be the onely Remedy against the blunting of it.) But Stones that are to be cast forth, can be charmed by no Charms ; nor their force taken off from doing hurt, when they are thrown strongly.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the Sea Magicians.

Also, amongst other *Northern* Dieties, one *Hollerus* by name, a Magician, was worshipped, who gained to himself the Opinion and Honour of a God amongst a curious people, by no less Fraud than Superstition. For he having got equal power with *Orhinnus*, amongst the Gods, grew so famous by Arms, and Delusions ; that he used onely a bone for a ship to pass over the Seas ; which bone he had enchanted with his cursed Charms ; and he would as soon pass all Obstacles

Obstacles in his way with that, as if he had hoisted up sails with a prosperous Gale of Wind. But at last, that men might see that his Diety was mortal, he was cruelly slain by those that envied him. Besides him, one *Oddo*, a Dane, a mighty Pirar, was so well learned in Magic, that he would wander at Sea without a ship, and oft-times drowned his Enemies ships, by raising Tempests with his Charms : Wherefore, that he might not fight at Sea with Pirates, he was wont by Witchcraft, to raise and exasperate the Winds and Waves to destroy them.

This man, as he was cruel to Merchants, so was he courteous to Countreymen ; for he esteemed better of Countrey-neatness, than he did of the sordid gains of men. Also, he had great skill to blunt a sword with his Charms : but at last being circumvented by an Enemy more cunning than himself, he was drowned at Sea, who was wont formerly to walk on the Gulphs of the Sea by his enchanted ways.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## Of the same Magicians, and the like.

Then *Orhinnus*, who was the greater and elder amongst the Magicians, brought back upon a horse, many leagues at Sea, one *Hadingus*, King of *Denmark*, who was slowly deluded by Magical Incantations, and drawn away from his acquaintance : But as *Hadingus* was brought along, he observed the prints of the horses feet in the Waters, as he peeped through the chinks of that covering, he lay trembling under, and exceedingly admired at it : and when he was prohibited to look after that he was not allowed to do he turned away his eyes : that were full of amazement, from the terrible contemplation of his Voyage. Again, *Hagvinus* King of *Norway*, when he was to fight against the Danes, he raised a storm by Witchcraft, and so beat upon the Enemies heads, with hail-stones of artificial greatness, that their eyes were hurt as with arrows from the Clouds, and they could not see, the Elements fighting more against them, than the Enemy.

Moreover, the men of *Biarmia* that are nearest to the Arctick Pole, being to fight in the North against the most mighty King *Regnerus*, they set upon the Heavens with Charms, and raised the greatest Tempests in the Clouds that could possibly be. Then the Danes, when the Tempest was abated, were scorched with most tempestuous heat : so this double mischief and distemper on both sides, afflicted their bodies, that they lost their Victory, and their lives together.

## CHAP. XIX.

## Of a Magician bound.

Amongst the *Ostrogoths*, there is a huge Lake of fresh waters, called *Veter*, (of which I spake sufficiently before) but there is in the middle of it a large Island, wherein there are two Parish-Churches : in one of them there is found a Vault that hath a hollow long entrance, and going forth of it, and it is wonderful deep ; which Vault, none but vain-glorious and curious people, provided with lights, and clews of thread, to find the way back again, descend into : chiefly for that end, that they may see a certain Magician called *Gilbert*, who by Magic Art (for thence arose his misery) from old time by his own Master *Caillus*, whom he presumed to insult over, was overcome and bound there. It was done thus, with a certain small Club, that was carved with the characters of the *Goths* or *Russians*, and was held forth, and taken in his Masters hands ; for by this was *Gilbert* bound, and became unmovable, that neither by using his teeth to unloose himself, (for they clung together, as if they had been fastened with pitch) nor yet

using his feet, could he yet loose, being made fast by the crafty counsel of his Master. And though many rash-headed people run continually to see this Spirit with vehement admiration, yet they dare not presume to come very near to him, by reason of the stench of the Cave, and hurtful Vapours, for fear their breath should be stop'd, and they should be suffocated. Also, they are kept from him by Mounds cast up, and by Bars, let by the Inhabitants, lest such as despite their own danger, should go in like mad-men, and should never come forth again.

Moreover, it is provided by a most severe Law, as it is for them that kill themselves, that such as know these dangers shall not allure others that are ignorant of them, to seek after this sight; or lead them in, whom they have perwaded to it. This foresaid Island *Vifrigæ*, is very famous for the pleasant and secure Mansion of the Kings there, who are there dead and buried.

#### CHAP. XX.

##### *Of the punishment for Witches.*

**I**n East the Northern Witches should seem alone here to be led to sad spectacles. *Vincentius in Spec. Hist. l. 25. c. 6.* comes and tells us, that an English woman deluded by Magical Art, after cruel torments, was carried by the Devils into the Ayr with horrid cries. His words are these:

There was a certain Woman in *Bethelia*, a Village of England, that was a South-sayer and a Witch, who one day when she was eating, heard her cough, that she took great pleasure in, to speak something more loud than it was wont to do: When the Mistress heard this, her knife fell out of her hand, and she grew pale in her face; and lamenting, she said very often; This day is my Plough come to the last Furrow; this day shall I hear and receive great hurt.

As she yet spake, a Messenger came to her, saying; This day is thy Son dead, and all thy Family died suddenly. This heard, she sank down, wounded with continual grief, and she commanded all her children that were alive to be brought to her, which were a Fryer and a Nun; to whom the sighing, said thus: I by my miserable destiny, ever was a servant to the Devil in my actions. I am the Sink of all Vice, and the Mistress of enticements: I once confided in your Religion, and I despair'd of my self: But now, because I know the Devil shall have me to torment me, who perswaded me to offend, I beseech you, by the bowels of your Mother, that you will attempt to ease my torments; for you cannot revoke the Sentence of Damnation passed upon my soul: Wherefore sow up my body in a Stags skin, and put it into a Chest of Stone, and fasten the cover with Iron and Lead, and bind about the stone with three great chains. If I live three nights thus in safety, you shall bury me the fourth day: though I fear the Earth will not receive me, by reason of my Witchcrafts; let there be Palms sung for me fifty nights, and Mass said for me as many dayes. They did as the bad chem, but it nothing availed; for the two first nights, when the Clerks and Querristers sang Palms about her body, all the Devils easily breaking the Church door that was fastened with a mighty bar, tore in pieces two of the chains; but the middle chain which was made stronger, held fast. The third night, about Cock-crowing, all the Monastery seemed to be lifted from the Foundation, with a noise of Enemies coming; one of them was more terrible to look on, and taller than the rest; and he striking the Church-door with greater force, brake them into fritters, and came proudly to the Coffin, and in arrogant gesture, and calling her by her name, commanded her to rise. When she answered, that she could not for her bands,

Thou

Thou shalt, saith he, be unbound, but to thy greater mischief: And he forthwith brake the Chain, the rest of the Devils could not do, as if it had been Flax, and he kicked off the cover of the Grave with his foot, and taking her by the hand before them all, he drew her forth at the Church-doors, where there was prepared a black horse, which proudly neighed: that had Hooks of Iron all over him, that stuck forth: Upon this Horse was this miserable woman set, and she presently disappeared from the beholders eyes, with all her company. But there were cries heard almost four miles, of this miserable wretch calling for help. Also *Saxo lib. 14.* relates what sport of the Devil happened to the *Rugians*, in the City *Karenina*, for their worshipping of the Devil, which by the illusion of the Devil, men were first provoked to commit Adultery, and then presently in the time of this most beastly act, they were punished most detestably. For men in that City being allured to ly with women, tick to them, as Dogs do to Bitches; nor can they be pulled from them in a long time. Sometimes both of them being hung one against the other upon long poles, being fastened together by an unusual way, became a laughing stock to the people. From the soulings of that miracle, solemn worship was given to base Images: and it was supposed to be effected by their forces, which was shadowed under the delusions of Devils. Therefore, as *St. Augustine* testifies, *lib. 8. De civit. Dei*, such things are tolerated by a just Judgment of God for their sins; for it is most just, that they should be afflicted, or made subject and deceived by them. But he that desires not a happy life hereafter, nor to lead a godly life now, by such horrible acts, may seek death in Hell: but he that will hold no society with wicked Spirits, let him not fear the damnable Superstition they are worshipped by; but let him embrace the true Religion; whereby they are discovered and conquered.

#### CHAP. XXI.

##### *Of the hurt done by the Devils.*

**I**n the Northern parts (where the Devil hath his Seat really) they mock the people that live there with unspeakable delusions, under various forms, and do them hurt also, throwing down their houses, killing their Cattle, spoiling their fields, making a Desolation of Castles and Waters.

## *The End of the Third Book.*

# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L :

CONCERNING

*The Wars and Manners of the Wild Pagans, and their Neighbours.*

*The Epitome of the Fourth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

### *Of the unhappy Battail of Regnerus, King of Denmark.*

**S**axo Grammaticus, the most famous Author of the Danish History, relates, that Regnerus King of Denmark, for five years, when he had ended his Piracy on the Coasts of Russia, to have resolved to invade by armes his Neighbours of Biarmia; namely, Northern People, living in Mountains, and Champion Land, and to bring them down by his incomparable power. They, when they knew of his coming, presently used Charms to Heaven, and so prevailed with the Clouds, that they filled them full of Rain, to do violence; which so long held Regnerus, before he could put off to Sea, that his provision was spent; and so soon as the Tempest was allayed, a violent heat scorched him. Nor was that plague greater, than the great cold was raised also. Wherefore this double mischief, of untemperate weather, did by turns mightily disturb and corrupt his souldiers bodies, by their immoderate coming upon them. But as the King observed himself, to be stoppt rather by the fallie, than true force of the Ayre, to revenge this infoleny of the Biarmians, he comes again upon them unexpected. But their King relying on his most skillful Archers of the Duke of Finmarck, his Neighbour, tore in pieces the Army of Regnerus, who then held his Winter-Quarters in Biarmia; yet suffered no loss himself. For the Finlanders, (as I toucht upon it at the beginning of my first Book); being able to run swiftly with slippery skates, fly away at pleasure, and have power to come neer, and remove far back presently. For so soon as they have wounded their Enemy,

Enemy, they run from him, as fast as they came upon him, and they will return, being nothing wearied by their running forward: Wherefore by reason of their Waggon, and nimbleness of their bodies, they have a most ready way, to fall on, or to retreat.

It is to be believed, as the same Saxo reports, that this mighty King sustained his ill fortune courageously, and wondred at it, when he saw himself who had triumphed over the Roman pride, to be brought to the very last point of difficulty, by an unarmed and disorderly Company: wherefore he that had so gallantly beaten down the most illustrious Renown of the Roman Souldiers, and the mighty force of the great Commander, was forced to yield to the most sordid and slespish provocation of a savage and base people: and he whose fame in War the forces of the most potent Nation could not quell, could not stand against a small handful of contemptible men. Hence it fell out, that by that hand wherewith he most valiantly won the most illustrious glory of the World, and the greatest Instrument of Military strength, wherewith he openly adventured against the terrible noise of many Hells and Foes, he was fain privately to fall upon this ignoble and oblique people, and to steal upon them unawares; and he was not ashamed to stain his great glory, got openly in the day, by fraud in the night, making choice of clancular Snares in the place of open Fortitude. This thing, as it was ill favoured in the Deed, so was it bale in the End, and he might sing the common Verse,

*Oh by what small things, great things are destroyed!*

I pass over how Arngarius conquered Tugildus, King of Finmarck, and Egbert King of Biarmia, who resisted Frotho, King of Denmark, with so obstinate a mind and forces. The said Frotho married his Daughter, which he only loved, to the said Arngarius, a Swedish Champion, who vanquished Egbert, whom he challenged to fight a Duel with him; thinking it not unfit to become his Father in Law, who had made himself so famous, by many Titles of his Actions; and had conquered a most sharp Enemy.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the cruelty of the Wild Inhabitants.*

**A**s the Eastern people that dwell in the Caspian Mountains, by reason of the mighty noise of the Sun-rising, and the horrid sound by secret exhalation coming from the bowels of the Earth, fly to Caves to save their lives, and stop both their ears, that they may be safer in the troublesome time: so the Nations that live in the utmost Coasts of the Seas of Norway, by reason of the violent South-West Wind, and thick Snows lying on the tops of the most high Mountains, have their Caves under ground, and live upon Fish, and Wild Beasts. And these hate any men that shall fail to them for Traffique, as if they were Rovers, tearing to be brought into captivity by them: But such as are Runaways, and oppressed by the cruelty of Tyrants, they admit for their companions, and they instruct them for their defence, how they may catch Pirats in snares, and kill them, when they come upon their Coasts. They may indeed, whilst they counterfeit themselves to be Fugitives, or shew their Harbours to strangers to ride in, that they may be in no hazard, shut them up in what dangers they will. But when strangers come not, that they cannot do these and the like practices, by reason of the Sea frozen, they are forced to stay in Dungeons and Caves, made up with the bones and ribs of Sea-Monsters, because of the Winds and Snows.

For these Caves seem to be made very cunningly, being thatched outwardly with Sea-weeds, like to a ship turned bottom upwards; and that by reason of the Winds vehemency, which are no less formidable in that place, than cruel Tempests raised out of the Sea. There are some certain men amongst them, that are as it were shepherds, that live on the Goats of the *Caspian* Sea, that stop the passages to their Cortages, with Turf and Sea-Weeds or Mountain Mols, with Twigs fastened together, lest any man coming from Sea, might come to view, and search out them, and their secret places. And it may be they willingly endure this hardness of the Air and Earth, and to live in Dens, that they may be free from the intolerable and insatiable Tributes of Tyrants, to whom the boundless Ocean seems to be but a small Earthen pot. Also *Pliny*, lib. 16. c. 2. relates very strange things concerning Nations living in Caves toward the North, and toward the boiling Sea; namely, that there is a miserable people which have high Hillocks, and green Banks made with their hands, that are higher then the highest flood of the Sea; their Cottages being so made like to men sitting in them, as when ships are drowned by shipwracks but when the waters go out, they hunt after Fish about their Cottages, which go back with the Sea; and those they thus take, they dry more by the Wind, than the Sun.

## CHAP. III.

Again concerning the cruelty of these Wild Men, &c.

Toward the white Lake of the farthest North parts, where the Dominion of the King and Kingdome of Sweden is largest in extent: there dwell most fierce people on all sides, who use no other Breast-plates, than Wild Asses' or Elks Skins: Likewise they use Bowes and Lances that are fortified with a moist Spear before and behind. For by an admirable agility (as I said before, lib. 1. of the *Scythians*) they can turn and wheel about at pleasure on every side, and can avoid or put off any violence; and that chiefly on the tops of Valleys, that are in all places filled continually with thick fnows. And we may almost say of these Nations, what the chief Philosopher of the *Scythians* *Anacharsis* writ of their Dialects; that is, that neither any one that comes unto them can fly away, nor can they be taken, nor yet be found, unless they please, and laid hands of. For they have no Cities nor Walls built: they all carry their houses with them: the Foot-Archers living without any bread, but onely with Fish and Deer they kill, their Houses are Wagons and Tents, made either of the dried Skins of Beasts, or of the Barks of Trees: yet in Winter they quarter by the Banks of Waters, and in Summer, amongst Shrubs, and Trees, and shady places, varying their station, their Caps frequently are Wild-Geese or Duck-skins, or Cocks; which, as other Fowl, are there found in abundance. There are a World of precious Skins, rather to be bartered for, than to be bought with money.

## CHAP. IV.

Of the Five-fold Speech of the Northern Kingdome.

BY this diversity of their Habits and Arms, is declared what difference there is of their Countries, Languages, Ages, and Exercises. For there are many great and mighty Lands, as *Lapland*, *Moscovia*, *Swethland*, *Gothland*, the Land of the *Vermori*, *Dalenses*, of the *Mountainers*, and *Norwegians*; whose largeness is extended far and broad, and is greater then all *Italy*, *Spain*, and *France*, joyned together: That *Pliny* did not fairly call them for their undiscovered greatness another World. Therefore it is no wonder, that therein is found the use of five Languages; namely, of the Northern people, of the *Laplenders*, or men of *Bothnia*, *Moscovites*, *Russians*, *Finlanders*, *Swethlanders*, *Goths*, and *Germans*. But in these

these cold Countries, some men live to be above 160. years old, as they do also in *England* and *Scotland*, wherein the Venerable Bishop *David* lived to be 170. years of age: also the Exercises of those that dwell in the Northern Delarts, are Hunting and Fishing, and they live by bartring with the *Moscovites*. The *Finlanders* live by Husbandry, Fishing, and hewing of Wood: The *Goths* and *Swedes* busie themselves in the same Exercises: The *German* strangers are given to merchandising, and live by gain; they observe the Law of the *Terrigena*, and they import all things that seem to respect a civil kind of life, as silk Cloaths, weaved Garments with Gold, and divers Wines.

What kind of Weapons they use, I shall shew both here partly, and partly underneath; but more at large concerning their Battails in the Fields. But here it is granted, that amongst all the Northern people, the *Goths* are the most experienced in Archery, and more nimble at their Slings, as the *Finlanders* are approved for their Bowes.

The *Swedes* use to fight with Axes, and Hatchets, and Speers: their Habit after the ancient manner is wont to be short and close about them, except their Hose that are more wide. The *Swedes* use more large Garments almost after the *German* fashion: The *Moscovites* wear long Garments, as the *Greeks* did: of them all, these are the most Northerly: But the wild *Laplenders* are clothed in costly Skins, not for any Ornament, but for Necessity sake.

## CHAP. V.

Of Bartring of Commodities without Moneys.

SINCE all Fraud is naught and detestable in any thing whatsoever, yet it is swifter and more detestable and bitter the more it is attempted amongst simple people, when any false or adulterate money is paid to them; as I shall shew underneath in my 6th. Book, concerning diversity of moneys. Therefore this Nation of *Laplenders*, or men of *Bothnia*, and wild places is quiet at home, and is held not to be known to the rest of the World. They are not troubled with false money, for they looking rather to the account of things, than of monies, obtain with pleasure and content what they wish for. And being thus ignorant of the noise of Wars, they live without Seditions, and dwell together without Envy, and communicate all things one to another without Fraud: all the Contentment they have is to avoid Poverty, and not to be inamoured of Riches.

These people know not how to be covetous, nor will they vex themselves with any Fraud in Bargaining: Wherefore living without Tumults, they seek onely for moderate Fortunes, that they may not be deprived of a good Conscience, as many rich men are; for it is a heinous offence with them to take any thing by violence, who know not how to deceive any man of his Right: Yet since they are not happy in all things, but that they want other mens helps and commodities to make them so, therefore they stick to traffique in Goods, without money, depending on honest and faithful change one with another, by a mutual consent; and without uttering any words, they deal justly: not for that they want wit, and have barbarous manners, but because they use a peculiar Language which other Nations can hardly understand. Also, there are places appointed yearly, to perform these businesses, either upon the Plains, or Frozen Lakes, and these are kept as Markets, that they may vent in general all such Commodities that they have gained by their private wits at home or abroad. Nor do they abstain from the like Merchandise, when other men bring to them what they desire.

They

They have Governours, and they highly respect them chosen by the common consent of the people, called *Bergchana*; that is, Mountain-men, to whom they pay many precious Skins, and divers kind of Fish, as well for Tribute due to the King of *Sweden*, as given by them of their own liberality. And these are clothed in Red, whereby they are known before others. They pay also the like Tributes to the King of *Norway*, and Emperour of *Moscovia*, and are subject to them. They never make Wars against their Neighbours, or any that live far from them, unless they be provoked by great injury; and then also they use not onely Arms that Fury can afford, but they fall upon their implacable Enemies with cruel Incantations, stupifying the Limbs of their Enemies; so that they can neither lift up their hands, nor strike with their swords, and can hardly fly from them.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Fairs upon the Ice.

IN this Scheme is demonstrated the most ancient Custome of Marts upon the plain and wide Ice, in many Provinces, and places, that are observed by most rich confluence of Merchants. Their most eminent place is the Archiepiscopal City of *Upsal*, of the Kingd. of *Sweden*: through the middle whereof a most vast River passing, is so mightily frozen with thick Ice, most commonly about the beginning of *February*, that it will bear the weight of infinite multitudes of men, Beasts, and all sorts of Commodities. And such Fairs, even until this day Antiquity called, and yet calleth *Dysking*, that is, the judiciary place of the most prudent Queen *Dysa*, because this most high-spirited, and most wise woman, seeing the infinite multitude of people, by reason of the most cold influence of the Heavens, their Corn and Fruits being exhausted, to be in danger to be starved, she declaring the Necessity, perswaded them rather to go forth of their Native Country, and to seek a seat in other Lands beyond Seas, living peaceably, and when they had found it, to be diligent about it, than to lose their lives by the most horrid censure of some improvident men: yet this going forth of the people, is not from the *Peninsula Scanziana*, whereof *Paulus Diaconus* speaks concerning the *Lombards*. There might be the like cause, but at a very great distance asunder: for by the Command, Order, and Direction, of this Queen *Dysa*, it was varied with an infinite multitude of people, and with power. But since my most dear Brother and Predecessour *Johannes Magnus*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, makes mention of this in his History, I send the curious Reader to his Book, and return to my Icy Marts; and say, that by an unvaried sign, time out of mind, all the *Northern* people, and the Nations near to them, are wont to observe these Marts most strictly, after this manner, That the first Full-Moon shall prescribe an infallible sign and time (which is after the day and midnight of the three Kings in *January*) at which time all men may come to those Fairs, kept at a place very well known to them all: yet observing that point of time, both before, and at, and after that in their Commerce, that the Moon decreasing, may shew every man the way to return to the place from whence he came. The business that Merchants there traffique about, are things of all sorts: Namely, precious Skins of divers Creatures: also Silver Vessels for the Table, and for the Ornament of insatiable Women: also Corn, Metals, Iron, Copper, Cloth, and things to be eaten; which are more frequently bought by just estimation, than by weight, in a mutual and pleasant agreement; except such things which Providence, which is a wise Defence, perceives, that the Inhabitants may want for their present or future necessities: such as are Corn, and War-Horses, and moit

moist meats; as Butter, Cheese, Lard: the kinds whereof, if War be suspected, are forbidden to be brought forth by Foreign Merchants, or their Factors, by a publick Edict, with a penalty to confirm it. Moreover, in another place upon a Lake congealed, called *Melet*, about the end of *February*, by the Walls of the City *Serengen*, there are Marts held upon the Ice. Again in the middle of *March*, at a place called *Oviken* in the Territories of *Jemphibia*, in the Mountainous places of *Sweden* and *Norway*, there are Fairs kept upon the Ice; and in very many places about the middle, or end of *May*, Troops of Horses pass over the Frozen Water: which are very wide, whether they be for War or Peace, when at *Rome* they are wont to feed on delicate Fruits.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the Marriages of the Laplanders by Fire and Flint.

THE Friends and Kindred being present, the Parents confirm their Childrens Marriages by Fire; and by this Steel and Flint, that Fire is stricken out by. For in Fire and Flint, as by a Conjugal Society, the most fit and lucky Marriages are made fast, than by any other sign whatsoever. And without Fire the more civil Christian People elsewhere in the *North*, do not solemnize their Marriage Rites. For every one, both Bridegroom and Bride, according as they are for Eminency and Kindred, command long Torches that are made by wonderful Art, of divers colours, out of soft Wax, with many coloured silk pieces hanging about them, to be carried before them to the Church as they go, for the Priests Benediction: which also they leave there behind them, with great Oblations, when they have ended their Solemnities: But in the mean while, they that carry the Wax-lights, rend off the silk Ribbands, as in great fury, for a rich booty.

Moreover, Women when they have been delivered of a Child, they come with Wax-candles lighted to give thanks to God; and all faithful Christians also are carried to their Sepulchres with Lights burning; as they came into the World before by Baptism, and a lighted Lamp. But to what belongs to the foresaid Laplanders, and their Custome, I must farther add, that these Marriages being celebrated the way spoken of by Fire, the Kindred bring home the Bride adorned with Ermine and Zabel Skins, upon a ranged or tame Deer, accompanied with a notable company of her Friends, according to the account of her Birth.

And so they bring her into the Bed-Chamber, or Tents, wishing unto her health and fruitfulness, and they use Dancing in the mean time. But the Bridegroom is adorned with Skins of a spotted Beast, or *Mardwin*, walking like to some Noble-man of *Venice*, to be esteemed as much for his rich Furs, as others that are loaded with Jewels, or Gold Chains. But the Bridegroom, is so much more to be commended, together with his Bride, and that whole Nation, that they will be joyned together with so great state, not by wandring Lust, but solemn Matrimony.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of Mourning-Dances.

Nor doth this Nation, dwelling under the most cold *Northern* Climate, where Day and Night divide the Year, seem to remain without joy mingled with sorrow, as if they lived in a Desert. They make merry Bankers, having Minstrels with them, that the Ghefts being more merry, (though they feed on hard meats) may be provoked to dance; which they lead on, when the Musick plays lustily, singing in their Countrey Ryme, the famous acts of their antient Worthies and Giants; namely, that glory and praise they wan by their valour. Then falling to deep sighs, & groans, they fall down upon the ground in humble manner, and the like is done by many Islanders by, that they may seem to be conformable to the rest.

At length the Musick raising them; they fall to more delicate meats, playing no more doleful Tunes; which were plaide chiefly for that reason, because they are unable to imitate the famous Deeds of their Ancestors, in any, or but very few things, or be like to them in their Titles; that is, for defending the chastity of Maids, and repelling the violence of Oppressors, where, by a deceitful dissimulation of Governours, these wicked Enormities are committed or suffered to be done, without any punishment for them. Therefore the foresaid people think it far better to dy than to live; for the most part they mourn, when Children are born, and sing at Funerals, as if they were Festival times.

## CHAP. IX.

## Of their Exercises by Moon-Lights.

It is a frequent Question, what the *Northern* people do, when the nights are long and continual, before and after the *Winter Solstice*, when by the light of the Sun, men especially under the Pole, should do any work; and again, when they have nothing but Day in Summer, and scarce any Night appears for six months; wherefore we must here observe, that *Ptolomy* tellines in the *Second of his Almagest*, c. 6. that in the 39. parallel, the greatest day is six moneths long; and under this parallel there are men, or countries, farthest toward the Pole; namely, the *Laplanders*, and *Botwians*, and *Islanders*, that are Islanders. In the 38. Parallel, the greatest day is five months, under which is *Sweden*, *Helsing*, *Angermannia*, and the more *Northerly* parts of *Norway*. In the 36. Parallel, the greatest day is reckoned to be three moneths: under this is *Gothia*, *Muscovia*, *Russia*, and *Livonia*. Therefore, they that live in that long Summer light, or opposite darknels, know excellent well, and they are wont profitably to vary their constant actions, when it is night. For instead of day-light, they burn the fat of Sea-Monsters, and with a Wick put to it, they use that in their Houses, Fields, or Woods: they make thin, and prepare the Nerves of Living-Creatures, especially of ranged Deer (whereof I shall speak underneath concerning Living-creatures) for Thread and Webs, and Cloths, to be sowed together, especially of Skins with Wool; because Flax in those far Countries, is neither sowed, nor doth it grow.

Moreover, those that labour in Champion-places, use in the snow, either the said fat of Beasts, or Fish-Oyl (and the Wind can have no power over these) or else they have the cleer Moon-light, or reflexion of the Stars; and they can do greater works in the Woods and Fields, when there is Snow and Ice in the Moon-light, and make longer journeys, than they can do in Summer by light of the Sun.

For in Summer, the crooked Valleys, and oblique Hills, and steep Rocks, and high Mountains, cannot be passed over with their Wagons, to make Journeys; but in Winter all are plain and fit, to take any kind of Journeys, and they are so agile, and opportunely ordered, that two Oxen will draw more weight (as I said before, and as I shall say hereafter, concerning wars upon the slippery Ice, or beaten snow, than ten horses can do in wagons on land.) But as concerning the great Light, that it may not hurt them whilest they sleep, they keep Remedies sufficient against it, both at home, and in their Tents; nor yet the glittering brightness nor heat of it, do so much hurt to the Inhabitants, as the most cruel Gnats do, which, may be, are a greater plague to the *Egyptians*, as I shall shew underneath, and speak of the Remedies against them.

## CHAP. X.

## Of their Ships, Bands, and Roots, bound together.

Because that in the Lands farthest *North*, no Mines of Iron, Copper, or Silver, are yet found out, and they have great necessity for shipping, by reason of the multitudes of Waters, which must be fastned with Iron; therefore when they make little ships, most for the use of Fishermen, they most ingeniously put together the clest boards of Pine and Fir-trees, made into thin Planks, whereof they have plenty in their Woods; and these they fasten without any Iron Nails with the pliable green Roots of Trees, as with Ropes, as Spiders do their Webs. Others bind their Vessels with Withs, or Twigs of Poplar Trees, and other Trees, except Oke, which grows not near them within two hundred *Gothick* or *German* miles. But Fir and Pine-Trees there, are so straight and high, that they are most fit for every necessary use, and for gain, for those who desire it, when they can be sold to Foreign Merchants. Others, for making ships, fasten the Planks, together with the Nerves of Beasts, converted and bruised, especially of ranged Deer, which they dry by the Wind and Sun; but these Nerves are like Hairs, drawn off from the thinner Nerves, which are made clean for to make Thread, and are as it were the Excrecence of them; as I shall shew elsewhere, *lib. de Animal*, concerning the use of Ranged Deer. But all their ships, however they are made or joyned, are most diligently smeared with Pine-tree pitch (whereof there is plenty in abundance) and they are fastened with Wooden pins, within and without, where ever need is. Their ships are very short, not deep, but very broad, in a due proportion, and they are kept to sail with, in Tempests, because the Waves rise not high, but are frothy; which froth is raised, by reason of the stones that lie hid under the Waters; and they commonly yeild to the Waves, like to a Sack of Leather, and to the reflexion of the Waters, because they are not fastened with hard and unconquered Iron, but with soft tough Twigs and Nerves. And these will last long against the injury of the Elements, because of the imbred Pitch.

They use for Anchors crooked Roots of strong Wood, bound with Poplar, or Birch-Withs, that are as long as Ropes, and their Sails are Woollen Cloth, and Barks of Trees, especially on standing waters, but very seldom on the salt-sea. They call these ships *Scoters*; as there is a long kind in the *Bothnick* Sea, and fresh waters, called *Haapar*, that is most carefully fastned without any Iron. And this, as it is wonderful long, so it is monstrous swift, that it seems almost to fly with any light touch. It serves onely on swift descending Rivers for Summer-fishing.



In which kind of ship I was carried most dangerously. Anno 1518, between the Mountainous Rivers descending: so was I constrained to perform my publick occasions, to trust my life and safety to a brittle piece of Wood: the more dangerous was the passage, as there were Marks set on the shore, where people of great note had been drowned before by the force of the Rivers.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of the Art of shooting with the Bow.

THE Art of Shooting with the Bow, is a Natural Profession all the Northern people follow, especially with Bows fitted for every Age, Time, Place, and Occasion; and this in their first Age, wherein their careful Parents teach all their Children of both Sexes, but chiefly their Boys, how to hold the Bow, or to turn obliquely their Hand-bows to shoot their Arrow with (for other kind of Arrows they use not) and if a Dart or Arrow, missing the Mark, is lost between the Snow or grass, or fall down in shrubs or trees, that it cannot be found; to recover it, they shoot one or more Arrows after it, at length or upright to find it: for that which was first shot, is to be found not far from it. And this way is observed by all Northern Archers to find out their shots. The Children may hit the mark, they lay down for them a white Cordie (which they take great delight in) or new Bows; and likewise for Maids a Linnen Garment. And they grow so skilful, that at a great distance they will hit a Half-penny or a Needle, so far as they can see it, infallibly; as I saw it, Anno 1518, when I was in their Country.

These People are commonly small of stature, and of small courage, because they live without Cities or Castles, either in Villages or Tents, or in Caves or Delarts: some of them make their Houses in Trees, growing square, that they may not be suffocated in the field by the thick fall of Snow, or devoured by hungry Beasts, that come in an invincible number; upon which occasion, there is great care taken for childing Women, and young Children, which they will pursue more greedily, as the most dainty meat; as I shall shew underneath concerning the Nature of Wolves.

The Women and Maids of these Countries are very fruitful and fair, chiefly for that cause, that they are accounted fairer for White and Red (which is Nature's chief Workmanship;) they neither know, nor will know Painting, if they were not comely by Nature: There are also Young men and Boys, which the Parents cloth with dried Skins of Beasts, chiefly of young Bears. And it is not blamed in the Nation, that is so bred in simple manners, and innocent behaviour.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of the Hunting of the Laplanders.

HAVING spoken in my first Book, c. 2. of the *Seriefinni, Biarmienfes, and Finmark* men, and of the life and manners of them; I shall here add how they run swiftly after Beasts, with Bows and Arrows, over Valleys and Snowie Mountain tops, up and down, upon bending downwards broad slippery boards, bound to their feet.

The Women shoot their Arrows with their Hairs hanging about their Ears; And no wonder, because those that dwell under the Pole, when the Woods are so green, there are found such abundance of Wild-Beasts amongst them, that men alone, unless women help, are not sufficient to hunt them.

There:

Therefore the Women hunt them as nimby, and may be more nimby than the men do. But the man divides the prey, and puts it on the Spit to roast, and disposeth of what must be given to those of the Houle, or to Neighbours in liberality.

Nor is this cunning to hunt Wild-Beasts, either by Snares or openly, used; as also upon Birds of divers kinds, that are found in vast Delarts, whose other feathers serve for their Beds, and their harder Quills for the weaving of strings. But they more frequently feed on Roib, than boyed Meats. The Skins of Beasts they make fit for their Childrens bodies, and Birds skins for to cover their heads: wherefore some have foolishly believed, that their bodies are hairy like to Wild Beasts: which may be proceeds from ignorance, or pleasure, that many take to speak things incredible of remote Lands, as *Paulus Jovius* thinks fit to do.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of Horses passing over Snowy Mountains.

HORSES and men pass, as upon Bucklers of War; for there are other Mountains that are Limits between the Northern Kingdoms of Sweden and Norway, called *Doffrini*, and some others, that in Winter are to be covered with deep thick Snows, that Travellers cannot pass over them the usual way: But that homebred Factors may by their Wit overcome all difficulties, and lighten the Burdens by Art: they bind to their own feet, and to their Horses feet, bundles or bows made with light broad Cork, or Bark of Tree, and to without fear of sinking, they can with a great Burden go over the Mountains of Snow, and they will go but a days Journey, that is, two Mountain miles, (which is 12 Italian miles) in a day, because the days are short. But in the night, the Moon shining most bright, they will go twice or thrice as far. Nor is that unfelicit done, since by the reflex of the Snow, the Light of the Moon enlightens the high and low fields, and steep Mountains, that they can descry Wild-Beasts afar off, and avoid them: amongst which Mountains, Wolves (when the Cold is very great) come in troops, especially in January (and these are the most dangerous, as I shall shew underneath, concerning the danger of Wolves. But the things that are carried by such ingenious labours, are Salt, hard Iron, Linnen and Woolen Cloth, and some where Mineral Stones of Silver, Copper, and precious skins: But that Horses may be better provided for their passage over the Snow, they daily lead them over Snowy Valleys, from their first years, with Baskets tied to their feet, with a light burden, that they may learn to carry greater burdens. Also, those that lead them, support themselves with Baskets, bound under their feet, and a Staff, broad at the end, that by these Preambles, for that time, they may escape imminent death, and great necessity. For it falls out with them that travel, that when the South Wind blows, the Snow grows so soft, that horse or man treading their feet upon it, unless they provide, as I said before, against it, they will fall into an open Pit, and no Man and Beast can help, unless there be more company that are faithful.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of the dangerous passage between the Mountains.

THERE is yet greater danger that attends such who travel over hollow Mountains, because the Winds blow so strong there, which seem to be raised by the concourse of small Snow, that unless men carry Spades to dig, and open the way, they can scarce get out of the high Mountains, or deep Valleys.

The

The principal of these Mountains are *Deffra*, *Schars*, *Sula*, *Harvilla*, and many such like: from the Bottoms, or Roots whereof, vast Rivers run forth, some to the East, some to the West: For the Mountains are continued from South to North, as a line drawn in form of a crooked bunched back; and they have their Names from the Provinces, Rivers, or form of Places, or Beasts that use to dwell in them; as from Bears, Wolves, Stags, or Beavers, and other kinds of living creatures that are all hairy, which according to the quality of the place, are most exceeding well covered against the Cold. Therefore Lions, Camels, Apes, Asses, or Mules, if they be carried thither, can scarce live there: yet the Inhabitants will go into these Mountains in Winter, carrying no small Burdens with ranged Deer, like yoked Oxen, almost two hundred Italian miles. One man keeps 40. ranged Deer, and each of these will carry two hundred pound weight and more.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of the Law of killing Crows.*

There is a Law made in *Iceland*, that is, the *Land of Ice*, that was of old, and is now subject to the Kingdome of *Norway*, that whosoever shall kill a hurtful Beast, should have a set reward from the Kings Treasury, or Officer there, according to the quality of the body of the Beast slain, and cruel nature of it. Since therefore white Crows there are more cruel than in other Countries, to kill young Lambs and Pigs, flying fiercely upon them, and scratching them with their claws. Young men that dwell there, use themselves to that labour, that they may revenge this Depopulation, to kill many Crows with their Arrows, and they only tie their backs upon strings, and shew them to the Governours, for to demand their reward: and they largely reward them, giving them as many Arrows as they shot, and killed withall. And this is observed also concerning all hurtful Creatures in the *Northern* Climate, saving that the Skins of great Bears, especially wild ones, are laid for the Priests to tread on, at the feet of their sacred Altars, that the Cold may not hurt them.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Baptizing of Children of the Wild Inhabitants.*

Though I have said much of the Idolatry and Superstitious Worship of the people, that live farthest North, and how there is hope, that when they shall hear the true Gospel preached, they will make hast to joyn themselves to the Congregation of faithful Christians: yet the pious perswasion of the Catholick Priests, hath already induced many of these wild people to come in; and there is greater possibility, that henceforth all Errors being laid aside elsewhere, they will come with one consent. But the reason why they seem to delay is very evident, they living above two hundred Italian miles from the Churches of the Christians: to which, because of that vast distance, they can seldom come: yet such as have yielded to the Christian form, are found to be most obedient; for though the distance be so great, yet once or twice a year they visit their Churches where they were baptized, and they bring their sucking Children in Baskets, bound on their backs, and other Burdens, and Gifts of Skins, especially costly Skins, to pay to the Priests for their Tithes.

But this discommodity of distance is lamentable, nor onely of the *Bosnii*, that dwell toward the North, but also of the *Vermii* Westward, for it hinders their conversion to the Faith,

And

And by reason of this, the Presbyters very seldome, and the Prelates never pass into those Desarts, because of the difficult Passages, and so full of danger.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Conversion of North and East Finland, and their great Hospitality.*

This is the farthest Country *Northward*, was formerly seduced by Pagan Superstition, as many Lands neer unto it were also; and so erring from the way of truth, was contumelious against God, and injurious to Neighbors: But after that, two most famous Lights, *Ericus* King of *Sweden*, and blessed *Henry* Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, had subdued them by a powerful hand to the Christian Faith, and Kingdome of *Sweden*, in the Year of Grace, 1155. first offering them peace, which they despised; and when they had built Temples, and preferred Priests to instruct that people, they became the chief Lovers of all Vertues, but chiefly of Liberality and Hospitality, that the Inhabitants used towards Strangers and Forrainers, with exceeding good-will. They are amongst themselves gentle and modest, and slow to anger; and if they be long urged, they make good their slowness by their great revenge. They dwell in Parishes and Villages distinctly. They have built magnificent Churches, and they exceedingly endeavour to build more new ones. They yield chief Veneration to their Priests, & pay their Tythes of all things; & they are again instructed by them in the law of God, the Preacher standing upon some high place, as the manner is, that rooting out their former Errors, they may cheerfully, and with a good will follow what is good. The Inhabitants of the *West-Bosnia* are held to be like these; who wanting Scholastick Discipline, are taught by the Law of Nature to detest Vices, and to embrace Vertues. For they find that such who live uprightly, and hurt none, abound with all goods; and on the contrary, for those detestable Crimes, Fornications, Adulteries, Thefts, Murders committed, Birds and Beasts, have oft-times forsaken the Woods; Fishes, the Waters, and would not come again: until such time as the Divine Majesty offended, was pacified by Prayers and Benedictions of the sacred Clergy.

*The End of the Fourth Book.*

Olaus



# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

CONCERNING

The Northern Giants.

*The Epitome of the Fifth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

### Of Giants.

**T**Hough sacred and profane Histories, do plainly mention the great Deeds of Champions and Giants, and clearly shew what, and in what time and place of the World they did them, and how they li. ed: yet will it not be unprofitable to add something more to these, which were dug forth of Rocks, and Stones in the North Countries; and to make those things manifest to the World, that are related in Books by the most antient, and very rare Writers; wherefore those farthest Countries, which are elsewhere marked in my Map of *Gothland*; as *Finmark*, *Biarmia*, *Sveicifunia*, *Helsingia*, &c. do every where give such evident Monuments of Giants, to the curious Searchers and Enquirers after them, that they are forced to admire and believe those so high Piles of Stones, and vast heaps of Mountains to have been cast up; not by any Work of Nature, but by the monstrous forces of men, even in the Fields, Woods, and Mountains of *Sweihland*, *Gothland*, *Norway*, where the like Stones are to be seen. But what *Saxo Grammaticus*, the most diligent Writer, speaks concerning his Countrey of *Denmark*, in this point, the curious Reader may find, if he (at his leisure) look at the end of the Preface of his History, and he shall understand that *Denmark* had formerly Giants that wrought in it; as is testified by the exceeding great Stones placed on the Tombs and Vaults of the Antients.

If

If any man doubt whether this was done by a monstrous force, let him behold the tops of some Mountains, and let him say, if he can, who carried such huge Stones up to the tops of them. For every man will observe, that takes notice of this Miracle, that it is not to be thought that a Weight that could not be stirred, or very hardly, upon plain ground, could by the one's labour of ordinary men be carried up to the top of such high Mountains, or that the usual force of men could bring it thither: But whether the Giants alter the Floods, were the Authors of such things, or some mighty strong men above other men, he saith he can collect little from the *Danish* Antiquities. Perhaps, if he had searched the Rocks and Stones of the Upper *Sweden* and *Gothland*, he by his admirable Wit might have conveyed to posterity, the most famous deeds of the Antients: since *Sweihland* and *Gothland* have had Kings and Princes 1370. years, before that *Dan* their first King began to rule in *Denmark*; whose magnificent Deeds are carved in Stones, and the curiosity of our Times sees it: yet *Saxo* distinguisheth, that formerly there were three sorts of *Mathematicians*, which went under the name of Giants and Champions, and these wrought strange Miracles, by their several Enchantments.

The first were men of a monstrous kind, called Giants, who were greater bodies than men are:

The second were Naturalists, who had a Divining Art; who the lesser they were in body, in respect of the former, the greater they were above them in the Quickness of their Wit. Between these, and the Giants, there was a continual War, till these conquered the Giants by force of Arms, and gat to themselves a Right to Rule, with an Opinion of Divinity.

The third sort sprang up from the copulation between the former two; and these were neither equal to them in greatness of bodies, nor for skill in Arts: yet these were conceived to be Divine, by those whose Minds were deluded by Deceits.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the difference of Giants and Champions.*

**T**here was formerly in the Kingdome of *Helsingia* (which is toward the North, and now under the obedience of the King of *Sweden*) a Giant, called *Haribenus*, who was nine Cubits long, and he had twelve Champions that were his Comrades, that were very tall, yet not half so tall as he. There was another called *Starchaterus*, who was most famous in *Europe* for his frequent Victories, as I shall shew underneath. There was also *Arngrinus* and *Arverodius*, of whose excellent Deeds I shall speak underneath: yet, lest I should seem to borrow Examples of Greatness and Fortitude from the Antients onely, I shall produce some modern men, both from the Mines, and other Provinces of *Sweden* and *Gothia*, who were so strong, that each of them could lift up a great Ox or Horse upon his shoulders, and could carry an Iron Vessel of six hundred, eight hundred, or a thousand pound weight, some Furlongs: and there were some Maids could lift the same, and there was one seen, who met an armed man on horseback, and by nimbleness and force he cast him to the ground.

K

CHAP. 3.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the Sobriety of Giants and Champions.*

THAT most famous Writer of the *Danish* affairs, *Saxo*, alleaged before, and who shall be often alleaged hereafter, saith, that amongst other mighty strong men in the *North*, who were great as Giants, there was one *Starchaterus Thaveffus*; whose admirable and heroick Vertues are so worthily extolled by him, that there were scarce any like him in those dayes in all *Europe*, or in the whole World, or hardly are now, or ever shall be. And amongst other Vertues he ascribes to that high spirited man, he mentions his sobriety, which is principally necessary for valiant men; and I thought fit to annex that peculiarly to this relation, that we may, as in a glass, see more clearly the luxury of this lustful age. For, as the same *Saxo* testifies, that valiant *Starchaterus* loved frugality, and loved not immoderate dainties. Always neglecting pleasure, he respected Vertue, imitating the ancient manners of Continency; and he desired a homely provision of his Diet; he hated costly Suppers: wherefore hating profusion in Diet, and feeding on smoaked and rank meat, he drove away Hunger with the greater appetite, as his meat was but of one kind, lest he should remit and abate the force of his true Vertue, by the contagion of outward Delights, as by some adulterate sweetnesss, or should abrogate the Rule of ancient Frugality, by unusual Superflitions for Gluttony. Moreover he could not endure to spend roast and boyled meat all at one Meal; holding that to be a monstrous Food, that Cookery had tempered with divers things together: Wherefore, that he might turn away the Luxury of the *Danes*, that they borrowed from the *Germans*, that made them so effeminate, amongst the rest he made Verses in his Country Language; Omitting many of them, he sang thus:

### *Starchaterus his Verses of Frugality.*

Strong men do love raw meat; nor do they need  
Or love, on dainty Cates and Feasts to feed,  
War is the thing they most delight to breed,  
You may sooner bite off their Beards than are  
Full hard, and stiff with bristled rugged hair,  
Than their wide mouths leave Milk their daily fare:  
We fly from dainty Kitchens, and do fill  
Our Bellies with rank Meats, and Country Swills  
Of old, men fed on boyld Meats 'gainst their will,  
A Dish of Grasse that had no smack did hold,  
Hags and Sheeps Flesh together, hot or cold;  
Nor to pollute their meats with mingling were they bold:  
He that eats Creams we bid him for to be  
Strong, and to have a mind that's bold and free,  
Think on Froto, revenge his Fathers death, as he.  
Each Coward and faint-hearted Foot shall dy:  
Nor shall he ever scape though he do fly,  
Or hid in Valleys, or close Dens, he ly.  
Eleven Lords, of elder time we were,  
That waited on King Hachon, and at fare  
Helgo Begachus sat first in order there.

First

First Dish he eat was a dry'd Gammon, and  
A Crust as hard as Flint he took in hand;  
This made his hungry yawning Stomach stand,  
No man at Table fed on stinking meat,  
But what was good and common each man eat,  
Content with simple fare, though we're so great.  
The People Foreign Food did all decline,  
The greatest were not Gluttons, nor yet fine,  
The King himself full sparingly would dine.  
No Drinks were used, that of Honey boist,  
Beer was their common Liqueur, Ceres onest,  
They fed on Meats were little boyld, no rost,  
Each Table was with Meats but meanly drest,  
Few Dishes on't, Antiquity thought best;  
And in plain Fare each held himself most blest.  
There were no Flagons, nor broad Bowls in use,  
Nor pained Dishes grown to great abuse,  
Each, at the Tap, did fill his wooden cruze,  
No man admirer of the former days,  
Did use Tankards, or Oxeys: for their ways  
Were sparing, almost empty Dishes this beways.  
No Silver Basons, or gilded Cups were thought  
Fit by the Host, and to the Table brought,  
To garnish, or by Guests were vainly sought.

Wherefore, by such Arguments, he induced many to Temperance and Sobriety, and other Virtues, that many were observed never to have been drunk, lest the chief stay of Fortitude, Continnence, should be overcome by Luxury. And their mind was so far from Lasciviousness, that they scorned to behold Players & Jesters, or to provide any dainty Fare, or to desire what was largely prepared in anothers Kitchen, or to taste of it, if it were offered: nor would they make themselves effeminate by any pernicious pleasure, that they might not foil the nerves of true Vertue, or their gallantry in War with any blemish of Vices.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the Virtues of the most valiant Starchaterus.*

HAVING Sobriety (as I said but now) he could enlarge the other Virtues by it, as being a fit Band to unite them together; and as all men confess, who look clearly into the Actions of the Heathens; and he had been more famous for his deserts, had he been as neer allyed to the Christian Doctrine, as he was born near his Nativity: Yet he lived three mens ages a valiant and unconquered Champion, being endued with a wonderful and incredible Virtue; and he was far taller, than common men; in bigness like as a Giant, so that he had a body answerable for bulk, to the greatness of his forces, and abilities of his mind. He was thought to yield to no mortal man for his Virtue; whose Fame spread so wide, that the most famous opinion of his Deeds and Name yet remains. For in all the North Countries, he got most specious Monuments for himself. First, in *Vichari* in *Norway*, he dedicated the beginnings of his glorious Actions to the favour of the Gods, with the slaughter of a King: Then playing the Pirat, having subdued the Provinces very far, he invaded *Russia*, and conquer'd *Floccens* the King of it, and spoiled him of a vast Treasure. By reason of these so notable first Military Actions, being called for by the Champions of *Biarmania*, who were then held to be the most excellent, when he had done many memorable Deeds amongst 'em,

K 2

he entered

entred into the Borders of the *Sweons*; and so after seven years Warfare ended, he went for *Denmark*, [then for *Ireland*], that the first dwellings of men might not be left untouched by him: there he fought with two most excellent Champions, and conquer both. Then he bairned to fight with *Vissinus*, a sword-plaier of great note in the Eastern parts of *Russia*. For that *Vissinus* vexed all the Provinces, farr and neer, with all sorts of Injuries; and he ravished the Wives of noble men, by violence when their Husbands looked on. But *Starchaterus* (like another *Hercules*) being provoked with the rumour of this wickednesse, to take away the Authour of it, he went for *Russia*; and he challanged the Ravisher to a single Combat, and overcame him. Then travelling farther Eastward, he came to *Constantinople*, where he encountered and worsted a mighty famous Gyant, whose name was *Tanna*, who relied much on the strength of his body, and he forced him to wander into unknown parts of the Earth under the name of an exiled man, when therefore no contrary fortune could deprive him of the victory, he went into the parts of *Poland*, and conquer'd a notable Champion called *Vasche*, or *Vasza*, in a single Duel. And not long after he fought with *Hama* a Master of defence, who was most famous amongst the Saxons for his skill at all sorts of exercises: and it is said, he was knocked down at first with the fist of the forelaid *Hama*, that kneeling on his knees, his chin kissed the ground: but he requited this fall with a notable reveng; for so soon as he rose from his knees and had the liberty of his hands to draw out his sword, he cut *Hama's* body in two: and by that victory he made the Saxons subject to the *Danes*; who so cruelly abused their Government, that they forced them to pay yearly the fore-finger of each arm, as a Tribute of their servitude. But this violent Government endured not long.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Patronage he afforded to the afflicted.*

Being humbly entreated by *Helgon* King of *Norway*, (who was to fight with 9, most noted Champions for their strength, on the very day he was married, being challenged by them to fight a Duell, who were resolved to take his Wife from him) to lend his assistance in this distresse, he so easily yeilded to his requests, that *Helgon*, going before him to the place appointed for the fight; some dayes after he began his journey, he is reported to have gone as many miles in one day on foot, as the others rode in 12 days before. Being demanded by the Champions, Whether he were able to fight; He answered, that not onely one of them, but all might come and try his strength. The next day he came into the field of his Adveraries with scorn, and fate under the Cliff of a Rock, opposing his body to the Winds and Snow; then, as if it were Spring-time to walk abroad, he laid aside his cloths, and sought for fleas in them. He cast also his Purple Robe that *Helga* gave unto him, (for that was the name of the Kings Wife) into the Briars, lest he should seem to be shelter'd by his Garments, against the violence of hail. Then the Champions going to the Mountain over against him, sat down, having found a place where the wind did not blow against them; and they kindled a fire to keep away the Cold. Then when they saw not *Starchaterus*, they lend one to the top of the Hill, to stand and watch for his coming: He in the declining part of the Mountain spied an old man all covered over with snow up to the shoulders: and he asked him, Whether he be the man that must fight the Duels promised. And when *Starchaterus* said he was the same, the rest came, and demand, whether he would fight with them single, or all at once. But he replied, How often do these iad Dogs bark at me, I uie to drive them away, not single, but altogether: signifying thereby that he had rather fight with them all at once, than one by one. For he thought

first

first to despise his Adveraries with words, before they came to fight. When the fight began, he slew six of them, and received no wound himself: but the three that were left, though they wounded him with many wounds, he destroyed like their fellows: But these wounds he committed onely to a Country-mans son to cure, for the Veneration of his Office: For he restored parts of his stomach that were torn off, to their former places, and he bound up his Cuts that were fallen out, with Twigs: Yet that he might not leave the civility of the young man unrewarded, he gave his Coat he had cast into the Briars, as a Reward of his pains.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Exercises of the said Starchaterus.*

VVhen *Starchaterus* was in War with the King of *Sweden*, and that he understood how *Ingellus* the most petulant King of *Denmark*, who was a slave to his pleasures, & embraced Vices for Virtues & intermitting the Duties of Kingly Majesty, was become a fordid Bond-slave of Luxury: he was sorry that so hopeful a young man had laid aside to be the sonne of so famous a Father: Whereupon, when he was to go to *Denmark*, he took on his back a huge Load of Coals, as a rich burden; & being asked of those that met him, why he carryed such an unuial burden; He said, he would make the dulnesse of *Ingellus* become more acure with his Coles. And he said no more than he performed. For so much did the admonition of this most strong and eloquent man prevail, that *Ingellus* from an effeminate and lascivious slave of pleasures, became to be magnanimous and virtuous, and he slew those that slew his Father, whom he had exalted to be his greatest Friends. This being ended, *Starchaterus* rejoycing that he hearkned to his advice, and returning him thanks, it is reported that he writ many Verses in the manner following, in commendation of the old Military Discipline,

When I was young, and first did follow thee,  
Warlike King Hacho, pleasures were to me  
Unpleasant; and nought else but wars agree:  
Both Mind and Body I did exercise,  
Profane things, pleasing Stomach, I despise.  
Martial Affairs I loved, and Wars adore,  
My Cloaths were harsh, and Garments used before;  
I seldom rested, short sleeps labour great;  
Nor let me idle be, 'twas little I did ear;  
Nor as some use that Gluttons are, to feed:  
Who against Reason cram when there's no need,  
One of these cloath'd in soft and rich Array,  
Turns his swift horse about, and doth display  
His long Locks, and so lets his hair to be  
Loose hanging down; and in Games delights he:  
Of playing Bankrupt, leads a large life:  
His Tongue is verbal, breaks the Lanes by strife.  
By force of Arms invades them; th' Innocent  
He doth oppress, and feeds with false intent  
On others' moneys, Whores and Gluttons are  
His company, he loves still dainty fare;  
He follows Whores, as doth the Snake the grass,  
Whilest Wars are hid in Peace, he dies an As:

Should

*Should he within a Valley disappear,  
No Armour can fence him who Death doth fear;  
Each man must die, Death cannot we eschew;  
But I who war'd with all the World, I knew  
Shall die an easy death, and to the Stars  
Exalted be by sickness, not by scars.*

Moreover, his mind was so far from lasciviousness, that he would not endure to be a spectator of it. He never prefer'd idleness before business, and he would never yield to the least Luxury, despising effeminate and fearful men: Wherefore in War he caught any Stage-Players, Jesters, or Parasites, he took care to have them slain: holding it better to punish these light persons by Troops, and make them ridiculous by losing their Skins, than to condemn a man to lose his head for a criminal matter. And thus he was content to punish whole Companies of these Jesters, and base condition'd people, with reviling and scoffing words; and he would not lend his famous hands to destroy such beauly men. Starchaterus himself was present in that most famous Swedes War, that Kingo King of Sweden fought against Harald King of Denmark, and he was the chief Pillar there. For there is no mention made of any greater Battail in the North Countries than that. The King of Sweden conquered, and ruled the Danes: There were killed of the Swedes twelve thousand tall gallant men, and of the Danes thirty thousand of the Nobility, and the number of the Commons that were slain on both sides was numberless.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the sum of the Acts of Starchaterus.*

Lastly, after his brave Acts, growing old, he briefly related all his gallant practices; and Warlike Feats, in these Verses following; as Saxo sets them down.

*But if (I recollect) when I was born,  
The Fates to Warlike Feats did me adorn  
To live and die in war, a bloody life  
To lead alwayes to live in Camps and deadly strife,  
Peace I abhor'd, and Mars his Banner I  
Was shelter'd under, dangers passing by.  
Where I grew old to fight I thought it good,  
And honourable Life to shed mens blood.  
To use my self to slaughter; I have seen  
Kings frequent in war, and the fields was green  
Water'd with blood, Helmets and Targets broke,  
And Coats of Mail shiver'd with Spears stroke.  
Breasts yield unto the Sword, and the wild Beasts  
Fed high with Souldiers, as at dainty Feasts,  
That lay unburied, here a strong man  
A Helmet cuts in sunder, and one ran  
His Spear through th' Helmet, just into the Crown,  
When I through dangers brought Olon's son down,  
For every sword was broken in that fight,  
Or made all yield: but stood against its might,*

*So strongly did men strike, What when I shew'd,  
With wooden feet, o're shores and paths besew'd  
With Spears innumerable for to run;  
And when o're fields to pass I first began,  
Where Calthrops cast, did wound my tender feet,  
With wooden Skales I arm'd them, as 'twas meet.  
So slew I Hama, who was strong, and so  
The Crucii conquer'd were, and brought below.  
When Rinus Flebax son command'd, then  
I won the Conquest o're th' Esthian men,  
And such as Gengalla breeds: next I came  
To Thole march, where my wounded head  
Bruis'd with Battel-Axes soundly bled.  
And here I learn'd, what good there is in Arms,  
To keep men out of danger, and from harms,  
Which Peasants much invites: the Germans I  
Brought to their condign punishment; and why?  
Because I slew thy sons, Sweetingus, that  
Were guilty of Frothos death, which begat  
Revenge in me, to help my Masters wrongs,  
When they were drunk, which unto me belongs.  
Nor was that lesse, when seven Brothers were  
Slain by my hand in tender Virgins care, &c.*

Without doubt, this man was worthy of all Warlike commendation, who excelled not onely in vigour of mind, but strength of his body, and exceeding swiftness of foot, that in one day making haste, he came on foot from upper Sweden into Denmark, which others can scarce perform in twelve days, going continually.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the most great and terrible War between the Swedes and Goths,  
where Starchaterus was General against the Danes.*

Since Saxo Siatandicus the most excellent Writer of the Danish History, hath written in his 8. Book, the Cause, Beginning, and Progreis, and end of the most fierce War between Haquinus Kingo, King of the Swedes and Goths, and Harald Hildetan King of Denmark, and made it most known to all succeeding Ages; and after him, five hundred years being over, Albertus Cranzium hath fallen casually upon the same Battail: And last of all, my most dear Brother & Predecessour, John Magnus, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, hath lately written of this vast and incomparable War in his Histories of the Swedes and Goths, of ser-purpoe, and most truly, (as a faithful Historian should write) I suppose it belongs to me onely, to make mention in this place, of that formidable Conflict that was between the Champions and the Giants, especially because in no battail of the Northern Kingdoms, and scarce ever in all Europe so many valiant men on both sides, Captains at Sea and Land, were ever read o', to have fought with so much vehemency and heat of War for 7. years together, as we read in Histories that agree well concerning those Nations above written, and their Kings and Potentates. First, the famous Warriours are reckoned up; from whence, and of what Race they came that were the chief on the Danes part. Amongst which, there were also two Women, to whom Nature had given a manlike Courage, and Art, and Experience had bestowed Skill upon them in Wars; these were Heiba and Vigna, two Noble-women of Sclavonian Race: of which the one was a chief Captain, and the other was exceeding well skilled in Warlike Affairs, that she was

chief



chief Standard-bearer, and she used that and her right hand in battail, when *Starchaterus* came on with the Army of the *Swedes* and *Goths* (as I shall speak underneath) and she fought as a private souldier. Also, on the contrary side, the most noted Captains are mentioned, especially because *Starchaterus* was the principal Leader of the *Swedish* King *Ringos*'s Army; and in his Army marched *Vegbiorga*, a Maid, that was a cruel fighter (as I shall shew by and by) The number of the ships for King *Ringos*, on the *Swedes* and *Goths* part, were 2500. But the *Danes* were not inferior to them: Wherefore, both Armies being provided sometimes Wedge-fashion, and sometimes like a Half-Moon, and all other things requisite for the War; and when the Trumpets sounded, there was a most sharp Battail fought by these two most valiant Nations, with so great heat striving to invade and defend their Kingdoms; that you would think as *Saxo* saith, that the Heavens fell upon the Earth suddenly, and that the Woods and Fields sank down, that all things were mingled, and the old confusion of things was returned again; and that divine and humane things were confounded in this tumultuous Tempest; and that all things together were drawn to their ruine. For when they came within shot one of another, the intollerable ratling of their Armour filled all places with an incredible noise. The very vapour of their wounds made a sudden Cloud to darken the Ayr, and the day was covered as with Hayl by their Weapons. And the Slingers did no small service in the business. But when a bullet was shot out of Engines, or thrown by the hand, they fought hard by with Swords and Clubs, full of Nails, and then was there no little blood shed: When therefore they were weary, they began to sweat, and their Spears were heard to rattle afar off. There *Starchaterus*, who first writ the manner of this War in his Country Language, fighting first in the Army, mentions the Lords of King *Harald*, *Hun*, and *Eli*, and *Hort*, and *Burgha*, whom he slew, and how he cut off *Visna*'s right hand. Also a Maid that fought in the *Swedes* Army, called *Vegbiorg* slew the Champion *Seth*: and she also was killed by another Enemy standing by. For the *Guthones*, who were cunning Bow-men, bent their Bows so forcibly, that they would shoot through their Armour: and there was no other cause of the slaughter more effectual. Their Arrows pierced their Coats of Mail, and Helmets, as naked Bodies. One *Ukbo* was killed, shot through with 144 shafts, when he fought valiantly; For by the exceeding force of the Archers, the *Dalacarli* coming on, the Battail still grew fresh again against the *Danes*. At length the *Danish* King *Harald* was thrown out of his Coach, he was killed with a Club by his own Coachman, and thirty thousand Lords in his Army were slain, and twelve thousand such Lords of the *Goths* and *Swedes* part; and of the common people a number numberless. And by the command of *Ringos*, King of *Sweden*, was *Hetha* made chief of *Denmark*, there being forty six set to govern it: to her *Olo* succeeded, who was slain by *Starchaterus*, who was brought in by the Spies, and had corrupted them with money.

CHAP. IX.  
*Of the Death of Starchaterus.*

LAST of all, being weary with so long life and labour, lest he should by default in his old age lose his former Honours and Renown, he thought it would be honourable for him, if he should willingly destroy himself, and hasten his own death by his own Free-will. For of old time, it was held dishonourable for Warriors to die in their beds: Wherefore he wore hanging about his neck 120. pound weight of Gold, that he had long before won for killing King *Olo*, for with this he thought to hire one to kill himself, supposing nothing to be more fit than to spend that Gold that he got for anothers death, to have himself killed. Whereupon meeting *Hatherus*, a Noble-man, whose Father he had killed, he exhorted him, not to fear to kill him, that had killed his Father, and he promised to him, if he would do so, that he should have the Gold he wore about his neck; and the more to stir up his mind against himself, he is reported to have used this Exhortation:

*Hather, Besides I slew Levius thy Father,  
Do thou kill me that will die, the rather.  
Slay an old man, let thy Sword revenge it,  
My mind desires a brave hand that fit  
To be my Executioner: For  
To die by Cowards hand, I do abhor,  
'Tis just with free mind to prevent my Fate:  
What! fly you cannot, you anticipate.  
Young Trees are fostered, old must be down hew'd,  
He's Nature's servant who doth this conclude,  
To cut up what cannot stand, that Death's best  
That's sought, when life's a burden he is blest  
That loves his End and seeks a Funeral,  
Long life brings grief, Death puts an end to all.*

Having said thus, he pulls money out of his purse: But *Hatherus* being moved as well to get the money, as to revenge his Fathers Death, promiseth that he will do as he enreated him, and will expect no reward from him; *Starchaterus* presently offers him a sword, and laid his neck down; and that his Executioner might not be fearful and faint-hearted in performing that Office, he exhorts him to be bold; saying more, *That if before his body fell, he could leap between his head and his body, he should be innocent.* Whereupon *Hatherus*, with a sharp Sword, beheaded the old man: the head cut off, and lying on the Earth, is reported to have bit the ground, shewing the fierceness of his mind, by the fierceness of his mouth then dying. But the Executioner fearing some fraud in the promises, abtained from leaping; for it he had done so rashly, it may be he might have bin beaten down with the fall of his body, and been killed himself, as a reward for his killing the old man: But that he might not suffer too great a Champion to want a Burial, he caused his body to be buried in a field, commonly called *Reling*.

## CHAP. X.

Of Haldanus, and other Champions whom he conquered.

Now comes another famous Champion of the *Goths*, called *Haldanus*: a *Goth* was his Father, and he was born when *Charles* was King, and was famous in those days; whose admirable Acts and Exploits, are the more diligently to be let down amongst the rest, as they are known to proceed from notable valour. He, when he first uied Military Affairs, plaid the Pirat, and put himself into a battail with the *Swedes*; wherein when he understood that one *Haquinus* a Champion was at hand, who could with Charms dull a sword, he prepared a huge Club, knockt full of nails and knors of Iron, to lay about him with, that so he might conquer the force of his Charms with an Oaken Club. Then when he appeared more eminent for his vertue than the rest, amongst the midst of his enemies, with his Helmet on, without a Buckler, he threw his Club with both hands against their Bucklers, that stood against him, and there was nothing to firm in the way to resist, but was broken in pieces by his Club cast so violently. Hence it was, that he overcame a Champion that met him in the Army, with a very sharp blow of his Club: yet conquered and wounded, he fell into the *Swedes* hand, and escaped into forraign Lands, and by the help of an old Souldier, who by curing his own wounds, had long since learned the Art of Chirurgery, he was restored; and taking a notable Champion, called *Thoro*, to be of his company, he fights again at Sea, with the *Swedes* in a Naval Battail; and becoming Conquerour, he likewise slew one *Sinvalds*, with his 7. Sons, that were by nature and custome most cruel, who began a new assault, being thus provoked, and he uied his ugly Club for it. Then he valiantly beat down one *Haribene* a Giant, at *Helsing*, who was 9. Cubits tall. (as I said before) who counted it his glory to ravish Kings Daughters, and to prefer the best married women before the baie, and and he thought himself to be so much the braver fellow, the more honourable women he could deflowr by force: him he slew with a huge Club, together with his six Champions, that uied the like violence, and raged with the same wickedness. Moreover, he conquered *Egibernus*, a Finlander, that challenged him to fight a Duel, who by Piracy molested many here and there, and could not be worlited at Sea in battail. Then when he found that *Thorilda*, Daughter to *Statther*, King of *Norway*, was desired by *Grimmon*, a Champion of mighty force, and to fight a Duel for her and that her Father had promised that he should win her, who could conquer this Champion: though he were now an old Bachelor, he was moved no lesse by the peremptoriness of the Champion, than by the Kings promise, to accept the Combar. Fighting with *Grimmon*, he cut asunder the utmost knors of his Coat of Male, with the lowest part of his Breast-plate, *Grimmon* admired at it, and said, *That he never found an old Lad that fought more stoutly*. And presently drawing forth his Whinnier, he ran it through his Buckler; but *Haldanus* ran through his right hand that gave the blow, and wounding him in the Thigh, he made him ever lame, and to continue his life that was left, he put a Fine upon him. Lastly, he did with so great boldness rane *Ebbes*, a *Plebeian*, and notable Pirat, who asked, upon confidence of his valour, the Daughter to the King of the *Goths*, and half the Kingdom: for her Dowry, that he durst never presume to mangle his despicable base condition with Nobility, and far less to affect to be partaker of the Kingdom. And that Challenge being sent, because they wanted day, he killed him by Moon-light, as if he would have the Monster conquered in the night.

## CHAP. XI.

## CHAP. XI.

Of another certain Haldanus, and his Actions.

Of no lesse fame is there mention made of another *Haldanus*, amongst the valiant Champions, the Son of *Berchar* of *Norway*, and of *Drotha*, of the Kingly Race, whose young dayes were foolishly employed; but his ripe years made him famous for his gallantry in Action, and he grew honourable by his great Ornaments of Life. When he was young, he killed a noted Champion with a Club he had in his hand, because he gave him a box on the Ear in jest; and all men took this for an Omen, how great triumph he should win over his Enemies by the force of his mind and body. At that time *Ketho*, a Pirat of *Russia*, plundered many Provinces, using Rapine and cruelty exceedingly; whose fierceness was such, that when others spared to take from men what was next to cover their naked bodies, he would take off all coverings from the most secret parts about them. Hence great and inhumane Rapines were called *Kethonians*. He had another Beastly cruelty of torturing men, which for modesty sake I will not mention. *Barcharus*, the Father of *Haldanus*, moved with this indignity, set himself against *Ketho*; and as it was a War between them, so was it the ruine of them both. *Haldanus* was sore wounded in that Battail, and left it: one wound he had so palpable in his mouth, and so apparent by the cicatrix of it, that when the rest were cured, that excrement of flesh could not be healed; which thing gained to him the name of a contumelious mouth, yet he better deserved everlasting praise, fighting for honesty, and for his Country. But what did ever the calumnious detraction of wicked men ever afford unto Vertue? However there was so much Military Glory apparent in him, that he was formidable every where for his great valour. From whence, and upon that confidence, he began to desire to marry a noble Maid called *Giarisha*, of the Kingly Blood, which was in those days the last Heir of *Denmark*: But she to defend her self from injury, kept her Chamber guarded with a choise Company of Champions. To whom, when *Haldanus* came once by chance, when her Champions were absent, of whom when he was young he had killed a Brother: he said unto her, that she ought to change the rigour of Chastity, by honourable Wedlock, that the might by her Offspring repair the Government of the Kingdom that was like to be lost. Wherefore he exhorts her to reflect upon him, who was an eminent Noble man, and to take him for her Husband, and he thought for that cause the would admit of it. When he understood her answer, that she thought him not unequal for his Nobility, but because he was reproached for the deformity of his mouth. He intreats her that she would marry no man, until she knew the certainty of his death, or return. But the Champions of *Giarisha* being angry that he had spoken with her when he was gone, fought to follow him. When he saw that, he presently cut up an Oke, and made a Club of it, and fought single with twelve of them, and killed them all. Then to make himself more famous, he entered into *Russia*, and was exceeding nobly received by them all, and shortly (a fierce War falling out between the *Swedes* and *Russians*) he slew many of the *Swedes* Champions in single Duels: and last of all, he killed his own Brother *Hildagerus*, who had killed 70. Champions (whilest he did not prefer Piety to Valour) having his Sword covered with Cloths, that it might not be blunted by Charms, Then he slew *Sivarnus*, a *Saxon*, at a Banquet coming suddenly into *Denmark*, because he sought to marry his Wife *Giarisha*, and so enjoying his Wife with joyful applause, he begat of her *Haraldus Hildeta*, of whom I spake in the 8. Chapter. And at length he was slain by *Vefernus*, a notable Champion in *Sialandia*, whilst he sought for to repair his torn Country.

CHAP. XII.  
Of Olo Vegetus.

**O**lo Vegetus, when he was twelve years old, began his youthful days with virtue: For when he perceived that *Gunno*, by cruel robbing, kept the Woods were next to his Habitation, and destroyed innocent men, he was moved with indignation at this Wickedness; and that he might not suffer the time due to Virtue, to pass away by idleness, he desired Arms of his Father, who was Prince of *Norway*; and taking with him a cruel dog, and a horse, he entered into the thick Wood, and he finds the foot-steps of men in the Snow. By this sign, passing over many dangers, at last he found out the Thieves Caves covered with heaps of Earth; and first he killed their House-keeper, and cast him crols the house: then he killed both the Father and Son, that came running to revenge this disgrace; one with his Sword, the other with his Dog: yet he got not the Victory without blood, for he received a Wound on his body, which the Dog continually licked, and so it grew whole suddenly. Then he commanded the head of these Rovers, and their Carcases to be fastned upon Poles, for a token of Liberty restored. And with the same valour he slew twelve Champions, that sought to violate the Chastity of the Daughter of the King of the *Trandi* in a small Island, as I shall shew in the next Chapter. He had also a sharp Wit joynd with his Valour; that he would easily either destroy or put to flight his Enemies: for being content with one Guard, adorned in Womens cloths, he kept this order, that his, and his companions sword, should be sheathed in Wooden Scabbards till coming neer to fight, he could unsheath it, and fall upon whom he pleased. And using this Stratagem, he often overcame mighty Adversaries. Then using Piracy far and neer with his Forces Military, he destroyed seven hundred ships neer the Sea, by his strength at Sea. Hence the most noble Champions sought to be of his Confederacy; and many unruly young men were of his Guard. Being provided with these Forces, he subdued Neighbour Kings by opinion onely, and so he took from them all thought of waging War, or to dare to lift up their hands against him. Lastly, he came to *Ringo*, King of *Sweden*, and was therefore the more dear to him, the liker he was to the other Princes of his Court for his singular Fortitude. Then was he made Admiral of the Kings Navy, (that consisted of five and twenty hundred ships, as I said before) he so governed it, with the assistance and advice of seven Kings, and of others that stuck fast to him, that he conquered the *Danish* Fleet in a notable Victory: so that King *Ringo* became the conquering Commander of all *Sweden*. At last, as I said being made King of *Denmark*, for his meer cruelty, he was slain by *Scharatus*, a Champion of *Sweden*.

CHAP. 13.

CHAP. XIII.  
Again of the same man, fighting Valiantly for Chastity.

**T**here were formerly in the mountainous parts of Norway, toward the bounds of the Western Goths; two Champions, and they were brothers, called *Scharatus* and *Hiallus*, presuming so far and being so insolent, that with an unbridled petulancy, they would deflow the most beautifull Maides, and take them from their parents: whence it fell out, that they determining to ravish *Esa*, the Daughter of *Olavus* King of the *Vermari*, they commanded her Father that if he would not have her ravished, he should fight with them by himself, or his second, to defend his Daughter, which thing, though it were very opprobrious to her Fathers Clemency, who was now decrepit with old age, yet he endeavoured to raise up his nerves that were exhausted with the wit and force of his friends, in his Daughters just defence. In the interim, *Olo* a young man of *Norway*, born of a Noble house and family, being moved by this horrid wickedness, and rejoycing that he had this occasion to fight, comes to *Olavus* his house clothed like a Country man, who sitting down at the lower end of the Table, and seeing the Kings family lament, of purpose calling the Kings son neer to him he enquired why the rest were so sad, and he saying that his Sisters Chastity would be presently proained by most fierce Champions, if no man came presently to relieve her, he inquires farther what reward should be given him that should venture his life in her defence. The King being asked of this by his Son, answered that, He should have his Daughter, that defended her. This answer made *Olo* bold to adventure himself in this danger. Now the Maid was wont (as it is the custome of the Northern people at this day) to come near and look on the faces of the Guests very wisely with a Candle, that at times she might the better know their manners and behaviour, that having noted all the Marks and Habit of their bodies, she might tell her parents of it. She viewing *Olo* after that manner, she was taken with the unusuall horror of his eyes, and almost fainted away, amazement did so abate her vigour, and she presently told her father what was the cause of her trembling, whereupon the young man winked that his eyes might not fright her, and laying off his cap his face was covered with, he bad all that stood by, to be jocant, and to cast away all fear. It was no sooner said than done. For it presently fell out that one gentle promise from a stranger made them all merry. In the mean while came *Hiallus* and *Scharatus* with their ten servants ready to take away the Kings Daughter; & they tumultuously cryed out to the King, that if he would not deliver his Daughter to them, he should come forth and fight. *Olo* immediately entertaines their rayling challenge, on this condition that they should not cowardly come behind him, but should fight all before him. Then taking his sword which he had from his Ancestours, he single, slew 12. of them, performing more than could be expected from so young a man. The fight was in an Island, and from thence there is a village not far off, that at this day hath a record of the names of the Brothers that were slain. Of this Maid which he won for a reward of his victory he begat his son *Osmondus*. Then growing every day more famous in victories, and dangerous fights, at last he was treacherously slain in a bath, as it was formerly told him by an old man, when he killed the petty King *Thoro*, who violated the lawes of strangers.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the Acts of the Champions Arngrimus and Arvarodus.*

I Think it not fit in this place to passe it over, how by the Counsell of *Ericus Disernus*, King of Sweden, whom I shall speak of hereafter, one *Arngrimus* a notable Champion of Sweden, fighting and triumphing against the Northern Kings of *Scrichinnia* and *Biarmia*, became the Father in Law of *Frotho* King of Denmark, because he had joynd to his Empire the utmost bounds of humane affaires, and had augmented his great fame largely through the world by his Notable actions. He had, as *Saxo* writes, 12. Sons by *Ofura*. They from their youth also were given to Piracy, and by chance they all brought in one small ship into the Island *Sampse*, and they found two ships on the Sea-coasts of the two Norway pirates *Hialmerus* and *Arvarodus*; whose they set upon, and with oars they soon cleared them in the absence of their Pilots, but they were very sorry that they had not killed their principall Steermen: therefore they despised this victory as nothing worth, as it was without danger. Resolving that in the following battles they would run more danger, and perhaps with worse fortune. For the forelaid pirates, whose ships a tempest had lately torn breaking their rudder off, being gone into the wood to cut another, they hewed the ruff Timber smooth so long cutting it about with their hatchets till it was fit for the helms with when layd upon their shoulders, being ignorant of their Companions mishap, they carried on: they were set upon by the sons of *Arngrimus*, who were newly fished with the blood of those they had killed, so that two of them were forced to fight with their swords against many. Nor was this an equal fight where twelve hands fought against two, but the victory is not always according to number. For all the forelaid Twelve being slain, and they having slain *Hialmerus*, the victory fell to *Arvarodus*: for he alone escaped by chance of so great a number of Companions; for he threw the helm, not yet well framed, with such incredible force, against his enemies bodies, that at one throw he hit the whole 12. and killed them all.

## CHAP. XV.

*Again, of the same Arngrimus and the Charms of the Fins.*

A Lio this Swedish Champion *Arngrimus* fought against the mighty Northern Kings of the utmost parts of the world, against *Egbert* King of the *Biarmians*, & *Tengeld* King of *Scrichinnians*, (of whom we spake in the entrance of the 4th. Book,) that having obtain'd the victory over them, for his deserts and the triumphs he might marry *Ofura* the Daughter of the King of Denmark, as indeed it fell out, yet in the mean time being to fight with wild a people, he was slain in his Army, with which he marched against them: and first he perceived, that he should not fight onely against cruell men, but against the more cruell Elements; as I shall shew after this in my 12. Book, concerning wars against Barbarous people, yet these men are cunning to fight with sharp weapons, for their use; and they use broad and huge Shafts in battail, also they know as well by charms and incantations in coming on or flying off, as crooked beams in the middle of the snow, to receive or give blowes. *Arngrimus*, as *Saxo* speaks, to get himself honour, set upon these & conquer'd them: these when they fled, having but ill success in their fight; they threw 3. Stones behind them, & made them appear to the enemies to be as so many Mountains. Therefore *Arngrimus* being deceived by this mist cast before his eyes, called his Army off from following the enemy, supposing he had been stopp'd by great Rocks in the way.

The same the next day encountering, and being conquered, casting snow on the ground, made it the same like to a great River. Therefore the *Svedes* being deluded by a huge Error in their sight, supposed that mighty Waters had ran with a noise before them: So whilst the Conqueror feared the vain Imagination of Waters, the *Fins* escaped by flight. The third day likewise they rallied again, and then they could find no way to escape: For when they saw their Armies begin to decline, they yielded to the power of the Conquerour. Then he conquered *Egtherus*, Captain of the *Biarmians*, whom he challenged to fight a Duel. After this, being grown great in Conquests and Spoils, by the mediation of the King of Sweden, he married *Ofura*, the Daughter of the forelaid King of Denmark: by whom, as the same *Saxo* testifies, he begat twelve Sons, whose names were these: *Brander*, *Barbi*, *Brodder*, *Hiarrandi*, *Tander*, *Tvingar*, two *Hadrings*, two *Hiorthnar*, *Hiartvar*, *Rani*, *Hugantir*; all which, as I laid before, using Piracy, were killed at last.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the slaying of a Bear, and the drinking of his blood.*

A MONGST the Northern Champions there was one called *Biarcho*, who always used a Sword longer than ordinary, which he took pleasure to carry with him, that he might draw it against any Roaring Boys of an insolent life, in a Duel; lest he should suffer men of most base manners, to dilgrace the glory of Champions by their ill examples: Whereupon he forced most of them, either totally to forego their insolence, or else to put their lives in danger: Whilst therefore he triumphed thus by his meritorious actions, a strange wild Beast afforded him a new Victory. For he slew with his Sword a huge Bear that met him in the Thickets, and he commanded his companion *Hialbo*, that he might grow stronger to drink up the Bears blood. But *Biarcho*, whilst he received a vehement blow on his head, by a certain Champion that railed at him very basely, and threw hard bones at him when they sat together, he accounting it base to draw his sword to revenge this wrong, threw a bone again at him, that first threw at him, and he trook his fore-head to the hinder-part of his head, and turned the hinder-part into the place of the fore-head, repaying the mans overthwart mind by the crookednets of his countenance, perhaps that he might ever after take heed how he threw bones again. Moreover, one *Regnerus* of Norway, whilst he exercised his younger years in Military Affairs, he espied a Maid in the Tents of his Companions, that with mighty Valour drove back the Enemy: he was so taken with the love of her, that he could not be satisfied, until he had slain a huge Bear, and a most cruel Dog that kept the Maids Chamber; which (though he had promised to admire him, when he before sued for her love) he therefore opposed, that she might see him kill the most fierce Beasts, to whom he had a long time committed the preservation of her Chastity. This Maids name was *Largertha*, of whose Valour, a little after I shall speak amongst the fighting Females.

## CHAP. 17.

CHAP. XVII.  
Of Regnerus, called Hair-cont.

There was a King of the *Sweons* called *Herethus*, whose troubled mind was not a little urged how to preserve his Daughters Chastity; whether he should guard her with Wild Beasts, (as the manner of most Princes was then) or else should commit the custody of her to mans fidelity. But he preferring cruelty of Beasts to man's fidelity, he soonest chose what would do most hurt. For hunting in the Woods, he brought some Snakes that his company had found, for his Daughter to feed up. She quickly obeying her Fathers commands, bred up a Generation of Vipers by her Virgin hands. And that they might want no meat, her curious Father cauled the whole body of an OX to be brought, being ignorant that by this private food he maintain'd a publick destruction. These being grown up, by their venomous breath poysoned the neighbouring parts; but the King repenting his folly, proclaimed. That he who could remove this plague should have his Daughter. When *Regnerus* of *Norway*, descended of the Kings Race, who was the chief Suiter this Virgin had, heard this Report, he obtained from the Nurse a Woollen Catlock; and hairy Breeches, whereby he might hinder the biting of the Adders. And when he came to *Sweden* in a ship, he purposely suffered his Clothes to grow stiff with cold, casting water upon them: and thus clothed, having onely his Sword and Dart to defend him, he went to the King. As he went forward, two huge Adders met him on the way, that would kill the young man, with the twisting about of their tails, and by their venom they cast forth. But *Regnerus* connding in the hardness of his frozen Garments, both endured and repul'd their Venome by his clothes, and their biting by his Harnels, being intigable in pressing hard upon these Wild Beasts. Last of all he strongly cuts out of his hand his Javelin that was fastned with a Loop, and struck it into their bodies. Then, with his two-edged Sword rending both their hearts, he obtained a happy end of an ingenious and dangerous fight. The King looking curiously on his clothes, when he saw them so hairy on the backside, and unpollished like ragged Frize he spake merrily, and called him *Lodbrock*; that is, *Hair-cont*; and to recreate him after his pains, he sent for him to a Banquet with his friends. He answered, *That he must first go see those Companions he had left*: and he brought them to the Kings Table very brave in clothes, as he was then: and lastly, when that was done, he received the pledge of his Victory, by whom he begat many hopeful children; and he had her true love to him the more, and the rather enjoyed his company, by how much she knew the great dangers he underwent to win her by, and the ingenious practises he used. When this most noble Wife, called *Phora*, was dead, he fell into various Wiles of Fortune, being famous in the whole World for his Chivalry, he grieved (as I said before) to be conquered by the unarmed *Fins* and *Bjarmians*. He was afterwards cast by *Hella*, Prince of the *Irish*, to Adders, and was killed by them.

CHAP. XVIII.  
Of Alfo the Defender of Chastity.

*Sivardus*, King of the *Goths*, had Sons, *Vermundus* and *Othenus*, and one Daughter *Alvilda*; which was so chaste from her Cradle to all appearance, that she had her Face alwayes veiled with a Vail, that she might not make her beauty a bait to stir up others Luts,

Her

Her Father shutting her up in close custody, gave her a Viper and a Snake to breed up, thereby at length to guard her Chastity, by these creeping Creatures when they were grown great: that he might intimate that he left no passage open to this *Virgin* for any but for Valiant men, and noted for their vertue; who should Conquer those Beasts in a dangerous conflict, adding this, that if any one should try in vain to come at her, his head should presently be cut off; and fastned on a stake; that every one that was put on by his aspiring wit should not dare to attempt such a disgrace to the Kingly blood. This being known, the son of *Alfigarus* King of *Denmark*, nor trusting so much to his valour as to his wit, and supposing the conflict would be the more Noble the greater danger he must undergo, he comes as a suiter to the *Virgin*, to conquer these beasts that guarded the Maid's Chamber, chiefly because by the proclamation the *Virgin* was promised in marriage, as due to him that could conquer them. Now that he might the better endure this rage against him, he covered his body with a raw and bloody hide, girt about with it: so soon as he entered the doors of the Castle, he took a red hot Iron with a pair of pinfers and thrust it into the vipers yawning Mouth, and so killed him. Then he slew the snake that came to twit about him, between the middle of his chops with his dart; or, as the more ancient Histories of the *Goths* set it down, with a burning spear, pointed as it were like a knife. And when according to the Edict, he desired the Pledge that belonged to the victor, King *Sivardus* answered that such a Son in Law should please him, which his Daughter freely consented to have. And when only the Maids Mother would hardly admit of his suit, he tries the Maids good will by a private discourse, and when her Mother perceived that the unwarily commended this suiter for his vertue, her Mother chid her for it, that breaking the nerves of Chastity, she would be taken with the allurements of beauty, and omitting the censure of vertue, she should regard with a lascivious mind, the fawning shewes of comeliness, therefore she silently approving the just sentence of her Mother, found out a way, whereby she might shew that her Chastity was yet untouched though the Beasts that guarded her were slain, and she would make this more appear by some bold adventure, and confirm it by some Noble Designe. Then presently scorning this Danish young man, she changed her Feminine mind and garment into a masculine, and of a very chaste Maid, she became a fierce Pirate. For the so preferred vertue before idleness, that when she might enjoy Kingly dainties she presently applied her self to the wars, drawn on by her feminine fury: and she began to be so averse to all men by a resolute purpose of Chastity, that she firmly resolved with her self never to marry any man; but ever after as a Pirate to equall, if not exceed mens valour.

CHAP. XIX.  
Of the Stratagems of Fridlevus.

The notable deeds of one *Fridlevus* are remarkable; who besides his imbred valour was confident by reason of his coat of Male, and armour of proof he wore. He used this in publik and private fights as his armour of defence, and he slew many mighty enemies tyred out in the sharp batralls, and amongst the rest one *Gunholmus*, who was wont to blunt the enemies sword with Charnes, him he slew with many strokes of the handle. But whilst he too hastily chopt his hand on the point of it, he cut the Nerves of his fingers, and so his fingers fell all waies crooked, close to his hand. The same man, whilst he besieged *Dublin* a Town of *Ireland*, and found there was no entrance, the walls were so strong, imitating the witty art of *Hainius*, he commanded fire shut up in sponges should be fastned to Swallows wings, which when they came to their own nests set the houses on fire, and whilst the Towns men runne to put it out, and

M

took

rook more care to suppress the fire, than to repel the enemy, he wan *Dublin*. After this in *Britanny*, having lost his Soldiers in battail, when he saw he was like to have hard returning to the shore, he set the bodies of the slain upright, and in battail aray, who represented his former multitude, that by so great a conflict he seemed to have lost none. Whereby he not onely took off from the enemy all confidence of joyning battail, but he made them desirous to fly from him.

## CHAP. XX.

Of the same man's Stratagems by Birds.

AS for *Hadingus* his policy, spoken of before, the meaning is that *Hadingus* King of *Denmark*, spending his youthful years most successfully, omitting desire of pleasure, alwayes desired to live in wars, considering with his Valiant mind that he must spend all his dayes in Noble warlike designs. He sets upon *Handuanns* King of *Hellefont* at the City *Duna* that was fenced with invincible walls, and he strives to enter it when the forts were now repaired: but the height of them not admitting any violence that fought against them, he commanded men skilled in catching birds, to take divers sorts of birds that were used to that place, & to put under their wings sponges set on fire, these flying to their own Neests set the City on fire: the Towns men running to quench this, left the gates unguarded against the enemy, wherefore coming on, he took *Handuanns*; and he gave him leave to redeem himself with Gold. And when he might have slain the enemy, he had rather humble him; he did thus temper cruelty with clemency. But afterwards when ever any siege was like to be, by the Kings command all the birds about houses were killed.

## CHAP. XXI.

Of the fight of King Harald, against a tame Dragon.

HARALD the most illustrious King of *Norway*, residing in his youth with the King of *Constantinople*, and being condemned for man-slaughter, he was commanded to be cast to a tame Dragon that should rend him in peices. As he went into the prison, one very faithful servant he had, offered himself freely to dye with his Master. The keeper of the Castle, curiously observing them both, let them down at the mouth of the Den, being unarmed, and well searched, wherefore when the servant was naked he admitted *Harald* to be covered with his shirt for modesty sake, who gave him a bracelet privily, and he scattered little fish on the pavement, that the Dragon might first stay his hunger on them, and that the guilty persons that are shut up in the dark prison, might have a little light by the shining of the fias and Scales. Then *Haraldus* picking up the bones of the Carcasses, slopt them into the Linen he had and bound them fast together like a club. And when the Dragon was let forth, and rushed greedily on his prey cast to him, he leapt quickly on his back, and he thrust a Barbers razor in at his navill, that only would be peirced by iron, which, as luck was, he brought with him, and kept it concealed by him: this cold Serpent that had most hard scales all over, disdained to be entred in any other part of his body. But *Haraldus* sitting so high above him, could neither be bitten by his mouth, or hurt by his sharp teeth; or broken with the turnings of his tayle. And his servant using the weapons or bones put together, beat the Dragons head till he bled, and died thereof by his many weighty strokes: when the King knew this he freely changed his revenge, into his service, and pardoned the valiant persons, and furnishing them with a Ship and monies he gave them leave to depart.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXII.

Of the fight of Frotho and Fridlevus against a Serpent.

FROTHO a Danish Champion and a King, scarce being past his child-hood, in a single combat killed a huge fierce great Serpent; thrusting his sword into his belly, for his hard skin would not be wounded, and all darts threw at him, flew back again, and it was but labour lost. *Fridlevus* was no lesse valiant, who both to try his valour, and to find out some hidden treasure, set upon a most formidable Serpent for his huge body and venomous teeth, and for a long time he cast his darts against his scaly sides and could not hurt him, for his hard body made nothing of the weapons cast with violence against him. But this Serpent twisting his tail in many twines, by turning his tail round, he would pull up trees by the roots, and by his crawling on the ground he had made a great hollow place, that in some places hills seemed to be parted as if a vally were between them, wherefore *Fridlevus* considering that the upper parts of this beast could not be penetrated, he runs him in with his sword underneath; and piercing into his groine, he drew forth his virulent matter as he lay panting: when he had killed the Serpent, he dug up the money and carried it away. Also he Conquered a Giant called *Hithis* that was of a monstrous habit, who had taken away the son of King *Tollemarcha*, as he was Childishly playing, and he made him his Roer, cutting off his hand and foot, setting the young youth at liberty.

## CHAP. XXIII.

Of the same Fridlevus.

HE also slew 12. Champions of *Norway* that were famous for their Victories over Giants, and noted for their Trophies amongst the Nations, and rich in their spoils, when they by often breaking in, had long vexed their neighbours, and this he did not so much for covetousnesse as for love of vertue. He also slew *Hiarnon*, in a duel with many great wounds, in a bath, one that was competitor of the Kingdom, because under a pretence of great familiarity, and huge obsequies he was a most fierce layer of Snares for his lie.

## CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Piracy of famous Virgins.

ALVILDA a most famous Virgin began to play the Pirat fiercely, and taking many Maides that were bent upon the same design to be her comrades, she came by chance to that place where a Company of Pirats lamented for their Captaine that was slain in warr, and by them by reason of her beauty and piracy, she was made chieftest of the pirats, and she did greater things than could be expected from the feminine sex: whom *Alff* seeking to pursue with many navigations fell in winter time into the Navy of the *Blackmanni*, at which time the waters were hugely frozen, and the pieces of Ice so fastened the ships, that it was impossible by any ores or art to rowe away. And after the Ice lasting long seemed to promise more safe entrance to those that were shut in, *Alff* commands his men to lay aside their slippery shoos, and to walk over the plain Ice with their stockings only on their feet, and so might easily subdue the enemy that slid upon Oily slippery Shoes. These being thus subdued, and the Ice melted, he takes his voyage by sea, against the *Fins* and *Finlanders*: where entering in the narrow crook of *Hanga*, he found by his spies that the haven was already taken up by the Ships of other men; for *Alvilda* at the same Straits, had first entred with her fleet: and when the spied strong Ships afar off coming



thither, she quickly rowed on to meet them, thinking better to break through the enemy, than to be overwhelmed by him. As therefore they began to fight at Sea, and on both sides they continued having an eye to the great glory in respect of their valour, a young man, having more and fresh Souldiers to help him, when *Alvilda* with a desired *omen* leapt into the forecable, he retires as far as the Stern, there being a great slaughter made of those that resisted. But his Companion *Barchamus*, striking off *Alvilda* her helmet, and discovering her small face, he perceived she was to be dealt withall by kisses not by weapons, and that laying aside his hard ammunition, the Enemy was to be encountered with more pleasing duties. Wherefore *Alff* rejoicing that besides his expectation he had upon her, whom he had indefatigably fought through so many dangers both by Land and Sea, he presently when he had taken her; adorned her in a most gallant Womens habit, and married her. Observing the most commendable ceremonies of the Ancients, and by her he afterwards begat his daughter *Grytha*, which had *Haldamus* to her Husband, and bare *Haraldus Hildera* who repaired the Kingdome of *Denmark* strangely rent by domestick injuries, to its former lustre, and had peace 50. years, and he slew two warlike Maides conquered by his notable craft, *Stickle* and *Rusla*, fighting against the King of the *Trendis* for the dominion of the Kingdome; in a fight at Sea; But the like glory fell not out to his nephew *Odmundus*, son to *Olo*, whilst he set upon by force of arms another Maid called *Rusla*, who strove with her brother concerning the Kingdome of Norway in a way of Piracy. For he was put to flight by her, but when she was molested by the people by *Clandestine Rebellion*, she was made a runnagate by him, and when she fled, he drove her upon her brother who wickedly caused her to be slain. Nor will I omit that the most mighty Prince of *Holland*, *Huirvillus*, by notable force of Arms slew *Rusla* a Virgin of Norway, who applied her self to warlike actions.

---

Here ends the Fifth Book.

Olaus

---

*Olaf Magnus the Goth,*  
 Arch-Bishop of *UPSALA*:  
 CONCERNING  
 Minerals and Metals.

---

*The Epitome of the Sixth Book.*

---

*The Preface.*

**B**ecause the hard and invincible kind of Warriors of the North Swedeland and Gothland; dwelling in the Mineral Mountains, by reason of the huge fierceness and courage of their Bodies and *Muscles*, and also by reason of the most hard Exercises they are used to, may well be compared to Giants and Champions: and therefore in the orderly describing Northern Occasions, it deserves to be joyned to the same Giants and Champions, and to be preferred before these that follow, by reason of the different kind of weapons they both use. And for this reason, not keeping the form and order of other writers, I shall insert something concerning Minerals; from whence may be taken comparisons, to set forth the following Battails more distinctly. The Mountains therefore are high, but most commonly barren and dry, in which commonly nothing else grows, for the commodity and preservation of the Inhabitants, than an unexhausted fruitfulness of precious Metals, which are rich and fertile enough for all mens necessities for life, and it may be for superfluous things to be fetched from other places if we will, and to defend them with unanimous force, where violence is offered against this gift of Nature. For they are a fierce kind of men, that will yield to no sharpness of wars, upon whatsoever sharpness of weather, or Hostile threats, as I shall shew underneath, concerning wars in Fields. Also, how fiercely a People called *Dalacarly*, that are fierce and impetuous, marching on foot in Companies

*Companies, falling upon their Enemies. A Foreign Witness, Albertus Crantzius, doth set down plain enough, with many great strange things in the Wars made against the Kings of Denmark, chiefly Christiernus the first, and King John. Also how Christiernus the second, himself, with force and fury, are driven out by Gustavus, Anno 1521. being the Leader: he doth acknowledge by unhappy experience, that he was circumvented by Counsel. But I shall shew most truly, as I was an Eye-witness, what horrible and barbarous Cruelty was committed against his Government in the North Parts. For I seem to have been preserved, that I might behold such horrible Spectacles of my Nation.*

## CHAP. I.

### Of Minerals, and the finding of them.

**T**He Mines in the North Countries are very many, great, divers, and very rich. Many, because being situated in Valleys and Mountains, sticking together they are frequently taken forth. They are great, because they are large, and cannot be exhausted, both in the upper *Swede*, and in *Gothland*, and the Country of the *Varmi*, toward the Bounds of *Norway*, where they are found. They are divers; some Silver, others Copper, or Brass, Steel, and principal Iron. Also rich, as I shall shew beneath, because great store of the Kings Treasure, or Tribute, is drawn from those Mines. And though there be an infinite multitude of such Mountains and Minerals, in the foresaid Kingdoms, yet by many signs, Nature directing, new ones are always found by them that seek them, especially where the Mountains are round on the top; and in the Navel or Roundness, not cleft nor broken; but the Snow in Winter melts, by reason of the Brimstone fuming. But those Mountains that are Thunder-stricken on the top or side or touched about the foot, do shew forth in their Fissures, Veins, or Silver that shine, and they do more allure the Inhabitants, to burn with an unsatiable covetousness, that regarding no danger, they will Mine into Stones, and come to the inward parts, where you shall see the Veins in the Mountains, like the parts of mans body, divided standing upwards, downwards, on the right or left hand; and the Minerals annexed, are the clearer, the more purer Rock or Marble they are bred with. For those that naturally run Westward, and bend with a greater bunch to South and North are the best, and most inestimable; for those Veins appear no other wise, than men shining in Armour, standing in their Ranks. And this pleasure joyed with profit, brought great content to the Labourers and Possessors.

## CHAP. 2.

## CHAP. II.

### Of the Situation of Mineral Veins.

**M**oreover, the Veins that run from the sides of the East and South toward the West and North, are said to be the best; and those that run to other parts are not so good. For the Mines are better ripe that run East and South: There are also Veins called *Pendens* and *Lying*: The *Pendens* Veins lye covered upwards. Those that lye on plain ground, take growth and goodnesse from their very coming forth. There are Veins also obliquely lying up and down, that depend on all the foresaid:

## CHAP. III.

### Of the way to dig the Mines.

**T**He Miners, for their own security, make several Arches to hold up the Mountains, and lay many pieces of Wood between the sides of the Mountains, and underneath; and being doubtful to trust thereon, they have yet another invention; they let themselves down with cords, when they are to cut out the Metals in Rocks they cannot come at, or to make choice of Veins of Silver; and afterward they purifie them by Art, using Water and Fire for it. But since the Gain seems small and lost labour, there being no fruit, or very seldom, to be expected in the Bark and outside of the most rich Mine, they use a more solid way, and set up Pillars within the sides of the Mountains that are far stronger than their former way of Arching, being fully persuaded, that Treasure is not to be found but in the deeper Caves of the Mountains; and that by more certain Signs, even as low as Hell, almost; where by Natures digestion, more frequently and plentifully are found Mines, especially of Silver, and of Brass.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of the distinction of Mineral Veins.

**T**He distinction and divison of *Mineral Veins*, or Pits of possession, is wont to be made in special by the Inventors, by certain signes from the Mountains that lye upon them, or from the Events, or from their natural situation and propriety: which also are found out in an admirable way, and they are daily found out: yet it is not known, whether God be angry, or well pleased with it: First, by the violence of Thunders and Tempests burning down of Trees, whereby the shining Clots of Silver are discovered: Then the tops of high Mountains, being onely pared with Spades, there appeare bright Veins of Silver; which presently the wise Husband-man covers with Dung, being rather content to enjoy a peaceable Field, than a Silver Mine that offers it self, whereby he knows he can maintain himself and his Family. For the wary Countryman fears that some Noble-man of the Treasury, to whom the Field belongs, finding a Mine of Silver, in hopes of more profit, will put him out of possession, that there shall be no more Tilling there, where there is a fruitful Mine of Silver. Therefore, as I said, he makes choice of the Fields fruitfulness, of old; for this cause, both Fields and Mines of Silver that so appeared, were made desolate; and at this day, they are hid as much as may be; and the unsatiable covetousnesse of Governours hath done so much harm, that where there were six hundred Pits or Mines of Iron, Brass, Silver, there are scarce three hundred left for the publick profit. The names thereof, it is superfluous to reckon up, whilest the Inhabitants, are much troubled at the remembrance of them, that they are come to that pass that they dare do nothing against the violence of Power.

## CHAP. 5.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Wheels, Instruments, and dangers of the Labourers.*

I Must now shew how a very high Wheel, or drawing Engine is turned about by men or beasts going in it: Moreover, men sit upon Roles, and are let down to the bottom; and again Buckets or Pitchers, full of Water, or Mineral Earth, are drawn up, as every one knows, that the Labourers in Mines, are forced to keep this congruous order: Also, that Cattle, namely, Horses and great Bears, are appointed by course and collaterally, to turn Wheels about, to raise, or let sink great Weights, because the Mines dug forth can be brought up no easier way, by any conveyance of Ballances from the lower parts. But the Miners that undergo continually such hard Labours going up and down, are a most hardy sort of men, most commonly condemned thither for their Villany, living there onely for the Prince his security, being exiled in their own Countrey, that they may never privily come back again to their own houses: yet those Labourers follow the Laws and Rights of the Mountains; whereby, though they be continually inclined to raise Tumults, Seditions, Homicides, and a thousand mischiefs: yet they are tied most severely, that they shall do wrong to no man. In other things they fear not to venture upon any danger or ruine, that may happen amongst the pieces of Rocks ready to fall, or in setting Beams within the sides of the Mountains, or from the deadly exhalations and stinks arising from the Mines, or from the unwholesome Ayr included: Wherefore they are often subject to horrible Destinies. For whilst they labour violently, more quick than circumstance, the Supporters breaking, or Stones falling, they are fearfully crushed suddenly, or for some days (as I said before) they are suffocated, crying out fearfully, being to die for hunger; and there being no remedy to draw them out alive, they are all shew'd to be shut up in one burial, having set over them, how, and how many, namely 30, 60, a 100, or more perished all at once: yet the other Miners continue undantred, that they are no ways frighted by these, or the like horrid Spectacles. Also with a little stroke of a Hammer upon them, huge Mountains fall down by their vast weight.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Art and Ingenuity of Smiths.*

Though in many Northern Kingdoms and Provinces, there useth to be great esteem made of Smiths, that have skill to draw, melt, or turn any ductile matter, especially amongst the Mountains *Dolacary*, an unconquered people for War: yet in the Country of *Helving*, (which formerly was honoured with the Kings Title for some famous Actions) toward the North, there are found such skillful and diligent Artificers that are Smiths, that there are scarce the like in all the North. For they know how to draw forth a great way, by reason of the richness of those Mines and Metals, to a lump, by the ingenious direction of Waters and Wheels; so that by the nimbleness and force of such Engines, in a very short time the greatest Work may be finished, even the usual Vessels of Brasse and Iron extended: whence no small profit accrues to these Nations: so likewise in Iron Ports, and Casements for Windows, and Grates for Nets, that are to be indissolubly tied together; the like work whereof for joynting, is scarce found in all Europe.

## CHAP. 7.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Distinction of fusible Metals.*

There is also amongst other Northern Artificers another way, in the most rich Mountains of Silver, Copper, or Brasse, and Iron, how to melt them, or hammer them; which is so fitly and orderly distinguished, that every matter may easily be brought into a Mats, according to its own nature: Silver, in melting, requires hollow Furnaces, and clear fire to melt it, as being the most precious Metal; that being well melted that it runs, it may be cast by the Workmen into several Forms, putting under it long or round Cutters. The Forms of Silver are commonly made when it runs, like to usual Tables, or square Seats; or Soldiers Bucklers: & that is chiefly done for this reason, that the magnificence and wealth of the King and Kingdoms may be shew'd both to the people; as also to the Ambassadors of great Princes, to whom these massie pieces of Silver are given. But Copper or Brasse Metals are melted in long high Furnaces, made of Clay, Straw and Iron, Wyer and Cords, with many Bellows hung up here and there to blow withall, to cause a greater heat, in divers forms also, without Cutters into huge Lumps, onely in the Earth dug up: but it is far the shorter way, by Winds blowing forth underneath, where, by the continued mighty heat, the Metal, in the midst of the flames, is brought into divers Forms, that weigh 100, 200, 600, or 1000, pound and more; also Naval Weights and Ballances in greater number.

## CHAP. VIII.

*More of the same Metals.*

But Iron Mines cannot be divided into pieces or Clots, with Spades; without the help of Water-Wheels that move the bellows; that they may be brought into a Lump that cannot be cut asunder; alwayes keeping this proportion, that yearly they may make pieces of Iron like to a mans Fist, or four times greater, to many hundred thousands: which pieces of Iron, to five hundred pound weight and more, are put into long Vessels, like Roman Barrels, and are carried to Foreign Countries, or Provinces at home, to very great profit. Also there is such plenty of the most choise Steel, that it serves, and to spare, all Inhabitants and Strangers, for all Building-Tools, for all sorts of Arms, Breast-plates, Helms, Swords. But the grain of it is made the purer, and stronger for work and the more tractable to mingle with Iron; the hotter Furnace the Steel is taken out of it is by leisure, not suddenly quenched in the water, for if it be all plunged in at once, it becomes so short and brittle, that it cannot endure any force in bending it: Amongst the *Mountainous Northern People* it is made like two fingers, in a rough shape, and is quickly sold by tale, as it were in a Market, by hundreds, or by thousands, &c.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the Devils in the Mines.*

This is collected in brief, that in the Northern Kingdoms there are great Armies of Devils that have their services, which they perform with the Inhabitants of these Countries: but they are most frequent in Rocks, and Mines where they break, cleave, and make them hollow: which also thrust into Pitchers and Buckets, and they carefully fit Wheels and Screws, whereby the attracting Engines are drawn upwards, and they shew themselves to the Labourers when they list, like to Phantoms & Ghosts, in what form they will, and they counterfeit laughter, and vain loud derisions, and strange sports & delusions, and

an infinite company of Hobgoblin tricks, whereby they deceive the unhappy people by a vocal noise. But they change these seeming services at last into nothing but destruction and ruins, by breaking down the pillars: or by the fall of Rocks, breaking of Ladgers, provocation of stinking smels, suppression of Winds, breaking of Ropes, they oppress and disturb men; That they either fall and break their necks, or blaspheme God in the greatness of the danger, and are ready to go into a deeper prison, to be enchained with the Devils. And this they do chiefly in the richer Mines of Silver, where there is greatest hopes of finding infinite Treasure. And for this cause many of the richest Mines seems wholly desolate, and utterly of no value; chiefly, because in those places of Metal, there are found six sorts of Devils, more malignant than the rest; for fear of whom, and dangerous Assaults, many Labourers in Mines are in great danger.

## CHAP. X.

## Of Lightning in those Mountains of Minerals.

They that dwell in the *Mineral Mountains* have experience oft-times, from Thunder and Lightning, Flashes and Fire, breaking forth of Clouds, of wonderful Effects in the Exhalations of *Minerals*; namely, that there is a grosse Vapour coming forth of the Caves, that over-shadows all, and a great noise in the Superficies of the *Mountains*, about the entering in, and coming forth, that drives off such as come to it; and above all, that there is an intolerable stink, mingled with a sulphureous smell of Thunder: and if any man, not used to it, coming thither, shall suck it in, he will fall sick, hardly to be cured, having the passages of his throat stop: which is suddenly dissolved, by drinking hot Beer, mingled with Butter, that it may afterwards be cleaned by application of greater Remedies: yet men are in this case cured rather by the co-operation of Nature that is strong, than by virtue of *Medicaments*. It happens also there, that by the blows of Thunder, new veins of Silver are laid open, shining clearly on the sides of the *Mountains*; and hereby they get a perpetual name for their use, and enrich the Fortunes of him that possesseth them. Moreover, Thunder and Lightning does so rage there, though it be in several years between, that many Herds of Cattel are killed by Tempests all the fields over, very wide about.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of Goldsmiths, or Refiners.

Having now shewed that there is a vast and unexhausted quantity of Silver in the *Mountains of Sweden*, and how it is found and taken out there; it follows, that I shew the use or abuse of the same, lest this noble Metal should be concealed from such as have it not, and would use it well, if they had it. Repeating therefore the Customes of former Ages, it may be sufficiently shewed what huge Riches of Gold and Silver, and of other precious Brals there was; when, (as I premised in my first Book) the Temples of Idols, Kings and Princes dining Rooms, even to Childrens Cradles, and Horses Bridles and Trappings, were made the richest Ornaments they could be made. But as the Mine of Gold was then great; so afterwards, by reason of a cruel Mortality, that was raised by the Plague, Sword, and Famine, the care of that was laid aside, and it was lost. There is nothing delivered to their unlabiable Posterity, but the memory of some places from whence it was taken, as I said before in the utmost Bounds of the *North*: yet I think it cannot be denied, but that there is great quantity of Gold in *Sweden*; Copper; which being bought and exported, and oft-times recovered after shipwreck, and refined by art and fire, brings great gain to the possessors of it: And I believe that the *Hungarian Artificers* do diligently attend upon this Art, and such as sell to Foreign Factors Copper very red, and perfectly tried and made

made into thin plates: and lastly, those that carry it through the Dominions of the King of *Poland* in long ships, in the large River *Weyss*, as far as the Mart town of *Danzick*, of the Dukedome of *Prussia*, to divide it there. The rest is left as gain to the Workmen at home, if they can by any secret Art draw any Gold from the Brals or Copper. As for the use of Silver, there is none more common or good in all the World, than what is sold in *Sweden* and *Goeland*; where there is scarce a House or Family, that doth not yearly adde something by their Industry to the Estate they have got. Also, there is a most huge gain in the great Images of the Saints, that are the titular Patrons of the Kingdom, to whom are reverently deputed, *Siboria*, or places made up with Gold and Silver. Likewise, in the Ornaments of Maids, in the huge Crowns made for their Heads, Neck-laces, Pety-coats, Bracelets for the Arms, Chains, small Gifts, and Rings given them by their Parents, Lovers, and Friends. Nor is this idle: For they providently give unto them silver, that may last them and their children after them, rather than filken cloaths that will soon wear out, and be eaten with Worms. Also, of old, the most illustrious men wore Girdles of Silver, commonly called *Stiffshena*, and they had round silver buttons to make fast their cloths every where. Also they had little silver bells tied at their horses tails, that those that were near them, hearing themingle, might take heed they kicked not backward. Moreover, their Straps, Bridles, and Poitrils, and other parts of Silver, were made to adorn them for Luxury, rather than for any solid Furniture.

## CHAP. XII.

## Of the Silver Ornaments of Maids.

There is a very old Town amongst the *Ostrogoths*, called *Schehningia*, because that a Torrent, at a certain time, runs fiercely upon the sides of it, which is called *Schena*. But when it is dry weather, there is so little water left, that it will scarce serve turn to water the cattle. But this defect is every where supplied by the plenty of excellent Fountains, that run out of the Rocks continually. This Town, though growing old, it seems next to delolation; yet by its situation, fruitfulness, and wealth, it hath not its equal in all the *North Climate*. For it hath a most wholesome situation amongst the most fruitful fields and meadows, and Oken Woods, that are very profitable and thick. The Streets of this Town were so ingeniously made by the first Builders of it, that every where round about, turn which way they will, they all meet at the common Market, and Court of Justice, as in the Center. Upon this Market stood a Statue of a Giant, called *Long Turo*, as that at *Breme* is called *Rowland*; at whose knees, Malefactors were questioned and punished, especially Adulterers, which yet were seldom found: who between the Arms of the Image, held stones bound fast with Iron bands about their necks, to their certain confusion, and endured many other torments, especially for terror, that they might not dare to corrupt the weaker Sex. There were of old in this Town abundance of Country-maids, that went covered with Silver, and gilded Crowns, four fingers deep, on the more solemn Feast-dayes; who also were otherwise tricked up and adorned: as also other Women were, who were all richly clad with silver, of which all, even Husband-men had plenty, as it is supposed they have at this day, that the Prince may be honoured, who rather rules over rich and gallant people, than as a King over poor indigent Fellows, that are but Scabs, and pilfering Knaves;



# Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *UPSALA*:

OF

Warlike Instruments, Manners, Causes,  
and Cautions in Fight.

*An Epitome of his Seventh Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Artificers of Slings and Darts.*

**A**Mongst the *Northern Nations*, there is great use made of Bows, Slings, and Arrows; and there is scarce any Inhabitant upon the Earth that is unprovided with such Arms, and that drive off Assaults of Enemies, and hurtful Beasts, whosoever they may meet them, as there are cruel Bears and Wolves: against which, Arrows are made like broad Knives, by reason of the thickness of their hair. Also, they have Arrows of Wood, with broad heads, to kill *Marduri, Zibels*, and *Pyruli*. Also, some with two Forks, to take Wild Fowl, and others to cut for Water-Fowl, to pierce their hard Quills: Others, for Elks, or Wild-Asses, Gules, Foxes, and the like Beasts. But of these, and the like, I shall speak more hereafter, concerning hunting of divers Creatures that are hunted not with Slings, but with Arrows of Trees, made straight.

CHAP. 2.

## CHAP. II.

*Of Arrows, and Warlike Instruments.*

**W**Hat concerns their fighting in Battail, it is a certain truth, that the *Goths* excel all the rest for their Valour in Slings, Arrows, Launces, and Swords, that scarce in the whole World there are made greater and stronger Cross-bows; than amongst them, nor greater Swords, that are left as a possession to their posterity, by right of Inheritance, and by way of gift, as a more rich Furniture than silver. And they have no less affection to strong Steel-bows, and their attractive Wheels, whereby with wonderful agility the Bows are bent with a crooked back; and there is such force in an Arrow shot from it, that they will thrust through a man in Armour, with a Coat of Mail, and double-breast, as if it were soft Wax: wherefore they use these more frequently amongst Warlike people, than any other Arms; and for many other reasons, as I shall underneath annex it, concerning Iron Walls. And few Generals of Armies want such Iron Arrows in the fields, but have many thousands of them that follow them diligently; because they are portable, and seldom are cast in vain: Also they have three-pointed Arrows dipped in Venome, that are cast when the Enemy is fierce and mad, yet they make no great wound. Nor do they lightly use Venomed Arrows, but when they understand the fierceness and cruelty of the Enemy, who will spare none.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the sudden calling the Commonalty to Arms.*

**W**hen the Enemy is upon the Sea-coast, or within the limits of the *Northern Kingdoms*, then presently by the Command of the Provincial Governours, with the counsel and consent of the old Souldiers, who are notably skilled in such like business, a Staff of three hands length, in the common fight of them all, is carried by the speedy running of some active young man unto that Village or City, with this Command, that on the 3, 4, or 8, day, one two or three, or else every man in particular, from 15, years old, shall come with his Arms, and expences for ten or twenty days, upon pain that his or their houses shall be burnt (which is intimated by the burning of the Staff) or else the Master to be hanged, (which is signified by the Cord tied to it) to appear speedily on such a Bank or Field, or Valley, to hear the cause he is called, and to receive Orders from the said Provincial Governour, what he should do. Wherefore that Messenger, swifter than any Post or Waggon, having done his Commission, comes slowly back again, bringing a token with him, that he hath done all legally, and every moment one or another runs to every Village, and tells those places what they must do. And thus they that are fit for War, either by their strength of body, or vigour of age, in one, or eight days time at farthest, come in innumerable multitudes, with their Arms and Expences; and the old Husbandmen also, to give counsel; and by reason of the experience they got in former Battails, come also into the Fields, and the Women get upon the City Walls, and Forts, to cast down Stones, or Lime, sodden in Water.

CHAP. 4.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the keeping of the Wayes and Scouts.

And that the Enemies Forces may not know the minds of the Inhabitants, there are Sentinels set in convenient places, who will suffer none of that multitude met together to go down, nor yet the messengers of the Enemy, when they are discovered, nor to come for peace, but to spy them out. For the Inhabitants will be ignorant of knowing the Enemies number, and what Spears and Arms, or long Poles and Arrows they use: for as much as their Spears (called in vulgar *Italian Piche*) are two or three foot longer than the Spears or Lances of their Enemies; as it fell out in the Ejecting of King *Christiernus* the Second, *Anno 1521*. under the Command of the most noble *Gustavus Erickson*, who was afterwards King; who with twenty thousand of the *Dalcarli*, that dwell in the Mountains, and use Spears, came down into the Champion fields of *Arefum*, in the end of *May*, to fight violently with his Enemies, and he became Conquerour in a moment. For the horror of *Christiernus* his cruelty, made not only private Families, or one Province, but all the Inhabitants mad, that they came every man forth to seek revenge. In what order, and for what cause it was done, that the same *Gustavus* every where with the concurrency of an infinite multitude, and by the consent of the most famous Nobility, was first proclaimed Prince, and afterwards crowned King by three Bishops of the Church of *Rome*; I shall speak elsewhere, when I speak of his actions. The messengers therefore of the Footmen, that are to give warning to the people to meet for the Battail, run fiercely and swiftly; for no Snow, nor Rain, nor Heat, can stop them, nor Night hold them; but they will soon run the Race they undertake: The first Messenger tells it to the next Village, and that to the next; and so the Hubbub runs all over, till they all know it in that Stile or Territory, where, when, and wherefore they must meet; nor will the Governour be very safe, if he waver or stumble about what he should command the multitude that is provoked. For they fight freely for their Countrey, and they will presently know what it is fit for them to do.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Direction of the Multitudes called together.

When the multitude of Inhabitants are met, presently come the most prudent Generals, who at once shew them what they must do, and divide them into Troops, Companies, and Regiments, and fore-tel them what manner of Battail they must keep, they give them their Colours, and expound unto them the cause of the War, they open to them the insolence of the Enemy, and shew to one and all their damages, and how necessary it is to defend their Countries Liberty: and these things, with a quick expedition, make them all to be most bold Revengers of their wrongs, especially for this reason, because they learned before by training at home, how to fight in War, and that with Javelins, Arrows, Slings, Swords, wherewith they often kill the Enemy, or put him to flight: and they know what they should do in War, and can as well teach themselves, as learn from others: whence they fall upon the Enemy, like a grievous and sad Tempest all at once, and run fiercely on; either they find an opportunity to kill, slay, or take the Enemy prisoner, or to rout him utterly, as the Nature of the place will give them way. And it is the Custom of the people to fight in a tumultuous and running Battail. But those that excel the rest in Spears, or standing fight, are deputed to their Ranks apart, that they may be Auxiliaries to their Fellows, if by the opposition of the Enemy, they should be beaten back, or put to flight.

Others

Others again heaped together in Troops, either keep passages, that they may compel the Enemy to fall into Inares, and places not convenient; or may take from him his provision, or hinder him, that by continual skirmishing they may tire him out; or else they drive him into extreme danger of Bogs, or steep places, that they may easily destroy, or captivate the Enemy shut up in Caves in Rocks, and they chiefly provide, that they may continually have fresh Forces to oppose against the Adversaries strength, and may receive such as are wearied into late places of defence.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Battails on the Shores.

When a Sea-fight is at hand, the *North* people use wonderful diligence, especially the *Goths*, *Swedes*, and *Finnlanders*, either to drive away the Fleet of the Enemy, or to give them battail. For they either from the Rocks, which are their Natural Forts, drive the Enemy from the shore a far off with shooting their Arrows; or if he come neer, they cast stones upon him from above; or in the entrance of their Havens, they fasten blind pillars, and thick stakes under water, that they may stop their Enemy from entering, though no man defend them. Sometimes also they make the Enemy think that they are afraid of him, that lying close in the utmost skirts of Woods, whither the Enemy comes to pillage, by blowing their Horns, they may call together all the multitude that lies in Ambush. For in many places by the shore they had made passages of Woods to go in and out, by cutting up young Trees, and sticking many of the Boughs all over, and laying Bushes and Bryars in the Ways between them, that like a Wall, these Hedges might stand for their Defence, which cannot be entered, nor yet hardly be looked into: within those Woods that are set in the way, almost in all the Ports or Provinces, lie a great multitude of the Inhabitants, who run the swifter upon the Enemy, as the Scouts are careful to give them notice, especially when the Enemies begin to rage, and burn houses, and destroy their fields. For the Natives hold no wickedness to be more cruel than that, nor do they revenge any wrong more severely.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of Slings for Stones, and red hot Iron.

Flexible Chains, and jointed Irons, tied to Clubs of Wood, are used more frequently by the *Northern* people to besiege Castles with, than any other Weapons, especially where the fields round about are strong. But where there are no Stones, which is seldom seen, they cast into the Ports, as forcible as they may, a piece of Iron that is glowing red hot, which they put with a pair of Tongs into the purse of the Sling. For they have always ready Vessels like to *Romane* Barrels, full of pieces of Iron; and putting that into the fire, and sitting it to their Sling, and casting it against the Besieged, they will make such a violent wound and torture, that it can hardly or never be cured by the help of Physicians. For in the Fall, by reason of its great weight, and burning where it lights, it hurts without remedy; and so they destroy the Enemy, either with the terror of these pieces of Iron which they keep close, or else by the wounds they make. The memory of which thing is very fresh in the King of *Denmark*, *Christiernus* the Second, who *Anno 1521*, by such Weapons in the City, and Cattle of *Aroi*, lost a very potent Army. Also by Fiery Arrows, which being snatched out of the flame, and with a pair of Tongs put into their Cross-bows, suddenly shot, made the more cruel wounds, the hotter they were, that men could not by reason of their burning, draw them out again.

But



But the most miserable thing was, that the Iron Arrows, and pieces of Iron, falling amongst the Gun-powder, raising the flame in a moment, flew far round about very many Souldiers; especially, because these Mountainous men are a fierce kind of people, bred up in Min. ral Exercises; and they with their Arrows, Stones, and pieces of Iron cast from their Slings, as thick as Hail, did vehemently pursue, and beat upon them. I saw in the same year, for the space of two hundred and fifty Italian miles, many that were so miserably wounded brought from thence in a ship into *Holms*, the place where the Kings Palace is in *Sweden*, a most lamentable spectacle they were; some wanted their Noses, Eys, Arms, and Feet, that were torn off: and these at last in cruel torment, and with wounds incurable died there, a miserable death; especially *German, Danes and Scots*. The same Lot and destruction that befel those *German* souldiers, and *Danes*, hapned chiefly to those of *Jutland*, and *Holfatia*, because they suppoed those Mountain dwellers (I mean the *Dalacary*) to be a despised people, and unarmed Countrey-Clowns, not disciplined for War, and they called them stupid and weak people, using such like Imprecations, that millions of Clowns might fall from Heaven like Rain; and that they would and could destroy them all like to Locusts in one moment; and with idle words they thus insulted over them. But it was presently found that words and threats are but in vain, when they drew near that were able to give blows that were mortal: For when they perceived the force of these Mountainous *Dalacary*, at Noon-day, on *Whitsunday*, who were provoked to wrath with a thousand injurious speeches, as well as the rest of the Kingdom were, they were not only unable with their most strong Forces of Foot and Horse to stand against them, but in a confused fright they forthwith ran into their Forts, to defend themselves; wherein, as I said, they were killed with fiery Darts, and red hot pieces of Iron.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Veits of the Centurians.

Although tumultuous people, and the unarmed Countrey-men all the world over, are suppoed to have no skill in Wars: yet there is a far different reason found in the *Northern* people, who bringing their Arms with them, and expenses for a set time, come as merrily to the War, as they would to dance. For they are most strong, especially the *Swedes*, and the *Goths*, in besieging of Castles, Forts, Towns, and Cities, and winning them by force, and that many ways, as I shall shew underneath in this Book in many Chapters. But this way described above, may be thought to be more dangerous than the rest. For the Inhabitants when they are provoked with most grievous injury and tyranny, to free themselves from it, come all together, and fear not to meet suddenly, to remove quickly cruel Governours; and when they have worsted them, and compelled them to fly into Forts and Towns, they came by Troops and besiege them, as they are shut up in those Forts; and joining their heads and forces together, they gather shrubs, or branches of Trees, and these they bind together ingeniously with Withs, green Juniper Trees growing in all places, with Pitch, and the Barks of the Birch-Tree; and that in so great height and magnitude, made like to long Towers, that moving forward every heap, (which they call *Velts*) about a hundred men rowl them, or more, as the *Velts* are great or less, and this *Velts* by its vast greatness, doth so secure those that drive it before them, that whilst they rowl it, they cannot be hurt by any Arrows, Guns, or other Instruments of War.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the manners and time of bringing these Velts.

But that they may the sooner satisfy their revengefull mind, by the more ready and effectual help of Nature, they wait purposely for the winds, and they chule them oft tempestuous and sharp winds that may carry in the smoke and flame of their *Velts* into the houses of the Forts; & on the other side the best archers fall on by troops, who do so plague the besieged in their windows or pelt their bucklers they hold in their hands, or their heads with multitudes of arrows and darts that they make them like to hedge-hogs. And at length that force proceeds so far, that the besieged being tired, or conquered with smoke and flame, are horribly killed, no conditions or agreements being allowed them. For the unbridled Countrey mens simplicity knows not how to make any other agreement than the most bitter death prescribes to the besieged; because they remember how often they have bin deluded and vexed by the false Covenants of wicked Governours and enemies that they rather chool to dye once fighting valiantly, than to live any longer to be so mocked and tormented by Tyrants. And hence grew up that most cruell custome, that the ordinary Souldiers fighting a battail with the Countrey Clowns and Inhabitants of *Goibland* and *Sweetland*, give no quarter, being in despair of life, so it is on the contrary side also, but they presently kill one the other in a lavage fury, as every where all the fields over their scattered bones fastned to rocks shew instead of *Epiraphs*. But this miserable Calamity consumes more forrain Souldiers with cruell death of divers Nations, that were come thither to sell their lives for a small matter, than it doth natives who growing daily stronger, & augmenting their forces, rise more cruely against all that oppose them. For strangers that are Souldiers testify so much, who by the mercy of God have sometimes escaped these mileries, giving a document to all others, that the spoil of the Swedish Silver must be bought by Forrainers with their lives and bloods, upon very unequall terms.

## CHAP. X.

Of their Stakes, Darts, and Pins for Shaves.

The Souldiers of Northern people, to oppose fenced places against their enemies coming on, use much art and force, as other Nations do, considering time and place whereby they may certainly with a small hand circumvent the enemy; for the time, whether it be winter spring Summer or Autumn. For be they to fight in winter, by the help of snow and ice a hundred are sufficient to oppose a thousand (as I shall shew underneath). If it be spring time, then they provoke the Enemy to come where he may fall amongst the Rocks, and there are infinite numbers of them, the snow being then melted, that they may fall, that the Rider can find no firm ground to stand upon, to be free from falling down headlong, how valiant soever he be in Battail. If it be Summer, then they encounter their rash enemies with ditches, sharp poles and points stuck up, covered with the shadows of pine tree boughs, or in some boggy places. If it be Autumn, they are provoked by the enemy into the vallies and declining places, they insatuate and weaken him with rain, that he is brought into narrow Straights, untill that many of them gathered together, do not help but hurt one the other which is most lamentable and desperate to behold. For nothing so much hurts horsemen, as a narrow and boggy place, which can scarce be avoided whilst the Valiant horsemen enraged follow after the enemy forcibly whether soever they see him fly. Nor can they save themselves by flight, by reason of the horse that is ready at the backs of them, nor yet on the right or left hand, by reason of the steep places, muddy lakes, deep boggs, dangerous caves, and waters and woods,

woods, that they cannot escape these dangers. And then they find that it is not enough to fight with swords only, or lances, arrows, sharp poles, and daggers, but with hard and dangerous places, into which they are fallen by too much presumption and improvidence. And if they once conquer it will be hard to suppress their fierceness, as to recall the perfidiousness and cowardliness of those that run away; and perhaps because on all sides they cry to arms to arms, and many speedy ways of death.

### CHAP. XI.

#### Of the Stratagems of King Hacho by boughs.

I Have shewed a little in the present Chapter with what vehement desire the Goths are wont to revenge cruel injuries. There was once in *Gothland* a most potent King called *Hacho*, who was addicted to such famous and magnificent actions, that other Lords could better admire than imitate them. For he satisfied all parts of the Common-wealth with such circumspection, that as in war he was most valiant against the Enemy, so he neglected no office of a bountifull Prince toward his friends and subjects. He divided his power and military forces into two warlike fleets, the one whereof his brothers did Govern valiantly to defend the bounds and people of his land, whilst he in the interim provided with other fleet, and part of the Souldiers, made war against the Western Island of the Ocean. When he was there, and understood certainly by messengers that his two brothers were oppressed by the *Danes* in a fight at Sea, and that the third was killed barely to the disgrace of *Swethlands* King and his Family, supposing it was not to be delayed any longer, he halted to bring his whole forces from *Ireland* against the *Danes*; which thing though *Starchartus* a Champion of *Sweden* & some others by alleaging their reasons, did dissent; yet with his fleet that was left, and with a prosperous Gale he came to the shores of *Zealand*; and in a straight and quick passage through Woods and Forests, halted to come to the very Court where he understood that *Sigarnus* the King then was. Nor did he want good success to his haste: for passing the first and second watch silently and softly as he could, when he came to the outward lurking places of the woods, he commanded all of his men to cut down boughs from Trees, and to carry them in every mans hand, when they that kept the third watch observed, they presently declared to *Sigarnus* that they beheld an unusual and wonderfull thing with their eyes. For they saw a wood pulled up by the roots coming up to the Court. Then *Sigarnus* suspecting danger, answered that by that coming on of the woods extreame misfortune was foretold to befall him and hastily calling together what Souldiers he lit upon by chance, he marcheth against the enemy that advanced. And there was a cruel & violent fight, the *Swedes* as their custom is seeking fiercely after revenge. *Sigarnus* King of *Denmark* was slain in that fight. But *Hacho* changing this victory into cruelty spared no Age nor Sex, and so cruelly oppressed the Kingdom of *Denmark*, that he brought it not to tribute and subjection but to extreame desolation, nor would he have been quiet, until he had made desolate a great part of it, unless by the death of his Father he had been suddenly called away into *Gothland* from that attempt; yet he left another *Hacho* of the same name to be his vicegerent, whose surname was *Fastuosus*, whom, when the *Danes* after the *Swedes* were gone, perceived to want force, they presently fell to their Arms again, and resolved to shake off the Swedish yoke, and to redeem their former liberty; and making *Simaldus*, the son to *Sigarnus*, their King, they renew the fight more fierce than ever it was before. That battail was so violent and bloody, that many souldiers being first slain, at last both Generalls of the armies *Hacho* and *Simaldus* met; and there were very few that after so miserable a ruine could save themselves by flight. And this was the end of that most un-

fortunate

unfortunate battail: in which all of the Kings blood were slain, but only one woman called *Oyritba*, who was born from *Gothland*, and to her the Government descended.

### CHAP. XII.

#### Of punishing Hostile fires.

*Axo*, the most worthy Danish writer mentions that *Sueno* King of *Denmark*, was resolved to let upon the Inhabitants of *Sweed* and *Gothland* with forcible arms and harred, that admitting no conditions of peace, none should be suffered to escape with his life and liberty, though their King should yield to all articles. Wherefore taking the benefit of the Winter, he took the shortest way, and sets upon *Finland* now called *Finnland* a South province of *Gothland*, with plundering and firing all. The Inhabitants came humbly begging, yielding themselves and their Country, and not content to cast themselves down thus, they bring him provision, and sought to win him by hospitable entertainment. But when they saw that all their officiousness would not keep them safe, they thought it lawfull by treachery to punish his implacable cruelty: whereupon the forelaid *Finlanders* with one consent slew their most noble men, and their friends, and Companions of their plunders and murders, that were feasting most part of the night and were full of drink, who were got into a barn that was empty of Corn, when they were drunk, these they killed with flame and fire, which they wanted before in their houses, being deprived of them in extreme cold weather. For when these were dead asleep, the *Finlanders* barring the doors cast fire upon the house, and now the greater part of them conpired, and the house was almost burnt to ashes, before the hear had awakened these drunkards. Lastly, when the flames came nearer to them, whilst they thought to run naked out of the doors, they find that they were shut on the outside. The fire burnt them on the inside, and the enemy without kept them from coming forth, but the present pain took off the fear of that which should follow, and the danger present was held worse than that which was to come, so that the *Danes* desiring rather to be killed by the sword than burnt, strove with all their might to break the doors open, and to avoid one danger run into another.

### CHAP. XIII.

#### Of removing the same danger.

Children of hopefull parts, whom the forelaid Captains and famous Men had taken to their tuition, in respect of propinquity of blood; without any pity of their age, were drowned under the Ice of the River *Nijca*, and their bodies stripped naked, by the Mockery of the *Finlanders*, and in the same Channel they had both their end and their grave. Thus by the hand of a few Country men, that is by just revenge, the labour of this great expedition came to nothing. Nor is it only observed to have fallen out in that ancient time, but whereforever the *Danes* set upon the *Goths* and *Swedes* to spoil them by force of times, so often shut up in houses for the most part they are destroyed partly by fire, partly by waters, partly by sword, either openly or by snares layd for them: which is supposed to be done the more easily; when they sleep in houses built of wood, that are all compassed about with combustible matter, and are fast asleep, being drunk and weary, foolishly thinking themselves to be secure amongst those men, whom they afflict with all violence and cruelty: and the more quickly and severely are they punished, by how much they were more insolent by cruel tyranny to plunder and spoil the houses of the Inhabitants.

For those that are deprived of their houses in the coldest Winter, hide their wives and children in Caves, in Woods; and being led on with fury, force, and despair, armed with Darts and Crois-bows, they slay these plunderers, and firers of their houses, as they can meet them in dangerous ways; that with loss of life, they may recover, that are the just owners, their goods that are taken from them: whence it is that they will either perish in most cruel danger, or by sudden (or more foul) flight, escape the force of the Countrey-men; for leaving the spoil amongst their Enemies, they oft-times hardly get home naked and spoiled, and frequently wounded, and make themselves a spectacle and laughing stock, not only to strangers, but to their own friends: wherefore it is but so to make War against the Clowns in Winter, when by the command of their Lords, they are not afraid, if they find the like accident of shutting up their Enemies, to bar the houses, and set them on fire, because by the abundance of Woods near them, by mutual help, they can soon build more houses. Their houses have never any Windows on the sides, but on the top of the house: therefore when the doors are barred, they are easily burnt when they are fast asleep.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the custody of Banks in time of Hostility, about a place called Meler, in Upper Swedia.*

There is moreover in Upper Swedia, a notable Lake called *Meler*, of which before in my third Book, I spake many strange things; chiefly, because amongst the Northern Waters, it is most full of Fish; and there are many Forts and Palaces of Noble and great men, that are very well adorned according to the manner of that Nation: besides that there are some notable Cathedral Churches at *Aros*, and *Sirengens*, where of old time there was Superstitious Worship given to Idols, and there was a great fight between the Nobles, Champions, and Giants; as one may see in the huge Stones, brought out of the Fields and Mountains, and placed in the Walls of the Churches: wherein, in Gothick Letters, long ways, and obliquely set down, the Deeds of these Giants are to be read. Also in the bosome of this Lake, there are inaccessible Rocks, which the Inhabitants call the Hens Chicken. The Rock in the middle is called the Hen, as in Norway there are Rocks of Eggs; that is, they are called *Eggisfiard*. Moreover, those that sail by Sea into Gothland and Sweden, meet with certain Bosoms and Promontories of the Sea, that are called by the names of Tables, Forms, Crows, Hogs, Faulcons, and Battails: wherein, when Enemies come on, they hide themselves amongst the Rocks, with ship-boats that will run in. The Inhabitants keep these openly, that they may intercept their Enemies that sail presumptuously to them; for if the Enemies enter upon the firm shore, they find an armed multitude every where met to fight courageously in defence of their Countrey, as I shall shew in particular in the following Books.

### *The End of the Seventh Book.*

Olaus

## Olaus Magnus the Goth, Arch-Bishop of U P S A L:

O F

*The state of Governours and Officers,  
and Military Exercise.*

### *The Epitome of the Eighth Book.*

### *The Preface.*

THE most mighty Kings of the Goths and Swedes, being spoken of by my most dear Brother and Predecessour Johannes Magnus the Goth, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, in his Histories lately Printed at Rome, there seems a shorter way left, whereby we may shew, how, and what Kings were wont to be made in the Northern Kingdoms; namely, after that Noe and his Sons came forth of the Ark, before that in other parts of the whole world, those Sons of his, as it is thought, had obtained by their Fathers Appointment, the Title and Government; and so at last from thence had increased the whole world, as it is found by the testimony of many grave Authors, that above thirty four Kings proceeded from that Northern Climate, and had set up mighty Kingdoms over the World very largely, as it is more clearly declared in my Gothick Map, Printed at Venice, Anno 1539. whose Acts how great and Magnificent they were, he my said Brother faithfully testifies in his Histories, these things being thus proved, I must farther shew the way, how they chuse their King, or have him by succession; and how Military Exercises were observed, from the most ancient time, by the Governours: Likewise of their Offices.

CHAP. I.

## CHAP. I.

## Of the Election of the King.

**T**He glorious constitution of our Ancestors, delivered in the name of free-men by succession from ages to ages, commands in the beginning of it, that when the Inhabitants are to chool a King in *Sweeden*, all the Senatours and Lords, and Messengers of all provinces, Communities and Cities of the aforesaid Kingdome shall be bound to meet in the Archiepiscopall City of *Upsall*: from whence not far off, there is a large stone of the field, which the Inhabitants call *Moraften*, that hath in the circumference 12. fiones little lesse than it, fast set in the ground; In this place, the said Senatours or Counsellors of the Kingdome, and messengers use to meet: there the chiefe of the Senate makes a soild occasion to shew how necessary it is for the liberty of the Kingdome and all the people, to agree upon one King to Rule over them, as it was most providently observed by their Ancestors to do it upon such a stone which signifies steadfastnesse; exhorting all that with free votes they should presently name, whom they would have. Nor do they stay long. But he that seemed alwayes to defend the publick good and glory of the Kingdomes peace and concord. He that hath won the love of all the people by living justly, he that in private Government hath hurt none; he that hath won many Victories in War, he that is most the lover of Lawes and Religion; he by the universal consent of all the free provincials, is lifted up to be called their King: yet with this consideration, that if the Kings son, brother, or kinsman, hath the foresaid vertues, he shall be preferred before all the rest, not as by Inheritance but by free Election. And it seems not to be denied, but that such by all diligence, care, authority, grace, prayers, promises, may procure to themselves the favour of the people. Some hasten to get the Kingdome by recommendation from forrain Kings, and Princes, and by violence and force of Arms, but there are none more unhappy than they: because their violent government, the free vote of the people being against it, will not last long, though such a one settle his throne amongst the strongest Forts, or in the midst of the Stars. How ever it falls out, he alwayes enters more safely, endures, and ends, who is called by the voice of the people, that are provident enough, to be their King, as being accounted for his courage and vertue the most famous and valiant amongst enemies or his own people: because there seems that nothing is first or chiefe to be done by him, than to see to his Nobles, and People, that they may have a just Government, firm defence and perpetuall peace. And when he doth this, the people will endure no other man to challenge to himself the Kingly office.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the Adoption of Noble men by Arms.

**B**ecause the most Potent King of the *Goths*, *Theodoricus*, did not omit to observe the custome of the most ancient Princes of *Gothland*, in his own time, in adopting his son, therefore I would here, insert his Epistle, in his Fourth Book, sent to the King of *Herni*. He saith, that his son to be made by arms is held to be a great honour amongst all Nations, because he is not fit to be adopted, unless he deserve to be accounted the most valiant. We are often deceived in our of-spring. But they can be no cowards who are first proved

to be valiant; and these have it not by favour but by desert, when strangers are tied to them by the bonds of love. And there is so much force in this that they will sooner dy, than suffer such men to be injured. And therefore by the right of Nations: and manlike condition, I adopt thee my son by this present gift, that thou mayest be conveniently born by arms, who are known to be a Souldier. I give to thee, hories, swords, bucklers, and the other Instruments of war; but those that are the strongest of all, I bequeath to thee, Our Laws. For thou art held to be the Chiefest amongst the Nation. Who art approved by the sentence of *Theodoricus*; Take to thee these arms that may be usefull for thee and me. Such a man adopts thee; by whose people thou art most to be feared, we have given thee arms, but of old time the people waited for pledges of verue. Therefore saluting you with competent Grace, we give all the rest in charge by him and him, our Embassadors, who shall plainly expound unto you our letters, and shall adde what is more to be said to confirm this grace unto you.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the same form of the Adoption.

**M**oreover so Strict obervation was had amongst the old *Gothish* King for the experience of Arms, that their lawfull sons were not permitted to eat at table either in private or publick with their father, untill such time forrain princes did certify of their sufficiency in Arms; which also *Paul*, *Diaconus* testifies *l. i. c. 23*. For when the Lumbards having got the victory, returned to their own places, they suggested to their King *Odwin*, that seats should be made for his son *Albwin*, by whose valour in Battail, (the son of the King of the *Gepida* being slain) they won the victory, that as he was his Fathers Companion in danger, so he might sit at the Table with him. To whom *Odwin* answered: That he could not grant this, lest he should infringe the custome of the Country. You know, saith he; that it is no custome with us, that the Kings son should dine with his Father, unless he first receive arms from the said forrain King: when *Albwin* heard his Father speak this, he took 400 young men with him; and came to *Turismundus* the King of the *Gepida*, whose son he had once killed in war, and demanded a coat of arms from him, the King entertaining him courteously made a banquet, and set him at his right hand, where his own son was wont to sit, whom he had slain, yet the Father remembering it, fetcht deep sighs, thinking this a sad change for his son, which when the other son of the King, and the Courtiers, drawing their weapons thought to revenge, the King kept them from it under a sharp prohibition, affirming that victory to be wicked, when a man shall kill a stranger in his own house, whereupon he decreed that all should be merry at the feast, and taking the Arms of his son that was killed, he delivered them to *Albwin*, and sent him to his Fathers Kingdome with peace and safety. Then sitting at Table with his Father, he related all things in order, and he deserved great praise for his so great boldnesse: but *Turismundus* deserved a great deal more, for his so constant faith held toward so cruell an enemy. For it is a received opinion of men, as a decree of military persons, that the King can create a Souldier to be a Knight, who was not in that order before his coronation, because it is included in the Authority of the King, as a garland of roses upon a Golden Crown.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Military education of Illustrious and Noble men.

IT was not the least care amongst the Ancient *Goths* to bring up their Children very hardly, and by a common law they took heed to employ them in military affairs and wars, that they might be upon all chances defenders of their Country, as in former dayes it was instituted by the followers of their ancestors. And that manner was chiefly kept, which lasts to this day. Of old, Children newly out of their Cradles had experience of being whipt with rods when they suckt. First they were laſht in moſt hot baths griveouſly, till the blood came, then were they thruſt into the moſt cold water, almoſt in danger of death, that their limbs might be the more compoſed: hereby they hardened their children, to endure heat and cold, alſo children were ſo whipt with ſtripes at the Altar, that much blood run forth of their bowels, ſometimes that it was ſuppoſed they would dy. And yet none of them ever ſo much as cryed out, or made any moane, that they drank in ſeverity of life, from their Infancy and Cradle, even with their Mothers Milk. Alſo when their Children were new born they firſt brought them to the fire, and hardened them in cruell froſts, and waters: then growing young men they received great blows upon their face and bodies, and bare them with that ſilence, that they would not ſo much as move their eyes, or by fear ſhew their impatience. They will not uſe loſt feathers. Their cloths are made of hard ſkin: Their meate and drink is ſtrong. They lye more on planks, than feather-beds, and upon ſuch hard things that they may harden their limbs, and make them more fit againſt all ill chances. But becauſe *Ludovicus* King of *Hungaria* was daintily feed, he much complaind of his caterers, leſt he ſhould be put to flight in war, and be forced to live on any hard Country fare to ſave his life, as it ſell out afterwards.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the reaſon and manner of Riding.

MOREOVER youths are carefully inſtructed in the art of riding, darting, ſhooting, and that it ought to be very much reſpected by Princes. And amongst the reſt, there is ſet upon their heads a weighty helmer, and a long ſpear is held in their hands, that they may learn as well for ſtrength as decency to ride upright, with their neck, and to hold that poſture. Again a buckler is hanged at their back, that they may know by looking back more carefully to beware of ſnares: alſo becauſe it is the moſt antient cuſtome of the *Gothick* Nobility, with ſuch ornaments, namely a helmer, lance and buckler, to come to publick meetings of Princes, and with other ſuch arms to defend their Countries Liberty, and Juſtice. And that they may not be ignorant of the military diſcipline of other Nations, the youths are ſent to ſtrange Princes Courts far off, that they may Learn the faſhion, Language, difference of perſons, and the Inventions of Countries, their order of Fighting and diſpoſing of their Armies, that they may not come rude to the Government, yet ſome come no ſooner home but they are made Kings. Alſo it was the manner of the ancient Princes, to change their ſons hair one with another that by cutting their locks, they might be made their fathers, and ſuch they ſent home again adorned with royall gifts. But the *Goths* do not pole their hair, but bind on cloſe helmets, and coats of mail, commanding them to mount upon the ſtronger horſes, and in cruell cold winter to follow hunting and by courſe to ſtand in their armour when it freezes extreame hard, as if they ſtood ſentinel, and were to avoid danger of thoſe that lie in ſome hoſtile ſiege; which is more frequently praſiſed in Winter than in Summer.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the choice of Young Souldiers for Arms.

I ſhall here ſhew after what manner the Kings of the *Goths*, *Swedes*, and *Normegians* and other Princes of the North did inſtitute formerly their Kingly and provinciall offices, and do in theſe dayes, diſpoſe of them. Therefore they thought thoſe young Souldiers the moſt famous of all, in wars; who, from their childhood, bridled their unconſtant years with early manners, for there is nothing worſe than that, if it be let looſe to ill cuſtomes. For that age is thought neither faithfull to the Prince, nor profitable to the Country, nor tolerable to their Companions, nor yet pleaſing to any unleſs by military rigour it be bred up into valour; that in ſuch caſe the moſt valiant defenders of their Country may be inſtructed, to whom provinces may be ſafeſt committed to govern them: But that theſe young men might not always be under the rigour of theſe military diſciplines, the Kings liberality, doth alwayes advance and exalt them, and give them ſpeciall gifts that they may be bound thereby to continue faithfull to their King, and that they may undauntedly undergo any danger of life in battail. The gifts therefore they beſtow on them, are ſwords, croſsbowes, quivers, helmets, breſts, coats of mail, bucklers, javelins, war-horſes, and when they grow elder, they are tied by ſome ſervice. To all theſe, after the old cuſtome there are ſpeciall forms in words and reaſons in particular annexed to ſhew why they are given and received.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the ſame by an onward Ceremony.

THE *Goths* count their age by valour, as when they can wound an enemy, they are then tied to obtain from all vice, which alſo *Paulus Diaconus* teſtifies l. 1. concerning the Lombards, who that they may multiply their Souldiers, they take many ſervants from their Maſters, and make them free; and that their liberty may be ratified, they confirm it after their uſual manner by an arrow: yet mumbling ſome of their Country Language to fortiſie the thing the more; which are as much as if they ſaid, Let the Gods inable thee by this arrow, and let them deſtroy thee when ever thou ſhalt prove falſe to thy Prince or Country. And I muſt not paſſe over the teſtimony of *Saxo* in his 2. Book, that the Lords of old, about to enter into the Court, began their firſt ſervice, by obliging themſelves to their Prince by vowing ſome great thing, beginning their firſt employment with valour, yet no ſtrangers ever deſerved to be counted faithfull indeed in the Courts of *Gothland* and *Sweland*, unleſs they took a drawn ſword, or dagger by the point, from the Princes hand as a gift, taking an oath of fidelity, leſt taking it by the hilt they might thruſt it into the bowels of him that gave it; as it hath been formerly done, whilſt he ſuffered him to revenge, who gave to an ungratefull perſon the hilt for the point, contrary to the cuſtome of the Antients. But they make ſtandard-bearers, and Vandragers that are famous for their valour: and very gallant men, by only tending them the ſtandard, which by the law of Arms they promiſe to defend as their honour, and their life: To theſe they joyne a moſt bold guard, men that have ſharp pole-axes, and iron-balls hanging at their girdles: with which when need is they can knock down a man that is neer when they cannot conquer them with their two edged ſwords.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the manner of the old Warfare of the Goths.*

**T**hey had of old heavy Helmets, not very neatly made, but according as they could in those rude days; also they had thick Breast-plates, partly of Iron, part of Leather, part of Filletting, made of Linnen and Woollen: Likewise they had Iron Sleeves and Gantlets: And they carried great long Spears, *Procopius* speaks of them 1, 2, in these words: But the *Persians* not enduring the *Goths* that marched first with thick long Spears, ran away: Also the *Crasiers* use long Spears. Their Horse Breasts are covered with Breasts of Brays: about the Bridles and Trappings they wear Gold, not using Iron or Silver: In whole Country since there is so vast a quantity of Gold and Copper yet there is no Iron nor Silver. But in their Native Country, namely *Gothland*, they of old, with unspeakable magnificence, used Gold as the most worthy Metal, to the honour of their gods, in adorning the chief Churches, (as I laid in my first Book.) But now a days, there is a Law made, that Brasse or Silver Bells shall be tied to their restive Horse-tails that are cut short, that weak men, hearing the found, may avoid the danger. But those that use more Silver for Ornament, have large Be's, (called *Silffschene*) as well for to adorn them, as to defend the middle of their backs, and they wear other Ornaments also that are brave Courtiers.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of other Antiquities of Knights.*

**A**lso former Ages used great long Spurs, and broad Rowels. Moreover, they had Boots that turned down, vainly enough, with great Tops, that were made for no profit at all; as I saw when I was a Boy, above 60. years since; and these are now kept in some Noble-mens houses to be seen. Also the Garments of Soldiers Coats were so short, and folded together, that they could scarce cover their Buttocks beneath; and they were so chequered and slashed above, that they would neither cover their shoulders, nor could their hair, falling down, keep off the cold, especially in private soldiers, who were not allowed to wear long hair, but onely for Princes, chiefly Kings Sons, who were never poled from their Child-hood, that their Locks might fall down upon their Backs, which were divided, and hung down on both sides before, but not after the *Turkish* fashion, platted, foul and ugly, or otherwise crisped, but sprinkled with sweet Unguents.

## CHAP. X.

*Of Military Exercises and Disciplines.*

**I**t was of old a constant Custome, and is observed to this day, amongst the *Northern* people, that the Knights armed Cap-a-pee, should from the plain ground, and from any hard place, by nature, mount upon high horses, with their Trappings on, especially upon the slippery Ice, and Snow-Fields, where more frequent and more sharp Wars use to be made, as I shall shew underneath, concerning their fights in Winter; especially by reason of their heavy Armour, and thick Spears, which they commonly use against their Enemies; and this is held to be no absurd thing amongst them. Moreover, there is another Military Discipline of the *Goths*, whereby they are wont, in all their Armour, to vault from one horse to another, and so to the third horse, when the horses run swiftly; and they will do it, and never touch ground, when they are in a hot battail. Also they will lye upon their horse backward, or lift themselves up, or incline themselves, and rise up again, changing their Javelin, or Spear.

## CHAP. XI.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of their Arms and provisions for Knights and Horsemen.*

**W**hen the Northern people are to enter upon a horse-fight with thick heavy spears, they adorn the points of them with fox or wolfs tails, in contempt of all their enemies. Also they never use spears with banners, as the *Persians* do. But they use crossie and steel and horn bowes for the great force and strength they have, for they are made most true, as are all arrows that are joyned to them. Lastly, they use long straight as well as crooked swords, and when their lances are broken, they cut or push with them. Also they use broad swords that are to be wielded with both hands, also Iron mallets that are crooked, at the end with which they can the more sharply penetrate their helmets, & break them, than with any other warlike Instrument: and with these kind of mallets they will either force the rider from his horse, or else they break the horses brains out, that he will cast his rider. Also fighting near hand they use many divers kinds of pinniards, and weapons, as straight, and broad, two edged, crooked, and hooked. The coverings of the horses are steel or Iron corselets, or leather, steeped in quick-lime, and fenced with iron wire to keep off the cut of a sword. And being so provided they do more providently raise many Armies if need be not far distant one from the other, that one may relieve the other when the enemy falls on: and they do their best to inclose the enemy, as in an whirlwind, that they may not be hemmed about with his subtilty, or long Stratagems. And to do this the better, they are directed by some signs from their Scouts and Trumpeters.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Tyrannical severity and exaction of their Governours.*

**I**N the Northern Kingdoms as there are many mighty provinces; so to govern them, there are set by their Kings, Governours that are of divers Nations and Languages; as beams sent from the Sun, that, in all the Country; Equity and Justice may be preserved, and all the people may live in security, yet that this felicity of government proceeding from equity may not last long, by the Counsels of malignant men elsewhere in the Kingdom, such presidents are set, that being blind with covetousness and malice, do torture the innocent, exalt the wicked, perverting all laws, and in a short time bring the whole Kingdom into ruine, themselves into calamity, the King into scorn and infamy, misery and exile. But that we may have an example, amongst the rest of those bloody and covetous Rulers that *Ericus* King of *Sweden* who came from the Dukes of *Pomerania*, &c. preferred, to rend out the bowels of *Sweden*; There was one Dane *Jussell Erickson*: he being confiscated over the Country of the *Dalacarb*, was so cruel to them all, that it was thought that all the souls of all malignant Tyrants that ever were before him, were met in this one desperate villain. *Cicero* reports that cruel *Verres*, by causing smoke to rise out of rotten wood, destroyed one innocent man; but he killed of the Inhabitants of *Dalacarb* a vast number of innocent men hanging them in the smoke, though they could have freed themselves from him by force if they would have rebelled, therefore least he should seem a hang-man not ingenious enough to find out new kinds of torments, he was not ashamed to put the wives of the men so cruelly murdered to draw ploughs instead of Oxen: and it was his chief delight to see and hear them in so great straits to call their dead Children away, and then to put in to the plough again, untill they fell down dead or half-dead. Here might be layd down more horrible acts of that Danish Tyranny, that then were not committed by him alone, but by all the King's Governours: let it suffice to say that they



they brought upon themselves by these practices their utmost ruine, and banishment upon their most wicked King. For by the Fury of the Pealants they were most cruelly slain; when they were more ready to plunder than to fight. But King *Ericus* of *Pomerane*, being forsaken by the Danes, whose counsell he used to the ruine of himself and many more, by the urgency of a Potent man called *Engilbert*, who was guarded with a 100000 of the Inhabitants, that were provoked to the war, betook himself to a little Island in *Gothland* as a runnagate in his miserable old age.

## CHAP. XIII.

Again of the same most wicked Rulers.

**T**Hough in the former Chapter the whole Country seems to be purged of cruell Governours, yet the damnable remainder of them have persevered by the same fraud and art, by their Complices and Schollers as it were *Venome*, who the more in the obsequiousness of their minds, they could brag of their loyalty to their Prince; by so much they supposed they should be preferred before others in the Kings secrets and offices; nor were they deceived in their opinions. For whereas first they did profess themselves suplicants and humble, as experienced in what belongs to free-men, chiefly in the exacting of Tributes and Fines, they were presently made president, without any further deserts, over the simple people: and by the Cooperation of the Tyranny of such Governours, the most mighty King of the *Goths*, *Swedes*, and *Norway* men, *Charles*, who succeeded the foresaid *Ericus*, was forced to endure a Rebellion, of his most faithfull people, and at last to be exiled. For when the King himself, for the vast wickedness of his Rulers and their sacrileges, was besieged by a most wicked seditious blocking him up in his own Court by the people, and staid for help in vain from his Rulers, who freely wandered up & down his Kingdom, he was doubtful what to do in so great perplexity for a more safe Remedy; and he sent again secret messengers to the foresaid Rulers, commanding them upon their honour and fidelity, and oath they had taken, to come and help him in his calamity, but it was in vain, for they had learned nothing else, than to domineer proudly over humble men, to wrack the Inhabitants for monies, to wrong the miserable; and punish the guiltlesse. Then the King being in straight necessity, foreseeing that his safest way was to fly, he commanded some Ships to be presently made ready in the most horrid cold in *January*, and he put infinite Wealth into them. And when now the Anchors onely were to be weighed, one of the Governours asked the King whether he had forgotten any thing on Land: when the King heard this, he sighed and said, Truly, faith he, I neglected many years since to hang thee and such like on a Gallows, for had I done that, I might now be at quiet in a peaceable common-wealth; and so hoisting sail he came to *Dantzick* in *Prussia* by a more welcome than pleasant voyage and was most courteously received by King *Cassimer*, King of *Poland*, untill, seven years being past, he was received into his former dignity, and power, being most dear to all, who was so lately hated by all. For he set Governours over them, who professed vertue before vice, justice before wrongs, honesty before profit. But King *Christiernus* King of *Denmark*, the second of that name, suffered in the Northern Kingdoms for the cruelty of the cruell Rulers, no man can be ignorant that Reads his History.

But amongst the rest, he had one bloody Governour called *Nicolas Halsfe*, whose only delight it was by going before this cruell King, to raise high Gallows, that he might hang the unhappy subjects upon them, unless they redeemed their lives with a certain summe of Gold and Silver: saying that long Theeves must have high Gibbets. Nor did this cryer misse a just end; for being condemned by the King for the much money he had extorted from the people, he

was

was hanged on the same Gallows he had made for others, yet the King got nere the most security from the furious people, but he was forced to fly every moment. But of this King *Christiernus* and his Actions, I shall write something underneath, that I know to be true, because I saw those horrid things and was present at them.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of the causes of perpetuall discord, that the Swedes or Sweets, and the Goths, have against the Danes.

**W**HY the Goths and Swedes are so violent both in minds and Arms against the Danes, the most diligent Danish Historian in 16. Books here and there, unto extream horror, affords us a most plain reason. For he every where speaks of the violent and cruell Government of his Nation over the subjects, and their false friendship toward their neighbours, and both of these against all their confederates; that every prudent understanding man hath just cause to beware, how safe he can be in their security, or natural bond, or any other sworn confederacy. For he affirms in the first book, that King *Lotharius* said that it was honesty to spoil every Noble man of his life and goods, and to empty the Country of good Citizens. In his 2. Book, that King *Helgo* was so prone to *Venery*, that it was a question whether he were the greater Tyrant or Adulterer, who ravished the Virgin *Thora*, which afterwards invented such a detestable wickedness, that *Saxo* exclaims much against her. In his 3d. Book he saith, that *Torgo* laid snares for his brother and slew him, and lying with his wife added incest to parricide: and *Saxo* himself testifies how he covered that wickedness with so great simulation of good will, and coloured his fratricide with the name of piety. That the woman he ravished was full of all mildness, hurting no man, and indeed he induced the woman to this, that she affirmed that her husband was a Traitor to the King, and killed himself. Nor was this persuasion lost, whilst Princes will believe lies, where oftentimes Scoffers are in grace and backbiters are honoured. In the 4th. Book, the last leaf, *Saxo* testifies, that his Country men the Danes, hold it no fault or ill way to ly and to deceive, as the fashion is amongst the *Parthians*. In the 5th. Book 2. leaf is shewed what filthy manners and foul wicked violences and adulteries the Warriors are addicted to. Indeed all the world and all barbarians abhor it. In the 6th. Book, the cruelty of the Danes so grew, upon the Saxons after that their Champion was slain, that they forced them to pay for a tax yearly the fore finger of every mans hand, in token of their slavery, untill such time as one *Sueringus* moved with the affection of the Citizens, burnt up both himself and the King, under the pretence of a banquet. At the beginning of the 7th. Book, *Fritho* commands his own brother to be slain by one of his servants, secretly; and that the wickedness might not be discovered by him that was guilty of it, he caused the same murderer to be slain privately; but at last he was burnt up, and suffered for his parricide by the sons of his slain brother, who were kept close and bred up as whelps.

CHAP.

## CAAP. XV.

## Of the same causes.

Amongst the rest, *Saxo* very largely prosecutes the monstrous cruelty of King *Jarmericus*, which was fiercely continued from his Childhood, unto his old age; which as it exceeds all rage of Beasts, so cannot it be read or heard of by any sensible man, but with great horror. For by unheard of Tyranny, he often killed with exquisite torments afflicted men. For, by high ingratitude, he slew their King and Queen with fire privately, by whom he was taken captive in war, and set at liberty, and taken into the number of their familiar friends, and made the chief of them, and exalted. Then, when he took forty *Germans*, he joyed so many Wolves to them, and strangled them; yet this would not satisfy his bloody mind. For he destroyed their Nobility, thrusting Thongs through their Legs, and then he bound them to the hoofs of huge Bulls; & set Dogs to tear them, and drew them into the Mud and Bogs, a most miserable spectacle. Lastly, the Earls, Dukes, Princes of *Germany* that he took Captives, thrusting cords through their legs, he tied to horses to pull them in sundry; yet he could not stay in this highest cruelty. For he gave his own Queen, the Daughter of the King of the *Huns*, though she were most innocent and chaste, fast bound to the Earth, to be trod down by horses, and a whole Troop of Cartel trod her to death, and tore her in pieces. Also he took his Nephews, his own Sisters Sons, by hand, and strangled them. And the Nobility that were their Tutors, he used in the same manner, inviting them to a Banquet. Moreover, in the same Book there is to be seen the unpeackable cruelty of one *Hagno*, a Dane, that it may well fright all men, to think themselves to be safe, either with any Victories or accords made with that Nation. In the ninth book at the beginning, the same Author observes, that the publick piety was torn with the private fury of the King; and 'alter many things, that King *Harald* from a glorious Saint became a foul Apostate, and fell from it. And in the Tenth Book, that the *Danes* winning *Sembia*, killing the men, compelled the women to marry them, and divorcing them from their Wives, being more desirous of Strangers, divided the Victory with the Enemy, by marrying the women. Lastly, that King *Harald* bound men's necks in the yokes of Oxen, and at length that they *D. Olaus*, King of *Norway*, by murderers corrupted with money; and last of all, by the hand of *Blaccho*, a Traitor, they slew *S. Canutus*. In the XI. that King *Sweno* was found to have forsaken the true Religion, rather than an incestuous Bride. In the XII. that the *Danes* might destroy the captive *Germans*, with a more violent death, they bound their hands behind them, and fastened them upon stakes: then they opened their Bellies with their Knives, taking out the first part of their naked guts; they opened the felt with stakes: nor did they leave off torturing them, till they had drawn all the guts out of their Bellies, and made them give up the Ghost: Which spectacle, as it was sad to behold; so was it very profitable for us: for it not only brought the guilty to punishment, but it forewarned others, that they should avoid the like cause of torment. Wherefore it was no less an admonition to those that saw it; than it was a punishment to those that endured it. But in the rest of his Books, because very many horrible things are spoken of amongst a few that are good, I rather leave them to the free choice of the Reader, if need be, to find them there, than for me to be tedious in setting them down; thinking it a sufficient and lawful cause why the *Swedes* and *Goths*, and other Nations, cannot be secure in the society of that people; To whom, for the Reasons aforesaid, (to use *Saxo* his words) whoever shall shew humanity and courtesie, doth a good turn to ungrateful people.

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the same causes, out of the 24. Book of the History of Gothland, of Johannes Magnus, the Author's Brother.

In the year of Christ, 1512. there fell out a most pernicious discord betwixt *Steno*, and *Gustavus*, the Son of *Ericus Trolle*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, whereby not only they two, but the whole Country came to utter ruine. They were both young, and both born of most noble blood, both high spirits. But *Steno* seemed more just and modest in his cause, who said he would obey the Ecclesiastical law, and stand to the arbitration of good men; and he caused *Gustavus* to be sufficiently admonished, as well by *Leo* the Tenth, as by the Bishops of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, that he should not trouble or take away the quiet of his Country. But the Arch-Bishop was of a stouter mind, than to be perwaded any way to agree with *Steno*, who had secluded his Father *Ericus* from so large a principality, and shewed that he put his greatest hopes in *Christiernus*, the Danish King. Then *Steno* understanding that the Arch-bishop would by no means be called off, nor perwaded to forsake his implacable hatred, he raised an Army of Souldiers, and besieged him, shut up in the Castle *Almeritech*, and he put to flight the Army of the King of *Denmark* that came to raise the siege. Then blocking him up again, and when he waited to no purpose for relief from the King of *Denmark*, he forced him to yield; and pulling down the Castle to the ground, he shut him up in a Monastery at *Aros*, (called *Infulsen*) that being done, he had his cause opened before the Popes Legate, *Johannes Arimbouldus*, in the Parliament at *Arbogum*, and he was by the intercession of the Legate, and the Senate of the Kingdom, received into grace with *Steno*, upon this condition, that henceforth he should not intrude into the Arch-bishoprick of *Upsal*, but should live on his Patrimony, studying to be quiet, and maintain peace. For he shut up his Father *Ericus*, and some other Lords of the Danish Faction in prison: Then going progress about the Kingdom, he was received with the general love of all the Inhabitants, and he bound himself to them, and them to him, by an Oath. For he was gracious in the sight of all his subjects, and exceeding popular, because another time he fell down on his knees to his Father *Swanton*, who oppressed the people with Tributes, and he obtained a relaxation of them. Wherefore, being now chosen Prince, he found that not only Tributes were ready to be paid by his loving Subjects; but that they were willing also to hazard their lives for him in a thousand dangers of death; wherefore being assisted with so many people, he grew so potent, that he could oppose the Forces of many Kings and Princes; especially if he had had as much prudence in his daily Counsellors, joyned with his power. But there were in his Cabinet-Council men, that spake for flattery, and nothing for the publick good, because they were not prudent enough, nor would they admit men that were more prudent into the Kings Council, but they slandered them by Detractions, Whiperings, and false Accusations, to the young Prince: whence it came shortly to passe, that by their malignant impudence, and impudent Malignity, many of the best and most powerful men left him, and expected a change: Which when *Christiernus* the Danish King understood, he thought a fit time was come to enlarge the narrow Straights of *Denmark*; and that he might by force subdue the spacious Kingdoms of *Gothland*, and *Svedland*: Wherefore drawing out a great and potent Army of *Saxons*, *Frises*, *Westphalians*, *Scots*, *Danes*, *French*, he besieged *Stockholm* the court of *Sweden*, with a powerful hand. But *Steno* being fortified before with the love and service of so many people, he could not be conquered by the Dane, whose name was hateful amongst the *Swedes*.

Alto *Christiernus* in that siege wherein he seemed to beleague *Steno*, was so hardly besieged himself with hunger and want of provision, that the greatest part of his Army was like to perish for hunger, whereupon calling off his forces from the siege, he provides to return with his Navy into *Denmark*. But when he was ready to sail, and to begone, a vehement contrary wind stoppe him: which standing in that point for four whole months forcibly, it drove *Christiernus* to intolerable inconveniences. For to return to land, *Steno* opposing him, he could not; nor yet sail into *Denmark*, for the wind that was against him. Then *Steno* a Prince of a generous and lofty mind, finding his enemies necessity, used a most rare office of humanity toward him, and most freely gave him as much provision as might serve his whole Army. *Christiernus* resenting this benefit, sent messengers to *Steno*, saying that he desired a private conference with him concerning the publick peace. It lacked but little, but that *Steno* perfwaded by the Danish fraud had come to his fleet; but he was called back by the Counsell of some that were faithfull to him, and he sent *Hermingus Gaddu*, and the most Noble youth *Gustavus Erickson*, to treat with him for a peace or a truce to be made on both sides: these, he presently hoisting sail, carried into *Denmark* with him. And this was the end of that war that was waged by *Christiernus* in the year 1518, against *Steno* and the City *Stockholm*. But he, the year following, leaved a greater Army than ever he did before and marched over the Ice into *Sweden*, whom *Steno*, more valiantly than prudently, fought with, on the Ice in the Country of the *Vestrogothi*, and playing his first part in the Army most courageously, was wounded with a shot of a Gun in his thigh, and presently put into a Chariot he was carried to *Stockholme*, and when he was almost come thither, he died on the frozen Lake *Meler*; he was worthy indeed to have lived longer, and he had done so, had he but removed imprudent and ill counsellours from him. In the interim the reliſt of *Steno*, *Christina*, perfwaded by a few Lords that took her part, by speciall messenger, and a promise of a free Stipend, to revenge her husbands death, did in vain desire auxiliary forces from *Sigismund* the first, King of *Poland*. When therefore *Steno* was dead, the numerous Army of the *Swedes*, being ruled by no body was disperſed; and there was an occasion offered to those Lords that favoured the Danish King, to call him presently into *Sweden*, and to Crown him at *Stockholme*. But when he considered that he was called in to be King by the least part of the Lords, and that thereupon his Coronation might be made void; when the rest were referred to their Liberty, he caught many Senators and Lords of the Kingdome, the same day he was crowned, that is on the Sunday after the *Oftaves* of all Saints, Anno 1520, whom he invited to a feast, and who supposed they were secure upon the Kings word, and caused them to be slain too severely, which cruelty since it seems now to be scattered into all history, I will no longer stay in relating this Tragedy which brought no lesse mischief to the *Danes* and their King, than it did to the Common-wealth of *Sweden*. For the King amongst so many Lords caused the greatest part to be slain, by whom he might have been long preserved in a most ample principality from which he was, presently and the same month he came, excluded, and returned into his own Country of *Denmark*: being made a singular example to all Kings and Princes, who desire to rule with more severity than clemency.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the severity of King Christiernus the second.

*Christiernus* the second, King of *Denmark*, at sundry times, and divets wayes, obtaining passage into the foresaid Kingdomes, by some Lords of the Danish faction, in the Kingdomes of *Swethland* and *Gothland*, that were kindred and of the Danish blood (amongst whom was that most unhappy man *Gustavus Trolle*, Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*) he became to cruell and severe, that taking no respect to his oath, or Letters sealed, or of the sacrament of the Lords body, that was to be trembled at, or of any pity to commiserate any man, he one day commanded, namely November the 8. 1520, the Princes of divers orders, the Lords and Counſults and Citizens, to the number of 94, to be beheaded, most wickedly, to which he was egged on by the ill counsell of wicked men: this I saw and trembled at it; and he commanded that their dead bodies should remain unburied 3, dayes, before the City house of the City *Stockholme*, untill they were carried forth of the City to be burnt. Truly it was a miserable sight, that questionlesse would afterwards trouble *Christiernus* himself who was vexed with a thousand miseries; that at the instigation of his cruell Councell, he should barbarously murder those, and after an unſual cruelty, whom he had passed his word to, and friendly invited to a feast as Guests of the Kings Table: For he fastned to the Gallows one *Adagnus* who was one of *Johannes* his Peers, and a most valiant defendand of his Country; who was fastned to a plank on the ground, and first his privities, then his heart was cut out, and they were cast into his fathers face, with many insulting opprobrious words given to him, that he might shew the greater rage and perpetuall horror in doing it. After that, in the night of the same day, the most unhappy widows, whose husbands were slain with the sword, and lay for the dogs to eat in the publick Market place, being spoild of their moneys and all their goods by the unſatiable Captains of the *Danes*, did lament without remedy. Indeed those officers were most filthy and most cruell, who plundered chiefly the innocent, laying aside all modesty and honesty, onely with the terror of the Kings name, or cruelty that they would put them to. Nor was the condition of Orphans and Pupils better, who were tormented in their parents and spoild of all their fortunes. A long and terrible History should be writ by me, who saw all this lamentable practise, if I would relate every part of this calamity, namely how all things both divine and humane were in a confusion. There was no regard to promise, no respect of Religion, all things were done with a sacrilegious rashnesse. Death was every where, and there was no place to escape it: and to live amongst drawn swords and cruell men was impossible. The City was kept by a most vigilant Guard, that none might break forth of that common prison for all the Citizens, to relate to the Inhabitants of the Kingdome, the order of this cruell dealing; for had the multitude of the people that was at liberty perceived it, they had left none of this wickednesse unrevealed.

## CHAP. XVIII.

## More of the cruelty of the same King.

Which when the King observed, reposing all his safety in flight, after a few dayes he was forced to return from thence to his own Country of *Denmark*: in which journey he caused many to be broken upon wheels, and hanged, and put to other cruell deaths, quartering them. Especially amongst the *Ostrogothi* in *Vassen*, the Land of *Brigit*. Lastly in the Monastery at *Nydalme*, called so from the new dale: where though he were most humanely entertained,

yet on the day of the blessed Virgin's purification, he commanded the Abbot with 7. Monks, when they had ended the sacrifice of the Altar, to have their hands bound behind them, and to be cast into a swift River and drown'd: and when the Abbot who was of a strong nature, broke the cords and swam to Land, the Kings guard beat out his brains. So, little children of a noble family of the *Rjöbbingi of Vestrogothia*, whom a barbarous enemy is wont to pardon, were killed with the sword in his sight: whereupon 30000 armed men being collected under him, he being guilty in himself, he returned into *Denmark* through desarts and unpassable places almost, rather by night than by day, where he nor long stayed secure, but was in the same fear. For fame was so swift that it was every where reported what he had done before he came; especially amongst the Emperors subjects in *Hollande & Braban*, and other Nations: where he was lately in glory and high honour, before he had committed such an inhumane laughter upon so many innocent Children.

Let *Saxo* the Danish Historian speak in his 12. Book, in all his circumspection, as we alleadged before in the 37. Chapter, whether this sad spectacle, was any profit to the *Danish*, whether by inflicting cruell torment and tortures; or by clemency, modesty, equity, and other vertues, Kingdoms are to be won, and preferred: Truly he will confesse by experience that the Danish severity spoken of in his former books, and here again upon this fact of *Christiernus*, gain'd more Infamy, horror, cruelty, and despite to the Kingdom and the Kings thereof, than if they had been just, and humane: unlesse perhaps they would glory in malice, when using fraud they think themselves to be potent in wickedness, that they may use deceit, as cutpurses do, but God forbid. For who can securely hold commerce and friendship with such men? who (as *Saxo* affirms, in his, *l. 4. c. ult.*) hold it no fault nor foul matter roily and to deceive. Let therefore their words be, It is, it is; Nor, nor; and all will believe them. Nor let good men think that I have said what I have said, for hate or malice against the Danish Nation, and their former actions, or against the severity of King *Christiernus*, but I have purposely left out far more terrible things, which cannot be read without groans and horrors, much lesse be set down in Books. But the Danish nobility, after they had driven out the said King *Christiernus*, sent out 44 Articles into the City and all the world, to be read publickly to excuse themselves, wherefore they revolted from that King. So also the Senayours of *Sweatland* and *Gothland* and *Norway*, both before and after at sundry times excused themselves, in Books and Letters. But why I do write more bitterly than others, yet more truly and sparingly, he is bold to testify, because with my great danger and forrow, I was present and beheld all these Tragedies grieving to see the miseries of my Nation, which now seem to be increased a thousand times, and without remedy, made worse by the wicked constitutions of Laws, and oppressions of the Subjects.

### *The End of the Eighth Book.*

Olaus

## Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *UPSALA*:

O F

Field-Fights.

### *An Epitome of the Ninth Book.*

## CHAP. I.

### *Of turning-Swords in Wheels.*

THE old *Goths* are known to have oppoled in the way Engines like to Wheels, and turning-Swords, to break the Orders of Horse and Foot, when they were to make a sudden Onset or Retreat; and at this day, though not so usually as they were wont, where place requires it, they diligently oppole them: Now the maner of this Engine may be taken thus. There seems at first three Wheels, two higher, that turn about an Axeltree, and there is a third in the middle of these, which is united to one of them by way of commisure; and this necessarily cauleth a two-edged Sword, fastned to the former Pole, to move swiftly; which so turning-Sword, being raised up on the side, by those that are cunning movers of it, and being brought near, doth not a little rend and break the Enemies Ranks: yet this is wont to be well looked to, that the Spokes of the Wheels may be covered with Shingles of plain Boards, lest Spears being cast in between them by the Enemy, they should be stoppt from moving. Also the higher and nimbler the Wheels are, the more wide doth the Sword cut. And there are poles or pieces of wood to guide the sword, that are above three or four foot long, longer then any Souldiers Lance, that the Drivers of it may be the more safe from the assaults of Horsemen; and these are fenced behind with Troops of Bow-men. But the Axeltrees of these Wheels, that they

may run the Twister, are greased with Sea-Calves grease, that is well purified at the fire, and there is plenty of this amongst the *Northern* Merchants: whence being provided by the diligence of Factors, it is carried in huge Vessels in a vast quantity, both to the Upper and Lower *Germany* to make profit by. With this Engine the force of the Enemy is broken oftentimes or troubled, as a huge piece of Wood is cleit with a strong and sharp Wedge.

## CHAP. II.

## Of their Chariots with Hooks.

**A**fter this fashion, of old time, the chief Souldiers of *Sweden* and *Gothland* Armed Chariots with Hooks and Gramp-Irons, amongst their chief Warlike Engines; especially in their more fierce fights, against the most strong Armies of the *Germans*, *Danes*, *Russes*, namely so, that having searched by what way the Enemy would enter, they bound their empty Chariots, with their Wheels well smeared, so firm Beams, in the shelving sides of the Mountains, and filling them with stones, they would with cords make them little hanging bridges, covering them all over with green leaves or boughs, until they had drawn the Enemies by this dangerous passage, into these snares, by seeming to run away from them; and so they would let loose their Chariots, which with swift running, would either break their Ranks, by rending them, or would disperse their bodies. This being done, they that before seemed to fly, and the other Troops they had, Horse or Foot, were wont to run in a body upon the dispersed, or resisting Enemy: also they ever used those Chariots, as movable Forts, when need was in all other fights, always observing that moderation inviolably, that these Chariot-drivers had twice as much of the spoil given them, and their stipend double to the hostlemen; and likewise to them, who running amongst the Enemy, put him into straight, and unpassable places, with these Chariots that had long Poles on the sides with Iron Crooks before, and those sharp pointed.

## CHAP. III.

## Of Brazen Horses that vomited out Fire.

**N**Or must I omit in this place what *Saxe* mentions, *L. 9.* concerning the craft of King *Regnerus*, and his stratagems; For he saith, that in *Hellespont*, the King *Dion* being slain, after many casualties of War, that *Regnerus* fought many cruel fights, and was slain by his two Sons, namely *Dion* and *Daxos*: For these Sons who formerly married the Daughters of King *Ruthenus*, obtaining forces from their Father in Law, went boldly to revenge themselves on their Father. And when *Regnerus* saw their huge Army, he despaired of Forces, and therefore he commanded that they should with all their might drive Brazen Horses that would spit fire, laid upon turning wheels, and carried about with ventail Chariots, into the thickest body of the Enemies: And this prevailed so far so dissolve the Enemies forces, that there seemed more hopes of Victory in the Engine, than in the Souldier; for the huge weight of it over-whelmed what ever it went against.

## CHAP. IV.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Guns of the Northern People.

**T**here are Guns in most Cities of *Sweden* and *Gothland* so great, that a Wooden Vessel, greater than a Roman Barrel for breadth and length, with an Iron Bolter, and pieces of Iron like a mans fist, of six hundred pound weight and more, filled with Powder, and lighted with fire, with a most vehement force, as a Tempestuous Whirlwind, or Rain, is shot out; and nothing can stand against the violence of it: and also this is used in all fights on Land, or upon the Ice, so often as there is need of it. Also there are mean and very long great Guns, that will shoot forth balls of Earth. Also there are Petars that will shoot very high to fall amongst the Enemy: And the more formidable is this fight, when by such Guns (that are greater and larger than others) nor at one short or great noise, but with many crackers one after another, they are shot unto the places to be battered, and with the violent blow of them, the dust flies out of the walls, or places battered, as Clouds of Smoke.

## CHAP. V.

## Of Triangular Guns.

**O**f these Triangular Guns, there was formerly amongst the *Swedes* and *Goths* more use then there is now a days: For by this three-fold Engine, a mighty Army, by renewing the forces, and other employing them, might be dispersed, where the Wheels running (swiftly against them, any force of horses that came close together, might be stoped with a small handful. But by the fraud and deceit of the Masters of the Ordinance, it sometimes falls out, that for Iron bullets they charge their guns onely with Towe or Paper, or else the Enemies coming on boldly, hinder the moving of the Wheels, by thrusting onely their Spears between the spokes.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Organ-Like Guns.

**A**lso the *Northern* people had amongst other Engines of War; especially when they were to fight with Horsemen, collateral Guns, bound together like Organs, or Organ-pipes, that they might discharge them all at once, or successively against their Enemies, and they could soon charge them with ball and powder upon every turn against the Enemy; which though they seemed in fair weather to make heavy Wars, and bravely to defend their own Camps: yet because the more frequent and bitter Wars, (as I shall say hereafter) are fought by the *Northern* people, in the terrible cold Winter, when the Snow is very thick, and then they cannot use their Canon; therefore are they seldom used in the fields, but more frequently in Castles, to defend the besieged.

## CHAP. 7.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the burning the Foundations of Castles.

IN plain and Champion-Grounds, where, by accord or choice of the Enemy, or by event of time and occasion, there is an opportunity to fight, the Inhabitants of the Countries, that they may assault the enemy the stronger, or for a time decline him with greater caution, use great Guns, with wheels, which are also called the Camps for the Cannon, whose waggons, no lesse than the standard-bearers, or rather Commanders, are armed, and the very horses have tanned Ox-leather on their Necks and Backs: wherefore four skillfull Cannoneers or more, are deputed for these Guns on both sides; and these use what art they have, the waggoner helping with his skill and valour, against the enemy, that being cut on the front or wing, he may not easily resist armed horse-men.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of burning the Foundations of Forts.

THE prints of the Old ruins in the Northern Kingdoms do shew clearly enough, how many most strong places, built upon Rocks, and inaccessible places were blown up by artificial flames raised underground by mines, as if they had been rent and torn with thunder. For when many such forts were found made to pillage and rob with, especially on the frontiers of provinces, by common arms, and the unanimous consent of the Nation, and by the decree of the Judge, the Inhabitants were called together, and they fell upon them, and did by wonderfull arts demolish them, by this means: for they entered into the most ruinous places of the mountains, and they broke them, with hammers, axes, wedges, and other Instruments that are to hew stones and break down walls, with a strong hand, or were it a naturall hollow cave, by means of such Tools they would by degrees cut the tops of it on that side, where the foundation was naked of defence, setting up posts in order, upon which the weight of the walls might be born up, that the whole frame might not presently fall down and be dissolved. But, that the noise of the stones falling might not be heard, on the other side of the fort armed men made as great noise and shooting either faintly or seriously leaping upon it to assault it. But when the wall where it was stretched over the cave, was made all hanging, that it rested only on the props of wood, they gathered dry fuel every where, and cast it into the fire, and presently the posts yielded to the weight that lay upon them; and all that part of the fort that was underpropt with wood, sink into the hollow cave, and the turrets over against it, and forts, were soon broken off from the places where they joyned, and fell down; and all the doors and gates were fast united, being shaken down with the like ruine.

## CHAP. IX.

## Of the cruelty of flatterers, Traitors, and strangers, often committed most fearfully in the Kingly City Stockholm.

STOCKHOLM is the most famous City for merchandise of all the Kingdoms of Sweden, and of all the North, where Citizens were wont to be made free of all Countries and Nations, but chiefly out of the Netherlands: and amongst those oftentimes they are mingled, who either for debt, or some foul crimes dare not stay in their own Country: these as they grow rich use oftentimes to discover their Natures, which poverty kept close, and to work the utmost mischief

mischief to a Country where they were received in a very hospitable way; especially when they have such a King to rule them that lets them do what they list. Such were the Germans found to be in the City *Stockholm* in the days of King *Albertus*; who conspiring secretly being 170. in number, called themselves the hooded bretheren: and afterwards their number increased to above 1500. Their chief aime was by casting scorns and reproaches upon the native *Swedes* to provoke them to quarrels and diffentions, that at length being brought before the King they might deprive them of life or fortunes, or both; as afterwards it fell out. For, that they might rend them in peices most cruelly with most exquisite torments, they made laws of wood, wherewith they tormented the chieft of them to unto death, that a man would rather lament the horribleness of so cruell a deed, than write of it. At last, the rest of the Citizens of *Sweden*, at midnight being carried forth alive from the King's Castle, where they were kept Captives, in Ships to the next Island that was a bow-shoot from thence called *Keplinge*, were shut up in a certain house, with their fingers riveted fast in holes in the wall, by knocking in of wedges, and were burnt with fire cast upon them, they were more than we can affirm them to have been: for as sheep tied together many were thrown in to be burnt. Of this City, *Albertus Cramzins* speaks thus. *Stockholm* the noted Mart Town of *Sweden*, suffered a great mischief; for, being thunder stricken from heaven, it was almost all burnt down. There died 1600. men, but that is more miserable which follows; women and maids numberlesse carried their goods and children into the ships, but the preise was so great of those that sought to run from the fire, that in a moment they were all drown'd.

## CHAP. X.

## Of the Original and Situation of this Kingly City.

THIS chief City of the Swedes and Kingly place *Stockholm*, was built from the foundation, by a most illustrious and famous man who was the King's Tutor, whose name was *Roger Ierl*, and he fortified it with walls and other buildings in so fit necessary and invincible a place, that it is supposed that he could never have done any thing more commodiously. For it is a place that is on all sides fortified with Torrents (& was formerly only for Fishermen's use) and is so placed between fresh and salt water, that it may be called the Port of all *Sweden*. For formerly the *Estons*, *Muscovites*, *Russians*, *Tarteshi*, did constantly pass through the mouth thereof, and plundred the *Swedes* privately, who suspected no hostility: and destroying great multitudes of men, they freely, and unpunished, loaded with great booties, returned to their own Countries. In which incursion they slew *John* the second Arch-Bishop of *Upsal*, in his own mansion house *Alme-Steck* and some other Noble men. But when this *Stockholm* was built, all and every man enjoyed a long peace, and the enemies were in continuall fear, who finding such a strong Garrison raised for the time to come against all enemies, forbore to plunder *Sweden* any farther. If any man shall presume to beleaguer this *Stockholm* and think to take it, he can never win it; though he should continue resolute in the siege thereof every way. For it is situate in the most deep waters, and most swift Rivers having only two Gates on the south and North parts with long bridges between them, which Gates and Bridges cost the Kings of *Denmark* more money in a siege that came to nothing, than ten the greatest Cities of his Kingdom. Nor can it be besieged, but by 3 most potent Armies, divided into Islands that are parted by firm land and water, yet those Armies can never be secure from bow-men that will put them into fear. Let him try that will, and he shall find it worle.



## CHAP. XI.

Of the Situation of the Mountain Bruncaberg, beyond the Kingly City Holm, and of the Battels fought in it.

**W**ithout this Kingly City toward the North, there is a high mountain or hill of Sand; upon the top whereof, and the oblique sides, there have been fought many cruell battails of Princes, Nobles, Citizens, Country people, both in former and latter ages, as well by imbred as forraign enemies, concerning which because my most dear brother *D. Johannes* Arch-Bishop of *Upsal* hath written many things most true; and namely in his Gothic and Swedish Histories, I need not tire the Reader to repeat them; yet with this exception, that *Christiernus* King of *Denmark* the first of that name, flying from this mountain the *Dalacarli* following him in almost sharp battel, unto the tops of his warlick fleet, lost his four upper teeth by the blow of a Musket, as the age next following, boasted of it in songs and comorations. Besides, *Christiernus* the 2d, had much a do to carry off his army that was sick and hungry, from this Mountain by water to his Navy that rode behind the Mountaines on the South side of this *Holm*. Yet not there could he refresh his hungry army but by false covenants, that he offered to the Prince of the City and Kingdome, and Inhabitants, and so had received necessary food and provision, by the foolishly perswaded Citizens, for his Army, and from the King's own Table, by a most liberrall donation. But how he gave satisfaction for his Kingly honour, which must defend his reputation to posterity, I leave it as it was in part written by others, long before this relation. Namely that breaking his faith he carried six of the most noble pledges of the Kingdome against their wills into *Denmark* with him. Also this mountain hath got its name from one *Bruncho* in respect of the event, who was a traitor to the Kingdome; and a most filthy adulterer. There was also formerly in this Mountain a Cave under ground, where sometimes there lived *Hermits*, who gave warning for the safety of those that should depart out of that City, untill such time as wars came (wherewith that City is often afflicted) then they departed to some other place, and that place was turned to a den of Theeves, and it being again freed of them, it lies filled up with earth, that it may serve for no murderer, nor any that meditate on wicked devices.

## CHAP. XII.

Of feeding their cattle in the houses of the besieged.

**M**oreover it falls out, that Cities besieged are so close straitned by Land and Sea, with such obdurate Souldiers, that they will suffer nothing to be brought in to solace or preserve the besieged, but all things are taken away by the armed men, in the greatest danger, from the enemies themselves, and are carried forth; and oftimes upon that occasion the fight is made so fiercely, that for taking away a few cattle, many thousand Souldiers lose their lives: and whilst they strive deadly for the Cattle, the fields are filld with the dead bodies of the slain men. Nor are the besieged repressed with that blood and fury. For the first years they strive by force, as when the besieged are weakened with continuall slaughters, they contend by cunning, slights, and Snares, to take from the besiegers their provision, especially cattle, and what they can catch they hide in the grassy paths of their houles to be fed. But there is great observation to be made, concerning the customes of the *Goths*, how they do very handiomey feed their cattle within doors.

For

For they build high and large stone houles, and of Wood also, which they cover with Rafters of Fir-Trees, and Bark of Birch-Trees, by exquisite industry, laying upon them square Turfs of grass, cut out of the fields; and this they tatten the better, by trowing it with Barley or Oats; and in these houles they live like green fields, and serve for the same use. But that the grafs of their houles may not wither before it be gathered; they use to water their houles diligently: so necessity instructs these valiant men, that they will resist against the besiegers beyond the force of men, and will avoid them, and overcome all want, despising all adversity.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of supplying their want of water.

**F**rom this occasion, for want of fresh meat, and it may be a greater want of Water, here I shall shew how the *Northern* people being beleiged, amongst other remedies for necessity, take care to provide themselves with Water. For sometimes the beleiged are in such want of Spring or Pit-waters, (by reason of the Besiegers) that they must either yield, or fall desperately sick, or dye inevitably: Wherefore the wise Governours of Forts or Cities, hang Sails or Webs of Cloth, concavely bended, and stretched out very far in length from the tops of their houles, and they tatten them beneath Wedge-fashion, and so fit them to catch the Rain or Diew that fall from above. And it is to the purpose, because the Water they receive by the frequent meeting of the Snows, are so great that fall from the Mountains, when the Sun melts them, that they are sufficient for all men and beasts, for their use and necessity. Lastly, they that have Veins of the Salt Sea, or Springs, that come up under the Foundations of their Forts, they purify them, by often distilling them through Vessels full of Sand, and so they make fresh Water, and fit for all uses, and as good; onely by this simple Art, as the Senators of *Venice* not many years since, bought such an Art of distilling Water from a certain Alchymist, because they dwell in Salt-Waters, and amongst Sea-Weeds.

## CHAP. XIV.

How to supply want of Bread.

**W**hen the *Goths* and *Swedes* are to enter the Hostile Lands of the *Adoscones*, they often find them, by reason of the coming of a formidable Army, not onely to fly suddenly away to the Caves or Woods, and Rocks, but setting their houles on fire, to carry into these Desarts with them, all things necessary for mans use, leaving nothing that can be eaten by the Enemy that come. Upon which occasion, the provident Generals of Armies, after the manner of the old *Goths*, lett their great Army should fall with hunger, sooner then with the Sword, are wont to bind a good quantity of Wheat-Meal behind the saddles of the Horse-men, in sacks appointed for this use, with an Iron-plate; and presently, as need requires, they kindle a fire, and make Cakes upon these Plates, as if they were bakt in an Oven: yet they all use these Plates for Bucklers, (as they are made after that fashion) to defend their bodies, and so they most prudently seem to borrow two necessary conveniences from one thing, to serve them in the Wars. For they bake bread under the Ashes, made of this lump of Dough, and they wrap it in the thin bark and leaves of Poplar Trees, and cover it with hot Embers; and though this seems to be bale bread, yet it sooner takes off their greedy appetite, and is fitter for strong stomachs, than any other White or Brown-Bread.

R

They

They have also a third way easier than the former, whereby they make bread in plain Mountains that they often meet with : For they make huge fires in one or two or three places of the Mountain ( for they have wood enough there for nothing ) until that part be all over hot enough, and well purged, that they may soon bake a round or square Cake upon this Hearth. In the interim, they burn wood constantly upon other parts of that Mountain which are near, to bake more bread upon, and when they have purged this place, as they did the former, they make it most fit for this use ; and thus they will in a short time make many thousands of loaves : by the plenty whereof, a whole Army is kept from deadly Famine many days, and enters into the Enemies Country, and wastes and destroys the same every where with fire and sword, unless there be a Covenant made to hinder it ; and laden with huge spoils, they retreat, and can think it to be none or very small calamity they have suffered, which they see recompensed with so great enjoyments and abundance of wealth.

*The end of the Ninth Book.*

Olaus



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of *UPSALA* :

OF

Sea-Fights.

*The Epitome of the Tenth Book.*

CHAP. I.

*Of Fights in Lakes, and of Bridges  
broken down.*

**A**LL the North Country almost is Mountainous and Woody, and there are many places that are naturally fortified both by Waters and Rocks against the Incursions of Enemies ; so that against an Army of Horse or Foot, they will with a small Company keep themselves secure almost every where ; and many Lakes are so muddy and unpassable, and deep, that they will scarce freeze in the coldest Winter, that a Footman can safely pass lightly over them. *Rotabro* is such a place, amongst the rest, that are also deep enough : it is called so, as much as to say, the broken Bridge, it is two hours journey from *Stockholm*, the Kings City aforesaid ; from which City, when an Army in hostile manner presumes to march forth very far into these rich Countries to plunder, coming from the *Dacians* or *Germans*, presently they are forced to retreat to the place they came from, repelled, by the Forts and Arrows of the Inhabitants gathered together in the middle of the Woods ; or else by force they compel the Inhabitants to retire themselves into some other place that they can find : and so ( which seldom falls out ) they fly to this bridge in the Marshes, and stand unmoved in the greatest Conflict. For breaking of a most long wooden bridge, there being a great Bog on both sides, the Enemy can find no occasion to offer violence to Nature that is so strangely fortified. There have been many

most terrible Wars fought there often, in the times of divers Princes, as the Songs sung every where in Venice and Morher tongue at Feasts, with mirth and joy do testify; namely that by Art, Nature, Force and Experience of the old Soldiers, and industry and fidelity of the Commanders, they won the Victory, which was very great.

## CHAP. II.

## Of the form and use of the old Northern Ships.

The progress and end of wars in the Marshes in the Northern Kingdoms, hold this chance and change with a forraign Enemy; that when it falls out amiss, (as it oft hapneth, by reason of the ignorance of the places) the Commanders have a certain refuge through places unpassable, and Delarts, and Woods, a shorter way to their ships that are laid in some sure Harbour, and as at first they marched continually, as often as one challenged the other, or they both alike challenged one the other, perhaps for some small matter to fight a battell, as for ravishing of Maids, or to be ravished (as *Saxo*, the Danish Historiographer, mentions, that it hath been frequently done in the Northern Kingdoms between the most potent Princes, a most bloody War being fought by them), to they returned with disgrace, and great loss: therefore they made their ships turnerily, long or broad, as the Rivers were narrow or wide: as in the Ocean toward Norway, they are spacious; also in the Spanish Seas their ships are long and broad: but in the *Gothick* Seas, and of *Sweden*, that run by their shores, their ships are short and broad, especially in such as are for burden; and they must be so, by reason of the narrow Waters that have so many Turnings and Windings. Of old time every Province, even that was far from the Sea, kept their shipping in some safe Port, or near the shore, under some covering, and all their Tackling belonging to them, such as I have seen on the shore of *Norway*: And lastly, of *Swedenland*; which ships, when necessity came, were suddenly lent forth, well rigged and provided with Tackling, Arms, Provision, and Souldiers, as well as that Age would afford it, to make an Expedition by Water, in a great or small number by the Princes Command; yet they were all to distinguish by their Flags, Colours, and Names, that whatsoever Conflict they had with the Enemy, they were always governed by the Order of their Officers without any confusion: unless they were carried violently, and parted in the Sea unhappily by some impetuous Whirlwind, especially a Southern Wind; for that Wind is as deadly here, as an Easterly Wind is in *Hellespont*.

## CHAP. III.

## Of another form of Northern Ships.

Ommitting many kinds of ships, that agree almost in their fashion with the ships of any other Nation only differing by the names of the Country, I shall speak here alone of those, that by a more common name are demonstrated for a general knowledge: as are *Galleys*, *Hulks*, *Barks*, *Whorries*, *Ferry-Boats* for Horses, which are huge great, by reason of the multitudes of Horses that are to be transported from the North beyond Seas into *Germany*. Moreover there are ships of War, whereof there was one so great that was built for *Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, that it could carry forth a thousand armed Souldiers, and three hundred Mariners, that are excellent bouldiers, and there were huge great ships, besides very many appointed for Sea-fights. Moreover the same King, first brought in the use of two Oars, three and four Oars, about the year of Christ, 1550. in the *Gothick* and *Swedish* Seas, by means of skilful *Venetians*, that he hired with his liberal bounty, especially that he might the sooner conquer and subdue the *Muscovian* and *Esthonian* Pirates, that invaded his Country, and had often broken their

their Leagues, and now his *Fintlanders*, that are very skilful Carpenters, know how to make Gallies as strong and good, or better then they were, as I have seen some made with excellent skill amongst the *Venetians*, but they cannot make them so suddenly to be ready to sail for the War, as they can, who in the space of one moneth can make of the wood not yet framed 60 ships, or more, for to go to Sea, provided with Arms, Guns, and Victuals. Moreover they had Barks, Boats, Pinnaces, Gallies, Frigates, Ship-Boats, and the like. Moreover, Wherries are much used by the Northern people, because they are easily made hollow of great Fir-Trees and Oaks, that they will hold 20 or 30 men; those that are less, are used by Fisher-men.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the mutual slaughter of the Merchants, for the Harbours of Iceland.

There is a terrible spectacle of Factors, that fall foul one upon the other, either at home or abroad, and kill one the other for gain, or put all their Merchandise in danger to be lost, or to revenge their Kindred. They cannot look upon this with eyes open, and at Noon day, to consider what Robbing, and pillaging they are subject unto every where, unless they knew how to manage their weapons, and to fight to defend themselves. Amongst these are the chief, as it is supplied the *Bremers*, or the Cities of the *Vandals*, the *Rosforchians*, *Vismarians*, and *Lubeckers*. And lastly the Merchants of *England* and *Scotland* who so justly contend for the primacy and privilege of the *Iceland* Ports to ride in, as if they fought a fight at Sea, and so wound one the other for gain, that whether the one or the other gets the Victory, yet there is always ready one of the Officers of the Treasury, who knows how to correct them both sufficiently, both in their moneys and bodies, either by ordinary or extraordinary Exaction,

## CHAP. V.

## Of the punishment of the Rebellious Mariners.

As there are Laws and Orders appointed for all sorts and conditions of men, whereby men may live more honestly, justly, and warily: so in Sea matters, and rational businesses, Customs are made and observed strictly: of which kinds (though they be innumerable, I think fit, at least, to let you understand some of them that are the most general. He therefore that moves a Sedition, and sets upon the Captain or Master of the ship, or shall presume to assault him, or shall perniciously falsifie the Mariners Compa's, especially the Needle which they all steer by, or shall commit any such like horrid wickedness in the ship, for the most part, if his life be spared, he must put away his hand he wretch most commonly, which they fasten to the Mast of the ship, or some chief piece of wood in the ship, with a sword or knife and cut it in the middle: But he that is tumultuous, and injurious is tied with Ropes on one side of the ship, where he is plundged in, and he is drawn up under the back on the other side: and if there be need by reason of the water he rook in, that he may not be suffocated, he is laid on his back or belly. But some being well known by the foulness of their Crime, or for their Rebellion or Treason, especially in a fight at Sea, are cast into the Sea alive, least they should destroy the whole Fleet by their wicked devices. The rest for small faults easily obtain pardon, asking it at the Fore-Castle: or before they come into it, they are taken by their fellows, and wrestled thrice at the Sail-yard, or Mast, and endure that punishment, turned as though they beheld the Stars at Noon-day. These, and the like, and greater punishments, as need requires, are used often more strictly by the constitutions of the most ancient City *Fisbie*, in the Island of *Gothland*, that is by a perpetual right subject to the Dominion of the

the King of the Swedes and Goths. And though that City was formerly most potent and exceeding rich, and was humbled for a very small occasion, namely for breaking of one pane of glass of a window, nor worth a half penny: yet the Laws for Sea Affairs, and the decisions of all Controversies severally, far and wide, as far as *Hercules* his Pillars, and the utmost *Scythian* Sea, are fetcht from thence, and are observed, being given, that all things may be done in a due tranquillity, that may be fit and agreeing to peaceable Commerce.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the swimming of Horsemen.

Though it be no less unhappy than it is rash, for an armed Horseman or Footman, to venture himself to swim in his Armour: yet because the *Goths* would use all means to adorn Military business, they have left nothing unattempted that is fit for Military Exercise: Wherefore they were so cunning in the art and use of swimming, that oft-times in their Armour, riding on Horses, they would swim over great parts of Rivers, between their Enemies Armies, either to fight or fly. Nor was their Industry the less to use their Horses to the Custom of swimming, as *Cornelius Tacitus* affirms of the *Germans*, whose most noble practice it was, to teach their Horses to swim, and to take the Waters boldly on Horseback, when the Horses had skill to swim. Nor is *Saxo* his Testimony in this Case to be omitted; for he saith, that one *Bjorno* of *Norway*, a noted Champion, had a very well made horse, which was exceeding swift, and so courageous that he would never faint in swimming over a roaring Whirl-pool; the Water whereof runs so swift and downward, that all other Creatures almost were tired out and drowned in it: yet he lost that Horse, *Fridlevus*, a most valiant Champion, putting him to his shafts, (of whom I spake before in the fifth Book) and in respect of the stout and unfortunate place he was in; and at last by a stratagem of his Enemies, and the error of his horse, he was taken prisoner, so that *Sejanns* horse seems no where for fashion or nature to be wanting. But that the Horses of the *Goths* are said to be so well skill'd in swimming, there is a necessary cause for it, by reason of their great and broad Rivers every where. For there can hardly be any Battails fought amongst the East or West *Goths*, the *Finnlanders*, *Russians*, or *Muscovites*, but they must swim over huge swift Rivers.

## CHAP. XVII.

## Of the swimming of their Foot Souldiers in Arms, especially such as are fat.

I shall here alledge a singular Example out of *Saxo*, of one *Sivardus* of *Norway*, who after that he had shewed many famous Actions in the Wars, was intercepted by the Enemies, and was carryed in a ship to be drowned in the deep Sea. As if he would precede his funeral by funeral-Solemnities, he made the Mariners drunk, buying drink for that purpose; and when they were merry, he desired of them, as the last thing he should ask, that he might steer the ship; and desiring the Mariners to sail faster, when he saw the ship run very swiftly, he cast away the Helm, and threw himself headlong into the Sea, and came to shore before the ship could, and so killed King *Harald* unawares of him. Afterwards fighting a Sea-fight with them, by a most incredible and gallant courage, he alone, for a good space, defended his ship from the Enemies, when his Company was killed.

But at last he was forced to yield to their multitudes, trusting to his excellent skill in swimming, though Winter were at hand, and his Armour on him was heavy, he cast himself into the Deep, and swimming under the Waters, he made it a question, whether he shewed more gallantry in the ships poop, or agility in swimming when he was in the Waters.

For he took off his Coat of Mail that was about his body, and the rest of his Armour, as he swam under water, that they might not hinder his swimming, and then when he rose above water to take breath, and was pointed at by one of his acquaintance to shew him to the Enemy, by his cloths he wore, he dived under water again, and took off his Coat that he suspected he was known by. And when he could not so pass, but he must be known by him that betrayed him; at last he put off his cloths: And when he could not so remain undiscovered when he alone was left of all his Companions, and he found that he had tryed all these things gallantly and cunningly in vain: at last he counterfeited himself to be dead, laying very long at bottom of the water, that the Enemy doubted whether he were drowned or not. But last of all, when he must rise up to take fresh Air, he laid hold of a strong Helm of a Ship with both his Arms, and stuck fast to it secretly a long time, until at last he was discovered by one that curiously lookt after him, and was put to death.

## The End of the Tenth Book.



# Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of U P S A L :

O F

Wars upon the Ice.

*An Epitome of the Eleventh Book.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Bloody Wars in the Northern Countries.*

**V** E find in the Chronicles of the *North Countries*, both of old, as of later time, that oftentimes most cruel Fights have been fought between the *Russians* or *Moscovites*, and the *Swedes* or *Finlanders*, for divers very weighty causes, both by Sea and Land, and the plain Ice, and thick deep Snowes; and sometimes as it hapned, now one, then another got a notable Victory, as Fortune changed; and this again was a lamentable affliction to the Conquered. The cause of this difference is from the Circumstances of Time, Places, and Commanders, that in such cases hasten a speedy occasion: Wherefore there are two most strange Cattles, the one whereof, a deep Gulph being between, belongs to the Dominion of the great Mr. of *Livonia*, (for so is the Prince of that great Province called) the other belongs to the great Duke of *Moscovie*. But one called *Narven* is subject to the Government of the Christian *Livonians*, and another to the Schismatical *Moscovites*. The Fort that is subject to the *Moscovites*, is so fortified by Nature, by the Waters that run round it, and the Forces there, and thinks it self so safe, that it fears the Assaults of no Enemies, be they never so mighty.

But

But this madness as it proved false, so it felt an inevitable calamity. For the most insatiable Princes of the *Swedes* and *Goths*, *Sveno* that was before *Sjur*, and *Shanto*, being provoked by many great injuries and frauds of the *Moscovites*, after most high wars and damages by the *Moscovites*, brought upon potent provinces, and people, setting upon an army of 50000. armed men, and the foresaid Fort of the *Muscovites*, with fire and sword (whilest their friends in the Cattles of the *Livonians* looked on) they won with incredible tury, that the *Moscovites* being cruelly wounded, and many slain and burnt, could scarce save themselves by running away. And this Fort being taken, the Princes of the *Swedes* and *Goths* aforesaid and their Souldiers got an inestimable spoil of Silver, and costly Sabel skins, that from thence they ever gloried, that for the great troubles they had sustain'd in fights, as well in hot as cold weather, they now triumphed, loaded with great plunder. But these rich booties, as they were to the conquered enemies an irrecoverable losse and grief, so they caused such discords amongst the foresaid Princes, and their friends and people, and such a pernicious and implacable hatred, that from thence afterwards arose the ruine of the Kingdomes. Wherefore this fort, taken from the enemies by force of Arms, when as the great Mr. having it freely given to him for a gift, by the conquering *Swedes*, feared to annex it to his dominions, the conquering army left it, putting fire to it, first having taken out all the rich spoil that was in it, and returned by *Finland*, *Sweden* and *Gothland*: yet there was such abundance of Wax left in the said Cattle (whereof the Eastern factors make a vast gain, and it is a rich tribute for the Governours) because they could not carry it away with them, it being so heavy, that it melted in the flames and made such a steem that one might have failed a great way with it.

## CHAP. II.

*Of Fights upon the Ice.*

**N** Or do the *Swedes* and *Goths* fight against the *Moscovites* or *Russians* that break their leagues with a hot desire of *Rapin* on the borders of the *Finland* Sea, with lesse easynesse on the brittle Ice, than they do on the most firm Land: and as I said before, where they fought in Summer most fierce navall battails, in the very same places, when the Ice is frozen, they set their armies in battail array, and place their Canons, and fight horribly. So firm is the Ice to bear troops of horsemen at a distance or drawn up close in a body. Nor let it seem strange or incredible to any, especially to any *Italian*, how the horses hoofs can stand fast upon the slippery Ice, nor onely to run with the greatest violence, but also to wheele about, and run round to fight with an armed enemy. For the horses are made fit for it by having their feet shod with crooked Irons, and sharp nails, that the rider need never fear falling, be the Ice never so smooth, also such pieces of Ice are cut up with the horses shoes, when they run away, and are cast into the face of him that follows, that he is knocked down dead with them, or wounded not easy to be cured.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the breaking forth of the Moscovites or Russians.*

**T** He *Moscovites* for the most part go forth not so much to war as to plunder, keeping either very little or no military order at all; especially those that enter the borders of the Kingdoms of *Sweden*, and of the great Dukedome of *Finland* to fight or pillage; as it is recorded in the Annals of the same Kingdom, especially in the year of our Lord 1495, when they came

with 60000 men. The cause of their inroad they made to be, their demand again of 3. parishes adjoining namely *Egrybe, Lasche, and Savaloze*, as it they did rather belong to them than to the Kingdome of *Sweden*. But the truth is to great a flood came in by the provocation of *John King of Denmark*, that a mighty Province of *Sweden* being subdued, he might bring part of it under the Dominion of the *Moscovites*, and part of it should be joynt to the territories of the said King of *Denmark*; as afterwards, a few years being past, *Anno 1500.* in the Kingly City *Helm*, the *Moscovites* Embassadors propounded it to the same King *John* in the Lent, affirming that this League was confirmed between both Princes by kissing the holy Crosse solemnly to humble and subdue the Crown of *Sweden*. But both parties became vain suddenly in their Imaginations; that King *John* was forced to fly in haste into his *Denmark* (leaving Queen *Christina* a Gallant woman descending of the Dukes of *Misnia*) and the great tumultuous forces of the *Moscovites* were humbled by force and were driven away like Thiefs; and compelled to get them gone to their habitations at home, receiving such a notable defeat, that he never durst any more, by the *Danes* persuasion, or of his own presumption attempt to come upon the Dominions of the Kingdome of *Sweden*. How ever it is, since the Kingdome of *Denmark*, as *Saxo* laich, is contain'd in a very narrow Land, he useth importunately, and craftily to provide that he may usurp the vast Dominions of *Sweden, Gothland, Finland*, that are near him, by the confederacy, and assistances he obtains from many Princes, especially of *Russia*, or *Moscovia*, from the East; and from the West of the *Scots* or *French*, and *Germans* from the South: all these Nations joyning together and coming into *Sweden* to subdue it, sooner find a grave than a victory.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of a fearfull sounding Cave, the Common people call Smellen.*

WE have shewed in the former Chapter that the Ice is so strong that it can easily bear troops of armed horse and foot. And now I shall shew that there is a cave under the Earth near *Viburgum* a City near the shore, which is a close neighbour to the same Lands of the *Moscovites*, that hath such a secret force, that if a living Creature be cast into it, it will make such a horrible noise, that such as are near to it, according to the greatnesse of it, can neither hear nor speak nor stand; by which vehemency it kills more in a moment than the greatest Cannon, or else it debilitates them. Nor doth this workmanship of Nature seem to be idle. For when any enemy comes on, the Governour of the Land bids all men to stop their ears with wax, and to hide themselves in caves and dens that they may live, and then fortifying himself, he casts in some living creature headlong into the mouth of the cave, or bound with a cord, whence there ariseth such a horrid noise, that the enemies that are besieging round about, fall down like sheep to the slaughter; and when they are fallen, if the Inhabitants will, they stay so, for a long space to be spoil'd by them. But the Conquerours find no pleasure to revenge themselves on them, when the enemies seem to be so strongly oppressed by the power of nature, who as soon as they come to themselves, have no mind to fight but to run away, least if this noise should be heard again, and they should dy of it, or having got some mortall disease thereby, they should live but in a short time though they did fly. In which case it happeneth that they who cannot be subdued and repressed by arms from their warlike fury, are daunted by the only noise of nature, roring, and seldom or never recover their former strength.

## CHAP. V.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the same.*

A More miserable and unhappy example of this calamity was once left to posterity by the *Moscovites* or *Russians*, above all other enemies, losing many thousands of their men, that they may learn not to proceed to oppress their neighbour Nations by proud multitudes especially the *Finlanders*; giving them no cause so to do. For these *Finlanders* are wont to keep firmly themselves and their Country, by mutuall help, and by the Arms of *Goths* and *Swedes*, by Magicall Arts and the secret force of the Elements. But whatsoever is the reason of this cave it must be alwayes held and governed by a provident Man, and that with many walls built round about it, because there is great power in the secret nature of it, as there is in other things.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the battail of the Finlanders against the Moscovites.*

AS the principallity of the great Duke of *Moscovia*, and of *Russia* is most large and most potent; so also he enlargeth and extendeth the Title of his Government, as his last Letters testifie that were sent by one *Demetrius* to Pope *Clement* the 7th. after this Style. The great Lord *Basilus*, by the grace of God Emperour and Governour of all *Russia*, and great Duke of *Volodemiaria, Moscovia, Nervogradia, Permia, Vechia, Bulgaria, &c.* the Lord and great Prince of *Novogrodia* the lower, *Cernigovia, Razania, Valochia, Rozeria, Belchia, Roschovia, Jaroslavia, Belozeria, Vdoria, Obdoria, and Cordinia, &c.* Given in our City of *Moscovia* in the year from the beginning of the world 1307. April the 3d. But this so great and large Title is more admired by neighbour Nations, than feared by reason of his forces; especially the *Finlanders*, who often being provoked, do not leave off to beleaguer his mighty forces and to conspire against his Potent Titles, yet not so frequently in the field (unless the winter be extremly sharp,) as in waters that are divided into many Rivers and Lakes. But for the most part they are Robbers on both sides, who fight, as I said in heat of plunder. And for this small occasion the Princes of the North will not fall to open war.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Moscovites way of Stealing.*

THE *Russians* or *Moscovites* have a most pernicious craft and subtilty in piracy, and robbing as we shall shew briefly. For when they purpose to invade, like thieves the *Carels* or other neighbour Nations, they gather their men together, and instruct them by certain laws and agreements, and they make long light fir tree barks that will carry 20. or 25. men, and these are made in the deserts with plain and thin cloven boards, namely in this order, that some of them hew them hollow with axes, others boyl pitch in holes underground (that they may not be discovered by the smoke) from pine tree boughs, or pieces of them: some burn the points of their darts that they may be hard; others make ready their bows and strings and arrows. For they have most fit matter for all such Instruments in their deserts. These Barks being made ready, they Theevishly Launch them into the waters like a Navy of Ships, and furnish them with arms; and then they set upon Villages, Farms, Castles, and Merchants Ships, in the white lake or *Venedick Gulph*, or the *Livonian* Sea, as they ly at anchor, to rob them. Nor are they content to pillage them and spoil them of their goods, but also by an imbred cruelty, without any difference or discretion



discretion, all they can thus master, they cast into the sea, and drown them.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the same.*

**A**nd relying upon such prosperity, they grow so insolent, that they will not fear to set upon and molest men of war, that are wind bound, and bore holes in their planks next the waters; for with their arrows they fight fiercely to hinder them that are above that they may not defend their Ships, yet they seldom get the victory by their great presumption and boldness, because they are frequently repulsed with Guns, Cross-bows and throwing of stones at them. Then when they consider that they cannot stay long in security among men distressed by them, when they have used violence and Rapine, or by any further mischief to all, exercise their publick piracy any longer, they take their barks on their shoulders, and carry them back into some secret places of the woods, for they know the most secret places of them: that they may another time make use of them to prey abroad as they did, upon more fit occasions; setting guards in the woods that there they may live as in the most private places of the wilderness by the abundance of their spoils, and defend themselves by arms. But as their wickedness is horrid and pernicious, so it suddenly finds some men to revenge it. For by the diligence and skill of hunters they first search out these Thieves that hold guards in the woods, then the people go forth in troops putting on black armour, and utterly destroy these enemies, yet they cannot do it but by a bloody victory, for these Thieves being conscious of their wickedness, will strive and fight stoutly for their lives. But at last being overpowered, some run into caves in the mountains, others to hollow places in the earth, and some climb up into thick trees to hide themselves thinking themselves the more safe, as they had in the vast desert made choice of those most private places to conceal themselves in before they did their robberies. But God's revenge following them, they deserve not to enjoy their lives or liberties, by that means or in that place, who are wont with so cruel torments to oppress the Innocent. For they put them all into their barks and houses of defence, and so without any mercy burn them alive. But those that lie hid in Caves and Dens, are kept in with great stones and planks and Strakes of wood, that they may dy with hunger a more lamentable death. They that think themselves safe amongst the thick boughs are discovered by the barking of Dogs; and unless they do Compound for their lives, they shoot at them with arrows, and make them fall down dead. And they have no more powerfull and effectual course to find out these Rogues and Thiefs, than by the scent and cry of hunting Dogs.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the way of receiving Embassadors amongst the Moscovites.*

**S**ome old Histories of the Northern Kingdoms relate, that some Princes of *Moscow* did receive the Embassadors of Kings and Princes with wonderful delusions & they do the same yet. For they chose them, & so they do now, for that occasion many common people that were very tall men, & very ancient, & grave, & graceful, with grey long beards, in gallant cloths (for the Prince cloths them for it) that being set in the ample company of the Nobles scattered here and there amongst them, and saying nothing, they may with the Splendour of their Ornaments, and great multitudes, ravish the eyes of the Embassadors that come in: who being charmed or terrified with so great state, may propound nothing that is harsh; or if they do propound, they may consent to have it ended by the

the common votes of them all. But that state as it is but counterfeit magnificence, so it is supposed that it grows contemptible in the end of it. For they are far from that esteem they thought to win; For the more perfect Embassadors, who have gone into the world upon great affairs, despite and are ashamed of all that counterfeit state and false pomp. Moreover it is a custome amongst the *Tartars* that the Embassadors before they propound their Embassy to their Emperour shall be forced to passe between two fires, especially for this reason, that if they carry any poison to destroy the Prince, it may first kill those that carry it, being dissolved by the heat of the fire. And they will not otherwise hear those Embassadors, unless they bring presents, and deliver their Embassy, on their knees, and give such honour to a mortal man that is due to Saints and Angels in heaven: and they that refuse to do this are scarce absolved without danger of their lives. But that this custome of entertaining Embassadors amongst the *Moscovites*, may appear by more clear examples, I shall insert the Embassy of the most illustrious King of Poland, Anno Domini 1551. which was directed to the great Duke of *Mosco* in the order that here follows. The Embassador of the King of Poland *Mathias Bariblomiewicz a Kneze, Gedroitzhi*, a very noble man, coming 200 German miles, from the famous City *Vilna*, of Lithuania, to *Mosco*, the Metropolis of *Moscovia*, when he was to have his entrance, after he had gone the foresaid journey, he was entertain'd by some Knights, that were appointed by the great Duke for this purpose: and afterwards a few dayes being past, he was brought into the Castle in great solemnity (such as the *Moscovites* thought fit) to deliver the King's Letters, & he passed through two portals, where very tall men that had huge long beards, (which are most commonly of the baser sort of people) sat round upon seats, and were clothed in very glorious clothing, that belong'd to the great Duke, that so he might boast of the glory of his court to men that came from far Countries, at last he was brought into the Palace, where the great Duke with his Princes all cloth'd as the other were, stay'd for him. But the great Duke sat upon a seat, that was far off from the other Princes, and was clothed with a long robe down to his heels, of piled velvet and the outward skirts of it were Embroidered with pearls and Jewels: and he held in his hand a Scepter or staffe, gilded on the upper part, but it was Silver'd over on the lower part, that he leaned upon: Lastly he had on his head a Miter, which they in their Language call, *Kalpak*, which was made of the best black fox skins, which are of a huge price in that Country, and far dearer than Sables. But when the Embassador entered into the Palace, presently they that brought him in, and presented him to the great Duke, cast themselves down upon the pavement before him, and they knocked their heads against the ground 3 or 4 times, as the custome of the *Moscovites* is, to shew their reverence to their supreme Lord. But when the Embassador was come to the doors 50 foot off from the Duke, together with his 12 servants that came with him, he was commanded by an Advocate with him, (which they call *Przyslaw*) to stand still, and this was done by order from the great Duke, nor was he suffered to come any nearer to him: and there he stood until he had made his speech to the great Duke, and delivered his Kings Letters to the Dukes Secretary appointed to receive them. The Embassador of the great Duke had on a time when he was in Poland refused to receive the Letters of this King, because he had not filed his Lord *Czar Ruzki*, (that is Emperour of *Russia* as he was created by the Metropolis of that Land, and for this reason the same Duke had sent his own Embassador. After this the said Embassador of the King of Poland was brought back again by the Advocate in great state to his Lodging for ostentation sake. And let this suffice concerning the manner of entertaining Embassadors amongst the *Moscovites*.